高等院校英语专业教材配套辅导
高等院校英语专业考研指定参考书

第三版

高级英语

精读精解

Intensive Reading In Detail To Advanced English

主　编　李正林　张名高

1

WUHAN UNIVERSITY PRESS
武汉大学出版社

★精选权威专业教材，内容精练，代表性强

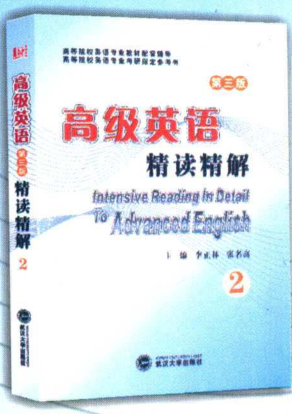
★系统归纳重点难点，条理有序，直击考点

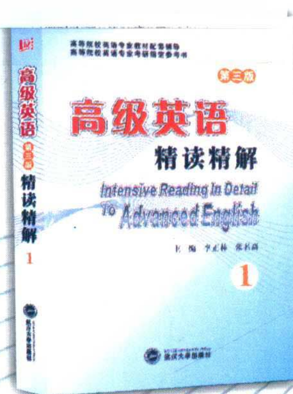
★遴选重点词汇短语，深化理解，强化记忆

★体例设置科学实用，系统明了，博采众长

★参考译文精准细腻，还原经典，精益求精

★详实解析课后习题，明晰洗练，题解精湛





ISBN 978-7-307-14322-7

9 787307 143227

总定价：71.00元

本册定价：36.00元

英语专业经典教材配套辅导系列

Intensive Reading In Detail To Advanced English

高级英语 第三版

精读精解

1

主　编　李正林　张名高

副主编　柯贤兵　徐　泉　邹春燕
　　　　张丽君　王　婷　陈　晨

参　编　张燕歌　李　蓉　蒋丹丹

WUHAN UNIVERSITY PRESS
武汉大学出版社

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

高级英语精读精解/李正林，张名高主编. —武汉：武汉大学出版社，2014.9

ISBN 978-7-307-14322-7

Ⅰ.高… Ⅱ.①李… ②张… Ⅲ.英语—自学参考资料 Ⅳ. H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2014)第 213146 号

责任编辑：安思娜　　责任校对：张　蕾　　版式设计：晨　宇

出版发行：武汉大学出版社 （430072 武昌 珞珈山）

（电子邮件：cbs22@whu.edu.cn 网址：www.wdp.com.cn）

印刷：武汉武铁印刷厂

开本：880×1230 1/32　　印张：25　　字数：900 千字

版次：2014 年 9 月第 1 版　　2014 年 9 月第 1 次印刷

ISBN 978-7-307-14322-7　　定价：71.00 元

前 言

Forward

在供英语专业高年级精读使用的教材中，《高级英语》（张汉熙主编）堪称是一套深受教师和学生喜爱的经典教材。说它经典，是因为在内容上这套教材涉及面颇广，每篇课文都是帮助学生陶冶情操、提高欣赏水平的范文；在语言方面这套教材尤显地道、活泼，其词汇量之大、修辞手法之丰富更是给使用者留下了深刻的印象。因此，这套教材虽已有20多年的历史（2011年出版了第三版），仍一直是英语专业所推崇的首选教材。然而，根据我们多年的教学经验，我们发现学生在使用这套教材时普遍感到有相当的难度。因此，针对这套教材的特点，我们编写了《高级英语精读精解》（第三版）（第一册和第二册），以帮助学生更加深刻、快捷地理解课文，掌握和运用所学语言。

《高级英语精读精解》（第三版）（以下简称《精读精解》）的编写按《高级英语》（第三版）的课文编写顺序进行，每课的内容由“词汇注释”、“短语表达”、“课文理解”、“习题解析”四个部分组成，具有以下显著特点：

1. 英汉双语解释词汇。用英汉双语解释词汇可帮助学生在认识词汇的基础上体味词汇的原义，真正掌握词的概念，以避免用汉语符号随意替代英语概念。

2. 下划线注明重点词汇短语。

3. 同义词辨析。在“词汇注释”中，除英汉双语解释词汇以外，还有大量的同义词辨析，充分体现了高级英语的特点，这对学生扩大词汇量，掌握词汇的细微差异，正确使用词汇十分重要，同时对帮助英语专业的学生备考八级作用明显。

4. 丰富有趣的知识材料。“课文理解”中的“背景介绍”是可读性

极强的材料，如：拜占庭艺术（Byzantine Art）、福特汽车公司（美国第二大汽车工业）（Ford Motor Co.）、卡特尔（Cartel）、弗里德里希·威廉·尼采（Friedrich Wilhelm Nietzsche）、阿以战争（Arab-Israeli war），等等，光读这些介绍材料本身就是一种愉悦的享受。

5. “课文理解” 除了 **“背景介绍”** 以外，还包括 **“全文概述”**、**“美文欣赏及写作特点”**、**“核心内容解析”** 和 **“参考译文”** 四个部分。“全文概述”、“美文欣赏及写作特点” 这两项内容，为帮助学生全面透彻地理解课文，学习、欣赏、分析课文提供了一定的视角和便捷的途径。

除了上述特点外，《精读精解》还有许多优点，如习题解析不仅提供了课文的练习答案，而且对有难度的答案作了汉语翻译或解释。总之，《精读精解》本着真诚为学生着想的宗旨，为使用《高级英语》教材的学生提供了一套有效、方便的配套辅导学习材料。

《精读精解》虽以英语专业高年级学生为服务对象，同时也适用于其他各类考生，如参加TOEFL、GRE、大学英语六级、英语研究生入学考试的学生。

由于时间紧迫，书中难免有缺点错误，欢迎读者批评指正。

编　者

修订说明

《高级英语精读精解》(第三版)的出版对于英语学习者学习《高级英语》这套经典教材起到了积极的作用,得到了普遍好评。在此我们向使用该书的教师和学生表示衷心的感谢。

我们抱着对广大英语学习者高度负责的态度,根据使用者对《高级英语精读精解》(第三版)的反馈意见,将该书进行了仔细的修订。

首先,我们核对并更正了由于疏忽所犯的印刷错误,特别是音标和英文拼写方面的错误。对于"课文理解"部分,我们在修订过程中遵循:简明、准确的原则,提供丰富的背景知识材料,尽量帮助学习者在短时间内理解词义,了解句子和文章结构及修辞,引领学生融入英文背景情境,以达到真正掌握语言并欣赏英文之美的目的。

在这次修订中,我们将所有的课文进行了重新翻译,我们仔细推敲,反复斟酌,努力译好每个词句,其目的是为了使译文能更准确地反映原文的意义,以期通过高质量的译文帮助学习者加深对课文的理解,从而达到提高英语学习效果的目的。

诚然,尽管我们尽心尽力,但编写时间较短,水平所限,难免出现疏漏。敬请读者指正。

华中师范大学 李正林 张名高

目　录

Contents

Lesson One

Face to Face with Hurricane Camille

词汇注释

hurricane['hʌrikən,-kin] ***n.*** a violent storm with extremely strong winds, often happen in the western American Ocean 飓风

【例句】**Hurricanes** generally occur in the tropics. 飓风通常发生热带地区。

同义词:cyclone 旋风,typhoon 台风,whirlwind 旋风,tornado 龙卷风,waterspout 海上龙卷风,twister 陆地龙卷风,breeze 微风,gale 大风,zephyr 西风,monsoon 季风,dry monsoon 冬季季风,wet monsoon 夏季季风

lash[læʃ] ***v.*** to strike with great force; dash against 猛烈冲击,拍打

【例句】The waves **lashed** the smooth cliffs. 波浪冲击着光滑的峭壁。

pummel['pʌməl] ***v.*** to keep hitting hard repeatedly, esp. with the fist(尤指用拳头)连续地打

【例句】The thief was pushed and **pummeled** by an angry crowd. 一群人推搡并痛打小偷。

同义词:beat, pound, thrash, flog, whip, maul

beat 最为常用,指使用手脚或工具等重复敲击;**pound** 打击的力度比 beat 更大;**pummel** 暗示用拳头连续不停地殴打某人;**thrash** 原指用连枷敲打谷物,现指连续敲打,连续重击;**flog** 暗示用皮带或鞭子抽打而予以惩罚;**whip** 往往与 flog 意思相同,尤其强调抽打的动作;**maul** 暗示连续殴打的后果如伤痕或肌肉撕伤。

reluctant[ri'lʌktənt] ***adj.*** unwilling; opposed in mind; disinclined 勉强的

【例句】She seemed **reluctant** to join in the discussion. 她似乎不愿意参加讨论。

同义词:disinclined, hesitant, loath, averse

reluctant 暗示由于厌恶或犹豫而不愿做某事;**disinclined** 指由于不喜欢或不赞成而对某事不感兴趣;**hesitant** 暗示由于恐惧或犹豫而避免做某事;**loath** 指极度厌恶或反感,用作表语;**averse** 用以形容持续的,但不偏激的厌恶。

反义词:inclined, disposed, eager

course[kɔːs] ***n.*** a regular mode or manner of action or behavior; way of doing 行为,品行,做法

【例句】Now the best **course** of action is to increase tax on alcohol. 现在最佳的对策就是提高酒税。

demolish[diˈmɔliʃ] ***v.*** to pull or tear down (a building etc.), smash to pieces 拆毁

【例句】Several houses were **demolished** to make way for the new road. 为了修建新路,一些房子被拆除了。

同义词:destroy, raze, annihilate

destroy 一词最为常见,主要强调破坏的力度之大和彻底程度,一般不带感情或修辞色彩;**demolish** 和 **raze** 通常用于巨大物体,如大型建筑物等,**demolish** 常用引申义,指任何复合体的被毁,**raze** 几乎无一例外地用于指建筑物的被毁;**annihilate** 在这些词中所表示的损坏程度最为强烈,字面意思是"化为乌有",但实际上往往用于指对人或物的严重损伤,如:annihilate an enemy force(使敌军遭到重创),不仅没有还手之力,而且没有招架之功;annihilate one's opponent in a debate(彻底驳倒对手)。

elevate[ˈeliveit] ***v.*** to raise, lift up 举起,抬高

【例句】**elevate** the leg 抬起腿

同义词:lift, raise, rear, hoist, boost

lift 最为常用,指用体力或机械力把某物从地面举到一定的高度;**raise** 往往可以与 lift 互换,但着重垂直高举或将物件由较低处移至较高处的适宜位置,以发挥应有的作用;**elevate** 指提高(嗓子、思想)等;**rear** 与 **raise** 用法相同,但多用于文学作品中;**hoist** 通过机械手段将沉重的物体抬起;**boost** 多用于口语中,指由后面或下面的力量的推力抬起。

反义词:lower

batten[ˈbætn] ***n. v.*** to fasten or supply with or as with battens 用压条钉住(或固定)

【例句】There's a storm coming, so let's **batten** down the hatches. 暴风雨就要来了,让我们把舱口都封住。

methodically[mi'θɔdikəli] ***adv.*** in a methodical manner, orderly, systematically 有秩序地

【例句】The detective went through the papers **methodically** one by one. 侦探有条不紊地逐一检查这些文件。

同义词：orderly, systematically

orderly 指不乱，有一定秩序和规则地；**methodically** 指很有规律地，按部就班地；**systematically** 指有系统地。

反义词：disorderly, haphazardly, chaotically

main[mein] ***n.*** a principal pipe, conduit(管道) or line in the system of providing water, gas, electricity, and etc. (水，煤气，电等的)总管道

【例句】a burst water **main** in the street 街上破裂的自来水管

bathtub['bɑːθtʌb] ***n.*** (also bath) a container in which you wash your whole body 浴盆，浴缸

scud[skʌd] ***v.*** move swiftly across the sky 疾行，飞驰

【例句】Birds **scud** across the lake surface. 鸟儿迅速地掠过湖面。

mattress['mætris] ***n.*** the soft part of a bed that you lie on 床垫

【例句】an old, lumpy **mattress** 一张破旧不平的床垫

pane[pein] ***n.*** a single sheet of glass in a window or a substitute 窗格，窗格玻璃

overwhelming[ˌəuvə'welmiŋ] ***adj.*** having such a great effect on you that you feel confused and do not know how to react 势不可挡的

【例句】**overwhelming** joy 压倒一切的欢乐

French doors(美) = (英)French windows 落地窗

disintegrate[dis'intigreit] ***v.*** break up; lose or cause to lose wholeness, disunite 分裂，分解，裂成碎片

【例句】The whole plane just **disintegrated** in mid-air. 整架飞机在空中就炸成了碎片。

blast[blɑːst] ***n.*** a gust of wind; strong rush of air 一股(气流)，一阵(风)

【例句】A **blast** of wind blew the window and the door open. 一阵风把门和窗子都吹开了。

fling[fliŋ] ***v.*** to throw, esp. with force or violence, hurl, cast 猛投，抛，掷

【例句】Spectators **flung** bottles and cans at the referee. 观众们将瓶子和铁罐丢向裁判。

同义词：throw, cast, toss, hurl, pitch

throw 最为常见，指通过手臂快速推动某物；**cast** 的意义通常比 throw 更古老；

toss 指轻轻地或随意地扔掉;**hurl** 和 **fling** 都意味着用劲投掷,但 hurl 暗示所投的物体移动速度快,而 fling 则指投掷的力度大,足可以打破地面;**pitch** 暗示在明确的目标或方向下进行投掷。

shove[ʃʌv] *v.* to push or thrust, as along a surface 挤,推,撞

【例句】to **shove** a boat into the water 把船推进水里

同义词:push, thrust, propel

push 指用力推动所接触的人或物;**shove** 指粗暴地推开挡路的人或物,使劲推动(重物);**thrust** 指突然用力地推、使透过某物;**propel** 指推进、推动。

反义词:pull, draw

douse[daus] *v.* to soak in or plunge into liquid 把……浸入液体里,使浸透

【例句】They failed to escape because the car was **doused**. 由于汽车浸在水里,他们没能逃走。

brigade[bri'geid] *n.* any group of people organized to do a particular thing or activity under an authority (组织起来执行某种任务的)队,旅

【例句】a fire **brigade** 消防队

flee[fliː] *v.* to run away or escape from danger, pursuit, unpleasantness etc. 逃跑

【例句】He was to **flee** his native village to join the rebel army. 他被迫逃离家乡参加了叛军。

scramble['skræmbl] *v.* to climb or move with difficulty, using the hands and feet 爬行,攀(登)

【例句】The children **scrambled** up the hill. 孩子们爬上这座小山。

litter['litə] *n.* the young dog, cat or other animal borne at one time, which normally produces several young at birth(狗,猫等多产动物)一胎生下幼崽

【例句】a **litter** of puppies 一窝狗崽

shudder['ʃʌdə] *v.* to tremble because of horror or cold(出于恐惧或寒冷)震颤,战栗

【例句】He **shuddered** when he saw the dead animal. 他看见这只死动物直发抖。

同义词:shake, tremble, quake, quiver, shiver, wobble

shake 是常用词,指上下来回短促而急速地摇动;**tremble** 指由于恐惧、悲忿、兴奋等情绪或因寒冷、疲劳等引起无意识地颤抖;**quake** 通常指强烈地颤动;**quiver** 指轻微而急速地颤动、摇动;**shiver** 指由于寒冷、恐惧或生病而发抖;**wobble** 暗示因不稳定而摇摇欲坠。

collapse[kə'læps] *n.* suddenly falls down because its structure is weak or because it has been too weak to continue 倒坍,塌陷

【例句】The unexpected rainstorm caused the **collapse** of the roof. 突然来临的暴风雨把屋顶刮塌了。

clutch[klʌtʃ] ***v.*** to grasp or hold eagerly or tightly 抓住，抓紧，攫住

【例句】The falling man **clutched** the rope. 正在降落的人紧紧地抓住了绳子。

同义词：take，seize，grasp，grab，snatch

take 是常用词，指用手拿、握、取；**seize** 指突然用力地抓住、握住；**grasp** 指紧紧地抓住，用于比喻意义时指掌握，领会；**clutch** 指突然抓住，常伴有急切或害怕的心情；**grab** 指抢夺、攫取；**snatch** 强调突然快速地拿、取、夺、抢走。

gruff[ɡrʌf] ***adj.*** rude，unfriendly，bad-tempered in manner，speech，or appearance 粗暴的，粗鲁的

【例句】a **gruff** reply 不够友好的答复

同义词：blunt，bluff，brusque，curt

blunt 指坦白直率，胸无城府；**bluff** 指不拘礼仪的，唐突的态度，但通常出于热诚和好心；**brusque** 强调言辞粗鲁无礼；**curt** 含有简短无礼，言语生硬的意思；**gruff** 强调说话的嗓音沙哑。

反义词：suave，tactful

lap[læp] ***v.*** to move or strike gently with a light，splashing sound of waves，etc.（海浪）轻轻拍击

【例句】The sea **lapped** against the rocks. 海水拍打着礁石。

crush[krʌʃ] ***v.*** to subdue，overwhelm，suppress 破坏，镇压，压服

【例句】to **crush** all opposition 镇压一切反对派

ferocity[fəˈrɔsiti] ***n.*** the quality or condition of being ferocious，fierceness，and savagery 凶猛，凶恶，残忍，暴行

【例句】the **ferocity** of the wild animals 野生动物的残暴

swipe[swaip] ***n.***（colloq.）a hard hit 猛击，重击

【例句】He took a wild **swipe** at the policeman. 他重重地给了警察一拳。

skim[skim] ***v.*** to cause to move along quickly，nearly touching a surface 使（从表面）轻轻掠过，轻擦而过

【例句】The swallows were **skimming** over the water. 燕子掠过水面。

maroon[məˈruːn] ***v.*** alone，abandoned，or helpless 使……孤立无援

【例句】The travelers were **marooned** by the blizzard. 暴风雪使旅客们处于孤立无援的境地。

grade[ɡreid] ***v.*** to separate things，or arrange them in order according to their quality or rank 分等，分级

【例句】These apples have been **graded** according to size and quality. 这些苹果已经按照大小和质量分了等级。

breadth[bredθ] ***n.*** the distance from one side of sth. to the other 宽度

【例句】What's the **breadth** of this river? 这条河的宽度是多少？

devastate['devəsteit] ***v.*** to lay waste; make desolate; ravage; destroy 毁坏，摧毁，使荒芜

【例句】The bomb **devastated** the city center. 炸弹摧毁了市中心。

同义词：ravage, plunder, sack, pillage, despoil

ravage 指军队等连续劫掠或长期蹂躏；**devastate** 强调遭到蹂躏而完全被毁灭；**plunder** 指军队掠夺战利品；**sack** 和 **pillage** 具体都指军队的抢夺劫掠，**sack** 暗示抢夺当地所有值钱的物品；**despoil** 是 **sack** 的通用语，但通常用来形容建筑、机构等。

swath[swɔːθ] ***n.*** the space or width covered with one cut of a scythe or other mowing device 刈幅（挥动镰刀所及的）面积

【例句】The storm cut a wide **swath** through the town. 暴风雨席卷全城，造成很大的破坏。

dump[dʌmp] ***v.*** to throw down (the contents of, etc.); empty out or unload in a heap or mass 倾倒，卸下，丢下

【例句】There are special places where you can **dump** things you don't want. 你可以把不需要的东西倒在指定的地方。

mooring['muəriŋ] ***n.*** (pl.) the ropes, chains, anchors etc. used to moor(停泊) a ship or boat 系船设施

【例句】Several ships had broken their **moorings** during the storm. 风暴毁坏了几艘船的系船设备。

beach[biːtʃ] ***v.*** to ground (a boat) on a beach, drive (a boat) ashore 使（船）靠岸

【例句】to **beach** a boat 将船靠岸

snap[snæp] ***v.*** to break or part suddenly, esp. with a sharp, cracking sound 突然（或啪地一声）折断

【例句】He **snapped** down the lid of the box. 他啪哒一声关上箱盖。

smash[smæʃ] ***v.*** to break into pieces 破碎，粉碎

【例句】Although the bed was **smashed** to pieces, the man was miraculously unhurt. 虽然床摔碎了，人却奇迹般地没有受伤。

同义词：break, crash, crush, crack, split, fracture, splinter

break 最为常用，指物体部分或整个碎裂、折断或毁坏；**smash** 和 **crash** 均暗示突然性、强烈性和噪音；**crush** 指外部巨大的压力造成物体压碎或压变形；**shatter** 则指物体突然破碎；**crack** 指裂开、破裂；**split** 指沿着缝隙破裂；**fracture** 指折断、断裂，也

指(外科)挫伤、骨折;**splinter** 指木头被锯成木条。

perish['periʃ] *v.* to be utterly destroyed or ruined, end, specifically to die a violent or ultimately death 毁灭,死亡

【例句】Must then a Christ **perish** in torment in every age to save those who have no imagination? 基督必须每年为拯救那些缺乏想像力的人们而受一次死亡的折磨吗?

同义词:die, decease, expire, pass away

die 最为常用,意为死亡,去世;**decease**, **expire** 和 **pass away** 均为委婉语:**decease** 是法律用语;**expire** 字面上意为断气、停止呼吸;而 **pass away** 则暗示走到生命的尽头;**perish** 暗示通过残酷的方式或在艰难的环境下死亡。

huddle['hʌdl] *v.* to crowd close together; nestle(紧挨着)together in a heap, as animals huddle together from fear or for warmth (如风暴中的牛群)挤成一团,拥挤,互相紧贴

【例句】The boys **huddled** together in the cave to keep warm. 男孩们在山洞里挤作一团,使身体暖和些。

slashing['slæʃiŋ] *adj.* severe, forceful and fierce 严厉的,猛烈的

【例句】a **slashing** hailstorm 猛烈的冰雹

implore[im'plɔː] *v.* to ask anxiously or beg eagerly for 恳求,哀求,乞求

【例句】She **implored** the soldiers to save her child. 她恳求战士们救救她的孩子。

同义词:beg, solicit, entreat, beseech, importune

beg 指要求某事时谦逊有礼,现多用于礼貌用语中;**solicit** 强调要求某事时毕恭毕敬;**entreat** 主要是说服性的请求,指有计划地去征服对方;**beseech** 强调热切并通常暗示焦虑;**implore** 更加强调迫切恳求的意思和渴望;**importune** 强调坚持,有时是令人讨厌的恳求。

bar[bɑː] *n.* in music, a vertical line across a staff, dividing it into measures 小节线(五线谱上的纵线把五线谱分成小节)

【例句】She hummed a few **bars** of the song. 她哼唱了这首歌的几节。

trail[treil] *v.* disappear gradually, dimmer, less direct, etc. 减弱,渐小,渐暗

【例句】The distant cry **trailed** off. 远处传来的喊声逐渐地消失了。

debris['debriːz] *n.* broken, scattered remains; rubbish, esp. that caused by destruction, ruins 碎片,瓦砾

【例句】The beach is littered with **debris**. 海滩上到处都是碎片。

sanctuary['sæŋktjuəri] *n.* a place of refuge or protection 庇护所,避难所

同义词:shelter, refuge, retreat, asylum

rage[reidʒ] *v.* to show violent anger in action or speech 发怒

【例句】The **raging** sea was lulled. 翻腾的海浪平息了。

同义词：anger, indignation, fury, ire, wrath

anger 是常用词,指由于极度不愉快而引起的情绪激动,但强烈的程度不定;**indignation** 是正式用语,指由于非正义、受辱等引起的义愤或愤慨;**rage** 指大怒,强调愤怒强烈到无法控制;**fury** 语气比 **rage** 强,指暴怒,甚至接近于疯狂;**ire** 主要是文学用语,指言行所传达出的愤怒之情;**wrath** 是正式用语,指强烈的义愤,带有要给予惩罚或报复的意思。

反义词：pleasure, forbearance

waver[ˈweivə] *v.* to swing or sway to and fro; flutter 摇摆,摇晃,摇曳

【例句】His voices **wavered**. 他发出颤抖的声音。

topple[ˈtɔpl] *v.* to fall up forward, fall over from top heaviness etc. 向前倒

【例句】A stack of plates swayed, and began to **topple** over. 一叠盘子摇摇欲坠,然后倒在地上。

lean-to *n.* a shed or other building outside with a sloping roof. 单坡屋顶,单坡屋顶的棚

prop[prɔp] *v.* to support an object by leaning it against sth, or putting sth under it 支撑

【例句】The mailman **propped** his bicycle up against the wall and put the mail into the mailbox. 邮电员把自行车靠在墙上然后把邮件放到信箱里。

sprawl[sprɔːl] *v.* to lie or sit with your arms or legs stretched out in a lazy or careless way 摊手摊脚地坐,平躺,倒卧

【例句】**sprawling** on the sofa 平躺在沙发上

tilt[tilt] *v.* to slope; incline; slant; tip 倾斜,倾侧,翘起

【例句】I **tilted** the cup to drink out of it. 我斜起杯子来喝水。

cower[ˈkauə] *v.* to bend low or move backwards from frighten or cold (因害怕或寒冷而)蜷缩,退缩

【例句】The dog **cowered** when its master beat it. 当它的主人揍它时,狗抖缩了。

slant[slɑːnt] *v.* to slop in a certain direction 倾斜,(使)变歪

【例句】The sun's rays **slanted** through the trees. 阳光斜射入树林。

hinge[hindʒ] *v.* to set a hinge, so as to make sth move freely as it opens or closes 装铰链

【例句】The cupboard door is **hinged** on the right, so it opens on the left. 柜橱门的右边装了铰链,所以从左边开。

diminish[diˈminiʃ] *v.* to make smaller, decrease in size, degree, importance, etc. 缩减

【例句】The **dimensions** of the difficulty for the hydraulic project have only recently been recognized. 人们只是到最近才认识这一项水利工程的难度。

同义词：decrease, dwindle, lessen, decline, reduce

decrease 和 **dwindle** 均表明体积、大小、音量或数量逐渐减小，但 **dwindle** 强调减少到无或消耗到完为止；**lessen** 除了不能表示减少的幅度外，基本上可以与 **decrease** 通用；**diminish** 强调形状缩小，数量减少，特指看得出来的缩小或减少；**reduce** 指人为地减少、降低。

反义词：increase

recede[ri'siːd] *v.* to go or move back 跌落，回落

【例句】The seawater finally **receded**. 水位最终退潮了。

thrust[θrʌst] *n.* the act of thrusting, specifically a sudden, forceful push or shove 猛推

【例句】She gave a hard **thrust**, and the door opened. 她使劲一推，门开了。

strew[struː] *v.* to be spread or scattered on a surface 撒(布)，散播，被撒满(表面)

【例句】Autumn leaves **strewed** over the lawn. 草地上撒满了秋叶。

同义词：scatter, sprinkle

sprinkle 指以水滴或颗粒状的方式散射；**scatter** 指朝不同的方向散开，通常呈不规则分布；**strew** 指整齐或杂乱地散开。

festoon[fes'tuːn] *v.* to decorate or hang with flowers, leaves, coloured paper etc. 饰以(或悬挂)花彩，结彩于；张灯结彩

【例句】a square **festooned** with electric lights 张灯结彩的广场

coil[kɔil] *v.* to wind around into series of circles 成卷状，盘绕，卷

【例句】Please **coil** the cords neatly before you put them away. 请把绳子卷好之后再放置起来。

salvation[sæl'veiʃn] *n.* the state of being saved from evil, danger, difficulty, destruction, etc.; rescue 救助，拯救，援助

【例句】Government loans have been the **salvation** of several shaky business companies. 政府贷款挽救了几家濒临倒闭的公司。

canteen[kæn'tiːn] *n.* a place where food and drink are distributed in a disaster area (在灾区给灾民分配熟食的)赈灾处

staffer['stɑːfə] *n.* staff 职员

rake[reik] *v.* move from one side to the other very quickly 快速移动

【例句】The fire **raked** its way across the meadow. 火势沿着草地迅速蔓延开。

rampage['ræmpeidʒ] *v.* to move through a place violently, rage, act wildly 横冲

直撞

【例句】Football fans **rampaged** through the streets. 球迷们在街上横冲直撞。

wreckage[ˈrekidʒ] *n.* the remains of sth. that has been wrecked 残骸,漂浮物

【例句】the **wreckage** of the plane after the crash 飞机坠落后的残骸

salvage[ˈsælvidʒ] *v.* to rescue from shipwreck, capture, fire, flood, etc. 营救,抢救,打捞

【例句】We managed to **salvage** a few photo albums from the fire. 我们设法从火灾中救出几本相册。

wrath[rɔːθ] *n.* extreme anger; rage; fury 愤怒,暴怒,勃然大怒

【例句】His **wrath** got out of hand. 他怒不可遏。

同义词:参见本课 rage

the blues *n.* (colloq.) a depressed, unhappy feeling 沮丧,忧郁

【例句】He felt a sudden attack of **the blues**. 他突然觉得闷闷不乐。

afflict[əˈflikt] *v.* to cause pain or suffering to; distress very much 使痛苦,折磨

【例句】a country **afflicted** by famine 饱受饥荒之苦的国家

weld[weld] *v.* to join pieces of metal together by heating and then pressing together 焊接,熔接

reflect[riˈflekt] *v.* to consider deeply and carefully; contemplate, ponder 认真思考,沉思

【例句】He **reflected** before answering my question. 他在回答我的问题之前仔细考虑了一下。

同义词:consider, study, contemplate, weigh

consider 的本义是思考、考虑,以做出决定;**study** 暗示精力高度集中,更关注细节;**contemplate** 指持续的思考,往往强调直觉;**weigh** 指在对立的信息观点中寻求一致,达成共识;**reflect** 指思绪回到过去,强调安静地思考。

短语表达

reason out: to find out an explanation or solution to a problem, by thinking of all the possibilities 寻找解决途径

【例句】Let's **reason** this **out** instead of quarrelling. 让我们不要争吵,商量出事情的解决方案。

a good: at least, full 至少,最少

【例句】They waited **a good** eight hours. 他们等了至少8个小时。

sit out:stay until the end of 坐到结束

【例句】We forced ourselves to **sit** the play **out**. 我们强迫自己坐到演出结束。

come by:to make a short visit to a place on one's way 顺便拜访

【例句】I'll **come by** the house and get my stuff later, OK? 我会顺便过来取材料,好吗?

by the minute:every minute, minute by minute 一分钟一分钟地

【例句】I'm feeling better **by the minute**. 我每分钟都感觉好多了。

on the verge of:on the edge of, on the brink of 接近于,濒临于

【例句】Scientists are **on the verge of** a major breakthrough. 科学家们即将取得一项重大突破。

break apart:break up into pieces; disintegrate 裂开,分裂

【例句】The grounds **broke apart** in earthquake. 地面在地震时裂开了。

break up:to break or make sth break into many small pieces 分裂,解散

【例句】The ice will **break up** when the warm weather comes. 天气转暖,冰层就会破裂。

come through:to continue to live, exist, be strong, or succeed after a difficult or dangerous time 经历过……仍活着,经历,脱险

【例句】John was so ill but he was lucky to **come through**. 约翰病得很厉害,依然活着算是很幸运的了。

pitch in[pitʃ]:to set to work energetically 拼命干起来,开始大干特干

【例句】If we **pitch in**, we will have it finished in no time. 我们如果拼命干活,就会马上做完。

课文理解

I. 背景介绍

1. Hurricane:a tropical storm in which winds attain speeds greater than 75 miles (121 kilometers) per hour. The term is often restricted to those storms occurring over the North Atlantic Ocean. Incipient(初始的)hurricanes usually form over the tropical Atlantic Ocean and mature as they drift westward. Hurricanes also occasionally form off the west coast of Mexico and move northeastward from that area. An average of 3.5 tropical storms per year eventually mature into hurricanes along the east coast of North America, usually over the Caribbean Sea or Gulf of Mexico.

Similar storms occurring over the West Pacific Ocean and China Seas are called typhoons and those over the Indian Ocean are called tropical cyclones(热带旋风). Hurricanes are given girls' names and typhoons are given serial numbers(序号). The National Weather Service of the United States has used girls' names to identify hurricanes in the Atlantic, Caribbean, and Gulf of Mexico since 1953 and the names were given in alphabetical order(按字母顺序). A semi-permanent list of 10 sets of names in alphabetical order was established in 1971. This practice of giving girls' names to hurricanes has changed recently. In 1980 a hurricane was given a man's name and was called Hurricane David.

飓风,是一股巨大而强劲的风暴,旋转的风速可达每小时120公里,常被气象学家称为热带风暴。它一般都以每小时20公里的速度,沿着通常的风向掠过海面。通常飓风在热带大西洋开始成形,然后逐渐在西移的过程中完全形成。有时也会在墨西哥西岸开始成形,然后逐渐朝东北方向移动。在北美洲东岸地区,加勒比海和海港湾上空,每年平均有3.5次风暴会形成飓风。发生在西太平洋和中国海上的类似风暴被称作台风,形成于印度洋的风暴叫热带风暴。1953年以来,美国国家气象台用女性名字来命名大西洋、加勒比海和墨西哥海湾的飓风,这些名字按字母顺序排列。一个半球性的,按字母排序排列的十组姓名名单于1971年被确定。用女性姓名来命名飓风的习惯近来已有所改变。1980年人们用男子姓名命名了一场飓风,叫戴维号飓风。

2. Hurricane Betsy: Betsy was a huge storm, which lashed Florida, Mississippi and Louisiana in 1965 from Sept. 7—10, causing the death of 75 persons.

飓风贝齐,卡米尔飓风前的一次飓风,发生于1965年9月7至10日,造成75人死亡。

3. Gulfport: City coast of Harrison county, southeastern Mississippi, U.S. Gulfport is a port of entry on the Mississippi Sound and the Gulf of Mexico.

海港湾,又名墨西哥湾,在北美洲东南部边缘,有一扁圆形的海湾,因濒临墨西哥,而得名墨西哥湾。

4. Las Vegas: Las Vegas city is the seat of Clark county, southeastern Nevada, U.S. Mormons(摩门教徒) from Utah were the first settlers (1855), attracted by the artesian(喷水的) springs in the arid(干旱的) valley, hence the name Las Vegas ("the meadows"). Its growth was stimulated by legalized gambling (1931) and by construction in the 1930s of the Hoover Dam and Lake Mead. Las Vegas is famous as a unique year-round desert resort (度假胜地). The city's commercial core is "The Strip(沿闹街或高速公路的地区,两侧有大量各种商业设施)," an array(列) of luxury hotels, casinos, and nightclubs featuring gambling and exotic entertainment. Gambling had been legalized in Nevada in 1931, and from the late 1940s Las Vegas began to earn a reputation as a popular tourist destina-

tion and to attract notoriety(声名狼藉)as a "sin city."

拉斯维加斯，原本是到加州路上的一个绿洲，周围则是一望无尽的沙漠。（早年）一批来自犹他州的摩门教徒移居此地。1931年，内达华州决定使赌博成为合法的事业，使之成为了以赌博为主要内容的娱乐性城市。该地区气候干燥，但城内有天然的自流泉，自流泉周围土肥草盛，因此得名"拉斯维加斯"（肥沃的青草地的意思）。在此地汇集世界十大酒店及各类设施豪华的夜总会、赌场、风情游乐场所，以此吸引世界各地大量的游客到此。故"拉斯维加斯"的"赌城之名"闻名于世。

5. Magna Products: Magna Products is John Koshak's company, which designed and developed educational toys and supplies.

玛格纳公司，是由约翰·科夏克创办的一家公司名称，公司的主要业务是设计，开发教学用具和设备。

6. National Guard: in the U. S. the organized militia forces of the individual states, a component of the Army of the U. S. when called into active Federal service

国民警卫队，在美国各个州所属的一种民兵组织，战时由联邦编入正式军。

7. Civil Defense: a system of warning devices, fallout shelters(沉降物掩蔽所), volunteer workers, etc., organized as a defense of the population against enemy actions in time of war. The principal U. S. civil defense agency was established in 1950 and in 1961 civil defense functions were transferred to the Defense Department(国防部)

民防队，战时由人民自愿组成的维护民众安全的抗敌组织。美国民防军的主要机构于1950年设立，1961年民防队转交至国防部管辖之内。

8. Seabees: members of the construction battalions of the Civil Engineer Corps(美国海军工程兵)of the U. S. Navy, that build harbor facilities, airfields, etc. Seabee stands for CB, short for Construction Battalion

海军修建营，指美国海军工程兵施工大队的成员（缩写CB），主要负责修建海港设施、机场等。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

The text describes the heroic struggle of the Koshaks and their friends against the forces of a devastating hurricane. Unwilling to abandon their home, the Koshaks had made full preparations for the hurricane. However, they had underestimated the ferocity of Hurricane Camille, which smashed into the Mississippi Gulf Coast with winds in excess of 200 mph and tides over 20 feet. The overwhelming wind and rain whipped the house so that it was on the verge of disintegration. The Koshaks and their friends tried to quit the house, but unfortunately failed because of the doused car. They scrambled back, terrified and bewildered. Plunged in a desperate situation, they attempted to support each other with verbal

comforts or prayers for the God. With the entire roof lifted off, the staircase breaking apart, and the walls toppling, the Koshaks found no room sanctuary and prepared a door for taking the nine children on if the floor split up. Luckily the main thrust of Camille had passed and the Koshaks and their friends survived. Organizations within the country had come to the aid of the devastated coast, and the inhabitants there quickly reorganized their lives. Though the hurricane had deprived the Koshaks of all their material possessions, the family came through it, which was the most significant thing for them.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

The text is a piece of narration, which is organized as follows: introduction, development, climax and conclusion. The first 6 paragraphs are introductory paragraphs, giving the time, place, and background of the conflict—man versus hurricanes, as well as the characters. The writer then describes how the Koshaks and their friends struggled against each onslaught(冲击)of the hurricane in a chronological order(以时间顺序)from Paragraph 7 to Paragraph 26. The story reaches its climax in Paragraph 27 and from there on the story moves rapidly to its conclusion. In the last paragraph the writer states his theme in the reflection of Grandmother Koshak: "We lost practically all possessions, but the family came through it. When I think of that, I realize we lost nothing important."

Lexically, in order to embody the ferocity of the hurricane, the writer makes effective use of verbs, such as lash, pummel, demolish, lap, swipe, skim, swath, snap, smash, slashing, etc. Syntactically, the writer uses many elliptical and short simple sentences to heighten tension and help create a sense of danger and urgency. John Koshak's urgent orders—"Back to the house!" "Count the children! Count nine!" "Everybody on the stairs!"— are good examples. Rhetorically, the writer employs several rhetorical devices including simile, metaphor and personification to enhance the vividness of the language.

The writer portrays the characters in a heroic and appreciative way. Confronted with the formidable(难以应付的)hurricane, the characters show firm determination and utmost courage to fight against the natural disaster. Their mutual encouragement signifies the humanistic greatness, which the writer mainly strives for in the story. For example, the adults always put the children in the first place; Charlie, John's close friend, takes responsibility for the neighbor mother and her two children; grandparents gently express deep love to each other. After they survive, their faith in life and optimism lead them to start all over in rebuilding their home. All of them know that nothing is more important than human lives, which is the theme or the purpose behind the story.

这篇课文是一篇叙述文，文章结构包括引言、发展、高潮和结局四个部分。开头

6段是引言部分，交代了故事发生的时间、地点、人物以及背景。在第7到第26段中，作者依照时间顺序叙述了科夏克一家和他们的朋友与飓风抗争的经过。故事在第27段达到了高潮，然后随着飓风离境，人物获救，故事进入了结局部分。作者在最后一段点明了文章的主题："我们虽然在物质上损失殆尽，但一家人却幸存了下来。这样一想，我就觉得我们并没有损失什么重要的东西。"

从词法上看，作者为了准确地体现飓风的磅礴气势，在文章中运用了大量的具体动词，如 lash，pummel，demolish，lap，swipe，skim，swath，snap，smash，slashing 等。从句法上看，作者通过许多省略句和短促的简单句来制造紧张感和危机感。如约翰·科夏克在危机关头的命令："回到房子里去！""数数孩子们，一共九个！""快上楼！"另外，作者也通过修辞手法的运用，如明喻、暗喻、拟人等，使得语言更加生动形象。

作者从赞赏的角度对故事人物进行了英雄化的描写。在势不可挡的飓风面前，他们表现出了坚定不移的决心和非同一般的勇气。他们在生死关头所表现出的相互关爱，于平凡之中体现出了人性的伟大，这也是作者的用意所在。例如，大人们处处将孩子们放在第一位；约翰的挚友查理斯义务照顾邻居妇人和她的两个孩子；祖父祖母温情地向对方表达爱意。获救后，他们的生活信念和乐观主义精神使得他们很快开始重建家园。他们心里都明白，世上没有什么东西能够比生命更加可贵，这便是蕴涵在故事背后的主题。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Face to Face with Hurricane Camille: Confronted with Hurricane Camille（直面飓风卡米尔的来袭）face to face 有"面对面，面临，对抗"之意，通常指面临危险、困难或难以解决的问题，暗示事态紧急且具危险性，如：face to face with the enemy /tiger / problem。

2. John Koshak, Jr.: Son John Koshak（小约翰·科夏克）置于姓名后表示同名父子中的子或同姓两人中的较年幼者，如 Brown, Jr. 小布朗。

3. Radios and televisions warnings... Gulf of Mexico: that Sunday, last August 17, when Hurricane Camille moved quickly and violently northwestward across the Gulf of Mexico, the National Weather Service of the United States broadcast warnings of potential hurricanes 作者为表现飓风势不可挡的气势，在文中使用了一系列非常具体的动词，如：lash, pummel, whip, kill, inch, bother, fling, lap, shove, skim, seize, crack 等。

4. whose business was right there in his home: His business office, workshop, etc. were all in his home. right there 意为"就在那儿（自己家里）"。

5. We are elevated 23 feet: Our house has been raised by 23 feet in comparison with the past.（现在我们这幢房子高了23英尺。）

6. We can batten down and ride it out: We can make the necessary preparations and survive the hurricane without much damage. 这里作者运用了暗喻(metaphor)的修辞手法,将在飓风包围中的房屋比作航行于波涛中的船只。batten down 原指水手在风暴来临前用油布封住舱口,以防进水。ride out 意为抵挡住(狂风等的)袭击,不受多少损伤地坚持到最后脱险。

7. Another neighbor... of his dog: 该句应该是:Another neighbor came by on his way inland and asked if the Koshaks would mind taking care of his dog.

8. Wind and rain now whipped the house: Strong wind and rain was lashing the house as if with a whip. 这里作者使用了暗喻,将飓风的行为和力度比喻为长鞭(whip),同时也运用了拟人(personification)的修辞手法,将自然界(这里指狂风暴雨)拟人化,以此烘托飓风的威力。

9. As the wind mounted a roar: As the sound of the wind gets louder 或 as the force of the wind increases 作者这里使用 roar 表明风势已经达到了飓风的力度。

10. The French doors... other upstairs windows disintegrated: The French doors in an upstairs room were burst open by the storm with the two adjoining doors (of the French doors) flew inwards, which made an explosive noise. When other upstairs windows broke up into pieces, the group heard loud explosive noises like guns being fired.

11. The generator was doused, and lights went out: Water got into the generator and put it out. It stopped producing electricity, so the lights also went out.

12. Everybody out the back door to the cars: 这是一个无动词祈使句。在请求、命令和口号中,常用无动词祈使句,它实际上是省略了动词,从而使语句更简洁或有力。如:Just a minute, please! 请稍等! This way, please! 请这边走! Faster! 再快点! To the pumps, every one of you! 去抽水,你们每个人都去!

13. The children went from adult to adult like buckets in a fire brigade: The children were passed among adults like buckets of water in a fire brigade when fighting a fire. 这里作者运用了明喻(simile)的修辞手法,将传递孩子们比喻为救火时传递水桶。

14. The electrical systems had been killed by water: The electrical systems in the car had been put out by water (just as the generator in the house was doused). 作者这里使用了具体动词 kill,意为"使停止 stop",但比 stop 更能准确表达当时情况的危急程度。

15. interior walls: walls inside the house, walls which are not directly exposed to the wind and rain(内墙)

16. The wind sounded like the roar of a train passing a few yards away: The sound of the hurricane was similar to the deep, loud noise of a passing train a few yards away.

17. The house shuddered and shifted from its foundations: The house shook and was loosened from its foundations.

18. with outward calm: to appear calm (but to be worried in one's mind)(强作镇定地)

19. his voice lacked its usual gruffness: his voice was gentle and soft without the regular roughness(他的嗓音里没有了往日的粗哑)。这句话体现出老科夏克真挚肃穆的情感。在生死关头，老科夏克夫妇通过温情的方式向对方表达爱意来相互鼓励。

20. John watched... crushing guilt: As John watched the water inch its way up the steps, he felt a strong sense of guilt because he blamed himself for endangering the whole family by deciding not to flee inland. 这里 lap(轻轻拍击)与 crushing(覆没，压倒)在力度上形成了鲜明的对比，体现出约翰内心的自责与挣扎。

21. Get us through this mess, will You: Oh God, please help us to get through this storm safely. 此处大写的 You 指上帝。句中虽未提及上帝，但前面用了 pray 一词，即是"向上帝求告"之意。这是他们在绝望中的祈求，表明他们的处境已经到了非常险恶的地步了。

22. A moment later... through the air: Instantly the hurricane, which acted as a strong man, lifted the complete roof off the house in a big, hard, sweeping blow, and threw it swiftly and lightly 40 feet away through the air.

23. In its concentrated breadth... 200 m. p. h.: The hurricane was concentrated within a breadth of about 70 miles and in this area the hurricane threw or hurled out winds that reached nearly 200 m. p. h. m. p. h. 是 miles per hour(英里/时)的缩写，同样的缩写如 m. p. g. (英里/加仑)，r. p. m. (每分钟转数)，g. p. m. (每分钟加仑数)，f. p. s. (英尺秒)等。

24. It seized... miles away: The hurricane, which acted like a strong man, grasped and lifted an oil tank that could store 600 000 gallons of oil, and then threw it 3 1/2 miles away with a bump. 这里作者运用了拟人的修辞手法，把飓风威力比做一个壮实的汉子轻而易举地抓起一件笨重的物体一样。

25. Telephone poles... snapped them: Telephone poles and pine trees of 20 inches in diameter were split by the winds with a sudden sharp noise which was similar to that of firing guns. 这里作者运用了明喻和拟声词(onomatopoeia)的修辞手法，将电话线竿和松树断裂时发出的声音比喻成机枪声。

26. Several vacationers at... vantage point: The people who were spending their holidays in the Richelieu Apartments held a party to enjoy the unusual and impressive spectacle of the hurricane because the apartment provided an unusually clear and broad view of the storm. 这里作者运用了移就(transferred epithet)修辞手法，spectacular 一词实际上是修饰 storm 而不是 vantage point，用以突出飓风壮观的景象。

27. Richelieu Apartments... a gigantic fist: Richelieu Apartments were destroyed

completely by the hurricane as if by a powerful fist. 这里作者运用了明喻和拟人的修辞手法，将飓风比作硕大的拳头，以此突显飓风的力量。

28. She carried... trailed away: Grandmother Koshak sang a few words alone and then her voice gradually grew dimmer and stopped. 老祖母试图用歌声来鼓舞大家的士气，但无人响应，孩子们此时已经被狂暴的飓风吓呆了，不知所措。这一细节衬托出飓风无情肆虐的情形。

29. With two walls... television room: Because the two walls of the bedroom where they were seeking shelter were breaking up, John ordered everyone to go into the television room. 介词 with 用于介绍原因，意思是"由于，因为"，如：With the staff greatly reduced, they had to stop work.（由于大量裁员，他们不得不停止了工作。）/He was faint with hunger.（他饿晕了）。

30. Strips of clothing festooned the standing trees: The remaining trees were decorated with pieces of clothing.

31. blowndown power lines coiled like black spaghetti over roads: the broken electrical wires, which looked like black spaghetti, winded around over the roads 这里作者运用了明喻的修辞手法，将被飓风刮断的电线形象地比作黑色的实心面。

32. household and medical... and car: household and medical supplies were constantly sent to theses areas by plane, train, truck and car like continuous water, stream 一词在这里是一个用作隐喻的修辞手法，作者把送往灾区的物品比喻成源源不断的流水。

33. Janis had just one delayed reaction: Janis displayed rather late the exhaustion brought about by the nervous tension caused by the hurricane. 这句话表现出飓风给人留下的心理创伤。

34. It could be... wrath of the storm: Going through the wrecked home picking up things could have a depressing effect, but it didn't. When they picked up some useful things they felt as if they had won some kind of a victory over the storm. 作者通过灾民清理废墟这样一个细节描写，刻画出人们在灾难过后始终保持的一种乐观心态。

35. We lost... nothing important: Though we have lost all our material possessions, the whole family survived the storm, which is the most important thing for us. 这两句话是全文的主题，即人类生命比物质财富更加可贵。

V. 参考译文

直面飓风卡米尔的来袭

小约翰·科夏克早就知道这场卡米尔飓风将会糟糕透顶。其实追溯到去年 8 月 17 日，整个星期天，广播和电视不间断地发出飓风来袭警报，那时卡米尔正席卷墨西

哥海湾的西北方向。密西西比州的海港湾必会受到重创，而那正是科夏克一家的居住地。在路易斯安那州、密西西比州和阿拉巴马州沿海的地带，有近15万的居民纷纷逃往内陆更为安全的地方。但是，沿海地区还有其余上千万居民，他们和约翰一样，难舍故土。在约翰看来，只有当他的家人——妻子詹妮斯和七个一溜从三岁到十一岁的孩子——生命正遭受威胁，他才会考虑搬迁。

约翰就应对这场灾难的最佳举措还专门和他的父母商量过。就在一个月以前，父母刚从加州搬到这幢有十个房间的房子里。约翰为此还询问过老朋友查理斯·希尔的意见，他是特意从拉斯维加斯驱车前来拜访的。

约翰37岁，他的所有生意就在自己的家里（他从事的是教学模型和设备的设计研发，他所经营的是一家名为玛格纳的公司，这所有的来往信函，设计图纸和工艺模型都被存放在了一楼）。他是深知飓风的威力的。四年前，他在海港湾以西几英里外的旧家，就是被飓风贝齐所彻底摧毁（在飓风来临之前，科夏克一家就在一家汽车旅馆躲了一夜）。但是，那幢老房子所处的地势低洼，只比海平面高出几英尺。“现在我们住的房子足足高出了23英尺，”他对父亲说，“而且离海边少说也有250码远。这幢房子的年头可以追回到1915年了，直到现在，房子还从没有被飓风袭击过呢。呆在这儿可能是最安全的选择了。”

老科夏克是位熟练机械师，已经67岁了。他声音虽粗哑暗陈，但是热心快肠。对于儿子的看法，他明确支持。“我们可以严阵以待，共度难关。”他说：“如果确实发现紧急情况，我们就赶在天黑之前离开这里。”

为了防范飓风威胁，几个男人们井井有条地做着准备工作。自来水管可能会毁坏，他们便在浴缸和水桶里蓄满水。以防飓风造成的断电，他们便逐一检查了便携收音机和手电筒里的电池，还有提灯里的燃油。除此之外，约翰的父亲还把一台小发电机搬到了楼下的门厅，并连上几个灯泡，准备将它与冰箱连通。

那天下午，倾盆大雨没有丝毫的停歇。伴随着越发狂暴的飓风，乌云从海湾上空滚滚而来。一家人早早地用完了晚饭。有一位女邻居跑过来，问她和她的两个孩子能不能过来和他们这一大家呆在一起，共同躲避飓风，她的丈夫去了越南。还有一位邻居在逃往内陆的路上，也跑来问科夏克一家能不能帮忙看下他的狗。

在七点之前，天就完全黑了。狂风暴雨不停击打着房子。约翰叫大儿子和大女儿去楼上拿些被子和枕头给弟弟妹妹们用。他是打算把一大家人都集中到一层楼里面。“都离窗户远点，”他警告说，这是怕震碎的玻璃会伤到家人。风开始怒吼咆哮了，房子漏雨了——雨水好像穿透了墙壁，往屋里猛灌。一家子人都拿起拖把、毛巾、水桶和各种盆罐，开始抵御疯狂蔓延的渍水。八点半钟，断电了，老科夏克开启了小型发电机。

接着飓风的怒吼声盖住了一切声音。房子开始摇动起来，客厅的天花板一块一块地坠落下来。突然砰地一声，楼上一间房的落地窗被狂风震裂了。他们还听到楼上窗户碎

裂时发出的机关枪式的劈啪声。渍水已经淹到他们脚踝上了。

这时,前门要逐渐从门框掉下来了。约翰和查理斯尽力用肩膀挡住门板,但一大股水突然冲撞进来,冲破了大门,把他们两人冲到了大厅里。发电机被水淹没了,灯熄了。查理斯舔舔嘴唇,冲着约翰大喊道:"我看这次我们真的遇上麻烦了。水是咸的。"这说明海水已经泛滥到房子里来了,而且水位还在持续不停地上涨。

"大家都穿过后门,直接到车里去!"约翰高声叫喊道。"就把孩子一个个递过去。大家数数!有九个孩子!"

好比消防队的水桶般,孩子们就这样依次在大人手中传递到了车里。然而汽车的点火系统被水完全浸泡坏了,根本无法发动。风力太强了,渍水又太深,他们完全没法靠两条腿撤离。"都回到房子里去!"约翰高声叫道:"点点孩子,有九个!"

当他们都连滚带爬的回到屋里后,约翰又命令道:"大家快上楼!"一家人只有躲到有两面内墙保护的楼梯上,个个惊惶不已,气喘如牛,全身湿漉漉的。孩子们把四个小猫咪放进了盒子里,然后连同那只叫斯普奇的猫妈妈,一起放在了楼梯平台上。猫妈妈惊慌不定地盯着她的孩子们。邻居家的狗则已经蜷起身子进入梦乡了。

狂风这时发出的咆哮怒吼声震耳欲聋,就像火车在身边疾驰而过一般。房子不停地抖动摇晃,好像是从深处的地基开始的。接着一楼的外墙面倒塌了,渍水渐渐漫到了楼梯上。这时没有一个人说点什么。大家心里其实都知道,已经没有退路了。他们的死活都得赖在这房子里了。

照顾那位女邻居和她的两个孩子的任务基本上是查理斯·希尔负责的。那位母亲快被吓疯了。她紧拽着希尔的胳膊,口里不停嚷着:"我真的不会游泳,我真不会游泳呀!"

"不会也没事的,"他故作冷静地说,"马上就结束了。"

科夏克奶奶一把揽过丈夫的肩膀,和他耳语说"老头子,我爱你。"老爷子也转过头来应声说:"我爱你!" 往日的沙哑声音都不见了。

约翰眼睁睁地看着海水淹没了一级一级的楼梯,心里面满是强烈的负疚感。他对卡米尔飓风的恐怖程度完全掉以轻心了。他老以为以前没出现过的事情,现在也不可能出现的。他紧抱着头,静声祷告着:"上帝啊,护佑我们逃过这一劫吧!"

没一会儿,一阵狂风暴袭过,整个屋顶被掀翻了而且被卷到 40 英尺外了。底层的几级楼梯台阶快崩裂了。而这时有一面墙也开始砸向这帮可怜的人们。

国家飓风中心位于佛罗里达州的迈阿密,该中心的主任罗伯特·H·辛普森评价这场卡米尔飓风为"自有记录以来,对西半球居民区攻击力最强的一场飓风。" 在受飓风侵袭的约 70 英里的中心范围内,风速几乎可达到每小时 200 英里,飓风卷起的海浪高度达 30 英尺。在海港湾的沿岸地区,飓风席卷之地一切皆无。沿线 19 467 户住家和 709 家小商铺被完全摧毁,或遭受严重破坏。海湾港一个重达 60 万加仑的油箱被飓风卷起,然后被抛向 3.5 英里外的地方。还有三艘巨型货轮被迫离开泊位,

直接被推上海岸。飓风还将巨大的电线杆和足有20英寸粗的松树刮得四分五裂，发出一阵劈劈啪啪的声响。

帕斯·克瑞斯琴镇，位于海港湾以西，已被连根拔起。有几位度假的游客在他们居住的豪华的瑞塞留公寓组织了场聚会，试图占据这个有利地形去亲眼目睹飓风的雄伟景象。但飓风就好比一个壮硕威猛的拳头，瞬间把这个公寓彻底粉碎，共26人因此而丧生。

当科夏克家的屋顶被卷走时，约翰就大声嚷道："都上楼——转移到卧室去！别忘数数孩子们。"狂风暴雨中，孩子们都互相紧缩在一起，而大人们则环绕在他们周围。科夏克奶奶哀求着说："孩子们，咱们大家一起唱支歌吧！"孩子们一个个都被吓傻了，没有一丁点的回应。奶奶自己哼了几句，然后声音就变得越来越微弱，直到最后完全没音了。

客厅的壁炉和烟囱也倒塌了，碎片横飞。而且马上大家的卧室避难所的两堵墙也要塌陷了，约翰紧急命令大伙说："都躲到电视室去！"这是整栋房子唯一远离风头的房间了。

约翰搂了搂妻子。詹妮斯心里清楚丈夫的想法。在这狂风暴雨中，她害怕得直发抖。她把两个孩子紧紧地抱在怀里，心里默默思忖着：上帝啊，给我力量吧，帮我挺过眼前的一切吧。她心中满是对这场灾难的仇恨。我们决不能输给它。

因为不能对抗飓风，老爷子科夏克心里憋着一口气，他深感懊恼。他下意识地把卧室的一个杉木箱和一个双人床垫拖到了电视室里。就在这时，一面墙倒了，提灯也熄灭了。另一面墙也在晃动着。查理斯·希尔奋力用身子抵住它，结果墙砸在他身上，他的背也受伤了。在不停的摇晃中，房子已经离开地基25英尺了。整个世界好像要四分五裂了。

"快把床垫立起来！"约翰冲着父亲喊道。"可以用它来挡挡风雨。把孩子们转移到垫子后面。我们就用头肩抵住垫子！"

先让大点的孩子扑在地板上，小点的孩子就趴他们身上，大人们就都蜷起身子，保护着所有的孩子们。地板开始倾覆了。那盒子里的四只小猫咪一溜从架子上滚了下来，没一会就在风雨中没了踪影。猫妈妈斯普奇也被狂风从书柜顶上刮走了，彻底消失不见了。那只狗把眼睛闭得紧紧的，全身缩成了一团。又有一面墙塌了。海水不住地拍击着倾覆的地板。约翰一把抓住一扇门，这门还和壁柜墙连着，他对着父亲喊道："倘若地板塌陷了，我们就把孩子们转移到这门板上。"

就在这时，风力渐渐变小了，渍水也没再上升了。后来水位开始慢慢下降。卡米尔飓风的中心已经转移了。科夏克这一大家和他们的朋友终于躲过了这一劫。

在拂晓时分，海港湾的居民逐一开始返回居住地。显现在他们面前的却是一具具遇难者的尸体——密西西比沿岸一带有130多名男女和儿童因此而落难——在海滩和公路上的一些地方满眼尽是死猫、死狗和死家畜。在没有被飓风连根拔起的树

上，挂满了些被扯成条状的破衣服，电线被刮断后，一圈圈的撒落在路面上，活像黑色的意大利面。

在回家的人流中，没有人快步走动，也没有人高声喧哗。他们都呆在原地，完全愣住了，一时谁都没办法接受眼前这恐怖的景象。他们自言自语道："我们到底要怎么办啊？""我们该去哪儿啊？"

就在这个时候，受灾地区的一些社团组织，实际上还有全美国的国民，都在尽力援助这些重灾区的人们。在天还没亮的时候，密西西比国民警卫队和一些民防联队就进驻了灾区，疏导交通，保管财物，成立联络中心，帮助整理残骸，借助卡车等将失去家园的人们集中送往难民收留中心。早上 10 点左右，救援队的流动餐车已开往受灾点，红十字志愿者和相关的工作人员也去了各个受灾点，一起去分发热饮、食物、衣物和被子等。

全国有上百个城镇为灾区进行了募捐，总额达到了数百万美元。此外，借助飞机、火车、卡车和轿车，大量的家居和医疗用品被成批地运往灾区。美国联邦政府用船装载了 440 万磅的食品送往灾区，同时临时可移动房屋也被送来了，还成立了活动教室，一并还建立了专门的机构以发放长期低息商业贷款。

就在这期间，卡米尔飓风肆虐密西西比州后，继续向北行进，开始横扫弗吉尼亚州的西部和南部，它造成的暴雨达 28 英寸以上，使得洪灾遍布，山体滑坡，直接导致 111 人丧生，最终飓风才逐渐消散在大西洋上空。

科夏克一家连同海港湾的许多其他家庭很快便开始重建家园。约翰首先让一大家人分别寄宿在两个朋友家。那位女邻居和她的两个孩子被难民中心收留了。而查理斯·希尔单独租了间屋子。直到星期二，查理斯的背伤情况才好了些，接着他就开始干劲十足地和美国海军工程修建营成员一起从事一项最艰苦卓绝的志愿工作——寻找失踪人员的尸体。在飓风过后的第三天，他下定决心不再回老家拉斯维加斯，而是"驻扎海港湾，协助当地灾民重建家园。"

飓风过去的第一周的周末，有一位朋友给科夏克一大家腾出了自己的住所。因而一家人又团聚到了一起。这场灾难给孩子们并没有遗留下什么心理阴影，虽说他们对飓风的强大破坏力仍是后怕不已，但是他们却能畅快地描述自己在那个可怕的夜晚里的感受。而詹妮斯对于这场灾难的反应则是几天后才显现出来的。在飓风过后的好几个深夜，她都会突然在凌晨 2 点醒来，然后静静地走向屋外。无意识地仰望着天空，开始轻声啜泣。

到周末的时候，约翰连同老爷子以及查理斯一起在整理着房子的残骸。这事原本是让人感到压抑痛苦的，但实际上却并非如此。在残骸中找到的每件侥幸存活的物品都显现了对这场狂暴的飓风的战斗的一个个小胜利。那只狗和猫突然一下子跳到他们面前，都还活着，就是饿得不得了。

但是大人们难免有时会觉得抑郁不安。有一次，约翰就很闷闷不乐地对父母说：

"我原想你们都能搬到这里来,我们这一大家就能团圆了,你们天天和小孩子们在一起也会高兴些,可谁能预料到竟然会发生这种事情呢。"

老爷子已经计划好等生活回归正轨后要开家金属焊接商铺。老爷子说:"过去的事情就让它过去算了,不要再想了。我们都一切从来吧。"

"您真棒,"约翰说,"这镇上好多人都那么棒。这儿的将来肯定会更美好的。"

科夏克奶奶后来回忆道:"虽然在物质上我们损失惨重,但我们大家都活了下来。这么看,我就感觉我们并没有失去什么重要的东西。"

（选自 P·约瑟夫·卡纳万所著《修辞与文学》）

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**:参见"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. **问答**

A. 课文内容问答:

1. He didn't think his family was in any real danger. His former house had been demolished by Hurricane Betsy for it only stood a few feet above sea level. His present house was 23 feet above sea level and 250 years away from the sea. He thought they would be saved here as any place else. Besides, he had talked the matter over with his father and mother and consulted his longtime friend, Charles Hill, before making his decision to stay and face the hurricane.

2. They filled bathtubs and pails in case that the water mains were damaged. Besides, they checked out the batteries for radio and flashlights and the fuel for the lantern as they might need them in the event of power failure. A generator was necessary because they could wire light bulbs to it and prepared a connection to the refrigerator.

3. They found it impossible to escape both by car and on foot. The car's electricity system had been killed by water and the water was rising inch by inch up the steps as the first－floor outside walls collapsed so that the water became too deep for them to flee on foot.

4. John Koshak felt a crushing guilt because it was he who made the final decision to stay and face the hurricane, which seemed wrong and put the family in terrible danger. Now it seemed they might all die in the hurricane.

5. Grandmother Koshak asked the children to sing because she thought this would lessen tension and boost(鼓舞) the moral(士气) of everyone.

6. A hurricane party was the one held by vacationers to enjoy the unusual and impres-

sive spectacle of the hurricane in the fancy Richelieu Apartments from where they believed they would be safe and be able to observe the process of the natural phenomenon closely with a clear and broad view. It happened that these vacationers were eventually found missing and the Richelieu Apartments ceased to be their refuge from the hurricane. Rather, the powerful hurricane smashed the apartments apart.

7. The hurricane caused great property loss, but the whole family survived the hurricane. What Grandmother Koshak meant is that human lives are important and valuable than material possessions.

8. They managed to make their life return to normal and started rebuilding their community without delay.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. Our house is 23 feet above sea level.

2. The house was built in 1915, and since then no hurricane has done any damage to it.

3. We can make the necessary preparations and survive the hurricane without much damage.

4. Water got into the generator, it stopped working. As a result all lights were put out.

5. Everyone go out through the back door and get into the cars!

6. The electrical systems in the cars had been destroyed/ruined by water.

7. As John watched the water inch its way up the steps, he felt a strong sense of guilt because he blamed himself for endangering the family by making the wrong decision not to flee inland.

8. Oh, God, please help us to get through this dangerous situation.

9. She sang a few words alone and then her voice gradually grew dimmer and stopped.

10. Janis didn't show any fear on the spot during the storm, but she revealed her feelings caused by the storm a few nights after the hurricane by getting up in the middle of the night and crying softly.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. main: a principal pipe, conduit, or line in a distributing system for water, gas, electricity, etc.

2. sit out: to stay until the end

3. report: a loud, resounding noise, especially one made by an explosion

4. douse: to put out (a light, fire, generator, etc.) quickly by pouring water over it

5. kill: to destroy, to end

6. litter: the young borne at one time by a dog, cat, or other animals which normally bear several young at a delivery

7. swath: a broad strip, originally the space or width covered with one cut of a scythe or other mowing device

8. bar: a measure in music; the notes between two vertical lines on a music sheet

9. lean – to: a shed or other small outbuilding with a sloping roof, the upper end of which rests against the wall of another building

10. break up: to disperse; be brought to an end

11. pitch in: to join and help with an activity

12. the blues: sad and depressed feelings

B.

1. pummel: f. to beat or hit with repeated blows, especially with the first

2. scud: h. to run or move swiftly

3. roar: a. a loud deep cry

4. scramble: i. to climb, crawl or clamber hurriedly

5. swipe: j. a hard, sweeping blow

6. skim: l. to throw in a gliding path

7. perish: m. to die, especially die a violent or untimely death

8. beach: m. to ground(a boat) on the beach

9. slash: d. to cut or wound with a sweeping stroke as with a knife

10. sprawl: b. to spread the limbs in a relaxed, awkward or unnatural position

11. vanish: g. to go or pass suddenly from sight

12. thrust: c. to push with sudden force

13. wrath: e. intense anger

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. Each and every plane must be checked out thoroughly before taking off.

2. The residents were firmly opposed to the construction of a waste incineration plant in their neighborhood because they were deeply concerned about the plant's emissions polluting the air.

3. Investment in ecological projects in this area mounted up to billions of yuan.

4. The dry riverbed was strewn with rocks of all sizes.

5. Although war caused great losses to this country, its cultural traditions did not perish.

6. To make space for modern high rises, many ancient buildings with ethnic cultural features had to be demolished.

7. In the earthquake the main structures of most of the poor-quality houses disintegrated.

8. His wonderful dream vanished into the air despite his hard efforts to achieve his goals.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读,思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Two

Hiroshima—the "Liveliest" City in Japan (Excerpts)

词汇注释

slip[slip] *v.* move smoothly and effortlessly in a particular direction, in a gliding manner(沿着某方向)顺畅而容易地移动

【例句】The **ship** slipped through the water. 船在水面上平稳地航行。

同义词:slide, glide

slide 指滑动、滑行,暗含加速地在光滑的表面上滑行;**slip** 常指无意中,不知不觉的滑动而不是自发的移动,有时甚至表示因为失足而跌倒的意味,如:The pen silpped from his hand.(钢笔从他手中滑落。)**glide** 指滑动、滑翔,和 **slide** 的意思十分的接近,指顺畅平稳地滑动,这种滑动无声而持久,仿佛带有一种舞蹈的特质,如:Plane glided down to the airfield.(飞机滑翔降落在机场。)

scene[siːn] *n.* place of an actual event(实际的)事发地点,现场

【例句】the **scene** of the accident, crimes, etc. 事故、犯罪等的现场

同义词:locality, setting, position

这些词都表示位置,地方。**locality** 指地方,侧重于地理方位;setting 比较强调环境,指布景或背景的意思;scene 作"现场"讲时指实际事件发生的地点;position 也指地理位置,同时也强调立场和处境。

preoccupation[priˌɔkjuˈpeiʃn] *n.* thing that a person thinks about all the time; or a matter which takes up all one's attention 心里总想着的事物

【例句】His main **preoccupation** at that time was getting enough to eat. 他那时成天盘算的是如何填饱肚子。

Kimono[ki'məunəu] *n.* long loose Japanese robe with wide sleeves, worn with a sash (part of the traditional costume of Japanese men and women)和服(日式传统长袍)

oblivious[ə'bliviəs] *adj.* (usually with of or to) unaware of or not noticing sth. 未察觉的,忘记的,不注意的

【例句】The pain made him **oblivious** of the surroundings. 疼痛让他对周围事物失去了知觉。

同义词:forgetful, ignorant, insensitive

oblivious 指不察觉的,忘却的,强调全神贯注于某一特定事情而忘了周围的环境背景等;**forgetful** 意指健忘的,疏忽的,指因为自身的原因(由于没有注意,粗心大意等)而忘记了;**ignorant** 指不知道的,侧重指消息不灵而无知;**insensitive** 指昏迷不醒而失去知觉的。

bob[bɔb] *v.* (up and down) move or act quickly up and down automatically (esp. on water) (机械地)(尤指在水上)上下疾动

【例句】Toy boats **bob** up and down on the waves. 玩具船在水波上颠簸。

ritual['ritjuəl] *adj.* of or done as a series of rites or forms connected with a religious or some other ceremony(宗教等仪式程序的)仪式,礼节的

【例句】a **ritual** dance 仪式上的舞蹈

ritual phrases of greeting 例行的客套话

formula['fɔːmjulə] *n.* fixed arrangement of words (esp. used on social, legal or ceremonial occasions) 套语,惯用语(尤指社交、法律场合或仪式上使用的)

【例句】I know the **formula** for addressing bishops. 我知道对主教的习惯称呼。

facade[fə'sɑːd] *n.* front or face of building towards a street or open place(建筑物)的表面、门面(向着街道或露天);(fig.) outward appearance (esp. a deceptive one) (尤指虚伪的)外表

【例句】Telephones hung on the **facades** of the stall provide great convenience to passers-by. 悬挂在售货亭门面前的电话给路人提供了很大的方便。

Squalor and poverty lay behind the city's glittering **facade**. 这城市表面繁华,背后却肮脏和贫困。

pop[pɔp] *v.* burst (open) with a short, sharp, slightly explosive sound 发出短促清脆的爆破声

【例句】Champagne corks were **popping** (away) throughout the celebrations. 庆祝会上开香槟酒瓶塞的砰砰声不绝于耳。

grin[grin] *v.* smile broadly as to show teeth (originally expressing amusement, foolish satisfaction or contempt, etc.)露齿而笑(表示高兴,愚蠢的满足,轻蔑等);咧着嘴笑 (in current English) imply naive cheerfulness(在现代英语中)表示天真无邪的快乐

【例句】He **grinned** at me as if sharing a secret joke. 他朝我咧嘴一笑,好像彼此

会心领略一个笑话。

同义词:laugh, smile

grin 指露齿而笑,有时指傻笑,但是不发出声音;**laugh** 指大笑,通常爆发出笑声;**smile** 一词最常用,指不出声的微笑,可以表示开心、满意、喜爱等。

反义词:frown

rear[ˈriːə]　*n.* the back part 后面,后部

【例句】a kitchen in the **rear** of the house 在房子后部的厨房

rear-view mirror(汽车的)后视镜

martyr[ˈmɑːtə]　*v.* kill sb. or make sb. suffer greatly 使(某人)殉难,处死(某人)使之成为殉道者

【例句】He was **martyred** by the Romans. 他被罗马人处死而成为殉道者。

n. a person who is killed or made to suffer greatly because of his (esp. religious) beliefs 烈士,殉道者

lurch[ləːtʃ]　*v.* roll or sway suddenly forward or to one side 突然向前或侧面倾斜,跌跌撞撞

【例句】a drunken man **lurching** along the street 沿街踉跄而行的醉汉

同义词:stagger, sway

stagger 指蹒跚、摇晃,看上去似乎要跌倒的样子;**sway** 指从一边到另一边摆动,强调左右摇晃;**lurch** 指东倒西歪地向前。

twist[twist]　*n.* act of turning (sth.) round (changing the direction)旋转(改变方向)

【例句】With a violent **twist**, he wrenched off the handle. 他猛力一扭,将把手拧了下来。

v. turn (sth.) round; revolve

【例句】I **twisted** my head round to reverse the car. 我扭过头去把汽车向后倒。

screech[skriːtʃ]　*v.* give a harsh, piercing, high-pitched sound or cry 发出尖锐刺耳的声音,尖叫

【例句】The brakes **screeched** as the car stopped. 汽车停下时刹车发出尖利的声音。

halt[hɔːlt]　*n.* temporary stop; interruption of progress 暂停,停顿

【例句】Work came to a **halt** when the machine broke down. 机器出了毛病,工作便停顿下来了。

同义词:quit, desist, cease

desist 指由于反对势力阻止继续进行或由于不可克服的障碍而停止;**quit** 指一种随意地、自愿地或达成一致意见地停止某项工作或努力;**cease** 尤指完成、中止某种状态或活动;**halt** 指突然地、有决定性地中止某种活动,通常指有紧急决定性的动作。

intermezzo[ˌintə(ː)ˈmetzəu] *n.* (music) a short, light dramatic, musical or ballet entertainment to be played between the acts of a drama or an opera(音乐术语)幕间插曲,间奏曲

gigantic[dʒaiˈgæntik] *adj.* of very great size or extent; immense and colossal 巨大的,庞大的

【例句】a problem of **gigantic** proportions 重大的问题

同义词:big, huge, colossal, immense

这一组词都是"巨大的,大的"意思。**big** 是五个词中最普通的词,表示在体积、面积、范围或程度强度方面大;**huge** 指极大的,巨大的,着重指数量上或体积上的庞大;**colossal** 强调远远超过正常水平的一种大或强的程度;**immense** 也指巨大、广大的意思,含有一种无限的意味在里面,侧重于程度很高乃至无穷无尽;**gigantic** 指程度或形状大小上的大。

usher[ˈʌʃə] *n.* an official doorkeeper(政府官方的)门房,传达员

heave[hiːv] *n.* utter (a sigh, groan, etc.) with effort 发出(叹息,呻吟声等)

【例句】After finishing all assignments, she **heaves** a sigh of relief. 完成了所有的任务后,她如释重负地舒了一口气。

embankment[imˈbæŋkmənt] *n.* a raised bank built to confine a river or canal (made to keep water back or to carry a railway or road over low ground)(河流或运河的)防水堤,堤岸,(铁路或公路的)路堤

【例句】the Thames **Embankment** 泰晤士河的河堤

barge[bɑːdʒ] *n.* a large flat-bottomed boat for carrying goods or people on rivers or canals 驳船(河流、运河等中载客或运货的)大型平底船

moor[muə] *v.* attach (a boat, ship, etc.) to a fixed object or the land with a rope or an anchor, etc. 使(船等)停泊

【例句】We **moored** alongside the quay. 我们靠码头停泊。

arresting[əˈrestiŋ] *adj.* striking, attracting and holding the attention 引人注意的,显著的

【例句】an **arresting** smile 引人注目的微笑

spectacle[ˈspektəkl] *n.* impressive, remarkable or interesting sight, view or scene 精彩的、非凡的或有趣的情景

【例句】The sunrise seen from high in the mountains was a tremendous **spectacle**. 从山上居高远望,日出景象蔚为奇观。

adrift [əˈdrift] *adj.* (esp. of a boat) afloat without control, at the mercy of wind and sea; floating freely without being steered 漂浮的;(随风或水流)不受控制而随意漂流的

【例句】The survivors were **adrift** on a raft for six days. 幸存者在木筏上漂流了六天。

beige[beiʒ] *adj.* brownish grey or grayish yellow (the color of sandstone) 灰褐色的，米黄色的（砂岩的颜色）

incessant[in'sesnt] *adj.* not stopping, continuous 不停的，连续不断的

【例句】a week of almost **incessant** rain 雨差不多没有停过的一个星期

Her **incessant** complaint makes him confused. 她不停的抱怨使他有点混淆不清。

同义词：continuous, non-stop, successive

continuous 指持续的、持久的，常常指中间没有停顿；**non-stop** 一般指火车等交通工具中途不停直达的；**successive** 强调一个接一个的，一连串的；**incessant** 指不停的、不断的，含有不曾停歇和络绎不绝的意味。

stunning['stʌniŋ] *adj.* (infml) impressive, remarkably attractive 极其漂亮的，出色的

【例句】You look **stunning** in your new suit. 你穿着这套新衣服真漂亮。

同义词：splendid

porcelain['pɔːslin, -lein] *n.* hard white translucent material made from china (used for making cups, plates, ornaments, etc.) 瓷（通常做成杯子、盘子、装饰品等）

【例句】a **porcelain** figure 瓷像

tread[tred] *v.* to move on foot, walk or step 踩踏，行走

【例句】She was **treading** lightly so as not to wake the baby. 她步子很轻以免惊醒孩子。

cautious ['kɔːʃəs] *adj.* careful to avoid danger, harm 小心的，谨慎的（为避免危险，伤害等）

【例句】My mother always demands me to be **cautious** about spending money. 我母亲总要求我用钱细心谨慎。

同义词：careful, scrupulous

这三个词都用来描述人们在一般行为中或履行职责时所表现出的"小心谨慎"。**careful** 是最普通的一个词，强调做事小心谨慎，以免出现差错；**cautious** 强调极为谨慎，对可能出现的危险进行预测，严防由于不慎而遭到危险或失败；**scrupulous** 基于伦理、逻辑、道德等标准而努力做到仔细认真，有"按良心办事，按道德办事"的含义。

twinge[twindʒ] *n.* a short sudden spasm of pain（一阵）剧痛、刺痛 (fig.) a strong sudden feeling (usu. unpleasant) of pain, shame, remorse, etc. 一阵感觉上的（通常指不快的）刺痛，剧痛（与后悔、内疚、悔恨等有关）

【例句】an occasional **twinge** of rheumatism 一阵突发的风湿痛

A **twinge** of fear attacked him. 一阵恐惧袭来，令他十分难受。

同义词：pain

pain 是一个一般用词，指身体或心灵上的疼痛或不适，但主要指肉体上的疼痛；**twinge** 指刺痛、阵痛，强调疼痛带来一种难受的感觉。

prospect['prɔspekt] （of sth. /doing sth. ） ***n.*** reasonable hope that sth. will happen, expectation（有根据的）希望，期望

【例句】I see little **prospect** of an improvement in his condition. 我看他的情况没有什么改进的希望。

bombardment[bɔm'ba:dmənt] ***n.*** attacking（a place）with bombs or shells（esp. from big guns）轰炸，炮轰

【例句】There was **bombardment** on enemy's positions before our infantry attacked. 炮轰敌军阵地后，我步兵开始进攻。

slay[slei] ***v.***（literary）kill or murder（esp. an enemy）in a violent way（文学用语）杀，残杀（尤指对敌人）

【例句】Soldiers **slain** in battles sacrifice their precious lives to our country. 在战斗中被杀害的士兵们将自己宝贵的生命献给了祖国。

linger['liŋgə] ***v.*** remain in existence although becoming weaker, be slow in dying 苟延残喘，历久犹存

【例句】Though being desperately ill he could **linger** on for months. 他虽病入膏肓，却尚能苟延数月。

agony['ægəni] ***n.*** great mental or physical pain or suffering 极度痛苦

【例句】The wounded man was in **agony**. 那受伤的人极度痛苦。

inhibited[in'hibitid] ***adj.***（of people）feeling restrained, having to suppress one's emotion（指人）拘谨的，必须压制感情的

【例句】She is too **inhibited** to laugh at jokes about sex. 她听到有关性的笑话时十分拘谨，笑不出来。

同义词：abstained, refrained, restrained

abstained 指自动克制、戒绝，常和 from 连用，强调以意志力克制，也指自动戒除某种所欲或有所害的东西；**refrained** 指抑制的，尤指暂时对一种行动或冲动的抑制；**restrained** 约束的、克制的，为一般常用词，近似 controlled；**inhibited** 抑制的、约束的，指对不正常欲望的冲动、抑制的感觉。

spinal['spainl] ***adj.*** of or relating to the spine or backbone 脊柱的，与脊柱相关的

【例句】a **spinal** injury 脊柱受伤

agitated ['ædʒiteitid] ***adj.*** disturbed, upset and troubled 焦虑的，不安的，烦躁的

【例句】Don't get more **agitated**！不要那么激动！

renown[ri'naun] ***n.***（fml）fame or distinction 名望，声誉

【例句】an artist of great **renown** 极有名望的艺术家

同义词：renowned, famous, notorious

这三个词都指众所周知的人或事。**famous** 是其中最一般、最随便、感情色彩最弱的一个词，它简单笼统地指得到很多人注意的事物而不管什么原因造成这样；**renowned** 和 **notorious** 带有一定的感情色彩：**renowned** 表明由于取得成就而得到广泛

的承认；**notorious** 指那些因为他们的令人讨厌的或是唐突荒诞的举动而出名的人或事，具有贬损的意思。

oyster[ˈɔistə] ***n.*** shell fish (used as food and usually eaten uncooked), some types of which produce pearls inside their shell 牡蛎

【例句】fresh **oyster** 新鲜的牡蛎

assent[əˈsent] ***n.*** an acceptance (of a statement) as true; agreement 同意，赞成（关于某个观点）

【例句】The new bill passed by parliament has received the royal **assent**. 议会所通过的新法案已获国王批准。

同义词：approval, consent, agreement

consent 同意或赞成某人的申请或建议，但这种同意又往往含有考虑情意，向对方表示让步的意味；**agreement** 是一般用语，往往指原先意见有分歧，经过商讨后达到意见一致，有时也可以用来代替 assent 和 consent，表示同意某项提议、意见、决议等；**approval** 指官方正式批准所赞同的事物或长辈对晚辈的请求和意见表示同意等。

jolt[dʒəult] ***v.*** shake up or jar (as with a bumpy ride or sharp blow) 震动，颠簸（比如强烈的击打或颠簸着移动等）(*fig.*) to make sb. act by giving him a sudden shock 使某人受到震惊（而采取行动）

【例句】The old bus **jolted** along a rough track. 旧公共汽车沿着凹凸不平的小路颠簸而行。

He was **jolted** out of his lethargy and into action when he realized he had only a short time to finish the article. 他意识到须在很短的时间就把文章写完，立即振作精神写起来。

n. (esp. single) sudden bump or shake（尤作单数）震动，摇晃 (fig.) surprise, shock 惊奇，震惊

【例句】The car stopped with a **jolt**. 车停止时震动了一下。

The news of the accident gave her an unpleasant **jolt**. 她听到出事的消息吃了一惊。

reverie[ˈrevəri] ***n.*** (state of) being absorbed in dreamlike contemplation; dreamy thinking (esp. of agreeable things) 幻想，空想，遐想（特别是对美好的事物）

【例句】She fell into a **reverie** about her childhood. 她沉浸在对童年往事的遐思中。

同义词：daydream

daydream 指白日梦，通常含有不可能实现和讽刺的意味；**reverie** 指沉迷于快乐或梦幻的思想的情况。

heinous[ˈheinəs] ***adj.*** (literary) wicked in a high degree, atrocious（文学用语）极凶恶的，极坏的

【例句】a **heinous** criminal 十恶不赦的罪犯

同义词：abominable, atrocious

这三个词都有“讨厌的、可恶的”意思。**abominable** 是正式用语，表示憎恶的，讨厌的意思，尤其指令人非常地不愉快，很糟糕；**atrocious** 指恶毒的，残忍的，强调残暴、残酷程度和造成的伤害很恶劣；**heinous** 指极其凶恶的，强调穷凶极恶，罪行无法饶恕的意味。

impact[ˈimpækt]　*n.* hitting of one object against another 撞击，冲击（fig.）strong impression or effect on sb. / sth.（对某人/某事物的）强烈印象或巨大影响

【例句】Her speech made a tremendous **impact** on everyone. 她的演说对大家的影响很大。

v. have an effect on sth. 对某事物有影响

同义词：见第一课“词汇注释”的 impinge

cataclysm[ˈkætəklizəm]　*n.* a violent and sudden upheaval (esp. a serious flood, an earthquake or war), disaster 突发的剧烈变动或灾难（如洪水，地震或战争）

同义词：disaster, calamity, catastrophe

这三个词都指“灾难，灾祸”的意思。**cataclysm** 指突然发生的剧烈变动或灾难，如洪水、地震等，并强调巨大的破坏和损失，几乎不用于个人的不幸灾祸；**disaster** 是一个一般用词，指“不可预测的意外事件所造成的灾难或不幸”，可指个人或集体的各种可能的不幸灾祸，如：These difficulties are caused by natural disasters.（这些困难都是由自然灾害造成的。），**disaster** 有时候也可以指失败；**calamity** 所表示的灾难的程度较 **disaster** 要严重，它通常指“巨大而严重的不幸或灾难”，比 disaster 有更多抽象或主观的成分，如：The attack on Pearl Harbor was a crushing calamity. [偷袭珍珠港（对美军来说）是一场毁灭性的灾难。] **catastrophe** 指突如其来的、极严重的大灾难或大灾祸，强调灾难的可怕性和突然性，含“最终结局无法补偿”之意，既指个人的也指集体的灾难与不幸，如：The earthquake is a terrible catastrophe.（这次地震是一场可怕的灾难。）

反义词：benefit, blessing, comfort, success

preserve[priˈzəːv]　*v.* keep or maintain (sth.) in an unchanged or perfect condition 保护，维护

【例句】Wax polish **preserves** wood and leather. 上光蜡可以保护木料和皮革。

同义词：reserve, conserve

conserve 指保持安全或完好，防止受到损失或损害；**reserve** 指保存、储备（食物），以备后用；**preserve** 指保持某物长时期的良好状态，或保持原状。

erect[iˈrekt]　*v.* construct, put up 建造，设立

【例句】A statue was **erected** to Queen Victoria. 为纪念维多利亚女王建起了一座雕像。

同义词：build, establish

build 指建筑，建造房屋等；**establish** 也指建立、建造，尤指设立开始某组织或某项活

动;**erect** 侧重指搭起、竖起,尤指建立高大而直立的物体,比如旗杆,帐篷等。

demolish[diˈmɔliʃ] *v.* pull down or tear down 拆毁,拆除,毁坏 (fig.) destroy (a theory, etc.)推翻,驳倒(理论等)

【例句】They have **demolished** the slum district. 贫民区已拆除。

Her article brilliantly **demolishes** his argument. 她的文章精辟地驳倒了他的论点。

同义词:destroy, ruin

destroy 指摧毁、消灭、歼灭;ruin 指毁坏,尤指完好的建筑被损毁或人的一生被毁了;**demolish** 和 **destroy**,**ruin** 的意思相近,但是指拆毁(尤指巨大的东西),推翻,拆除。

gay [gei] *adj.* happy and full of fun; light-hearted 快乐的,欢快的

【例句】The streets look **gay** with bright flags and coloured lights. 街上旗帜鲜艳,彩灯缤纷,显出一派欢乐景象。

同义词:happiness, delight, joy

happiness 是一种积极而肯定的情感或意识,是平稳合理的,多半就心理精神方面而言;**delight** 是较为短暂的快乐,而且大多数是由某事物或人物引起的,不一定完全指好的;**joy** 在程度上比 **happiness** 强一些,也较偏于感情方面;**gay** 指一种轻松愉快的感觉,强调兴致很高昂。

formaldehyde[fɔːˈmældiˌhaid] *n.* (chemical) a strong-smelling colourless gas, HCHO, used as a preservative and disinfectant when dissolved in water(化学名词)甲醛

ether[ˈiːθə] *n.* (chemical) a colourless liquid made from alcohol, used in industry as a solvent to dissolve fats, etc. and medically as an anesthetic(化学名词)醚,乙醚

stretcher [ˈstretʃə] *n.* framework of poles and canvas for carrying a sick or injured person (in a lying position) 担架(病人通常躺在上面)

【例句】An ambulance officer brought a **stretcher** for the injured woman. 救护车里的一位工作人员将受伤的女人送上担架。

nickel[ˈnikl] *n.* (chemical) a hard silver-white metal often used in alloys(化学名词)镍

【例句】**nickel**-plated 镀镍的

spare[spɛə] *v.* not affect, refrain from hurting, harming or destroying (sb./sth), show mercy to 饶恕,宽恕,赦免

【例句】They killed the men but **spared** the children. 他们把男人都杀了,但放过了孩子。

同义词:forgive, pardon, release

forgive 和 **pardon** 都指原谅和宽恕,可以指原谅他人的过错,尤其是别人做了伤害自己事情的时候;**release** 指释放、解放、豁免,指从某种束缚或痛苦中解放出来;**spare** 本意指抽出时间或剩余、匀出来,喻义指不伤害,赦免、饶恕,表示幸运地没有遭受灾难或不幸。

humiliate[hju(:)'milieit] *v.* hurt the pride or dignity of, make sb. feel ashamed or disgraced 使丧失尊严或自尊,使(某人)感到羞耻或不光彩

【例句】He felt **humiliated** by the scornful remarks. 他听到那些嘲讽的话而感到屈辱。

同义词:abase, disgrace, humiliate, degrade, humble

五个词都表示贬抑,屈辱的意思。**abase** 侧重于使……谦卑的意味,常用来表示某人自谦;**disgrace** 指不光彩的,蒙羞的,作为名词使用的情况较多;**degrade** 使降级,贬黜,可指降级,或指由于不道德的行为,或有损人格的丢脸行为而被别人看不起;**humble** 降低(身份、地位等),使谦卑,指自感低卑或藐视自己;**humiliate** 羞辱,使丢脸,可以指在他人面前遭受奚落或羞辱而内心感到痛苦。

encounter[in'kauntə] *v.* (fml) meet with; face 遇见,碰到

【例句】I **encountered** many difficulties when I first started this job. 我开始做这项工作的时候,遇到许多困难。

同义词:meet

两个词都指遇见,遇到,但 **encounter** 比 **meet** 要正式得多,有时更强调遇到冲突,困难等,指矛盾的双方相遇;**meet** 则含有遇到、聚会、相聚的意味。

genetic[dʒi'netik] *adj.* of or relating to genes 基因的,遗传的

【例句】**genetic** information 遗传信息

earthly['ə:θli] *adj.* worldly as opposed to spiritual 现世的,尘世的

【例句】**earthly** joys 尘世的享乐

同义词:secular, materialistic

earthly 指现世的,尘世的(享乐,享受等);**secular** 指世俗的,也指政府的(使用此意时与"教会的"相对);**materialistic** 指物质的,唯物的,更强调物质方面的因素。

短语表达

have a lump in one's throat: a feeling of pressure in one's throat (cause by repressed emotion as love, sadness, etc.) 骨鲠在喉,哽咽(因压制激动的情绪所致,如爱、悲伤等)

【例句】Many British people **had a lump in their throat** on hearing the death of Dianna. 许多英国人在听到黛安娜王妃的死讯时骨鲠在喉。

on one's mind: occupying one's thoughts (esp. as a source of worry) 占领某人的思绪,一直在想的(尤指忧虑的来源)

【例句】The thought that is always **on my mind** is whether to go broad or not. 我一直在思考的一个问题是究竟要不要出国。

rub shoulders with: (infml) meet and mix with (people)与(人们)联系,交往

【例句】The foreign visitors said that they would like to **rub shoulders with** ordinary Chinese people. 那些外国游客们说他们愿意与中国老百姓有来往。

set off: start (a journey, race, etc.) 开始(旅行,赛跑等)

【例句】If you want to catch that train we'd better **set off** for the station immediately. 你要是想赶上那班火车,咱们就最好马上动身去火车站。

flash by/along/past/through: move very quickly in the specified direction 急速向某方向运动

【例句】The train **flashed by** at high speed 火车疾驰而过。

sink in: (of liquids) go down into another substance; be absorbed (指液体)渗入,被吸收 (fig.) (of words, etc.) be fully absorbed or understood; penetrate esp. gradually (指话语等) 完全理解

【例句】Rub the cream on your skin and let it **sink in**. 把这种软膏搽在皮肤上,让它渗进去。

The scale of the tragedy gradually **sank in**. 这一悲惨事件涉及的范围已逐渐完全清楚了。

by trade: way of making a living, esp. a job that involves making sth.; occupation 以……为谋生之道(尤指以制造某物为业)

【例句】be a butcher, carpenter, tailor, etc. **by trade** 做肉商、木匠、裁缝等

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

(参见教材课文后 Notes)

Ⅱ. 全文概述

In this excerpt, the author narrates an experience of his journey in Hiroshima and what he has seen and felt and understood there. This piece starts with his arrival at Hiroshima. Before having a real touch with the martyred city, the author's mind was occupied with a superficial impression that people there were sad and would remember forever the atomic cataclysm which happened half a century ago. As he walks out of the station, the attentive author notices some phenomenon of co-existence of Eastern and Western culture in Japan, such as the different clothing styles and traditional Japanese houses "adrift amid beige concrete skyscrapers". The purpose of his journey is to interview the mayor of Hiroshima. The whole process of meeting with the mayor is described humorously and comically mainly because foreigners are not accustomed to old Japanese customs. Different from the thought

which has pre-occupied the author before, the mayor and ordinary people of Hiroshima do not want to mention the bomb and misery any more. At first the author is puzzled why they are willing to hide or forget the history, especially the painful and suffering one. But after a talk with an old atomic victim, he begins to get a deeper understanding of their souls——the psychological scars in their mind hurt most and as an optimistic nation the Japanese want to expect the good future rather than the miserable past.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This text is a piece of narration. It takes the changes of the author's thoughts and feelings as the order of the whole excerpt. The author tells us his experience of his journey in Hiroshima and what he has seen and felt and understood there. The most-used pattern of narration is narrating and describing. Apart from the main clue of the author's thoughts and feelings, he also spices this piece with some typical description of the characteristics of the Japanese nation, and at the same time he emphasizes the co-existence and struggle of the Eastern and Western culture. As the comment in narration is always its golden-stone which directly gives opinion and judgment of the narrated content, this text is no exception. At the end of this excerpt, the author makes some comments which echo with the title, thus makes the whole passage a smooth and natural entirety.

这是一篇记叙文。文章以作者的思想感情变化为顺序,叙述了作者的广岛采访之行以及所闻所见所感。记叙文中常用的表达方式是叙述和描写。本文除了作者思想感情变化这一主线,还穿插了很多对日本民族特色的描写,同时突出了日本东方西方文化的斗争和共存。正如记叙文中的议论往往是文章的点睛之笔。这种议论是对所叙内容直接表达见解或做出判断,本文也不例外。文章结尾与题目相互呼应,使整篇文章浑然一体,结尾自然而恰到好处。

Anti-climax, as used in the text, states one's thoughts in a descending order of significance or intensity from strong to weak, from weighty to light. It has achieved a humorous or surprised or even a sarcastic effect when the mayor was introducing his city to the visitors, who were expecting his answer to have something to do with the atom bomb, but who ironically heard "Oysters" in the end.

渐降在重要性和强烈程度上以一种降序排列的方式陈述。当市长向游客介绍他的城市时没有按人们期待的介绍有关的原子弹爆炸的情况,反而说到"蛤蜊",这个渐降的使用取得了非常幽默、令人惊奇或甚至讽刺的效果。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Hiroshima—the "Liveliest" City in Japan:题目中作者将 liveliest 一词用引号标明, 在他看来,人们将一个被原子弹轰炸过的城市描述为"活力无限"是一种莫大的讽刺。作者这里运用了 irony(反讽)或 sarcasm(讽刺)的修辞手法。

2. That must be ... in Hiroshima station: That should be what the man who is wearing

Japanese stationmaster's uniform shouted, as the fastest train in the world stopped smoothly in Hiroshima Station. 句中 must 表达了一种具有很大可能性的意味，因为作者听不懂日语，并不完全确定站长到底在说什么。in 与衣物搭配时表示"穿着"的意思，slip to 的解释见"词汇注释"。

3. And secondly ... official might say: And secondly because I was choked with emotion and I was occupied with some sad thoughts which had no connection with what the stationmaster might say.

4. The very act of ... I'd previously taken: The fact that I was now in Hiroshima (stepping on its soil, breathing its air) was in itself a much more exciting experience for me than any trip I had taken or any reporting work I had done in the past. 本句是一个多重复合句，主语部分是 the very act，谓语是 was for me a far greater adventure；in breathing the air of Hiroshima 作状语，修饰前面的动名词 stepping；than 后面连接一个比较状语从句。句中的 very 作形容词用，表示事物本身而非其他，起强调作用；stepping on this soil 指"踏上广岛的土地"，来到广岛。adventure 在句中表示一次非同寻常的旅程或令人激动、值得纪念的经历。

5. Was I not at the scene of the crime?: I was now at the place where the first A-bomb was dropped.（难道我不是身处在犯罪的现场吗？）本句使用了 rhetorical question（反问）的修辞手法。这种问句通常不需要给予回答，而只是为了加深读者的印象，达到特定的修辞效果。

6. The Japanese crowd ... that I had: The Japanese crowd did not seem to have the same sad thoughts as me judging by appearances. 作者使用 appear to 表示作者单从外观判断并不完全确定的态度。在同义词 seem，look，appear 中，三者都表示看，看到：seem 表示个人的看法建立在能有力说明判断的迹象和证据上；look 暗含看法来自于视觉上的印象；appear 有 look 的含义在里面，但有时含有由于视觉的假想而造成的错误、歪曲印象的意味。

7. Little girls ... in western dress: Young girls and aged ladies in traditional Japanese clothes meet and mix with young boys, girls and women who are wearing western style clothes. 本句描写了在日本人们衣饰上传统风格与西方现代风格并存的特色和情景，从衣着方面折射了日本东方文化与西方文化共同存在和发展的现象。

8. Serious looking men ... "Tomo aligato gozayimas": Men with serious expressions spoke to each other as if they were so absorbed in their conversation that they seemed not to pay any attention to the crowds around them. And they bowed repeatedly as they said the regularly-used greeting: "Thank you very much." 句中的 formula of gratitude and respect 意为日常交际客套用语。Tomo aligato gozayimas 是日语，意思是 Thank you very much.

9. "Hi! Hi!" said ... of a traveler: As soon as the taxi driver saw a traveler, he immediately opened the door and said: "Hi! Hi!" cab driver 是美国说法，相当于英国用法的 taxi driver。本文中 sidewalk 和 store 等词汇都是美国用语。

10. The tall buildings ... of the wheel: The high buildings passed swiftly and when the driver made abrupt changes of direction, we sometimes swung to one side, sometimes to other side in response to the swaying motion of the car. martyred city 意为"曾遭不幸、劫难的城市",这里指广岛 1945 年遭受过原子弹的袭击。flash by 指"飞快地掠过,一闪而过"。

11. Just as I ... to ask the way: When I was starting to think that the journey was long, the taxi stopped with a harsh piercing sound, and the driver got out and went to a policeman to ask the direction (to the City Hall). 本句和接下来的一句都形象描述了日本城市中一个有意思的现象:出租车司机因为对城市不了解,不知道行车路线,可为了不丢面子还是硬着头皮带着旅客在市区打转,到后来只有向警察求助。

12. As in Tokyo ... take them to find it: As in Tokyo, taxi drivers in Hiroshima often do not know much of their city. But in order to keep up dignity before foreigners, they will not confess that they have no idea about the destination and will agree to go where they are asked to without caring how long it may take them to find it. 本句虽然很长,但实际是一个简单句。主语是 taxi drivers,谓语是 know little of ... ,will not admit ... and will accept ... 三个并列成分。

13. At last this intermezzo ... the gigantic City Hall: At last this entertainment ended and I suddenly discovered that I was in front of the gigantic City Hall. 本句中的 intermezzo 本意指在戏剧或歌剧幕间简短、轻快的插曲或间奏,这里使用的是比喻义,指在两件事情之间占用时间的任何事物。在文中具体指的是在作者到达广岛之后和会见市长之前乘坐计程车这件事。I find myself 用在句中表示"突然间,出乎预料"的意思,突然间就来到了市政厅门口。

14. The usher bowed ... to my request for an interview: The doorkeeper bowed deeply and uttered a long sigh, almost like playing music, when I gave him to see the invitation from the mayor which is an answer to my request for an interview. 句中门房深深叹了一口长气(heave a long, musical sigh)可能是因为在作者之前已经有很多人弄错地方来到这里。

15. The rather arresting ... the Kimono and the miniskirt: The rather striking picture of traditional Japan floating houses among high modern buildings represents the constant struggle between old traditional culture and new Western style. 本句中 Kimono 和 miniskirt 是一种象征(symbol),分别象征着旧与新、或东方和西方;在修辞手法上,它是一个借代(metonymy)。constant struggle 其实是东方传统文化与西方现代文化间的斗争,日本小屋漂浮在摩天大楼之间这一景象也说明了这一点。

16. At the door to ... to remove my shoes: At the door of the restaurant, an attractive woman with a fair delicate complexion and traditional Kimono asked me to take off my shoes. 由曼妙的日本传统女子开关古朴的店门请客人脱鞋进屋(在日本,进室内拖鞋是约定俗成的)具有浓郁的日本风情。从后文看来,作者及其他西方客人会对这一习

惯感到窘迫不安。

17. This done, I entered ... in my socks: After taking off my shoes, I entered one of the low-ceilinged rooms of the adrift houses. I was not accustomed to walking in my socks so I walked carefully on the soft tatami matting, suffering from a strong feeing of shame when I thought of the prospect of meeting the mayor of Hiroshima in my socks. This done 是独立主格结构，在句中作时间状语，相当于 After ... was done。作者 treading cautiously 是因为不习惯穿着袜子走在榻榻米草垫上，害怕有危险或不愉快的事情发生。at the prospect of 指 at the expectation of（期待，期望）的意思。

18. Quite unexpectedly, the strange ... to die in slow agony: Quite out of the expectation, I was again overcome by a guilty conscience as I had been when I first arrived at the station. And the thought that I now stood on the site of the first atomic bombardment once again overwhelmed me. Here large numbers of people had been killed in a second; while another large plenty of people died slowly and in great pain. 本句是一个很复杂的并列复合句，由 and 连接两个分句。第一个分句中包含了一个由 which 引导的定语从句 which had overwhelmed me at the station，两个分句中首先包含一个同位语从句 that I now stood ... atomic bombardment，修饰其同位语 thought，其后面跟着两个 where 引导的定语从句，都用来修饰 the site of the first atomic bombardment。

19. After three days ... extraordinarily flexible: After three days in Japan, one gets quite used to bowing to people as a ritual to show gratitude.（只要在日本呆上三天，人的脊椎骨就会变得特别柔韧灵活。）本句中作者故意使用了几个专业性很强的词语，如：spinal，column，取得了一种幽默、喜剧性的效果，西方人在日本入乡随俗的滑稽形象跃然纸上。

20. There were fresh ... Hiroshima was repeated: The mayor mentioned Hiroshima repeatedly and the faces of foreigners (including the author) became more and more serious. each time 在这里引导一个状语从句，相当于 when the name Hiroshima was repeated。文中广岛市长反复提到"广岛"二字，而对于作者这种心里有犯罪愧疚感的西方人而言每次"广岛"名字的提及都会加重焦虑与不安，这也正是其他西方客人脸色越来越沉重的原因。

21. Seldom has a city ... for its oysters: Seldom has a city become so world famous and I am glad to welcome everyone to Hiroshima because Hiroshima was famous for its oysters. 本句的开头 Seldom has a city 是常见的倒装句结构，与 seldom 用法相同的还有：rarely, never, little, not only ... but also, not until 等，以这些副词开头的句子，采用倒装语序，将谓语提到主语之前，起强调的作用。... I am proud and happy to welcome ... for its oysters 是一种"渐降"（anti-climax）的修辞手法，在重要性和强烈程度上以一种降序排列的方式陈述，通常为了达到幽默、惊奇或讽刺的效果。本句中市长先说广岛久负盛名，在场者都以为市长要说到原子弹问题，结果市长突然说是因为牡蛎，实在出人意料。市长大谈牡蛎而只字不提原子弹带来的灾难，是因为他不想使在场

的美国人感到难堪，同时也是希望人们忘掉过去的悲剧。

22. I was just about to ... out of my sad reverie: I was on the point of showing my agreement by nodding when I suddenly realized what he meant. His words shocked me out of my sad dreamy thinking.（我正准备点头对市长的话表示赞同，突然我听明白了刚才这句话最末几个词的意思，我也就随之从忧愁伤感的梦境中清醒过来。）

23. humanity's most heinous crime: the most wicked crime mankind has ever committed（人类有史以来犯下的最大罪恶）。这里使用的是夸张（hyperbole）的修辞手法，指美国在广岛投放原子弹这件事件，造成生灵涂炭，殃及广大无辜百姓。

24. No one talks ... lived through it: No one talks about it any longer, and no one wants to talk about it, especially the people who were born here or who survived from it.（没有人再去说了，谁都不愿意再提了，尤其是那些在这里出生的人或是亲身经历的人。）本句是一个省略句，语言简洁凝练。句中的 it 指代前句中的 the atomic cataclysm。live through 意为 experience and survive（经历、劫后余生）的意思。

25. I tell you this because I am almost an old man. 本句暗含的意思是我不在乎让人们知道当原子弹爆炸时我在当时在广岛（因为我时日已经不多了）。如果换了别人，也许他们会隐瞒这一事实。

26. There are two different ... at the point of impact: There are two kinds of thoughts in this city, one that would like to maintain and protect the signs of destruction caused by the bomb, and the other that would like to wipe out everything, even the monument that was constructed at the exact point over where the bomb exploded.（在这个牡蛎之城，有两派看法，一派主张保留轰炸的遗迹，另一派主张消除一切痕迹，甚至连在轰炸中心竖立的纪念碑也拆掉。）

27. If you write about ... and burns: If you write about this city, remember to say that it is the most pleasure-loving city in Japan, even if many of the town's people still carry the visible and invisible scars.（假如您要描写这座城市的话，别忘了一定要写这是日本最快乐的城市，即使这里许多人身上还带着暗伤和灼痕。）gay 在句中是"快乐、开心"的意思（尽管如今人们常用来指男性同性恋）；burn 指火或热量的烧伤、灼伤，hidden wounds 指心理或思想感情上受到的伤害和创伤。

28. I thought somehow I had been spared: I thought for some reason or other I had not been affected.（我以为自己总算幸免于难了。）原子弹爆炸时老人在脸上和身体表面并无外伤，他以为自己幸免于难，但从下文看事实并非如此。

29. ... ever since them they have been testing and treating me: ... since then they have tested and treated me constantly（从那时起，他们就一直不断地检查治疗我。）句中 testing and treating 用在一起是一种"头韵"（alliteration）的修辞手法，使文字获得音乐美的效果。

30. It is humiliating ... those who do not: It is a disgrace for an atomic victim to remain alive in this city. If you carry any visible scars of atomic burns, your children will be looked down upon by those who are not atomic victims. 这句话是日本广岛核辐射受害者

的真实心理写照。他们所受的伤害并不是仅仅来自肉体，更多是来源于内心世界难以抚平的巨大创伤。

31. People are afraid of genetic damage from the radiation：People fear that the effect of the atomic radiation may be hereditary (may pass on from parents to children).（人们担心核辐射对基因的危害。）这句话同样写出了广岛核受害者的困境以及社会大众对待他们的心理。由于核辐射而产生基因病变的受害者可能丧失了生育能力或会生育出残废或畸形后代。

32. Those are lucky birds：Those are birds which can bring me good luck. 在日本传统传说中，如果折够一千只小纸鹤，这个人的愿望就可以实现。所以文中称为 lucky birds.

33. Each day that I... add it to the others：One more day of suffering would mean a day nearer my death (free from worldly trifles). Everyday I make a new little paper bird and add it to the others.（我每多活一天，多受一天罪，也就是距脱离苦海的日子近一天。每这样过一天，我就做一只新的纸鸟，放到那一堆纸鸟中去。）句中的 each day 引导时间状语从句。

34. I have the opportunity to improve my character：I have the chance to raise my moral standard, to purify my soul.（因为疾病磨炼了我的性格。）这里的 improve my character 有两层意思，即 character 可以划分为心灵（soul）和道德（moral）两个层面：一是净化心灵（purify my soul），二是进化道德标准（improve his moral standard）。

V. 参考译文

广岛——日本"最具活力的"城市

（节选）

雅各布·丹瓦

当世界上最快的列车缓缓驶入广岛车站时，那位身着日式站长制服的男人喊出的一定是这样一句话："广岛！大家下车啊！"。我听不懂他在说什么。首先因为他喊的是日语；其次是因为我当时心情沉重，喉咙哽咽，愁思连绵，这同日本铁路官员说什么毫不相干。踏上广岛的土地，呼吸着广岛的空气，这件事本身就比我过去的任何旅行或采访任务更为激动人心。我真的是在曾经的犯罪现场吗？

从表面上看来，日本大众似乎并不如我这般愁绪万千。从车站外的人行道看，似乎这里的一切与日本其他城市都一样。穿着和服的少女和上了年纪的太太们与西装打扮的年轻人和女人们摩肩接踵，来来往往。神情严肃的男人们互相交谈，好像浑然忘却了周围拥挤的人群。他们不停地微微欠身鞠躬，互致日常的客套寒暄问候："太谢谢您了。"其他人正在用挂在食品杂货店和烟草商店门面前小巧的红色电话通话。

"嗨！嗨！"出租车司机一看到旅客就这样打招呼，同时砰的一声打开车门。"嗨"或者其他一些非常类似的声音，意思是"是的，好的"。"你可以带我到市政厅吗？"我问道。司机冲着后视镜对我咧嘴一笑，连声说，"嗨！嗨！"我们的车全速启动，穿梭于广岛市区狭窄的街巷中。这座曾经惨遭劫难的城市的高楼大厦从我们身边一座座飞掠

而过，而同时我们也随着司机方向盘的急转而在车里东倒西歪。

正当我开始觉得路途遥远时，出租车一个急刹停了下来，司机开门下车去找警察问路。像在东京一样，广岛的出租车司机往往对自己的城市也知之甚少，但为了不在外国人面前丢脸，他们不会承认自己的无知，并且会答应带乘客到任何目的地，却并不考虑他们自己要花多长时间才能找得到。

这段插曲总算结束。我发现自己不知不觉地来到了宏伟的市政大厅前。当我向门房展示市长应我的采访请求而发出的邀请函时，他深深地向我鞠了一躬并声调悠扬地叹了一口气。

“先生，不是这里”，他用英语说道。“市长先生邀请您今天晚上和其他外宾一起到水上餐厅赴宴。您明白了吗？应该是在这儿。”他在请柬背后给我勾了一张简略的地图。

幸亏有了他画的图，我才找到了一个可以直接带我到运河堤岸的出租车司机。那里停泊着一艘顶篷酷似日式房屋的大游艇。地价越来越高，所以日本人就把传统日式房屋建到了船上。水面上的日本传统小屋漂浮在一座座棕灰色的摩天大楼之间这种引人注目的景象，恰恰象征着和服和超短裙之间持续不断的斗争。

在餐厅的门口，一位身着传统和服，妆容精致瓷白的曼妙迎宾女郎告诉我要脱鞋进屋。脱了鞋，我走进这座水上餐厅的一个低矮的房间，小心翼翼地踏上柔软的榻榻米垫，但一想到等会要这样穿着袜子去见广岛市长我就感到一阵强烈的困窘和不安。

市长是一位瘦瘦的高个子男人，眼神忧郁，神情严肃。出乎意料，在车站经历的那种感情冲动又回来了。当我想到我现在是站在第一颗原子弹爆炸的地方时，我心头沉重。就在这儿，成千上万的人在原子弹爆炸的一刹那遭到杀害。另有成千上万的人忍受痛苦的折磨，慢慢死去。

到场的人们相互做了自我介绍。大多数客人都是日本人，我也觉得不好开口只是去问我们为什么到这里聚会，仅有的几个美国人和德国人看来也和我一样有些不自在。

“先生们，”市长说道，“很高兴欢迎大家来到广岛。”

大家都开始弯腰鞠躬，包括所有的西方人。只要在日本过了三天，人的脊椎骨就会变得异常灵活。

“先生们，你们来到广岛是我们莫大的荣幸。”

新一轮的鞠躬又开始了，“广岛”的名字每重复一次，大家的神色就越来越凝重。

“广岛，大家都知道，是每个人都很熟悉的城市，”市长继续说道。

“当然，当然”，在场的人们低声议论着，越来越不安起来。

“很少有城市像广岛这般在世界上负有盛名，所以我既自豪又高兴地欢迎各位来到广岛。令这座城市举世闻名的乃是它的——牡蛎。”

我正准备点头对市长的话表示赞同，突然我听明白了刚才这句话最末几个词的意思，我也就随之从忧愁伤感的梦境中清醒过来。

“广岛——牡蛎？那原子弹和苦难还有人类史上十恶不赦的罪过呢？”

市长还在继续他关于日本南方海味的演讲，我则蹑手蹑脚地退到了屋子的另一端，那儿有几个人自顾商谈着什么而对市长的演讲并不作关心。

“你看起来有些迷茫，”一个带着一副大大的眼镜的小个子日本男人对我说道。

“是的，我得承认我没有料到在这儿会听到一番关于牡蛎的演说。我原以为广岛依然笼罩在原子弹灾难的阴影之下。”

“没有人再去说了，谁都不愿意再提了，尤其是那些在这里出生的人或是亲身经历的人。”

“你也这么觉得吗？”

“我当时是在广岛，但是并不是在市中心。我之所以给您讲这些是因为我已经是个老人了。在这个牡蛎之城，有两派看法，一派主张保留轰炸的遗迹，另一派主张消除一切痕迹，甚至连在轰炸中心竖立的纪念碑也拆掉。他们甚至还要求拆掉原子博物馆。”

“他们为什么想那样做？”

“因为旧事重提会伤害到每一个人，而且时代和生活一直在前进。这就是原因。”这位小个子日本男人微笑道，眼睛在厚厚的镜片后面眯成了缝。“如果您要描写这座城市的话，别忘了一定要写这是日本最快乐的城市，即便这里很多人身上还有暗伤和灼痕。”

这里的医院也弥漫着和其他任何一家医院一样的防腐剂和酒精的味道。担架和轮椅在长得望不到尽头的走廊墙边一字排开，护士们端着镀镍的医疗器械穿行其中，使得来这里的健康游客们看一眼都觉得脊背发颤。所谓的原子病区设在三楼，共有17 张病床。

“我是打鱼为生的。在这里已经呆了很长一段时间，二十多年了。”一位穿着日式睡衣的老人说道。

“你是怎么了？”

“内伤。那场灾难开始时我在广岛。我看见了爆炸的火球。但是当时我脸上和身上都没有灼伤。我跑遍整个城市寻找我的朋友和亲人。我以为自己总算幸免于难了。但是随后我开始掉头发，腹部开始积水，并且感到恶心。于是从此以后，他们就一直不断地检查和治疗我。”

站在我身边的大夫对老人的话进行了解释和说明：“我们这儿还有几个病人要靠持续的治疗才能活下去。其他一些因为重伤而死亡，还有一些是自杀的。”

“他们为什么要自杀？”

“继续活在这座城市里是一种耻辱。如果你身上带有显而易见的原子弹伤痕的话，你的孩子就会遭到来自那些没有伤痕的人的歧视。没人愿意娶一个原子弹受害者的女儿或是侄女为妻，因为人们担心核辐射对基因的危害。”

那位老渔民礼貌地注视着我，饶有兴趣。

他的病床上挂着一个由许多五颜六色的纸叠成的小鸟穿成的大球。

“这是什么？”我问道。

“它们是我的幸运鸟。我每多活一天，多受一天罪，也就是距脱离苦海的日子近一天。每这样过一天，我就做一只新的纸鸟，放到那一堆纸鸟中去。我看着这些小鸟，并庆幸疾病给我带来的好运气。因为疾病磨炼了我的性格。

从医院出来，站在户外，我又一次撕碎了一个小笔记本，那上面记录着我在这次

采访原子病区的病人之前准备好的一些问题。其中之一是:你真的认为广岛是日本最有活力的城市?虽然我从来都没有问过,但是我已从每个人的眼神里读到了答案。

（选自爱德·凯编写的美国广播节目）

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**:略。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答:

1. The writer must be an American journalist or reporter. From the first paragraph, the writer said that he had previously taken some reportorial assignment, and from the last sentence of the fifth paragraph, we can know the writer' s invitation that the mayor had sent him was in response to his request for an interview.

2. The aim of the visit, I think, was to gather information about Hiroshima today

3. A lot of sad thoughts were on his mind. He felt a sense of guilt toward the atomic bombing of Hirioshima.

4. No, he didn' t.

5. The writer was struck by the co-existence of Eastern and Western culture in Japan, such as the different clothing style and traditional Japanese houses "adrift amid beige concrete skyscrapers".

6. Because the mayor talked much about the oysters. The writer expected the mayor to say something to do with the atom bomb.

7. The writer went to the hospital after the reception. He wanted to interview the patients of atomic ward.

8. Because with their visible scars of atomic burns, they would bring their children prejudice and matrimonial problem, for people were afraid of genetic damage from the radition.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. Serious-looking men were so absorbed in their conversation that they seemed not to pay any attention to the crowds about them.

2. At last the taxi trip came to an end and I suddenly discovered that I was in front of the gigantic City Hall.

3. The rather striking picture of traditional floating houses among high, modern buildings represents the constant struggle between traditional Japanese culture and the new, Western style.

4. I suffered from a strong feeling of shame when I thought of the prospect of meeting the mayor of Hiroshima in my socks.

5. The few Americans and Germans also seemed to feel restrained like me.

6. After three days in Japan one gets quite used to bowing to people as a ritual in greeting and to show gratitude.

7. I was on the point of showing my agreement by nodding when I suddenly realized what he meant. His words shocked me out of my sad dreamy thinking.

8. …and nurses walked by carrying surgical instruments which were nickel plated and even healthy visitors when they see those instruments could not help shivering.

9. I have the chance to raise my moral standard because of the illness.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. lump: the feeling you get in your throat when you are going to cry

2. rub shoulders with: (*informal*) meet and mix with (people)

3. martyred: (the city) that has been made to suffer

4. screech: make a harsh, piercing sound

5. arresting: striking, attracting and holding the attention skyscrapers: very tall buildings

6. stunning: very attractive; delightfully beautiful

7. sink in: (to be) fully absorbed or understood

8. schools: groups of people sharing the same thought

9. by trade: by occupation; by way of making a living

B.

1. Was indicates a fact while must be means strong probability.

2. When you say "Was I at the scene…?" you are not sure whether you are at the scene or not. When you use "Was I not…?", you are quite sure you are at the scene.

3. *Elderly* means approaching old age.

4. To *grin* means to smile broadly, sometimes foolishly, without making any noise. To *smile* is the most general term; to make a facial expression but not accompanied by vocal sound which may show amusement, satisfaction, affection, etc.

5. To *sketch* is to draw an outline quickly.

6. *Careful* implies painstaking efforts, thoroughness, cautiousness in avoiding error etc. *Cautious* suggests a careful holding back from action until all possibilities have been considered to avoid failure or danger.

7. *Site* is almost always restricted to an area of ground, small or large. It may be one that has been set aside for a particular use or activity: a building site; a factory site. A site

may be a circumscribed locale where some event has occurred: the site of the first atomic bombardment. A *spot* is a specific place, either indoors or outdoors, of limited extent: A beautiful spot in which to have a picnic.

8. *Demolish* has more of a physical sense, meaning tearing down, while *destroy* only means putting an end to.

9. *Gay* suggests lightheartedness and unrestrained good spirits. *Delightful* means giving delight, very pleasing, charming.

10. *Gaze* is to look long and steadily, often with the indication of wonder, admiration, fascination etc. *Stare* is to gaze intently, especially with wide-open eyes, as in amazement, admiration or fear.

C.

1. Puzzle implies such a baffling quality or such intricacy, as of a problem, situation, etc., that one has great difficulty in understanding or solving it. *Confuse* implies a mixing up mentally to a greater or lesser degree. *Perplex* adds to puzzle the implications of worry and uncertainty, especially about reaching a decision on a course of action or the right solution of a personal problem. *Confound* implies such confusion as completely frustrates or greatly astonishes one. Bewilder implies such utter confusion that the mind is staggered beyond the ability to think clearly. Dumbfound specifically implies as its effect a nonplused or confounded state in which one is momentarily struck speechless.

2. *Heinous* implies such extreme wickedness as to arouse the strongest hatred and revulsion. *Outrageous* applies to that which so exceeds all bounds of right, morality, decency, etc., as to be intolerable. *Horrible* means causing a feeling of horror. *Evil* is not often applied to persons and frequently has a more or less sinister or baleful connotation. *Wicked* implies the actual violation of moral code.

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英

1. There is not a soul in the hall. The meeting must have been put off.

2. That modern construction looks very much like a flying saucer.

3. Sichuan dialect sounds much the same as Hubei dialect. It is sometimes difficult to tell one from the other.

4. The very sight of the monument reminds me of my good friend who was killed in the battle.

5. He was so deep in thought that he was oblivious of what his friends were talking about.

6. What he did had nothing to do with her.

7. She couldn't fail asleep as her daughter's illness was very much on her mind.

8. I have had the matter on my mind for a long time.

9. He loves such gatherings at which he rubs shoulders with young people and exchanges opinions with them on various subjects.

10. It was only after a few minutes that his words sank in.

11. The soil smells of fresh grass.

12. Could you spare me a few minutes?

13. Could you spare me a ticket?

14. That elderly greyhaired man is a coppersmith by trade.

B. 英译汉：参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译：参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

（略）

Lesson Three

Blackmail

词汇注释

blackmail[ˈblækmeil] ***n.*** extortion of money or something else of value from a person by the threat of exposing a criminal act or discreditable information 勒索,敲诈

v. force sb. to do sth. by blackmail 勒索,敲诈

【例句】The strange man tried to **blackmail** the clerk into helping him draw the money, but he failed. 陌生人想讹诈职员迫使他帮他取出钱,但未能得逞。

suite[swiːt] ***n.*** a series of connected rooms used as a living unit(旅馆中的)一套房间

【例句】the honeymoon **suite** 蜜月套间

cryptic[ˈkriptik] ***adj.*** having hidden meaning; secret, mysterious 隐藏的,秘密的

【例句】a **cryptic** remark/message/smile 令人困惑的言语、信息、微笑

fray[frei] ***v.*** (cause sb./ sth. to) become strained and irritated 使紧张,使烦躁

【例句】Relations between us have become **frayed** through a series of misunderstandings. 我们之间产生了一连串的误解,因而关系变紧张了。

errand[ˈerənd] ***n.*** a short trip taken to perform a specified task, usually for someone else 差事,差使(一般是为他人跑腿)

【例句】He was tired of running **errands** for his sister. 他已经厌烦给姐姐当跑腿了。

sardonic[sɑːˈdɔnik] ***adj.*** scornfully or cynically mocking 讥讽的,嘲笑的

【例句】a **sardonic** smile/expression 嘲弄的微笑、表情

同义词：ironic，sarcastic，satirical

这三个词都含有“讽刺，嘲讽”的意味，其细微的区别在于 **ironic** 意味着一种微妙的间接表达出来的讽刺，如：Madness is an ironic fate for such a clear thinker.（对这样一个思维清晰的人来说，发疯莫过于一种带有嘲弄意味的命运。）**sarcastic** 以使用讥讽的语言为特征，其目的在于挖苦或嘲笑他人，如：His colleagues are disgusted at his sarcastic tone.（他的同事都很反感他这种讽刺的语调。）**satirical** 含有暴露某种东西，尤其是邪恶或愚蠢的讽刺之意，如：This article casts a satirical look at commercial radio.（这篇文章对商业广播进行了一番讥刺。）**sardonic** 则侧重蔑视、讽刺的意味，也经常暗含着愤世嫉俗的意思，如：He was proud, sardonic, and harsh to inferiority of every description (*Charlotte Bronte*).（他对各种描写的低劣性都抱以傲慢、讽刺和毫不保留爱憎分明的态度）（夏洛特·勃朗蒂）。

jowl[dʒaul;dʒaul]　***n.*** jaw; lower part of the face 下颚，脸的下部

【例句】a heavy-**jowled** man 有双下巴的人

encompass[in'kʌmpəs]　***v.*** (fml) include or comprise sth. 包含或包括某事物

【例句】The general arts course at the university **encompasses** a wide range of subjects. 大学文科包括的科目范围很广。

flip[flip]　***v.*** to throw or toss with a light, brisk motion（用手指）轻弹，轻抛

【例句】He **flipped** a coin in the air. 他把一枚硬币投向空中。

decor['deikɔː]　***n.*** (French) (*singular form*) furnishing and decoration of a room, stage, ***etc.***（房间、舞台等的）布置、装饰

obese[əu'biːs]　***adj.*** (fml or medical) (of people) extremely fat, grossly overweight（正式用语或医学术语）（指人）肥胖的，肥大的

【例句】**Obese** patients are advised to change their diet. 建议肥胖病人改变饮食。

同义词：见第十六课“词汇注释”的 portly

incongruous[in'kɔŋgruəs]　***adj.*** lacking in harmony, incompatible 不调和的，不适宜的

【例句】The modern huge building looks **incongruous** in that old-fashioned village. 那座现代化的高楼大厦在那古老的村庄里看上去不协调。

falsetto[fɔːl'setəu]　***n.*** a male singing voice marked by artificially produced tones in an upper register beyond the normal range（音）（男子的）假音，用假高音嗓子（说、唱）

【例句】sing **falsetto**（男子）用假高音唱

emission[i'miʃən]　***n.*** (fml) thing that is sent out or given off 散发之物，发出之物

【例句】the **emission** of light from the sun 阳光的照射

swift[swift]　***adj.*** quick or rapid; promote 快的，迅速的

【例句】He was **swift** to condemn the violence. 他立即谴责了那种暴力行为。

同义词：rapid，acute，fast

rapid 强调进展迅速；**acute** 着重指敏锐的；**fast** 指动作本身很快，尤其指车辆的速度很快；**swift** 也指快的，迅速的，通常表示一种快速的移动或反映等。

abruptly[əˈbvʌptli] *adv.* sudden and unexpected 突然地，意外地

【例句】I feel that I owe you a great many apologies for I departed **abruptly** yesterday. 昨日不告而别，为此向您深表歉意。

同义词：curtly，suddenly，hastily

这一组词都表示"突然地，意外地"意思。**abruptly** 既表示突然的，出乎意料的，又表示粗鲁的，没有礼貌的；**curtly** 指说话简短、且非常粗鲁的；**suddenly** 指突然的，意想不到的，不含有感情色彩；**hastily** 指草率匆忙的。

hit-and-run *n.* (of a road accident) caused by a driver who does not stop to help 事故后驾车逃逸

blandness[ˈblændnis] *n.* being moderate, unperturbed, or tranquil 温和，柔和

high-tail *v.* (colloq.) leave or go in a hurry, scurry off 匆忙离开，迅速逃走

inbred[ˈinˈbred] *adj.* fixed in the character or disposition as if inherited 天生的

【例句】The man, though poor, showed an **inbred** courtesy. 那人虽穷，却表现出天生的谦虚有礼。

wrathful[ˈrɔːθful] *adj.* (fml) extremely angry 大怒的，恼怒的

【例句】It makes me **wrathful** when people don't listen, and then ask silly questions. 我讲话时人们不听，而后又问我一些愚蠢的问题，这使我愤怒不已。

wither[ˈwiðə] *v.* to render speechless or incapable of action 使……哑口无言，使不能行为

【例句】The teacher **withered** the noisy student with a glance. 老师瞥了一眼吵闹的学生使他们噤声不语。

blackguard[ˈblækgɑːd] *n.* a scoundrel 无赖，流氓

flicker[ˈflikə] *v.* to burn unsteadily; shine with an unsteady light(火光等)摇曳，闪烁

【例句】The hope still **flickered** within her that her husband might be alive. 她丈夫可能还活着的希望仍然在她心头闪烁。

同义词：见第一课的 glisten。

interject[ˌintə(ː)ˈdʒekt] *v.* to interrupt; to insert between other elements 插嘴，突然插入

【例句】When I brought up the question of funding, he quickly **interjected** that it had been settled. 我刚提出筹集基金的问题，他急忙插嘴说问题已经解决了。

accuse[əˈkjuːz] *v.* (of) that sb. has done wrong or broken the law 指责，控告

【例句】**accuse** sb. of stealing the money 指责某人偷窃钱财

同义词：impeach，complain，charge

这四个词都指“控告，指责”。**impeach** 指弹劾公职人员等，多与 for 或 of，with 搭配；**complain** 指抱怨，常用 complain about sth.；**charge** 指正式向司法部门提出起诉，多用 charge sb. with sth.；**accuse** 与 of 搭配，是常用词，可用于正式或非正式的指控。

puff[pʌf] *v.* to blow in a brief, sudden emission（一阵阵地）吹，喷出

【例句】He often **puffs** cigarette smoke in other's face for fun. 他常常向别人脸上喷烟闹着玩儿。

distaste[ˈdisˈteist] *n.* dislike or aversion 讨厌，嫌恶

【例句】He turned away in **distaste**. 他厌恶地走开了。

leastways[ˈliːstweiz] *adv.* anyway; at least 无论如何，至少

【例句】：There is no pub round here, **leastways** not that I know of. 附近没有酒店，至少据我所知没有。

smug[smʌg] *adj.* self-righteously complacent; exhibiting or feeling great satisfaction with oneself or with one's situation 沾沾自喜的，洋洋得意的

【例句】Don't grow **smug** over your successes. 不要因为成功而自鸣得意。

oblige[əˈblaidʒ] *v.* to make it necessary for sb. to do sth. 迫使（某人）做某事；do sb. a favour; help sb. 帮助某人，使他人感激

【例句】The law **obliges** parents to send their children to school. 法律要求父母必须送子女上学。

I oblige my friends and they do the same for me. 我与朋友互相帮助。

同义词：oblige，force，compel，constrain

这一组词都是“强迫”的意思。**oblige** 表示由于道德的、法律的力量或环境的急迫需要而必须做的行动；**force** 是常用词，含有实际用力过程中，使用权力、精力或力量来完成某事的意思，或征服抵抗，克服阻力；**compel** 是正式用语；**constrain** 指强迫，迫使，该词含有压制、约束或限制的意思。

tuck[tʌk] *v.* to put in an out-of-the-way, snug place 藏起来，埋藏

【例句】He has got a fortune **tucked** away in a Swiss bank account. 他把一大笔钱存在瑞士银行里了。

cluck[klʌk] *v.* to make a sound similar to that of a hen 咯咯叫，（人）发出类似的声音

hunch[hʌntʃ] *n.* an intuitive feeling or a premonition 直觉，预感

【例句】He had a **hunch** that their team would lose. 他预感到他们的球队会输。

reprovingly[riˈpruviŋli] *adv.* (fml) expressing a blame or rebuke 表示责备地

【例句】cast a glance **reprovingly** 表示责备地一瞥

jockey[ˈdʒɔki] *n.* one who operates a specified vehicle, machine, or device 驾驶员，（机器的）操作员

lick[lik] *v.* pass the tongue over (sb./sth.) 舔（某人或某物）

【例句】He **licked** his finger. 他舔手指。

concede[kən'siːd] *v.* to acknowledge, often reluctantly, as being true, just, or proper 承认

【例句】The lawyer refused to **concede** that the two cases were at all similar. 律师拒绝做出这两宗案件相似的表示。

同义词:confess

concede 常指勉强地承认,带有非常勉强或不情愿的意味;**confess** 常指承认自己犯罪或对自己不利的事情,二者的侧重点不同。

fender['fendə] *n.* a guard over each wheel of a motor vehicle so as to block the splashing of water or mud 挡泥板

bust[bʌst] *v.* (infml) to smash or break, esp. forcefully 使破裂,打碎

【例句】I dropped my camera on the ground and **bust** it. 我把照相机掉在地上摔坏了。

poise[pɔiz] *n.* graceful and balanced control of body position or movement 姿势,动作 (fig.) quiet dignified self-confidence and self-control 泰然自若,自信

【例句】moving with the assured **poise** of a ballet dancer 带有芭蕾舞演员那种稳健姿势的动作

twig[twig] *v.* to observe or figure out 察觉,明白,理解

【例句】I gave him another clue, but he still didn't **twig** the answer. 我再次给了他提示,可他还是不理解答案。

discreetly[dis'kriːtli] *adv.* carefully or showing good judgment 举止谨慎地,考虑周全地

【例句】We must act **discreetly**; my husband suspects something. 我们必须小心才是,我丈夫已经起疑心了。

holler['hɔlə] *v.* (infml) to yell or shout 呼喊,叫喊

eventuality[iˌventju'æliti] *n.* something that may occur; a possibility 不测的事,可能发生的事

【例句】We must get prepared for any **eventuality**. 我们必须做好准备,以防万一。

make[meik] *n.* the style or manner in which a thing is **made** 样式,牌子

incriminate[in'krimiˌneit] *v.* to accuse of a crime or other wrongful act 控告……有罪,使负罪

【例句】In his confession the thief incriminated two others who helped him steal. 这个盗窃犯在供词中牵连了另外两个协助他偷窃的人。

oafish['əufiʃ] *adj.* stupid, clumsy and awkward 愚蠢的,笨拙的

【例句】:**oafish** behaviour 愚蠢的行为

adept[ə'dept] *adj.* (常与 at, in 连用) very skilled 熟练的,精通的

【例句】She was **adept** at the fine art of irritating people. 她惯于惹别人生气。

grotesque[grəu'tesk] *adj.* ridiculously exaggerated or unreasonably absurd 荒唐的，无理的

【例句】It is **grotesque** to expect a person of her experience to work for such little money. 想让她那样有经验的人为这点钱工作真是可笑。

unequivocal['ʌni'kwivəkə] *adj.* clear and unambiguous 毫不含糊的，不容置疑的

【例句】I took an **unequivocal** position in this matter. 我在这件事上的立场是明确的。

bulbous['bʌlbəs] *adj.* shaped like a bulb; round and fat 又圆又胖的

【例句】:a **bulbous** nose 圆圆的鼻子

peremptory[pə'remptəri] *adj.* offensively self-assured; dictatorial 过度自信的，专制的

【例句】We dislike his swaggering, **peremptory** manner. 我们不喜欢他这种狂妄自大、过于自信的举止。

rivet['rivit] *v.* to engross or hold (the attention, for example) firmly(与 on, upon 连用)注意，目光集中在……

【例句】I was absolutely **riveted** by her story. 她的故事完全把我吸引住了。

imperious[im'piəriəs] *adj.* (fml) arrogantly domineering or overbearing 傲慢的，专横的

【例句】an **imperious** look/command/gesture 飞扬跋扈的样子、专横的命令、傲慢的姿势

respite['respait] *n.* a usually short interval of rest or relief 休息，暂时的缓解或放松

【例句】I have been working for 10 hours without a moment of **respite**. 我已经连续十个小时不停地在工作。

comply[kəm'plai] *v.* to act in accordance with another's command, request or rule 顺从

【例句】Patients should **comply** with physicians' orders. 病人必须遵从医生的嘱咐。

vacillation[ˌvæsi'leiʃən] *n.* the state of swinging indecisively from one opinion to another, indecision 犹豫不定，踌躇不决

【例句】His constant **vacillation** made him an unfit administrator. 他经常优柔寡断，这使他不适合当行政官员。

dally['dæli] *v.* be slow or waste time 浪费时间，延误

【例句】They **dallied** with the proposal for days, but finally refused it. 他们把提案拖延了好些天，最后还是拒绝了。

短语表达

put out:stop sth. burning 熄灭

【例句】I threw water over him,desperately trying to **put out** the flames. 我往他身上泼水,拼命地想扑灭他身上的火焰。

take one's time(**doing sth.** 或 **to do sth.** 或 **about sth.**):do sth. slowly 不着急,慢慢(做事)

【例句】You can **take your time** coming to see me. 你不用着急来看我。

on a hunch:based on feeling and for which there is no proof 凭预感

【例句】Few people are willing to stake their reputation **on a hunch**. 很少有人愿意贸然用名声冒险。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. Arthur Hailey was born in Luton, England on April 5 th, 1920. He attended public schools until he was 14, and at the age of 19 he entered the Royal Air Force and served during the World War II. During his service in the RAF, he began his writing career. After the war he moved to Canada, settled down there and became a Canadian citizen as well as British; he also lived briefly in the United States.

Although he had wanted to write since leaving school, his first novel wasn't published until 1958. Each of his novels is set in a different industry or commercial environment and includes, in addition to dramatic human conflict, all of the information about the way that particular environment functions, and how it affects both the society and the people in it.

Hailey's novels include the bestselling *The Final Diagnosis* (1959), *Hotel* (1966), *Airport* (1968), *The Moneychangers* (1975), *Strong Medicine* (1984) and *Detective* (1997) and have been published in thirty-nine languages; an estimated 170 million copies are in print worldwide. Most of his books have been made into films and *Hotel* was made into a long-running television series.

阿瑟·黑利(1920—)出生于英格兰的卢顿,直到14岁才进入公立学校念书,19岁时加入了英国空军,并参加了第二次世界大战。他在英国空军服役期间便开始了其写作生涯。第二次世界大战结束后,他移居加拿大,从此便拥有了英国和加拿大的双重国籍。此后,他也曾在美国居住过一阵。

虽然说从一毕业起，他就着手进行写作，但是直到1958年他的第一部小说才得以出版。他每一部作品都是通过讲述发生在一个行业内部的故事，来展示当时美国社会生活的某一个片断画面，比方说人与人之间戏剧性的冲突，某一行业的具体运作，以及给社会造成的影响。黑利的主要作品有《最后的诊断》（1959）、《大饭店》（亦称《旅馆》、1968）、《航空港》（1968）、《钱商》（1975）、《烈药》（1984）以及《侦探》（1997）等。他的小说十分畅销，已经被译成39种文字，据估计其作品在全世界已经印制出版了1亿7千万册。他的大多数作品都被拍成了电影，他的小说《大饭店》被拍摄成了长篇的电视连续剧。

2. 小说《大饭店》描述了一个饭店四天之内发生的一系列的故事。圣格雷戈里饭店是新奥尔良市最大的饭店，每天这里的旅客熙来攘往，有来自世界各国的王公贵族、总统、首相，也有企业界的巨头，还有工程师、医生，但也不乏小偷、强盗。

本文是一篇节选，故事发生时，在饭店的总统套房内住着一位英国的公爵及其夫人。公爵是一个生活放荡、酗酒成性的人。一天晚上，他在开车回饭店的途中，撞死了两个人——一个妇女和她的孩子。为了帮助丈夫逃脱罪责，公爵夫人制造了许多假象，企图毁灭罪证。她买通了饭店的侦探长，让他把车开走，并且还让她的兄弟四处活动，促使英国政府任命公爵为驻美大使。但是，新奥尔良市警察局经过一番周密的调查，最终还是查明了真相。万般无奈之下，公爵决定去警局自首。就在他下楼时，电梯出事了，从九楼坠入升降井井底。公爵还没能走出饭店，就已一命呜呼了。

3. New Orleans：新奥尔良，美国路易斯安那州东南部一城市，也是路易斯安那州最大的城市，拥有人口496 938人。它位于密西西比河和庞恰特雷息湖之间。1718年建立，1722年成为法国殖民地的首都，并于1803年作为路易斯安那购买的一部分移交美国管理。然而，法国的影响支配着这个城市。

4. Texas：得克萨斯，美国中南部的一个州，16、17世纪西班牙人曾探索于此地，该地区于19世纪早期成为墨西哥的一个省，于1836年赢得独立。而当时美国国会的反奴隶力量拒绝接受其成为美国的一个州，得克萨斯的领袖们建立了独立的共和国，直到1845年它才被接受为美国的第28个州。

5. Arkansas：阿肯色州，美国中南部一个州，东面以密西西比河为界。该地区最早曾由埃尔南多·行索托等探险队员勘查过，1803年作为路易斯安那购置地的一部分归为美国，并于1836年成为美国的第25个州。

6. Mississippi：密西西比州，它同样也是美国东南部的一个州。此地区最早的定居者是法国人，当时这一片地区是路易斯安那的一部分。后来又归英国和西班牙统治，最后于1783年割让与美国。1789年成立密西西比区，并于1804和1813年两次扩大，其中也包括今天的阿拉巴马州。它于1817年被接受为美国的第20个州。

7. Alabama：亚拉巴马州，同样位于美国东南部，其南部地区作为“路易斯安那购置”（1803年）的一部分被美国占领。1819年被接纳为美国第22个州。

8. Louisiana：路易斯安那州，美国南部墨西哥湾的一个州。作为被拉萨尔1682年宣称为法国领地的广阔地域的一部分，最初是在1718年随着新奥尔良的建立而被确定的。1803年美国获得了对该地区的控制权。1812年该州被承认为美国第18个

州。培顿罗治(Baton Rouge)是其首府,新奥尔良(New Orleans)是其最大的城市。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

The Duke and the Duchess occupy the best suite in the hotel. On Monday morning while driving back to the hotel from a gambling house, the drunken Duke knocks down a woman and her child. Both of them die and the Duke and Duchess drive away to evade any responsibility. This hit-and-run becomes the top sensational news in New Orleans. Their badly damaged car is traced back by the hotel detective Ogilvie. Instead of reporting this to the police, he goes to the Croydons and asks for a large sum of money in order to keep the secret for them. The flabby and impotent Duke is totally at a loss as to what to do; therefore, the important task of dealing with the detective falls on to the Duchess. In the end, the Duchess offers Ogilvie more money than he has asked for on the condition that he drives their damaged car to the north. And driven by his greed for the money, he accepts it in the end.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

Hailey is skillful in creating vivid and representative characters that always make strong impression on his readers. Thus understanding his way of characterization will be of great help to understand his thoughts and meanings of the novel. In this excerpt, typical characters like the Duchess and the detective are portrayed through conversations and conflicts.

The Duchess is the protagonist of this story, and her language is refined and elegant due to her noble blood and her good education. In contrast to her, the antagonist, namely the house detective is ill-mannered and unscrupulous. The language he uses is coarse, ungrammatical and slangy.

And through the confrontation of words, the novel develops intense conflicts not only between the characters, but within each character as well. For instance, when they get to talk about the specific details, the Duchess on one hand keeps "firm, tight rein on her racing mind", while on the other hand she reasons with the detective "with calculated coolness". And it is just the conflicts that hold readers' interest.

Besides, the setting of this novel is also of great importance. Notice that the story takes place in a posh hotel that attracts all kinds of people, and thus represents the coming together of people of different social classes. And all the action in this excerpt is limited to a single room. Such a setting can suggest isolation and alienation, which means that the conversation between the Duchess and the detective goes on covertly.

黑利小说中鲜明的人物形象总能给读者留下深刻的印象,这无不得益于他高超的人物刻画技巧,因此了解他人物刻画的技巧必有助于加深对其小说的理解。在这

篇节选中,黑利通过人物对话和矛盾冲突刻画出了类似公爵夫人、侦探长的典型人物。

公爵夫人是这个故事的主角,由于她出生于贵族家庭,接受过良好的教育,因此她的语言非常优雅,也非常讲究。而作为小说反面主角的侦探长,其行为粗俗,寡廉鲜耻。他的语言猥亵、不合文法,而且好用俚语。

两位主角对峙的同时,小说的冲突便产生了。这不仅包括两个人之间的冲突,还包括每个人物内心的矛盾。比方说,当他们谈到具体的细节问题时,公爵夫人一面"极力控制自己的思绪",另一方面,她还头脑冷静地与侦探长争辩。而抓住读者兴趣的恰好是这些冲突。

除此之外,故事发生的场景也有着重要的意义。故事发生在一个高级的旅馆里,它聚集了来自社会各个阶层的各色各样的人。而就这一篇节选而言,所有的情景都发生在一间屋子里。这样的场景暗示了与外界的隔离,同时也表明了公爵夫人与侦探长的对话是在暗中进行的。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Duke:公爵,在英国,公爵是仅次于国王或亲王的最高贵族。

2. she had dispatched her maid on an invented errand: The Duchess had fabricated a task and sent her maid away on purpose.(她老早已经托词把女仆打发走了)。invent 有"编造,虚构"的意思,如:invent an ingenious excuse(编造一个巧妙的借口),这个词的使用暗示出侦探奥格尔维与公爵夫妇之间有着不可告人的秘密,他们之间的谈话内容也是不为外人所知的。

3. A wave of cigar ... in: Ogilvie came into the room smoking his cigar.(随着奥格尔维进来的是一缕雪茄烟雾)。由于奥格尔维手里掌握着公爵夫妇的把柄,所以他敢在他们面前毫无顾忌、为所欲为。至于他们怎么认为,奥格尔维根本不在乎。

4. Would you kindly ... out: We do mind people smoking here, so please put out the cigar.(请你把它灭了)。该句是命令语气。

5. encompassing the Duke ... uncertainly: seeing the Duke who stood in front of them, totally at a loss(看到了那个不知所措地面对着他们的公爵)。

6. Pretty neat set-up ... got: It is a fairly wonderful room that you have got.(你们倒是弄到了一套很好的房间呢)。奥格尔维的语言同公爵夫妇的语言形成了鲜明的对比。他本人没有接受过多少教育,因此满嘴都是粗俗、不合规范的俚语,比方说这句话中的 neat 就是一个俚语,表示"极好的,极佳的";folks 也是一个非正式用语,用来指某一特定的人群。(可以参考课文后的 Note 4。)

7. I imagine you ... discuss décor: I don't think you came here just to talk about the arrangement and furniture of this suite. 与奥格尔维的语言不同,公爵夫人是有身份、受过良好教育的人,她讲的是纯正的 Queen's English(标准英语),讲求绝对符合语法,也很讲究辞藻的华丽。在这里她还故意使用了一个法语单词 décor 来显示其高贵的

地位,想以此来唬住侦探长。

8. Jaguar:美洲豹,又称捷豹,素以生产豪华的运动车而闻名于世。70 年代以后,美洲豹公司由于设备陈旧,技术落后,管理不善,质量下降,销量大减,于 1989 年被美国福特汽车公司兼并,成为福特生产豪华轿车的重要基地。

9. Aah!:这表明公爵的惶恐不安。

10. There's things ... to check: There are some things worth investigating.(检查一下还是有好处的)。pay 在这里表示 be profitable or worthwhile(值得),如:It doesn't pay to get angry.(不值得生气。)

11. You two was ... hit-'n-run: Both of you are guilty of striking the pedestrians but running away in order not to be identified.(这场撞了人就跑的车祸有你们两人的份)。hit-and-run 专门指"事故后驾车逃逸"的情况。这种由 and 连接两个动词来构成复合词的现象在口语中较为常见,如:give-and-take(互让,妥协),hit-and-miss(碰巧),say-and-do(说了就干)。

12. This is for real: This is truly so in actuality.(这可不是开玩笑的)。for real 是一个俚语,相当于 real(真正地,现实确实如此地),如:Is this place for real?(这样的地方确实存在吗?)。

13. Cut it out!: Shut up!(闭嘴!)cut it out 常用于口语,暗含着命令的口气,意思是"住手,住口"。

14. all pretense of blandness gone: Ogilvie threw away all his pretended politeness. 这是一个独立主格结构,由名词加上一个过去分词构成,这种表达使得整个句子结构更为紧凑,描述也更为生动,因而较多的使用于书面语中。这种结构并不用来修饰句子的任何一个词,而是修饰句子的整体意思。

15. your high-an'-mightiness: my haughty and overbearing Duchess(尊贵的阁下)。high-and-mighty 的意思是"自高自大的,傲慢的",这里侦探长故意模仿对公爵夫人的称呼 Your Grace(阁下),杜撰出一个新词 your high-an'-mightiness,借以讽刺她那不可一世的傲慢的态度。

16. high-tailed it: leave in a hurry(逃之夭夭)。这是一个俚语,来源于那些逃跑时尾巴翘起的动物,表示"慌忙逃走(以躲避某事)"。

17. they'll throw the book ... who it hits: they will impose a severe penalty on the criminal in accordance to law, not caring a bit about who will be punished.(不管肇事者是谁,都得受到严厉的惩罚)。这里的 book 是指 the entire collection of laws and penalties(记载法律条文的典籍)。当一个人犯罪无数时,就可以用上这句话,表示那个人将"遭受最严重的惩罚"。注意这个说法仅用于警察、检察官,并不适用于一般人互相控告。

18. If you want it the other way: if you refuse to accept my offer and prefer to go to law 奥格尔维在此威胁公爵夫妇,摆在他们面前的只有两条路:要么答应他提出的条件,要么自首。

19. It's no go, old girl. I'm afraid. It was a good try.：I'm afraid it is of no use to dispute against him over this matter, my old woman. It was a good attempt to negotiate with the detective.（我看这样也没用，老太婆。试试看也好）。这里的 no go 是一个俗语，意思是"办不到，无益的"；old girl 是对妻子的一种不正式的称呼，类似于汉语里的"老婆子"。

20. Now we're getting somewhere：We're now making some progress.（我们的交流现在总算有点进展了。）get somewhere 的意思是"某事情有一定的进展，发展等"，在文中是指奥格尔维认为双方终于开始谈他所想谈的事情了。

21. I'll spell it out：I will speak out in a frank and detailed way.（我就把一切都清楚地跟你们说吧）。spell out 是一个固定的搭配，表示"详细解释，清楚地说明"。

22. But beyond wrinkling ... no comment：She only puckered her nose to show her dislike for the offending cigar, but she did not rebuke him.（但是她只是厌恶地皱了皱鼻子，什么也没说）。在同公爵夫人的初次较量中，奥格尔维似乎占了上风，挫败了公爵夫人的锐气。所以，这一次，她并没有像故事刚开始时那样盛气凌人，并厉声呵斥奥格尔维了。

23. Leastways, I guess ... too fussy：I guess if you are not excessively sensitive about what words to use, at least you would call her your "lady friend".（如果你不过分挑剔字眼的话，我猜你至少会用"女性朋友"来称呼她的）。lady friend 字面上看是"女性朋友"，实际上指的是"情妇"。奥格尔维在这儿有意要激怒公爵。

24. like letting me know what gives：for example, telling me what happens（比方说告诉我发生了什么事情）。what gives 是一个俚语，这里 give 表示 be in progress, happen（在进展中，发生）。

25. There ain't much ... hear about：If anyone staying in this hotel has done anything improper or wrong, I always get to know it. Nothing can escape me. 这是一个双重否定句，语气比肯定句更为强烈。此外，out of the way 是一个习惯用语，表示 wrong, improper or abnormal（不恰当的，错误的，异常的）。

26. though the way things ... have drove：Judging from what happened later, if it were your wife that drove, probably you would not have been involved in such an accident.（当初要是你的夫人开车，也许不至于出事）。言下之意是当时公爵夫人没有开车，还是出了车祸。

27. I reckon you were lickered up：I think you got drunk.（我估计你当时已经醉了）。作者在这里根据奥格尔维的发音有意把 liquor 拼写为了 licker，可见这位探长说话带有很浓的口音。此外，在口语中 liquor 常于 up 搭配，表示 get drunk with alcoholic liquor（喝酒喝醉了）。

28. Then you don't know：Therefore you know nothing for sure; all you have been talking is just your speculation.（这么说来，你实际上并不知道真实情况！）公爵夫人认为这些都只是奥格尔维的猜测，他没有真正掌握他们犯罪的证据。由此不难看出，自

始至终都是公爵夫人在同奥格尔维的周旋与谈判,公爵则始终采取一种被动的态度。

29. Looked right shaken, too, the pair of you: Both of you appeared to be agitated and shocked.(你们俩看上去还是一副惊惶失措的样子)。这句话当中谓语被提前,起强调作用。

30. took a quiet look-see at your car: took a quick examination of your car without being noticed(跑到车库悄悄地察看了一下你们的车子)。look-see 是一个非正式用语,意思是 a quick survey or glance(快速的浏览或瞥视)。

31. I shoulda told ... the black paint: I should have told you there is lots of blood stain on your car although it does not show on the black coating. 奥格尔维看似是不经意地提及车子上的血迹,实际上他是在跟公爵夫妇摊牌了。从后面公爵夫人的反应中,可以看出奥格尔维想要以此要挟他们的目的达到了。

32. You people are hot: You two are wanted by the police.(你们可是被警方通缉的)。hot 在此表示"被通缉的",如:a hot suspect(被通缉的嫌疑犯)。

33. her husband now ... spectator: Her husband now watches nervously and anxiously, incapable of taking an active part.(她的丈夫只不过充当了一个紧张而被动的旁观者的角色而已)。这也是一个独立主格结构,属于名词+名词的结构。(参见"核心内容解析"14。)

34. with calculated coolness: The Duchess was not cool at all, but she deliberately pretended to be calm.(公爵夫人冷静地打着盘算。)calculated 在这里表示"故意的,蓄意的",如:calculated modesty(故作谦虚)/a calculated insult(故意的侮辱)。

35. their speech and manner would betray them: Their way of speaking and doing things would reveal their identity.(他们的言谈举止都有可能暴露身份行踪)。betray 在这里表示 to make known unintentionally(不自觉地暴露),如:Her hollow laugh betrayed her contempt for the idea.(她的大笑显示了她对此观点的蔑视。)

36. Or had they?: Or had the risks to be taken?(真的非冒这险不可吗?)这句话是公爵夫人对前面曾经有过的念头的否定,她突然意识到他们用不着亲自冒险把车开到北方去,还有更好的办法。这是一个过渡句,起到了承上启下的作用。

37. Eyes bored into him: She looked at him sharply as if she could see through him.(她的眼睛紧逼他的脸)。bore 的原意是"打洞、钻孔",用在这里十分形象,公爵夫人盯着他就好像要把他看穿似的。

38. When you were ... the highest bid: When your reputation and career were at stake, you had to pay the highest price.(当个人的声望和事业濒临危险时,就得不惜任何代价去搏一把)。stake 和 bid 这两个词均为赌场术语,他们接下来要干的事情就好比赌博,成败全靠运气,胜负在此一举了。

39. She must do so ... beyond any doubt: She must offer him so much money as to make sure that Ogilvie would undoubtedly agree to do what she would ask him to do however dangerous it was. 公爵夫人此时已经豁出去了,她决定要利用奥格尔维贪婪的本性,

让他来替他们把车开往北方。

40. This cigar botherin' you, Duchess? If this cigar is bothering you, I will put it out. 金钱的力量让奥格尔维改变了他的态度，他由最初毫不顾及公爵夫人的看法到此刻听从她的命令，这表明他最终接受了公爵夫人的提议，决定帮他们把车弄到北方去。

V. 参考译文

敲 诈

阿瑟·黑利

旅馆保安主管，探长奥格尔维在他那个神秘的电话里说好一个钟头以后到克罗伊敦夫妇的套房里来，实际上他却花了两倍的时间才到。最后，当外间门上已经不怎么能发出声音的门铃终于响起的时候，公爵夫妇的神经都已经十分紧张了。

公爵夫人自己去开的门。她老早已经托词把女仆打发走了，然后又狠心地叫那个非常怕狗、圆脸的男秘书带着贝德林顿厚毛犬出去散散步。想到他们两个人随时都有可能回来，她自己的紧张情绪没法轻松下来。

一股烟味随着奥格尔维涌进房间。当他跟着她走进起居室后，公爵夫人的眼睛紧盯着这个胖子嘴边已经抽了半截的雪茄。“我的丈夫和我都讨厌浓烈的烟味。请你把它灭了。”

探长那双眯缝在堆满赘肉的脸上的猪眼射出讽刺的目光将她上下打量了一番，扫过这个宽敞的、设施齐全、布置考究的房间，最后落到了那个正背朝窗户、不知所措地看着他们的公爵身上。

“你们的房间布置得挺不错吗。”奥格尔维慢悠悠地从口中拿下令公爵夫妇讨厌的雪茄，磕了磕烟灰，把雪茄烟蒂朝右边一个装饰用的壁炉里弹去，但是烟蒂没有扔进去，掉在了地毯上，但他毫不在意。

公爵夫人的嘴唇咬得紧紧地。她直截了当地说，“我想你应该不是来讨论我们房间的装饰布置的吧。”

他轻轻发出赞赏地笑声，他那肥胖的身体也跟着抖动起来。“不，夫人，我当然不是来谈你们漂亮的装饰布置的，虽然我喜欢这些漂亮美好的东西。”他压低了他那副刺耳的尖嗓子，接着说道，“说说你们的那辆小轿车吧。就是停在这个饭店的那辆，是美洲豹牌的吧，对不对？”

“啊！”克罗伊敦公爵差一点惊呼起来。他的妻子飞快地瞪了他一眼，警告他不要露了马脚。

“我们的车子究竟碍着你什么事了？”

公爵夫人的这句话好像是发出了什么信号，嗅探到这个信号的探长立马改变了自己的态度，突然问：“这里还有别的什么人吗？”

这次是公爵回答的，“没有人。我们已经把他们都打发出去了。”

“检查一下总是有好处的。”这个胖子的动作出人意料地快。他把房子上上下下

地搜查了一遍,开门开窗,翻箱倒柜地仔细检查。显然,他很熟悉这里的房间布局。在他把外间的门再次打开又重新关上以后,完全放心满意地回到了起居室。

公爵夫人已坐在了一张直靠背椅上。奥格尔维站在那里。

"听着,"他说,"这场撞了人就跑的车祸有你们两人的份。"

她直盯着他的眼睛。"你在说什么呀?"

"别装模作样啦,夫人。这可不是开玩笑的。"说着,他又拿出一支雪茄,把烟头咬掉。"你们应该看过报纸了吧。收音机里也在不断广播呢。"

克罗伊敦公爵夫人苍白的双颊上泛起了两朵红晕。"你说是我们开车撞人,肇事逃逸,我们会做这么荒唐卑鄙的事吗……"

"你给我闭嘴,听到了吗!"奥格尔维咆哮而出,先前所有伪装的和气突然消失得无影无踪。他全然没把公爵放在眼里,竟然当着极不喜欢烟味的对手的面,把那支尚未点燃的雪茄放在鼻子底下嗅来嗅去。"你给我听着,尊贵的阁下。现在,这件事正闹得沸沸扬扬、满城风雨,从警察到市长,所有人都群情激奋。等到他们查明昨晚是谁肇的事,是谁撞死了那母子俩,然后又逃之夭夭,他们绝对不会姑息,不管肇事者是谁,也不会管他有多么显赫的头衔,都将受到严厉的惩罚。现在我已经知道了整个事情的经过,要是我秉公办理的话,眨眼之间,马上就会有一大队的警察出现在这儿。但我不是蛮不讲理、待人不公平的人,所以我先到你们这来了,这样你们能够先告诉我你们的想法。"他那猪一般的小眼睛翻了几下,然后沉下脸来。"假如你们有什么别的想法,就说出来吧。"

带着三个半世纪贵族家族遗传下来傲慢,克罗伊敦公爵夫人没有轻易屈服。她猛地从坐椅上弹跳起来,满面怒容,冒着怒火的灰绿色双眼,直直地逼视着臃肿的肥探长。凡是熟悉她的人,都可能会被她的这种架势和声调吓得趴到地上:"你这个坏透了的流氓,竟敢威胁我们,真是狗胆包天!"

就连确信自己把握在手的奥格尔维也愣了一下。但在这时,克罗伊敦公爵插话了,"这样僵下去也不是个办法,老太婆。不妨这样试试看。"他冲着奥格尔维说:"你对我们的指控是属实的,应该怪我,撞死那个小女孩时是我在开车。"

"这还差不多,"奥格尔维说着,点燃了那支还没抽的雪茄。"我们的交流现在总算有点进展了。"

克罗伊敦公爵夫人打了一个手势,以示她屈服了,疲倦地一屁股又坐回到她的椅子上。她双手紧握在一起,掩饰着它们的颤抖,问道:"你到底都知道些什么?"

"好吧,我就把一切都清清楚楚地跟你们说了吧。"探长不紧不慢地说,优哉游哉地吹出一口青色的雪茄烟雾,一对小眼嘲弄地盯着公爵夫人,似乎在故意挑战着她的抗议。但是她只是厌恶地皱了皱鼻子,什么也没说。

奥格尔维指着公爵说,"昨晚早些时候,你去了爱尔兰牛轭湖的林迪赌场。你是开着你那辆华丽的美洲豹去那儿的,并且带着一位女性朋友。如果你不过分挑剔字眼的话,我猜你至少会用"女性朋友"这个称呼来称她的。"

奥格尔维边说边瞟向公爵夫人,咧着嘴角讪讪地笑。公爵急速地叫道:"往下说!"

“那好吧，”那张沾沾自喜的肥脸又转了过来。“我听说的是这个样子的，你先在赌桌上赢了一百美元，接着又在酒吧里全花光了。当你和一群人正高高兴兴，热热闹闹地赌第二个一百美元的时候，你的这位正品夫人乘出租车赶到了那儿。”

“你是怎么知道这些事的？”

“公爵，我跟你实话实说吧。我生活在这个镇上很长时间了，我对这个旅馆熟得不能再熟了。这儿到处都有我的朋友。我给他们好处，互惠互利，他们也同样帮我的忙，比方说告诉我谁做了些什么事，在哪儿做的，等等。虽然我自己并没有亲眼所见我所听到的那些事情，但是凡是住在这家旅馆的人，他们干的那些个违法的勾当，很少有能瞒过我的。他们中大多数人都不知道我了解他们的事，甚至压根儿就不认识我。他们以为自己的那些小秘密不为人所知——有时的确没有人知道，但是现在这件开车肇事逃逸的事却瞒不了别人。”

公爵冷冷地说，“原来是这样。”

“有一件事情我想知道。我生性好奇，夫人，你是怎么猜出他在什么地方的呢？”

公爵夫人说道，“既然你知道得这么多……，我想告诉你也无妨。我的丈夫在打电话时有做记录的习惯，但事后他经常忘了把纸条毁掉。”

探长连连咋舌，责备道，“就这么一个小小的不谨慎的毛病，公爵——瞧它把你弄得多尴尬。好吧，接下来发生的事是我推测出来的。你是和你夫人一起离开赌场的。开车的人是你，尽管后来的结果表明，当初要是你的夫人开车，也许不至于出事。”

“我夫人不会开车。”

奥格尔维点了点头，以示理解。“要解释为什么会发生车祸那一点，我猜想当时你可能已经醉了，醉酒驾车，但是好……”

公爵夫人打断了他的话：“这么说来，你实际上并不知道真实情况，你根本什么都不能肯定！你无法证明……”

“夫人，只要是需要证实的，我都能够证实。”

公爵提醒她道，“最好让他说完，老太婆。”

“这才是正确的态度，”奥格尔维说道。“坐在那儿好好地听我说吧。昨天夜里，我看见你们进入了旅馆——你们是走地下室进来的，特意避开门厅想掩人耳目。而且你们两个看上去都是一副惊惶失措的样子。那时，我也正好走进来，看到那样，我很是纳闷，想弄清楚到底发生了什么事。我说过了，我这人生性好奇。”

公爵夫人吸了一口气，“接着说吧。”

“昨晚下半夜，驾车肇事逃逸的消息就已经传开了。基于某种预感，我就跑到车库悄悄地察看了一下你们的车子。也许你们不知道吧——车子远远地停在一个角落里，隐藏在一根柱子背后，这样，别的开车的人经过时就看不到它了！”

公爵舔了舔嘴唇。“我想现在应该没什么关系了。”

“你总有可能会在车祸现场留下点什么的，”奥格尔维说。“不管怎么说，我的发现促使我做了些侦查工作——到警局去走了一圈，那儿的人也都认识我。”他停下来又抽着雪茄，他的听众安静地等着。他盯着看了一会儿雪茄的烟头发出的红光，又继续说了下去。“警察现在手里掌握了三样可供继续追查的物证。他们找到了一个车

前大灯的装饰圈,那一定是车子撞到那个小孩和她妈妈时掉下的。他们还找到一些车前大灯的碎片。小孩的衣服也正在检验之中,他们估计衣服上应该有某种擦痕的。"

"某种什么东西?"

"公爵夫人,假如衣服和什么硬东西摩擦的话,特别是和类似于汽车保险杠一样光亮的东西擦过的话,就会在它上面留下某种痕迹,就像手指会留下指纹一样。警察局验证科能够像处理指纹一样,涂上特殊药粉,显示出痕迹,从而将其提取出来。"

"这倒挺有意思,"公爵说道,好像在谈一件跟他毫无关系的事似的。"我还从来不知道有这种技术。"

"知道这种技术的人并不是很多。可是在这件案子上,我想可能还不需要用到这种技术。你的车子一只前大灯破碎,装饰圈也不见了。毫无疑问,他们肯定会将你的车子和那件案子联系起来的,不需要验证擦痕和血迹,他们就能断定你的车就是肇事车。哦,我还应该告诉你们,你们的车身粘了大量的血迹,虽然在黑漆面上不大看得出来。"

"哦,天哪!"公爵夫人惨叫着用一只手捂住脸,转过头去。

她的丈夫问道,"你有什么提议呢?"

那个肥头大耳的家伙搓着双手,低着头看着他那肉棒子一样的手指头。"正像我刚才说过的,我是先来听听你们有什么想法的。"

公爵绝望地说,"我还能说什么呢? 所有的事你都已经知道了。"他作势想挺起胸摆出他的绅士派头来,可是怎么也摆不起来。"你还是通知警方来处理这件事好了。"

"我看,这事也不用这么急。"他那刺耳难听的嗓音里透着一种老谋深算、成竹在胸的腔调。"发生的事已经发生了,慌乱也没有用,再怎么样也救不活那孩子和她的妈妈了。更何况,在警察局里他们会怎样对待你,公爵,你可不会喜欢的。阁下,相信我,你绝对不会喜欢警察处置你的方式的。"

那夫妇俩听完这话慢慢地抬起头来看着探长。

"我倒是希望,"奥格尔维说,"你们俩能提出个解决方案来。"

公爵迟疑地说,"我不懂你的意思。"

"我懂了,"克罗伊敦公爵夫人说道。"你要钱,对不对? 你来这儿是来敲诈我们的。"

如果她期望用这句话来震慑对方的话,那她的算盘就落空了。探长耸了耸肩膀。"随便你怎么说我,夫人,我都不在乎。我来这儿是为了帮助你们摆脱麻烦的。但是,我也得要生活呀。"

"你收了钱就对你所知道的事情守口如瓶,不对别人讲吗?"

"我想我会守口如瓶的。"

"可是照你所讲的情况来看,"公爵夫人指出,此刻她又恢复了镇定自若的神态,"这也无济于事,无论怎样,车子总还是会被人发现的。"

"我认为你们应该碰碰运气。也有可能车子不会被人发现,因为有些事我还没有

告诉你们呢。”

“那就请讲吧。”

奥格尔维说道，“我自己也没有完全弄清楚呢。你们撞死了那个小孩以后，你们是朝市外开去，而不是往市内开的。”

“我们走错了路，”公爵夫人说道。“不知怎么回事，我们的方向反了。这种事情在新奥尔良是很容易发生的，这儿街道弯弯曲曲的，容易走错方向。后来我们穿小巷才绕了回来。”

“我想也可能是那样。”奥格尔维点了点头表示理解。“但警方却没有料到这一点，他们正在搜查出了城的人。所以，这会儿，他们正在郊区和城外搜索。他们可能会返回市区搜索的，但至少目前还不会。”

“那还要多久他们才会来呢？”

“可能三、四天吧。他们有好多别的地方要先去搜查。”

“那也无济于事啊——顶多只是拖延几天的时间罢了？”

“可能会有帮助的，”奥格尔维说。“如果没有人注意那辆车子，并且没有发现它停的地方，你们的运气可能就来了。只要你们能把它送走的话。”

“你是说把它送出这个州去？”

“不，是送出南部。”

“这恐怕不是那么容易的事吧？”

“的确是不容易，夫人。周边的几个州——得克萨斯、阿肯色、密西西比、阿拉巴马，和其他的各州都必定会密切注意这种可能与该宗肇事案有关，和你们的车损坏情况一样的汽车的。”

公爵夫人想了想道，“能不能先把车子修一修呢？如果能把车子偷偷地修理好，我们愿意付高额报酬。”

探长肯定地摇了摇头。“你那样做，和自己主动走进警察局投案自首，坦白交代有什么两样呢？警察已经通告了路易斯安那州的每一家汽车修理铺，责令他们一旦收到损坏情况和你们的汽车一样的送修车辆，就需要立即报告警方。他们也肯定会按令执行的，你们现在可是被警方通缉的人啊。”

克罗伊敦公爵夫人极力控制住自己那纷乱如麻的思绪。她知道此刻最关键的是要保持冷静和理智的头脑。刚才谈话的最后几分钟，气氛似乎已经变得比较缓和，就像是家庭成员在聊一些无关紧要的家常琐事一样，丝毫没有像讨论生死攸关的大事时的紧张气氛。她有意要将这种气氛保持下去。她清楚地意识到，带着这个家走出困境的领导责任再一次地落到了自己的肩上。此刻，她的丈夫只不过是一个龟缩在后，紧张又毫无主意的看客而已，和这个居心叵测的肥佬谈判的重担只有靠自己来承担了。这也没什么关系，是祸躲不过，总要挨这一刀的。重要的是要考虑好各种可能发生的情况。她想到了一个主意。

“你说的，警方拣到了的那样东西，我们车上掉的，那叫什么来着？”

“前大灯饰圈。”

“从它可以追查到我们的车吗？”

奥格尔维肯定地点了点头。“他们能查出是从哪种汽车上掉下来的——车子的制造商、车型，应该还可以查出大致的出厂时间。从车灯的玻璃碎片上也可以查出这些。但是因为你们的车子是进口车，所以鉴定起来可能要费好几天的工夫。”

“那查明之后，”她追问道，“警方就会知道他们要找的是一辆美洲豹吗？”

“我想是这样的。”

今天是星期二。根据这肥佬所讲的情况来看，最多到星期五或者星期六他们就能锁定我们的车了。公爵夫人冷静地打着算盘：现在解决问题的关键只有一个。假如他们买通了这个探长，唯一的机会——一个非常渺茫的机会——就在于迅速地将车子转移走。如果能将车子弄到北部的某个大城市去，那里没有人知道新奥尔良发生的这起车祸，也没人知道警方的搜查行动，车子就可以在那儿神不知鬼不觉地修好，这样一来罪证也就销毁了。以后，即使有人怀疑到我们克罗伊敦夫妇身上，也就没有证据了。但是怎样才能把车子弄走呢？

毫无疑问，这个卑鄙的侦探说的是实话：从路易斯安那到北方，沿途要经过的几个州，肯定都已经接到了警方的协查通报，也都会和路易斯安那一样留意搜捕的。所有的公路巡警也都会留意一辆前灯破损、掉了饰圈的汽车。还有可能碰上检查车辆的路卡。要想逃过这些警察的锐利目光，十分困难。

但还是有可能做到的，只要昼伏夜出，晚上开，白天远离公路，找地方躲起来的话。毕竟还是有很多远离公路，不受人注意的地方的。这样做有些冒险，但总比坐以待毙要强些。总可以找到一些偏僻小路的，他们还可以选择一条不会引人注意的，警方不大可能想到的路线。

可能还会碰到其他一些复杂情况的……现在应该好好考虑清楚。如果对地形路线不熟的话，走小路肯定会十分困难。可是我们夫妻俩都不熟悉地形，又不善于看地图。况且，车子跑起来，总要加油，停车加油时，他们的言谈举止都有可能暴露身份行踪，从而令人生疑。不过……这些风险不得不冒。

也可能他们已经冒过这种险？

公爵夫人直视着奥格尔维。“你开价多少？”

这种直率把他吓了一跳。“嗯……我想你们是有钱人。”

她冷冷地说，“你只要告诉我多少。”

那对小猪眼翻了翻。“一万美元。”

尽管这个数目是她预计的两倍，但她没有为之动容。“如果我们付给你这么大一笔钱，我们会有什么回报呢？”

肥佬似乎被这话给问糊涂了。“正如我说过的，我会保守秘密。”

“如果我们不给钱呢？”

他耸了耸肩。“那我就下楼到门厅去，打电话报警。”

“不，”她毫不含糊地说。“我们不会付给你钱的。”

克罗伊敦公爵在一旁不安地蠕动着身体，探长那肉球似的脸也涨得通红。“你给我听着，夫人……”

她不容分说地打断了他的话。“不是我听着，相反，你给我听着。”她的眼睛紧逼

着他的脸，她那有着贵族气质、高颧骨的脸上显出一副极为傲慢的神气。“即使给了你钱，也解决不了问题，最多也只能拖延几天时间。这一点你已经说得很明白了。”

“这对你们而言机会难得……”

“住嘴!”她的声音就像一鞭子抽过来，她的眼睛死死地盯着他。他忍气吞声，冷着脸默不作声了。

克罗伊敦公爵夫人知道，接下来的事可能是她有生以来做出的最大、最有意义的事了。决不能出半点差错，决不能让自己浅薄的见识坏了事，必须当机立断，快刀斩乱麻。舍不了孩子，套不住狼。她打算利用这个胖子的贪婪赌上一把。她必须确保胜算，绝无后患地解决这个问题。

她拿定主意，果断地宣布，“我们不给你一万美元，我们给你两万五千美元。”探长的眼珠子都凸出来了。

“作为那笔钱的回报，”她语气坚定地继续说，“你要把我们的车子开到北方去。”

奥格尔维还是怔怔地呆在那儿。

“给你两万五千美元，”她重复说道。“现在付一万，事成之后，在芝加哥碰面时再付剩下的一万五千。”

肥佬舔了舔嘴唇，还是什么话没说。他瞪着那双圆溜溜的小眼睛，似乎不敢相信一样，直直地盯着她的眼睛。一片沉默。

然后，在她咄咄逼人的逼视之下，他微微地点了点头。

还是一片沉默。最后，奥格尔维开口了。“这支雪茄让您不舒服吧，公爵夫人?”她点了一下头，他将它掐灭了。

（节选自《大饭店》，1965 年版）

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**：参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. Because she didnt like her maid and secretary to know what they would talk to the detective.

2. No, he didn't. Because the thought that he knew their secret and that he was in an advantageous position.

3. The Duke committed hit-and-run. Yes, it was.

4. While Ogilvie was entering the basement, he happened to see the Croydons coming in through the basement instead of the lobby, and both of the Duke and Duchess appeared to be agitated and shocked. Then he went over the garage and took a quiet look-see at their car. The important evidence was a headlight trim ring left behind at the accident site.

5. Because Ogilvie came to talk with them rather than report what he knew to the police. He said " I got to live too", which dropped a hint.

6. Because every repair shop had been told to report to the police once they saw a car needing repairing like theirs come in.

7. She hoped that the detective would accept to drive to the north, and she offered more money just to guarantee a complete success.

8. Yes, Ogilvie accepted the Duchess's offer. This was suggested in the last sentence of the text.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. Ogilvie said these words with great contempt and sudden rudeness as if he was spitting. He threw away his pretended politeness.

2. When they find who killed the mother and the kid and then ran away, they'll deal out the maximum punishment, and they will not care who will be punished in this case or what their social position is.

3. The Duchess was supported by her arrogance coming from her noble family who had belonged to the nobility for more than three hundred years. So she did not give in easily.

4. The Duchess was a good actress and she appeared so firm about their innocence that, for a brief moment, Ogilvie felt unsure if his assumption about them was right. But the moment was very short and passed quickly.

5. The house detective was in no hurry. He enjoyed his cigar and puffed a cloud of blue cigar smoke in a relaxed manner. At the same time, his eyes were fixed disdainfully on the Duchess as if he was openly daring her to object to his smoking a cigar, as she had done earlier.

6. If anybody who stays in this hotel does anything wrong, improper or unusual, I always get to know about it. There isn't much that can escape me.

7. The Duchess kept firm and tight control of her mind which is working quickly. The Duchess is thinking quickly, but at the same time keeping her thoughts under control.

8. Furthermore, when they stopped for petrol, as it would be necessary, their speech and manner would reveal their identity. British English would be particularly noticeable in the South.

9. She mustn't make any mistakes in her plan, or waver in mind and show indecision or deal with the situation carelessly due to small-mindedness. In other words she had to take a big chance, to do something very daring, so she must be bold, resolute, decisive and rise to the occasion.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. suite: a set of rooms, usually expensive in a hotel
2. pointedly: directly and sharply
3. well-appointed: excellently furnished and arranged
4. set-up: arrangement of furniture, etc.
5. hit-and-run: hitting and then escaping; usually of an automobile driver who flees from the scene of an accident in which he or she is involved
6. blandness: smoothness in manner or flavor of food
7. springing to one's feet: to stand up suddenly
8. unspeakable: extremely bad
   Blackguard: scoundrel, villain
9. flicker: to burn or shine with an unsteady light that goes on and off quickly; to move with a light wavering motion
10. oblige: to do something someone has asked you to do
11. tuck away: to hide so as to be difficult to find
12. shaken: upset and shocked
13. call: need
14. rivet: to fasten with a rivet; to fix or hold (eyes, attention, etc.) firmly
    Imperious: overbearing, arrogant and domineering

B.

1. Sometimes it is beneficial and worthwhile to check things out.
2. This is real and something serious.
3. When they find who did that last night, who killed that kid and its mother, then escaped, they'll deal out the most severe punishment.
4. It's no use trying, darling.
5. Now listen, I'll explain what happened exactly and in detail.
6. Anyway, I guess you'd call her your lady friend.
7. You were spending another hundred dollars to entertain a lively and fashionable party.
8. It's away in a corner, behind a pillar where the hotel staff in charge of car parking doesn't see it.
9. Providing nobody notices the car.
10. Every repair shop in Louisiana's been told to call the police the minute a car…
11. You people are sought after by the police.
12. Well, I figure you people are pretty rich and wealthy.

C.

1. Sardonically emphasizes a mocking or sneering attitude that may be witty, ironic or laughter-provoking. Sarcastic describes a person, statement, expression, attitude or tone of

voice that is heavily ironic and intended to hurt.

2. Self-assurance suggests an even stronger belief in one's ability, but in an unfavorable sense it may connote conceited or arrogant self-sufficiency. Self-confidence means reliance on one's own powers.

3. Charge means to accuse formally, usually before a court. Accuse may be used in formal or informal, official or personal contexts.

4. Wearily suggests such depletion of energy or interest as to make one unable or unwilling to continue. Tiredly is applied when one has been drained of much of his strength and energy through exertion, boredom, impatience, etc.

5. Leisurely means in an unhurried manner. Slowly is only about pace and speed, the opposite of quickly.

6. Oblige means doing one a favor for. Help has a much broader and a general meaning.

7. Discreetly means keeping silent, without telling other people, because of the consequences. Carefully means avoiding damage, harm, etc. and paying attention to details.

8. Both tense and nervous mean fearful, apprehensive. Tense also means anxious. A person may be nervous by disposition and not because of any particular anxiety.

9. Eventuality means a possible outcome.

10. Respite means delay, postponement, an interval of temporary relief or rest. It is not complete relief.

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. There is no need for hurry. Take your time.
2. Are you suggesting that I am telling a lie?
3. He tried every means to conceal the fact.
4. Our chance to succeed is very slim. Nevertheless we shall do our utmost.
5. We will have our meeting at 10 tomorrow morning unless notified otherwise.
6. Neither of us is adept at figures.
7. Would it be possible to reach that place before dark assuming we set out at 5 am?
8. He was reluctant to comply with her request.
9. I know you are from the South of China. Your accent has betrayed you.
10. We have no alternative in this matter.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Four

The Trial That Rocked the World

词汇注释

sweltering['sweltəriŋ] *adj.* being uncomfortably hot 热得难受的

【例句】a **sweltering** climate 闷热的气候

counsel['kaunsəl] *n.* a lawyer or group of lawyers giving advice about legal matters and representing clients in court. 辩护律师,法律顾问

【例句】The court heard the **counsel** for both sides. 法庭听取了双方律师的陈述。

silver-tongued['silvə'tʌŋd] *adj.* eloquent, persuasive 雄辩的,有口才的

orator['ɔrətə] *n.* person who makes formal speeches in public; person who is good at public speaking. 演说者,演说家

【例句】a fine political **orator** 优秀的政治演说家

nominee[nɔmi'niː] *n.* person who is nominated for an office, a position, etc. 被提名的候选人,被任命之人

testify['testifai] *v.* give evidence; declare as a witness, esp. in court 提供证据,作证

【例句】The teacher **testified** to the boy's honesty. 老师证明那孩子很诚实。

Two witnesses **testified** against her and one in her favour. 有两个证人的证词对她不利,另一个人的对她有利。

同义词:verify, confirm, prove

verify 指通过调查或者与可弄清的事实的比较来证明某事是对的,如:The driver's report of the accident was verified by eye-witnesses.(这位司机的事故报告由目击者

加以证实。)**confirm** 指证实某些不确定的事情,消息或谣言是真的,如:The hotel confirmed our reservation by telegram.(那家旅馆打来电报证实我们已预订了房间。)**prove** 指用足够的证据来确证某事是否真实,如:I shall prove to you that the witness is quite unreliable.(我将向你们证明这个证人是十分不可靠的。)**testify** 指作证,尤指正式在法庭上作证。

反义词:contradict, dispute, doubt

erupt[iˈrʌpt] *v.* burst forth or out, as from restraint 迸发,爆发,喷出;break out suddenly and violently 突然发生

【例句】The demonstration **erupted** into violence. 示威游行中突然出现了武斗。

同义词:explode, burst

这些词都指仿佛由于某种内部力量而突然猛烈的爆发、打开或是分开。**explode** 指物理现象,气体的突然膨胀着火,以及相当大的能量释放的一刹那。它从爆发这种意义来讲,比其他词都要猛烈,声响更大,如:A bomb exploded at a distance.(炸弹在很远的地方爆炸了。)**explode** 还可用于比喻,指一种情感的突然释放,如:explode with laughter(哄然大笑)/explode with anger(勃然大怒);**burst** 在指爆炸或分离的意义上比 **explode** 用得更广泛;**erupt** 在字面和比喻意义上都指突然发生或爆发,和 **burst** 一样,指在一个受限制的空间和条件下发生。

反义词:implode, suck in

fundamentalism[ˈfʌndəˈmentəliz(ə)m] *n.* (in Christian thought) belief that the Bible is literally true and should form the basis of religious thought or practice 原教旨主义(认为《圣经》的经文翔实无误,应构成宗教的理论或实践的基础。)

legislature[ˈledʒisˌleitʃə] *n.* body of people with the power to make and change laws 立法机关

prohibit[prəˈhibit] *v.* forbid sth. or sb. from doing sth. esp. by laws, rules or regulations 禁止,不准

【例句】a regulation to **prohibit** parking in the city center 禁止在市中心停车的规定

同义词:forbid, ban, interdict

prohibit 是指发布正式命令或制定一些官方的法令来禁止某事,准备采取某种约束力来促使法令的实施,如:In our country, bigamy is prohibited by law.(我国法律规定不允许重婚。)**forbid** 没有 **prohibit** 正式,指下令禁止某人做某事或不让某事发生,不过此禁令一般指非法定的,但希望他人遵照执行。如:Smoking is forbidden in the concert hall.(音乐厅内不许吸烟。)**ban** 和 **interdict** 指禁令,是宗教或法律用语。

反义词:permit, endorse

legality[li(ː)ˈgæliti] *n.* state of being legal 合法性

【例句】The **legality** of this action will be decided by the United Nations. 这一行动的合法性将由联合国裁定。

anticipate[æn'tisipeit] *v.* expect (sth.); see (what is going to happen or what needs to be done) and act accordingly 期望，预料（某事），预见某事发生

【例句】We **anticipated** that the demand is likely to increase. 我们预料需求可能会增加。

同义词：expect

expect 指有一定的根据预见或期待某事一定会发生，也可指在心理状态的等待，是肯定性较强的常用词，如：There is still no news from her but we expect a letter soon.（尽管仍然没有她的消息，但我们预料很快有信来。）**anticipate** 指事先预感将要发生什么事，强调情绪上的表现，并不含有一定的根据，不像 **expect** 那样常用，如：I anticipate great pleasure from my visit to Europe.（我预料欧洲之行会非常愉快。）

反义词：despond

indict[in'dait] *v.* accuse sb. officially (of sth.); charge sb. 就某事控告起诉，告发某人

【例句】He was **indicted** for murder. 他被控杀人。

同义词：accuse，charge

accuse 和 **charge** 见第6课"词汇注释"的 **accuse** 和同义词辨析练习（Ⅸ）。**indict** 是法律术语，指正式地指控某人，并使之出庭在陪审团或法官面前。

反义词：pardon

prosecute['prɔsikjuːt] *v.* bring a criminal charge against sb. in a court of law 检举，告发某人，对某人提起公诉

【例句】He was **prosecuted** for exceeding the speed limit. 他因超速行车而被起诉。

festoon[fes'tuːn] *v.* decorate with festoons 给……饰以花彩

【例句】a room **festooned** with paper streamers 饰有纸带花彩的房间

rickety['rikiti] *adj.* weak or shaky, likely to fall or collapse 不牢靠的，摇摇欲坠的.

【例句】a **rickety** shelter for the bikes 摇摇欲坠的自行车棚

evangelist[i'vændʒilist] *n.* preacher of the Gospel. esp. one who travels around holding religious meetings 福音布道者，传道者

exhort[ig'zɔːt] *v.* advise sb. strongly or earnestly 劝告，规劝

【例句】The chairman **exhorted** the party workers to action. 主席敦促党的工作人员采取行动。

同义词：arouse，provoke

arouse 专指唤醒式打开人的眼界去注意某种倾向或观点，如：His suspicions were

again aroused.（这再一次引起了他的怀疑。）而 **provoke** 不一定是这样的，甚至也不常指有意的企图，相反它可以指自发的反应，如：The slur provoked a sharp resort.（诽谤激起了一阵猛烈的反击。），**provoke** 可以用来表示激起某种情绪；**exhort** 指热切地催促，表示用强调的富于感情的论点或者通过唤起同情心和良知来努力劝某人采取行动，如：The senator exhorted his colleagues to vote against the motion.（参议员力劝他的同事们对这个动议投反对票。）

反义词：discourage，subdue

infidel[infidəl]　*n.* a person who holds no religious belief 无宗教信仰者

florid[ˈflɔrid]　*adj.* flushed with red or pink 红润的

paunchy[ˈpɔːntʃi]　*adj.* fat-bellied; having a paunch　大腹便便的

attorney[əˈtəːni]　*n.* (in US) lawyer, esp. one qualified to act for clients in court 律师（尤指有资格代表当事人出庭者）

【例句】a district **attorney** 地方检察官

shrewd[ʃruːd]　*adj.* having or showing good judgment or common sense 精明的，敏锐的

【例句】a **shrewd** politician 精明的政治家/a shrewd argument 高明的论点

magnetic[mægˈnetik]　*adj.* having a powerful attraction 有强大吸引力的

【例句】a **magnetic** smile 极富吸引力的微笑

agnostic[ægˈnɔstik]　*n.* a person who believes that the human mind can not know whether there is a God or an ultimate cause, or anything beyond material phenomena 不可知论者

growl[graul]　*v.* say sth. in a low threatening voice; complain in an angry manner 以低声威胁的口吻说，愤愤地埋怨

【例句】He **growled** out an answer. 他低声威胁着回答。

spar[spɑː]　*v.* argue or dispute (with sb.) usu. in a friendly way 争辩（通常指善意）

【例句】children **sparring** with each other 争吵着的孩子

drawl[drɔːl]　*v.* speak slowly, prolonging the vowels 慢吞吞地说

【例句】to **drawl** one's word 拉长调说话

bigotry[ˈbigətri]　*n.* the behavior, attitude, or beliefs of a bigot; intolerance; prejudice 偏执，顽固，偏见

rampant[ˈræmpənt]　*adj.* flourishing excessively; unrestrained 猖獗的，遏制不住的

【例句】a city of **rampant** violence 暴力活动失去控制的城市

bigot[ˈbigət]　*n.* person who holds strong beliefs and opinions, and is intolerant of anyone who disagrees 偏执的人

【例句】religious **bigot** 宗教的道士

faggot [ˈfæɡət] *n.* bundle of sticks, twigs, or branches (esp. for use as fuel) 柴捆，柴把

enlightenment [inˈlaitnmənt] *n.* act of making sth. free from prejudice, ignorance, superstition, etc. 启发，开导，开明

【例句】The teacher's attempts at **enlightenment** succeeded. 老师的开导见效了。

contaminate [kənˈtæmineit] *v.* make sb./sth. impure (by adding dangerous or disease-carrying substances) 使某人(某物)受污染

【例句】a river **contaminated** by chemicals 受到污染的河

同义词：pollute

pollute 的早期用法指对一种圣洁，神圣的亵渎，或对物质，道德的纯洁性的玷污，现在常用来指彻底的物质上的污染，并产生一切有毒的，对健康生命有害的东西，如：The fumes have polluted the air we breathe.（烟气污染了我们呼吸的空气。）**contaminate** 指一些有害的，不受欢迎的或不纯的东西，通过未受到污染之物得以传播。另外，**pollute** 指那种很明显或很容易看得见的污染，而 **contaminate** 指变化慢，不直接或通常不易觉察得到的污染。

反义词：clean, purify, sterilize

mammal [ˈmæməl] *n.* any of the class of animals that give birth to live offspring and feed their young on milk from the breast. 哺乳动物

snort [snɔːt] *v.* utter with a snort to express anger, contempt, or the like 发哼声（表示愤怒，轻视等）

brandish [ˈbrændiʃ] *v.* wave in a triumphant or threatening way; display 得意地或威胁地挥动，显示

【例句】The demonstrators **brandished** banners and shouted slogans. 示威者挥舞着旗帜，呼喊着口号。

denounce [diˈnauns] *v.* condemn strongly as evil; say that sb./sth. is wrong, unlawful, etc. 谴责，斥责.

【例句】Union officials **denounced** the management's hypocrisy. 工会负责人谴责管理层的虚伪.

sonorous [səˈnɔːrəs] *adj.* having a full deep sound; sounding impressive and important 圆润低沉的，感人的，堂皇的

【例句】a **sonorous** bell 声音圆润低沉的钟

a **sonorous** style of writing 华丽的文体

fervour [ˈfəːvə] *n.* strength or warmth of feeling; enthusiasm 热烈，热忱，热情

【例句】to speak with great **fervour** 热情洋溢地说

arena [əˈriːnə] *n.* any sphere of struggle or conflict 竞争场所，活动场所

prairie [ˈprɛəri] *n.* wide area of level grassland, esp. in North America 大草原

同义词：plain, bush, desert

plain 指平原，旷野，是一般性的词，本身不表示肥沃或其他地形特征，如：the great plains（大平原）；**desert** 不表明地理位置，但特指贫瘠的，少雨的地带，主要由沙土或沙丘组成；**bush** 指无人居住的，荒野的，长满灌木的土地；**prairie** 指美国中西部或加拿大中部肥沃的，但没有森林的平原。

反义词：mountain

scorch[skɔːtʃ] *v.* burn or discolour (a surface) by dry heat 将（物体表面）烫焦

【例句】The lawn looked **scorched** after days of sunshine. 草坪晒了几天以后好像有些枯萎了。

oratory[ˈɔrətəri] *n.* (act of) public speaking, esp. when used skillfully to affect an audience 演讲，（尤指）雄辩的演说

【例句】Some politicians are famous for their powers of **oratory**. 有些政治家以辩才著称。

duel[ˈdju(ː)əl] *n.* contest or struggle between two people; group, etc. （双方的）竞争

【例句】to engage in **duel** of wits 双方斗智

hush[hʌʃ] *n.* stillness, silence 安静，寂静

【例句】in the **hush** of the night 在夜的寂静中

同义词：silence, stillness

silence 只表示不说话或不弄出声响，但并不一定指没有活动，如：His silence was accompanied by vigorous gestures（他一言不发但做着强有力的手势。）**stillness** 指平静的，安定的状态，但常用来指动荡和喧闹之间的平静，如：There was a moment of stillness when the eye of the storm passed overhead.（风暴眼掠过头顶时有瞬间的平静。）

反义词：loud, talkative

adjourn[əˈdʒəːn] *v.* stop(a meeting, etc) for a time; postpone 停止（会议，等）一段时间，休（会），延期

【例句】Let's **adjourn** until tomorrow. 咱们休会，明天继续进行。

hawker[ˈhɔːkə] *n.* a person who sells goods by going from house to house, street to street, etc. 走街串巷的小贩

entrepreneur[ˌɔntrəprəˈnəː] *n.* a person who organizes and manages a business undertaking, assuming the risk for the sake of the profit（法语）企业家

ponder[ˈpɔndə] *v.* think about (sth.) carefully and for a long time, esp. in trying to reach a decision（长时间）仔细考虑（某事），深思

【例句】I **pondered** (over) the incident, asking myself again and again how it could have happened. 我反复思考那件事，一再自问究竟是怎么回事。

同义词：think，meditate，muse

这些词都是指开动脑筋去寻找对事物的一个较好的理解，解决问题或是寻求真理。**think** 是普通字眼，表示任何脑力的运用；**meditate** 和 **muse** 是用沉思或从容的方式去思考，**meditate** 比 **muse** 普通，它指严肃地，长时间地集中精力思考，如：The author meditated on the theme of his book before sketching out the plot and characterization.（作者在拟出故事情节及人物性格前已对他的作品主题深思熟虑了。），**muse** 指梦幻般地漫无目的的一连串想法，如：She mused about whether her husband would notice her new dress.（她左思右想她的丈夫是否会注意到她的新衣服。）

cower[ˈkauə] ***v.*** crouch down or move backwards in fear or distress（因害怕或痛苦）蜷缩，退缩

【例句】He **cowered** back as she raised her hand to hit him. 她伸手打他，他立即向后退缩。

sulphurous[ˈsʌlfərəs] ***adj.*** of or like sulphur; violently emotional（似）硫的，异常激动的

dispatch[disˈpætʃ] ***n.*** report sent to a newspaper or news agency（发给报刊或通讯社的）新闻报道，电讯

yokel[ˈjəukəl] ***n.*** simple-minded country person 乡下佬，土包子

squat[skwɔt] ***v.*** sit on one's heels or on the ground with the knees drawn up under the body; crouch 蹲，收膝而坐

【例句】The old man **squatted** by the fire. 老人蹲在火炉旁。

gawk[gɔːk] ***v.*** stare impolitely or stupidly. 无礼地或呆呆地瞪眼

【例句】I hate being **gawked** at. 我讨厌人直瞪地盯着我。

trump[trʌmp] ***n.*** card of a suit that temporarily has a higher value than the other three suits 王牌，主牌，将牌

【例句】Hearts are **trumps**. 红桃是王牌。

Scripture[ˈskriptʃə] ***n.*** the Bible《圣经》

wily[waili] ***adj.*** crafty or cunning; full of wilies 狡猾的，诡计多端的

【例句】as **wily** as a fox 像狐狸一样狡猾

repel[riˈpel] ***v.*** drive back or away; repulse 赶走或驱除，击退

【例句】to **repel** an invasion 击退进攻

The surface **repels** moisture. 这表层能防潮。

fervent[ˈfəːvənt] ***adj.*** showing warmth and sincerity of feeling;; enthusiastic; passionate 热情的，热烈的，强烈的

【例句】a **fervent** admirer 痴心的倾慕者

snigger[ˈsnigə] ***n.*** half-suppressed unpleasant laugh 窃笑，暗笑

【例句】His shabby appearance drew **sniggers** from the guests. 他的样子寒酸，客人们不禁暗自发笑。

同义词:laugh, giggle, chuckle

laugh 是这类词中最常用的词,一般是因为快乐,高兴或幸福而发笑,声音可大可小;**giggle** 通常指小孩或姑娘发出的高音笑声,也常常表示一种压抑不住的傻笑;**chuckle** 指低沉的,沉思的,男子气质的声音,它常用于表示满意,欣赏,并往往指发笑者本人,如:He chuckled at himself for having worn two socks that didn't match.(当看到自己穿着两只不成双的袜子时,他暗自发笑。)**snigger** 描述一种抑制性的或半忍住的嘲笑,当指成年人时,如果不是出自反常的幽默感,则表示一种孩子般的幼稚和明显的呆痴,如:They sniggered when he announced that he would be Prime Minister.(当他宣布他要成为首相时,他们嗤之以鼻。)

反义词:frown, weep

twirl[twəːl] *v.* turn quickly and lightly round and round; spin 轻快地转动,使旋转

同义词:rotate, revolve, roll, spin, turn

twirl 常指由手或手指操纵的一连串的复杂动作,如扭、捻等;**rotate, revolve** 和 **roll** 经常交替使用,但他们指的是三种不同的圆周运动:当一个物体围绕本身的中心轴转动时用 **rotate**,一个物体围绕它自身以外的中心转动用 **revolve**,如:The earth revolves around the sun.(地球绕太阳转动。)一个物体在一个平面或其他物体的表面转动用 **roll**,如:Car wheels roll on the ground.(车轮在地上滚动。)**spin** 着重说明运动的持续性而且通常指范围很小的圆周运动,如:The earth spins on its axis.(地球绕地轴旋转。)**turn** 是用得最普遍的词,可以作这一组其他任何一词的同义词。

serpent['səːpənt] *n.* a snake, esp. a large or poisonous one 蛇(尤指大蛇或毒蛇)

livid['livid] *adj.* grayish-blue; pale; lead-colored 青灰色的,铅色的

slur[sləː] *n.* statement, accusation, etc. that may damage sb.'s reputation, esp. when untrue 诋毁,中伤,诽谤

gavel['gævəl] *n.* small hammer used by an auctioneer or chairman as a signal for order or attention(拍卖者或主席用的)小木槌

【例句】 to bang one's **gavel** on the table 用小槌在桌上猛敲

quell[kwel] *v.* put an end to; suppress 制止,镇压,压制

【例句】 to **quell** the rebellion 镇压叛乱

hubbub['hʌbʌb] *n.* confused sound of many voices; noises; uproar 吵闹声,喧哗,骚动

forlorn[fə'lɔːn] *adj.* lonely and unhappy; abandoned 孤独凄凉的,被抛弃的

【例句】 a **forlorn** child 被人遗弃的孩子

verdict['vəːdikt] *n.* decision reached by a jury on a question of fact in a law case (陪审团的)裁断

【例句】to question a **verdict** 对裁断提出疑义

conviction[kən'vikʃən] *n.* a decision in a court of law that a person is guilty of a crime, or the process of proving that he is guilty 定罪

【例句】They have no previous **convictions**. 他们没有前科。

短语表达

adhere to continue to obey or maintain (esp, a rule, standard or belief) 坚持,忠于

【例句】She **adheres to** her principles throughout her teaching career. 她在整个教学生涯中始终坚持自己的原则。

take on begin to have 呈现

【例句】Her voice **took on** a troubled tone. 她的声音里有些不安。

under way: begin, start (开始)进行,在前进中。

【例句】We have several plans **under way**. 我们已将几项计划付诸实施。

课文理解

I. 背景介绍

1. John Scopes: John scopes is the writer of this piece. He was a high school science teacher in Dayton, Tennessee who, by teaching evolution, was accused of breaking the law. He was the defendant in the case. As the last surviving principal in this trial, he decided to write a story describing the highlights of the trial. The name of John Scopes became synonymous with this trial, which is popularly known as the "Monkey Trial". A film, called *Inherit the Wind*, was made of the trial. John Scopes died in 1979.

约翰·斯科普斯是本文的作者。他是美国田纳西州戴顿镇中学一名自然科学教师。由于在当地讲授进化论而被控违法。他是此案的被告。作为当年最后一位活着的当事人,他决定写一篇文章描写当时庭审的精彩经过。斯科普斯的名字后来成为这次著名的"猿猴审判案"的同义词。电影《风的传播》就是取材于这场审判。约翰.斯科普斯于1979年去世。

2. United States Law: There are two types of American law: civil law and criminal law. Civil law covers suits between individuals (companies as well as people are "individuals"). Insurance claims, divorces, and business malpratices are examples of matters handled under civil law. Criminal law covers cases brought by the state against individuals; criminal offenses range from traffic tickets to major crimes like hijacking and murder.

美国法律：美国法律分民法和刑法。民法处理个体之间的诉讼。保险索赔、离婚、经营舞弊都是民法审理的内容。刑法解决由州向个人起诉的案子；从交通违章罚单到诸如劫持和谋杀都是触犯刑法的行为。

3. the Fundamentalist Movement: a militantly conservative and fanatically religious American Protestant movement that began in the early 20 th century in opposition to modern scientific tendency; it held that the Bible is a verbally accurate recording of the word of God, and was strong in parts of the U. S. especially the South, at the time.

原教旨主义运动：美国新教派运动，始于二十世纪，反对现代科学思潮，认为《圣经》是上帝训诫的唯一真实记载，其经文翔实无误。这在当时的美国，尤其在美国南部盛行一时。

4. Harvard University: the oldest university of the U. S. A., at Cambridge, Massachusetts, founded in 1636 and named after its first benefactor (捐助者), John Harvard (1607-1638), a nonconformist minister born in England.

哈佛大学：美国历史最悠久的高等学府，坐落于马萨诸塞州剑桥，建于1636年，以捐助者约翰·哈佛(1607—1638)的名字命名，一个生于英国的新教徒。

5. State Legislature: official body of people who pass (determine, decide) laws. Each of the 50 states in the U. S. has a legislature. The national legislature is called the congress.

州立法机构：一个决定法律的官方机构。美国的50个州都有立法机构。国家立法机构称为国会。

6. 16 th century: The 16 th century was the time of the Renaissance when new ideas of arts, science began flourish. The church led a reactionary movement against the Renaissance which threatened old religious beliefs. They intimidated free-thinkers and even burned them to death at the stake — i. e., tied them to a pole and ignited sticks piled up at their feet

16世纪：16世纪是文艺复兴时期，艺术和科学新思想蓬勃发展，反动教会发起了反文艺复兴运动，他们恐吓自由思想者，并把他们绑在火刑柱上烧死。

7. Darwin's theory of evolution: All living forms, plants and animals, including Man, have developed from earlier and simpler forms by processes of change and selection.

达尔文的进化论：所有生命形式，植物和动物，包括人类，都是通过变化和筛选由早期的简单形式发展而来。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

This text describes the highlights of the trial, which is popularly known as the "monkey trial". The defendant, John Scopes, who was a high school science teacher in Dayton, Tennessee, was accused of breaking the law by teaching evolution. In the court, the counsel for his defence, the famous lawyer Clarence Darrow and Dudley Field Malone launched

a verbal attack on the prosecution headed by William Jennings Bryan, who was the mouthpiece(代言人) of the fundamentalists. Though at last John Scopes was convicted guilty, the battle Darrow and Malone fought in the little court drew the attention of the people all over the country. It brought changes in the U. S. and paved the way for the spreading of the concept that people should be allowed to express their ideas freely.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

The whole piece is written in the form of self account with coherence. From the beginning about the description of the atmosphere in the court, to the description of the verbal battle between the prosecution and the defence(控辩双方),and to the end of the trial, a sense of fervour, merriment and sarcasm is felt throughout the whole piece. Even the description of the activities by different people outside the little court is so vivid, vigorous and lively. The writer makes use of many rhetorical devices, such as metaphor, simile, pun, hyperbole, oxymoron, contrast, etc. to enhance the vividness of the language in conveying the message. Moreover, the text is also praise-worthy in terms of diction. By the use of effective words such as "buzz", "packed", "baking", "brandish", "denounce", "thunder", "fervent" etc., the writer succeeds in creating a heated, stirring and conflicting atmosphere in the court. Words like "chuckle", "snigger" and "laugh" in describing the response of the audience gradually further direct the verbal battle to its climax. Although this piece relates only a small event that happened in a little court in Dayton, a small town in Tennessee, it conveys to readers an urgent message that in modern society intellectual and academic freedom is much needed.

整篇课文采用自述体,一气呵成。从一开始描写法庭开庭前的气氛,到控辩双方的唇枪舌剑,到法庭审判的结束,无不给读者热烈酣畅的感觉。就连对法庭外人们所进行的各种活动的描写都是那么生动而有活力。作者大量地运用修辞手法,如隐喻、明喻、双关语、夸张、矛盾修饰法、对比等,使文章中的语言更加生动形象。此文在措辞上颇值得褒奖。为了使读者感受到法庭上的那种躁动不安的对峙气氛,作者使用了很多表现力很强的词,如 buzz, packed, brandish, denounce, thunder, burst, fervent 等,描写观众反应的词,如:chuckle, snigger 和 laugh,将舌战进一步推向高潮。尽管这个故事讲的只是在田纳西州的戴顿小镇的一个小法庭上发生的事,但它向读者转达了这样一个信息,这就是在现代社会里人们亟待需要思想和学术的自由。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. buzz ran through the crowd ... July day in1925: The sound of many people whispering and talking excitedly in low tones spread among people as I went to my seat in the court which was crowded with people. 注意本句中使用的三个词 buzz, packed, sweltering 把法庭上的人多闷热和人群的躁动表现得生动形象。

2. "Don't worry, son ... for the court to open": son 在这里是长者对晚辈的一种爱称。We'll show them a few tricks: we have some clever and unexpected tricks and we'll surprise them in the trial. 我们会有让他们意想不到的办法,即"让他们尝试我们的厉害。" reassuring arm 直译过来是"安慰的手臂",实际上是指这种安慰的方式,这是移就修辞手法的使用。这句中 court 是指 trial。

3. More than one hundred reports ... a jury trial: on hand 意为 present, available (在场)。a jury trial 即 a trial that had a jury (有陪审团参加的审判)。

4. The case had erupted round my head: The case had come down upon me unexpectedly and violently. (这桩官司就突如其来地降临到我的头上。) erupt 是修辞用法,原意是"爆发",在本句中是指"突然发生"。

5. When I was indicted ... in U. S. history::When I was charged formally on May 7, I was the last one to expect that my case would grow into one of the most famous trials in U. S. history. least of all 英语意为 to an insignificant degree(最不,尤其)。snowball 在此是隐喻的修辞手法,原意是指"滚雪球",引申为"像雪球一样越滚越大",十分形象。

6. Our town of 1500 people had taken on a circus atmosphere: All sorts of activities were going on in the town and there was a kind of noisy holiday spirit there. take on 意思是 begin to have (the look of)(呈现出)。circus atmosphere 是比喻的用法,把小镇上的那种热闹气氛比作像看马戏表演一样。

7. Butlere was ... his native county: before his election 指的是他当选为田纳西州立法机构成员之前。had never been out of his native county 这句话的深层含义是说巴特勒这个人见识不多,因而目光短浅,心胸狭窄。

8. The presiding judge... mountaineer jedge: The judge in charge of the proceedings John Raulston, whose face flushed with rosy colour, said: "I am just an ordinary judge from the mountains."(审判长是约翰. 劳尔斯顿 。他脸色红润,操着地方口音说道,"我只是个普通的山区法官。") the presiding judge: 审判长。"I'm jist a reg'lar mountaineer jedge"具有浓重的美国南方口音,使人觉得此人粗俗,缺少教养。

9. In a trial ... Hays s Jew: 在这场宗教起着关键作用的审判中,达罗是一个不可知论者,马隆是一个罗马天主教徒,而黑斯是个犹太教徒。In a trial in which religion played a key role: 作者斯科普斯被控违反法律是因为他教授了与圣经的教义相悖的理论,而这个法律是原教旨主义者迫使州立法机构通过的,所以说在这场审判中宗教起着关键的作用。全句指出了控辩双方律师之间的宗教与非宗教的意见分歧。辩方律师不同的宗教信仰暗示了他们更加宽宏大量和更加客观。

10. That's one hell of a jury: That's on jury at all; that is a completely inappropriate jury. (这是个混账的陪审团。) one hell of (or a hell of) 是常见短语,指不同寻常之事物。

11. "He is here ... mighty strong combination: He is here because the lack of knowl-

edge and prejudice are widespread and impossible to control, and it is a very strong combination.（他为什么会被押上这个法庭。那是因为愚昧和偏见横行，而且这两者纠结在一起，势力强劲。）这一句中的 it 是指 the combination of ignorance and bigotry（无知和偏见的结合）。mighty 是美国俗语，意思相当于 very, extremely（非常，极其）。

12. Today it is the teachers ... the newspapers：Today the teachers are put on trial because they teach scientific theory; soon the newspapers and magazines will not be allowed to express new ideas, to spread knowledge of science.（今天是教师被指控，明天就该轮到杂志、书籍、报纸。）It 在句中指无知与偏见所攻击的对象。tomorrow 是修辞用法，指不远的将来。

13. After a while ... to the human mind：setting 意为"开始"。marching backwards（大踏步后退）在这里是反语（irony），因为 marching 一词的英语解释是 going forward for a great course（为某一伟大事业大踏步地前进），而在此句中意思恰恰相反，同样 glorious age of the 16 th century 也是反语，因为 16 世纪欧洲正处于黑暗的时代（the Dark Age）。

14. "There's some doubt about that," Darrow snorted："It is doubtful whether man has reasoning power", Darrow said in a contemptuous way.（"这话恐怕很难说呢。"达罗哼着鼻子说。）that 在此句中指的是 having reasoning power（有思维能力）。这句话是在挖苦那些原教旨主义者，暗示他们没有思维能力。

15. The Christian believes ... must have come from below：The Christians believe that God in heaven made human beings. But evolutionists think human beings come from the earth (or from lowly animals).（基督徒相信人来自天上，进化论者则认为人一定是来自地下。）布赖恩不甘示弱，反唇相讥。

16. The spectators chuckled and Bryan warmed to his work：Bryan was encouraged by the audience's appreciation of his sarcasm（讽刺）and became more enthusiastic.（旁听的群众忍俊不禁，开始咯咯地笑起来，布赖恩也就说得越发起劲了。）warmed to his work 是非常生动的表达方法。

17. In one hand ... for the defence：In one hand he waved a biology text and condemned those scientists who had come to Dayton to give evidence for me.（他一只手挥舞着一本生物学教科书，一边抨击着那些前来戴顿镇为我作证辩护的科学家们。）Brandish（挥舞，挥动）和 condemn（谴责）这两个词的使用让人感觉布赖恩就是上帝派来的使者。布莱恩的这句话和下一段话暗示：进化论来自魔鬼，而被告的支持者正在替魔鬼做邪恶的事。

18. "The Bible ... as part of a divine plan"：thunder, sonorous, organ 是隐喻的手法，都用来指布赖恩的嗓音——深沉、饱满、洪亮，给人深刻印象。牧师、布道者以及其他宗教领袖都刻意修炼成这种嗓音以感动他们的听众。expert 在这里有挖苦的意味。who come hundreds of miles 的深层含义是说这些千里迢迢赶来听审的专家们是

制造麻烦的人。句中 reconcile evolution with ... 是为了表明这些专家们要做不可能做到的事情。由此可看出布赖恩心胸狭窄。with ancestors in the jungle 英语解释是：with monkeys as their ancestors（把猿猴当祖先）。His 指 God's（上帝的）。整个句子充满嘲讽，其目的是为了撩起陪审团的宗教热情，以动摇辩方的信心。

19. Gone was the fierce fervour ... a prairie fire：Despite his eloquence, he was not as forceful and persuasive as he used to be.（往日布赖恩气势磅礴，如燎原烈火般席卷政坛的那股激情已无影无踪。）这是个倒装句，正常词序应为 The fierce fervour ... was gone. 句中 swept like a prairie fire 是明喻，指的是布赖恩参加竞选活动时到各地巡回演讲击溃自己的对手的情形。

20. "Mr. Bryan ... to politics"：Although Mr. Bryan was emotional and enthusiastic, he has been devoted to God and religion less than any other people because he has channelized most of his energy to politics.（布赖恩可不是唯一一个有资格为《圣经》辩护的人，"他说。"在我们这个国家，还有一些人将自己的全部生命都奉献给了上帝和宗教。而布莱恩先生却将自己的大半生充满激情地投入了政治生活。"）马罗的这句话讽刺布赖恩是一个政客。

21. When Malone finished ... surpassed that for Bryan：When Malone finished it was silent for only a very brief time and then there was an outburst of applause, greater than Bryan had received.（马隆发言结束时，法庭沉默了片刻，接着便爆发出雷鸣般的掌声，超过了为布莱恩发出的掌声。）a storm of applause 是隐喻，指掌声如"雷鸣般的"。hash 和 storm 形成了强烈的对照，增加了戏剧性效果。

22. one shop announced ... Everything-to-Wear Store：有个商店的招牌上写着"达尔文先生就在店里面"。（这是小达尔文服装店）。这是个双关语(pun)，可以有两种理解：破折号前的英文意思是"达尔文先生是对的，" 把整个句子连起来读，意思就变成了"达尔文先生就在店里面。"这是个有趣的文字游戏(play on words)。

23. The poor brute ... afraid it might be true：The poor ape shrank in fear when it realized that it might share the same ancestry with those irrational human beings.（这只可怜的动物双手蒙住眼睛，蜷缩在一个角落里，害怕人猿同源是真的。）brute 常用于贬义，指动物尤其是个头大的动物。从表面上看，记者是对那头大猿猴表示同情，而实际上是嘲笑原教旨主义者的愚蠢与无知。

24. More than 2000 spectators ... or gawked from windows：注意这一句中四个动词的使用，它们十分确切地表达了当时的情形，把前来旁听人的动作与神态刻画得惟妙惟肖。

25. Now Darrow ... for the defence：Now Darrow suddenly and unexpectedly presented his most advantageous tactic by calling Bryan as a witness for the defence in order to overwhelm his enemy.（达罗突然亮出了他的杀手锏——传布莱恩出庭做辩方证人。）to spring one's trump card 原指在某些扑克牌游戏中，一种花色的牌为主牌，主牌能胜过其他花色的牌。

这个短语在此是隐喻用法，意为“使出绝招”，“使出杀手锏”。

26. “His reputation ... throughout the world: People all over the world admitted that he was an expert on the Bible.（作为经学权威人物，他的名声是举世公认的。）达罗在这一句里使用了夸张的词，如：authority, through the world 故意将布赖恩捧得高高的，使其处于十分不利的境地。这是夸张的手法，有欲擒故纵的意思。

27. Resolutely ... to repel his enemies: With determination, he walked in a vigorous manner to the stand, carrying a palm fan as his weapon to drive his enemies back.（他手握一把芭蕉扇，如同拿着一把退敌的利剑似的，大步流星果敢地走向证人席。）作者把布赖恩描写得像一个即将投入战斗的士兵，手里的芭蕉扇就是他的武器。这个描写立即在读者头脑中形成一幅颇似堂吉珂德手持长矛向风车冲锋的十分生动可笑的画面。

28. “Victorious defeat”: Literally a defeat, but really something of a victory for the evolutionists because the very light sentence signifies the jury wasn't outraged at his “crime”.（“胜利的败仗”。）作者这里用的是矛盾修饰法（oxymoron）。

29. The oratorical storm ... passing years: The battle Darrow and Malone fought in the little court in Dayton drew attention all over the country. It brought changes in the U. S. and paved the way for the spreading of the concept that people should be allowed to express their ideas freely. Today free expression of ideas is accepted by most people. 此句绝妙地运用了隐喻的手法。作者先把法庭上的辩论比作风暴（storm），接下来用了一连串与气候有关的词或短语，如：blew up, swept like a fresh wind, its wake, climate 使整句前后呼应，生动形象。

V. 参考译文

震撼世界的审判

约翰·司科普斯

在 1925 年那个闷热难当的 7 月的日子里，当我在挤得爆满的法庭就座时，人群中响起一阵嗡嗡的议论声。我的辩护人是颇有名气的刑事律师克拉伦斯·达罗。担任主控官的则是口才很好的雄辩家威廉·詹宁斯·布莱恩，他曾经分别三次被民主党提名为美国总统候选人，同时也是促成对我进行审判的基督教原教旨主义运动的领导者。

几个星期之前，我还只是一个中学教员，默默无闻地生活在田纳西州山区一个名叫德顿的小镇上，而现在却突然变成了一个备受关注的审判中的当事人。在法庭就座，并准备充当我的证人的有以哈佛大学科特里·马瑟教授为主的十几位杰出的教授和科学家。到场的还有一百多名记者，甚至还包括一些广播电台播音员，他们居然要第一次现场直播庭审实况。就在我们等候法庭开庭的时候，达罗关切地搂着我的

肩膀小声地对我说："别担心，小伙子，会让他们领教到我们的厉害的。"

我来到这所德顿中学任职自然课老师，并兼任学校足球队教练。不久之后，这桩官司就突如其来地降临到我的头上。数年来，原教旨主义者和现代主义者之间的冲突一直在发展之中。原教旨主义者顽固地按照字面意义去理解《旧约全书》，而现代主义者则接受查尔斯·达尔文的进化论思想——一切动物，无论猿还是人，都是由同一祖先进化而来的。

原教旨主义在田纳西州有很强的势力，在他们的影响下，在不久前，州立法院还通过了一项法律。该法律禁止讲授任何有悖《圣经》上宣讲的上帝创造万物的理论。这项新法律显然是直接针对达尔文的进化论的。有位叫乔治·拉普利亚的工程师常和当地人辩论，驳斥这项法律。在一次辩论中，拉普利亚说，只要教生物学，任何人就不得不讲进化论的思想。由于我就是一直在教授生物学的，他们就把我叫了去作证。

"拉普利亚说得没错，"我对他们说。

"如果这样，那么你就违反了法律，"他们中的一位说。

"所有其他的教师也都同我一样，"我回答。"亨特所著的《生物学基础》里就讲到了进化论，而那恰恰就是我们的教科书。"

于是拉普利亚提议，"让我们把这件事提交法院判决吧，看看这是否合法"。

当我于五月七日被正式受到起诉时，谁也没有料到，尤其是我本人更是没有想到我的这件案子竟然会像滚雪球似的越闹越大，以至于成为美国历史上最著名的审判之一。美国公民自由联合会宣布，如果必要的话，我的案子将会被提交到美国最高法院审理，"以确保教师不会因为讲授真理而被关进监狱。"于是，布莱恩便主动地提出要协助州政府对我进行起诉，而著名律师克拉伦斯·达罗则马上表示愿意为我辩护。具有讽刺意味的是，在这次官司前，我并不认识达罗，但却见过布莱恩，因为在我念大学的时候，他曾经来校做过演讲。虽然对他所提的观点我并不敢苟同，但是我还是很敬佩他。

7月11日审判开始之际，我们这个只拥有1500人口的小镇呈现出一派看马戏般的热闹场景。大街两旁建筑物上彩旗飘飘，法院的三层红砖楼房周围的街道上突然冒出了许多东倒西歪的摊点，兜售着热狗、宗教书籍和西瓜。福音传教士们也搭起帐篷，主动向过往行人传教布道。附近山区的居民大多是原教旨主义者，他们也从四面八方，纷纷赶来为布莱恩呐喊助威，反击那些"外来的异教徒"。约翰·巴特勒就是其中的一个，正是他起草了那条反对进化论的法令。49岁的巴特勒是一位农场主，在被选为立法机构的成员之前，他还从未走出过自己出生的那个县。

审判长是约翰·劳尔斯顿。他脸色红润，操着地方口音说道，"我只是个普通的山区法官。"布莱恩是个胖老头。协助他起诉我的是他的儿子汤姆·斯图尔特，也是律师，而且是田纳西州年轻有为的首席检察官。除了68岁的精明老练的达罗之外，我的辩护律师还包括英俊儒雅、颇具魅力的43岁的达德雷·费尔德·马隆，以及文质彬彬、学识渊博、尤其擅长法学的阿瑟·伽非尔德·黑斯。在这场宗教起关键作用的审判中，达罗是一个不可知论者，马隆是一个罗马天主教徒，黑斯是一个犹太教徒。

我父亲也特意从肯塔基州赶来陪我共同面对这次庭审。

法官请来了当地牧师主持了开庭的祷告仪式，接着审判就开始了。陪审团共 12 名成员，有三位只读过《圣经》，其他的任何书没有读过，还有一位根本就目不识丁。正如我父亲愤愤然所骂的那样，"这真是个混账陪审团！"

履行完诉讼程序后，达罗站起来首先发言。"我的朋友首席检察官说约翰·斯科普斯知道他为什么被带上法庭，"达罗拖长着声音说。"我也知道他为什么会被押上这个法庭。那是因为愚昧和偏见横行，而且这两者纠结在一起，势力强劲！"

达罗在闷热的法庭上踱来踱去。"今天是教师被指控，"他继续说，"明天就该轮到杂志、书籍、报纸。用不了多久，就会出现人与人结怨，宗教与宗教相冲突的局面，直到我们大踏步地倒退到十六世纪那所谓的"光辉年代"。那时，如果有谁胆敢给人类带来智慧、知识和文化，就会被那些愚昧的偏执狂们绑在柴堆上活活烧死。"

他的话刚说完，就听到一个妇女出声地嘟囔了一句："这个该死的异教徒！"

第二天，控方开始传唤证人出庭。我的两个学生到庭，一边羞怯地对我笑了笑，一边向法庭证明说我教过他们进化论，但紧接着又补充说，他们的思想并没有因为我讲的那些东西而受到毒害。霍尔德·摩根，一个聪明的 14 岁的小男生，作证说我曾经跟他们讲过，人也是哺乳动物，就像牛、马、狗、猫一样。

"他没有说猫和人一模一样吧？"达罗问道。

"没有，先生，"那孩子说道。"他同我们说人是有思维能力的。

"这话恐怕很难说呢。"达罗哼着鼻子说。

证人作证程序结束后，布莱恩向陪审团起立陈辞。问题很简单，他说："基督徒相信人来自天上，而进化论者则认为人一定出自地上。"旁听的群众忍俊不禁，开始咯咯地笑起来，布赖恩也就说得越发起劲了。他一只手挥舞着一本生物学教科书，一边抨击着那些前来戴顿镇为我作证辩护的科学家们。

"《圣经》，"他扯开洪亮的嗓音吼道，"是不会被那些千里迢迢赶来作证的所谓专家学者之流排挤出这个法庭的。这些专家们来此地的目的无非是想证明主张人类祖先来自丛林的进化论和上帝按照天意，以主的形象创造出人类并把他们安排到这个世界上的看法完全是并行不悖、可以调和的。"

讲完这番话，他下巴翘得老高，眼中闪烁着光芒，听众席中立刻爆发出一阵热烈掌声，人们高呼"阿门"。但总让人觉得好像还是缺少了点什么。往日布莱恩气势磅礴，如燎原烈火般席卷政坛的那股激情已无影无踪，听众们觉得他们的这位英雄似乎并没有充分发挥出应有的雄辩的口才，给那些异教徒们以沉重打击。

达得雷·费尔德·马隆跳起来发言。"布莱恩可不是唯一一个有资格为《圣经》辩护的人，"他说。"在我们这个国家里，还有一些人将自己的全部生命都奉献给了上帝和宗教。而布莱恩先生却将自己的大半生充满激情地投入了政治生活。"布莱恩从水杯中喝了一小口水。马隆说话的音调随之变得越来越激动。他呼吁学术自由并指责布莱恩是存心要在科学与宗教之间挑起一场激烈争斗。

"真理是从不惧怕任何挑战的！"他大声说。"真理必胜！——这一点我们并不

害怕。真理不需要布莱恩先生。真理是永恒的、不朽的,它一点儿不需要依靠任何人为的力量去维护、保护它!"

马隆发言结束时,法庭沉默了片刻,接着便爆发出雷鸣般的掌声,超过了为布莱恩发出的掌声。但是,尽管马隆在同布莱恩的辩论中大获全胜,法庭还是决定不允许在座的科学家们为我作证。

休庭期间,我们发现戴顿镇的街道上挤满了陌生人,小商贩的叫卖声充斥着小镇的每个角落。有家商店的招牌上还有这样地广告:"没错——达尔文就在里面。"(这是小达尔文服装店)。有一位承包商人还租了一个商店的橱窗,用来展出一只猿猴。一些人便花钱进去观看,并且思考着着自己是否真有可能和它有什么渊源。

"这只可怜的动物双手蒙住眼睛,蜷缩在一个角落里,"一位记者这样写道,"害怕人猿同源是真的。"

H·L·门肯穿着短裤,一边吹着电扇,一边写着一些辛辣讽刺风格的电讯文稿。当地人不时议论着要把他驱逐出他们的小镇,因为他把他们都称作"乡巴佬"。22 名报务员一天工夫就拍发出 16.5 万字有关这次审判的电文。

由于天气炎热,加上担心老旧的法庭地板会因承受不住人群的积压而垮掉,审判改在法庭外面的枫树下继续进行。前来听审的有两千多人,有些人坐在长条木凳上,有些就蹲在草地上,或坐在停放着的汽车顶上,还有些人则从窗子里呆呆地伸长了脖子向外张望着。

接着,审判高潮到来了。迫于反进化论的法律条文的限制,控方不得不坚持《圣经》必须严格按照字面意义解释的立场。这时,达罗突然亮出了他的杀手锏——传布莱恩出庭做辩方证人。法官惊讶不已。"我们要他当证人是因为他是《圣经》研究专家,"达罗说。"作为经学权威人物,他的名声是举世公认的。"

布莱恩满心狐疑,揣测着精明老到的达罗到底在耍什么诡计,但他又不能拒绝这个挑战。多年来,他一直在讲授《圣经》,并围绕着《圣经》出版研究著作。早在反进化论法律实行以前,他就在田纳西州发起过反达尔文主义的运动。这时,只见他手握一把芭蕉扇,如同拿着一把退敌的利剑似的,大步流星果敢地走向证人席。

在达罗平静的套问下,他承认他对《圣经》字字句句深信不疑,人群对他激昂的回答报以热烈的"阿门"的喊声。

达罗念着《创世纪》里面的句子:"夜晚过去,早晨来临,这就是第一天。"然后他问布莱恩是不是相信太阳是在第四天被创造出来,布莱恩说他毫不怀疑。

"没有太阳怎么能有早晨和傍晚呢?"达罗问。

布莱恩缄默不语,擦了擦他秃顶上冒出的汗珠。人群里传出阵阵暗笑声,连一些虔诚的基督徒也在窃窃发笑。达罗一边把玩着他的眼镜,一面继续发问。他问布莱恩是否确实相信夏娃的传说属实。布莱恩对此予以肯定。

"那么你相信上帝为了惩罚那条蛇,便让所有蛇类从此以后变为爬行动物吗?"

"我相信那是真的。"

"那么你是否能告诉我们,在那之前蛇是怎样行走的呢?"

听众哄然大笑，布莱恩脸色顿时气得发青，说话变得粗声大气，盛怒之下手中的芭蕉扇也抖动起来。

“法官大人，”他说。“我这就回答达罗先生所有的问题。我要让全世界都知道这个异教徒正在利用田纳西州的法庭诽谤上帝……”

“我反对这种说法，”达罗大声说道。“我是在测试你的愚昧的想法，世界上没有一个有知识的基督教徒会相信你的那一套。”

法官用法锤制止了喧闹声，接着宣布休庭，第二天再审。

布莱恩一个人孤零零地站在那里。当观众纷纷从他身边挤过去争着和达罗握手时，我倒有些同情起这位昔日的雄辩斗士来了。

第二天中午，法庭要求陪审团对此案进行裁决。陪审团的全体成员退到草坪的一个角上，小声地议论了九分钟。结果，我被裁决为有罪，处罚是罚款一百美元并要自行支付诉讼费用。

达德雷·菲尔德·马隆称这次审判的结果是一个“胜利的败仗”。有几家南方报纸，出于对这位已经雄风不再的辩才的忠诚，称这次审判中我的被判有罪是布莱恩的胜利，并为之欢呼。可是布莱恩本人却黯然神伤，心力交瘁，审判结束两天后死在了戴顿。

学校又请我回去继续执教，我谢绝了。有几位特意前来为我作证的教授为我在芝加哥大学争取到了奖学金，我因而能够继续攻读自然科学。后来我成为一家石油公司的地质学专家。

那次审判已过去37年了。不久前，我第一次回到了戴顿。在我看来，小镇依旧，只不过在山顶上多了一所威廉·詹宁斯·布莱恩大学，俯视着山谷。

其他方面也有一些变化。虽然判我有罪时所依据的那条法律仍未废除，但在田纳西州已经可以讲授进化论的理论了。由克拉伦斯·达罗和达德雷·费尔德·马隆在戴顿的小小法庭上掀起的那场辩论，犹如一股春风，吹遍了美国的学校和立法机构，随之而来的是日益浓厚的思想学术自由的新气象。

（摘自《读者文摘》1962年7月）

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**：参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. **问答**

A. 课文内容问答：

1. Dayton, Tennessee is a little town in the mountains. This is a place where a clash had been built up between the fundamentalists and modernists. Fundamentalism was strong in Dayton. Many people are bigoted and ignorant, and many of them had never read any

book except the Bible, nor had they traveled outside their native county.

2. Before he got involved in the trial, he was a science teacher at a secondary school in Dayton, Tennessee. He was charged with teaching evolution and that was against the law.

3. The media reacted to the trial with a lot of interest and enthusiasm, and the trial was reported the world over. The reason why the media paid so much attention to the trial was because the trial was about the problem of intellectual and academic freedom and the result of the trial would affect the whole country, even the whole world.

4. The main argument of Darrow's opening speech is that teachers are brought to the trial because they teach scientific theory. This is absolutely wrong, because if it is allowed, there won't be intellectual or academic freedom and the whole society will be retrogressing to the dark age of the 16th century.

5. Byran's argument was that man is made by God in His image, and he believed in what was said in the Bible. Malone responded to his argument by saying that Mr. Byran is not the only one who has the right to speak for the Bible, because he has given most of his life to politics. The truth is eternal and always wins and needs no human agency to support it.

6. Henry Louis Mencken was an American editor and satirist. During the Scopes trial he wrote syndicated columns from Dayton for the Baltimore Sun.

7. Darrow's trump card was to call Byran as a witness for the defense. Byran knew that it was a trap, but he could not refuse the challenge. He had no choice but to fall into the trap.

8. Byran was an expert on the Bible and his reputation as an authority on Scripture is recognized throughout the world. It's out of everybody's expectation that Darrow would call Byran as a witness for the defense. Because of the wording of the anti – evolution law, the prosecution was forced to take the position that the Bible must be interpreted literally.

9. At last John Scopes was convicted guilty and was fined 100 dollars and costs. It was called "Victorious defeat" because though at last John Scopes was convicted guilty, the battle Darrow and Malone fought in the little court drew the attention of the people all over the country. It brought changes in the U. S. and paved the way for the spreading of the concept that people should be allowed to express their ideas freely. I think John Scopes won the case. Because evolution is taught in Tennessee and the trail brought a new climate of intellectual and academic freedom which would push the whole society forwards to a brighter future.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. "Don't worry, young man, we'll do a few things to outwit the prosecution."

2. I was suddenly engulfed by the whole affair.

3. I was the last one to expect that my case would develop into one of the most famous trails in American history.

4. "This is a completely inappropriate jury, too ignorant and partial."

5. Today the teachers are put on trial because they teach scientific theory; soon the newspapers and magazines will not be allowed to express new ideas, to spread knowledge of science.

6. "It is doubtful whether man has reasoning power," said Darrow sarcastically, scornfully.

7. …accused Bryan of demanding that a life or death struggle be fought between science and religion.

8. People paid in order to have a look at the ape and to consider carefully whether apes and humans could have a common ancestry.

9. Darrow surprised everyone by asking for Bryan as a witness for Scopes which was a brilliant idea.

10. Darrow had gotten the best of Bryan, who looked helplessly lost and pitiable as everyone ignored him and rushed past him to congratulate Darrow. When I saw this, I felt sorry for Bryan.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. on hand: present, available

2. master: teacher; master as a term for teacher is outdated in the U. S.

3. squarely: directly

4. stand: a small often outdoor shop or place for showing things
   hot dog: a cooked sausage in a bun, sometimes seen as a symbol of American culture

5. florid-faced: face flushed with rosy color; ruddy face

6. steeped in: immersed; thoroughly familiar with

7. warm: became more enthusiastic, animated

8. thundered: shouted loudly

9. reconcile: find agreement between; make (arguments, ideas etc.) compatible

10. volume: (degree of) fullness or loudness of sound

11. hawker: a person who peddles goods in the streets by shouting
    wares: kinds of goods that a store, merchant, peddler, etc. has to sell

12. cost: in a trail, the person (party) losing the case has to pay lawyers fees for both sides

13. on the books: recorded, listed, not cancelled

B.

1. a reassuring arm: in a reassuring manner, a friendly gestures to put John at ease, since the arm can't be reassuring

2. my head: person, me

3. marching backwards to the glorious age: retrogressing to the dark age of the 16th century, expressed in an ironical tone

4. There is some doubt about that: it is doubtful if man has reasoning power

5. Game from below: Christians believe that God in heaven made human beings but evolutionists think human beings must have come from lowly animals

6. fierce fervor; swept the political arena like a prairie fire: despite his eloquence, he was not as forceful and persuasive as he used to be

7. scorched: burnt

hot breath of his oratory: his breath coming out heatedly as he spoke

8. a duel to the death: a life or death struggle to be fought

9. storm of applause: loud, noisy applause, like a thunderstorm

10. victorious defeat: literally a defeat, but really something of a victory because the very light sentence signifies the jury wasn't outraged at his "crime"

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. I did not anticipate that I would get involved in this dispute.

2. You must involve yourself in the work if you want to learn something.

3. Racial discrimination still exists in various forms in the United States though racial segregation violates the law.

4. The jury deliberated and brought in a verdict of guilty.

5. He thought the two views could be reconciled.

6. The spectators' hearts went out to the defendant.

7. When he read articles, he always had a dictionary on hand.

8. The construction of the dam got under way before any environment impact assessment had been done.

B. 英译汉:参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译:参见"参考译文"。

VI. 阅读,思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Five

The Libido for the Ugly

词汇注释

libido[li'baidəu] *n.* desire; psychic energy generally; specifically, a basic form of psychic energy, comprising the positive, loving instincts manifested variously at different stages of personality development 欲望

同义词:love, passion, lust

love 指对某物的深情、挚爱,可用于表示各种不同的关系或对象(如性爱、兄弟情、对工作之爱等);**passion** 指对某物有强烈的感情,通常这种感情可以压倒、战胜一切。**lust** 是表示一种欲望,特别是指寻求不受限制的满足感,即感官享受,特别是性欲的满足。**libido** 是心理分析法中的一个描述心理能量的术语,尤其指心理能量的一种基本形式,如本能的爱,这种形式在性格发展的不同时期显露出来。

express[iks'pres] *n.* a fast, direct bus, train, truck, etc. 快车

【例句】 an **express** train 直快车

roll[rəul] *v.* to travel in a wheeled vehicle (here an express train) 乘坐交通工具旅行

【例句】 I **rolled** northward to the capital on the express train last month. 上个月我乘火车北上去了首都。

appall[ə'pɔːl] *v.* to horrify, shock, dismay 惊吓,使震惊

【例句】 The public were **appalled** when they heard the president had been murdered. 听到总统被谋杀的消息公众惊骇万分。

同义词:**dismay**, **horrify**, **daunt**

appall 指使惊吓、使丧胆;**dismay** 指面临突然地令人惊吓、困惑或烦恼的事时,表现畏惧、缺乏勇气或手足无措;**horrify** 指使恐怖、使惊骇;**daunt** 暗指勇气的减少。

lucrative[ˈluːkrətiv] *adj.* producing much money; profitable; 有利可图的,赚钱的

【例句】 a **lucrative** business 赚钱的生意/ a **lucrative** income 一笔利润收入

hideous[ˈhidiəs] *adj.* frightful; horrible, hear, etc. ; very ugly revolting 骇人听闻的,非常丑陋的,可怕的

【例句】 a **hideous** face 丑恶的面孔

反义词:**fair**, **beautiful**, **lovely**, **pretty**

bleak[bliːk] *adj.* cheerless, gloomy, desolate, depressing 荒凉的,阴沉的

【例句】 The landscape was **bleak** and bare. 这里的景色非常荒芜。

同义词:**cheerless**, **dismal**, **dreary**, **desolate**

bleak 指与欢快、温暖、舒适、明亮和安逸相反的单调沉闷的特点;**cheerless** 强调缺少欢快,毫无希望;**dismal** 指极度阴森黑暗,令人压抑;**dreary** 指持续不断的阴沉、单调和疲惫令人丧气,需要欢快的事物;**desolate** 指荒无人烟,遭人遗弃,远离快乐舒适的事物。

forlorn[fəˈlɔːn] *adj.* uncared for; forsaken; miserable 悲惨的,不幸的

【例句】 The house looked old and **forlorn**. 这幢房子看起来又破旧又凄凉。

aspiration[ˌæspəˈreiʃən] *n.* an aspiring; strong desire or ambition, as for advancement, honor, etc. 热望,渴望

【例句】 the **aspirations** of the working classes 工人阶级的渴望

macabre[məˈkɑːbrə] *adj.* horrilble, causing fear; ghastly 令人毛骨悚然的,恐怖的

【例句】 a **macabre** story 一个可怕的故事

同义词:**ghastly**, **grim**, **grisly**, **gruesome**

macabre 指可怕的,往往指对于死亡和腐烂的恐怖;**ghastly** 用于使人联想到死而激起的恐惧或震惊;**grim** 指因为它苛刻的或残忍的样子或它自身恶劣的、残酷的本性;**gruesome** 和 **grisly** 均指对于残酷或缺乏人道的憎恨或反感。

abominable[əˈbɔminəbl] *adj.* causing discussed; loathsome 讨厌的,可恶的

【例句】 **abominable** weather 糟糕的天气

abominable treatment of prisoners 对犯人进行令人发指的虐待

同义词:**hateful**, **odious**, **detestable**, **obnoxious**, **repugnant**, **abhorrent**

abominable 用于形容令人可恨可耻厌恶之情,强调某事非常令人愤怒或厌恶,让

人感到十分可恨，有辱人格；**hateful** 用于形容引起极端厌恶或和憎恨，乃至敌意的事物；**odious** 强调形容引起厌恶、反对或不愉快的物体；**detestable** 指引起鄙视或痛恨；**obnoxious** 指令人反对或因其存在而给人带来困扰；**repugnant** 指由于令人讨厌而遭致极度的反对；**abhorrent** 指极度的憎恶。

反义词：laudable, enjoyable, delightful, charming, enchanting, lovable, adorable, attractive, sweet, endearing

filth[filθ] *n.* disgustingly dirt, etc. 肮脏，污物

【例句】Go and wash that **filth** off your hands! 去把手上的脏东西洗掉！

同义词：dirt, soot, grime

dirt 指任何一种不干净、肮脏的物体，如泥泞、灰尘或垃圾等；**filth** 用于表示令人厌恶的肮脏；**soot** 是一种黑色的物质，主要由不完全燃烧所形成的炭粒组成；**grime** 表示的是烟灰或粒状污秽，通常在物体表面沉积，很难清除。

allude[əˈljuːd] *v.* mention indirectly（间接）提到，涉及，暗指

【例句】He didn't mention your name, but I was sure he was **alluding** to you. 他没提你的名字，但是我确信他是暗指你的。

agonizing[ˈæɡənaiziŋ] *adj.* very painful 使人苦恼的，痛苦难忍的

【例句】an **agonizing** pain 令人坐立不安的痛苦

反义词：solacing, restful, comfortable

revolting[riˈvəultiŋ] *adj.* causing revulsion; disgusting; repulsive; offensive; loathsome 令人厌恶的

【例句】His leering glances were **revolting** to her. 他不怀好意的目光让她感到恶心。

同义词：offensive, loathsome, repulsive, repugnant

revolting 指由于对某人极度厌恶，每每看到或想起时，都会产生一种强烈的抵制或反抗心理；**offensive** 指令人厌恶或不快的感觉，暗示受到侮辱后的受伤心理；**loathsome** 指某事物肮脏低级到人们在看、听、感觉或处理时它都有着深深的厌恶心情；**repulsive** 指外表丑陋，可怕以至于人们远离或不愿接触；**repugnant** 指由于直接违反某人的本质、原则、品位而产生的厌恶心理。

monstrousness[ˈmɔnstrəsnis] *n.* being ugly and frightening, like a monster 奇形怪状

【例句】I'm surprised at the **monstrousness** of those rocks. 我为这些岩石的奇形怪状吃惊不已。

lacerate[ˈlæsəreit] *v.* injure (flesh) by tearing; hurt (one's feelings, etc.) deeply; distress 撕裂，伤害（感情等）

【例句】The sharp stones **lacerated** his feet. 尖利的石块划破了他的脚。

pretentious[pri'tenʃəs] *adj.* claiming merit or importance, dignity, or excellence, usually without justification 自负的，自命不凡的，自大的

【例句】a **pretentious** speech 夸夸其谈的演说

同义词：showy，ostentatious

pretentious 指所展示的外表与其真实价值、档次、能力不相符，通常用以批评此类人或事；**showy** 是常用词，指令人印象深刻的外貌，但暗示品位低下，缺少内涵；**ostentatious** 强调虚荣的展示，但没有卖弄和炫耀的意思。

反义词：unpretentious

downright['daunrait] *adv.* thoroughly; completely; really 彻底地，完全地，真正地

【例句】He was **downright** rude to me. 他对我实在太粗野了。

dormer['dɔːmə] *n.* an upright window in a sloping roof 天窗

leprous['leprəs] *adj.* of or like leprosy; having leprosy 麻风的，似麻风的，患麻风病的

rat-trap *n.* a device for catching rats 老鼠夹（子）

line[lain] *n.* railway line 铁路线

【例句】the Beijing-Guangzhou **line** 京广铁路线

decent['diːsnt] *adj.* satisfactory, fairly good, adequate 尚可的，过得去的，像样的

【例句】He made a **decent** record. 他成绩尚佳。

反义词：immoral，lewd，wanton

yard[jɑːd] *n.* a railway center where trains are made up, serviced, switched from track to track, etc. 调车场

【例句】the railway **yard** 铁路调车场

misshapen[mis'ʃeipən] *adj.* badly shaped; deformed 畸形的

【例句】Ballerinas often have blunted, **misshapen** toes. 通常芭蕾舞女的脚指头不尖，形状畸形。

uncomely['ʌn'kʌmli] *adj.* not pleasant in appearance; ugly 不美观的，不好看的

【例句】an **uncomely** landscape 不太秀美的景色

grime[graim] *n.* dirt, esp in a layer of surface 污秽；（表面的）灰尘

【例句】His face was covered with **grime**. 他的脸上满是污垢。

同义词：参见本课 filth

gully['gʌli] *n.* a narrow channel or hollow formed by running water 沟壑

chalet['ʃælei] *n.* a type of Swiss house, usually made of wood on a hill（瑞士的木造）农舍，山上小舍

highpitched[haipitʃt] *adj.* steep in slope said of roofs（屋顶）坡度陡的

【例句】a **highpitched** roof 陡峭的屋顶

dingy['dindʒi] *adj.* dirty-colored; not bright or clean; grimy 不明亮的，弄脏的

【例句】a **dingy** black street 一条暗黑的街

反义词：bright，brilliant，luminous

clapboard['klæpbɔːd] *n.* a lot of boards overlapping one below another, fixed to the outside wall for protection 护墙板，隔板

preposterous[pri'pɔstərəs] *adj.* contrary to reason or common sense; foolish or absurd 荒谬的，反常的，乖戾的，愚蠢的

【例句】That's a **preposterous** excuse! 那是一个荒谬的借口！

同义词：absurd，ludicrous，foolish，silly，ridiculous

absurd 指因不合事实或常理而可笑；**ludicrous** 指因不和谐或夸张而可笑；**preposterous** 用于形容公认可笑或滑稽的事物；**foolish** 指缺乏判断或常识；**silly** 和 **ridiculous** 均用于形容极端愚蠢而引起的乐趣或鄙视，**silly** 通常暗指荒谬愚蠢。

反义词：sensible，logical

pier[piə] *n.* wall between two windows 窗间壁

decay[di'kei] *v.* to lose strength, health, beauty, prosperity, etc. gradually; waste away; deteriorate 腐朽，腐烂

【例句】Sugars can **decay** the tooth. 糖会腐蚀牙齿。

cemetery['semətri] *n.* graveyard; land used for buring the dead 公墓，墓地，坟场

【例句】public **cemetery** 公墓

swinish['swainiʃ] *adj.* of or like a pig; vulger; coarse, etc. 猪(似)的，鄙贱的，粗俗的

【例句】**swinish** behavior 粗俗的举止

perpendicular[ˌpəːpən'dikjulə] *adj.* at a right angle to the horizon; upright 矗立的

【例句】The plumb line is always **perpendicular** to the horizontal plane. 铅垂线总是垂直于水平面的。

反义词：horizontal

precarious[pri'kɛəriəs] *adj.* unsteady; unsafe; unstable; risky 不稳定的，不安全的，危险的

【例句】His kingdom was still **precarious**; the Danes far from subdued. 他的王国仍未稳固，因丹麦人尚未臣服。

同义词：dangerous，hazardous，perilous，risky

precarious 的本义是不确定、不安全，因此不含受到威胁或处于危险之意；**dan-**

gerous 指由于接触或使用不安全导致危险，而应避免或小心处理的人或事或环境；**hazardous** 强调机率，指丢失、死亡或伤害的机率非常大的情况；**perilous** 强调危险即在眼前；**risky** 通常指某人在深知潜在危险的情况下自愿采取的行动。

反义词：safe, secure, steady, constant

streak[stri:k]　*v.* to make steaks on it; mark with streaks 使带条纹

【例句】The Indians used to **streak** their faces with paint. 印第安人过去常用颜料在脸上涂条纹。

eczematous[ek'semətəs]　*adj.* of itching skin disease 湿疹的

patina['pætinə]　*n.* substance on the surface of bronze or copper, caused by oxidation; usually green（青铜器上的）绿锈

sightly['saitli]　*adj.* pleasant to the sight; comely 好看的

【例句】**sightly** buildings 漂亮的建筑物

trimmings['trimiŋz]　*n.* parts trimmed off 修剪下来的东西，从大块上削下来的东西

【例句】hedge **trimmings** 篱笆修剪物

uremia[juə'ri:miə]　*n.* a toxic condition caused by the presence in the blood of waste products normally eliminated in the urine and resulting from a failure of the kidneys to secrete urine 尿毒症

loathsome['ləuðsəm]　*adj.* disgusting, making one feel unpleasant 厌恶的；令人讨厌的

【例句】a **loathsome** disease 令人讨厌的疾病

同义词：参见 revolting

反义词：engaging, inviting, fascinating, attractive

laborious[lə'bɔ:riəs]　*adj.* difficult; industrious; hard-working; taking a lot of time and effort 费力的，苦难的，勤劳的，辛苦的

【例句】He spent many **laborious** hours on the project. 这项工程耗费了他长期的艰辛劳动。

同义词：hard, difficult, arduous

hard 是一般用语，指不易做的、不易处理的、难了解的，侧重体力上的困难；**difficult** 指需要通过相当努力或一定的技艺、智慧、策略或勇气才能处理或解决的，侧重智力上的困难；**arduous** 指需要努力的、艰巨的；**laborious** 侧重指漫长的、令人疲倦的劳作。

反义词：easy, simple

incessant[in'sesnt]　*adj.* never stopping; lasting and endless; constant 不断的，不

停的

【例句】The child's **incessant** talking started to irritate her. 孩子絮絮叨叨的聊天惹恼了她。

同义词：continual, continuous, constant, perpetual, eternal

这些词都表示某事在很长的一段时间内反复地发生。其中 **incessant** 用于形容没有停止、不受打扰的活动；**continual** 主要限于描述间歇性地或每隔一段时间重复的东西，如：continual showers in the whole month（整个月内一阵接一阵的阵雨）；**continuous** 含有某事的发作在时间、物质或程度上没有间断的意思，如：continuous economic development（连续不断的经济发展）；**constant** 侧重于形容事件发生的稳定性、持续性以及经久不变的特点，如：the constant growth of population（人口的不断增长）；**perpetual** 强调既具有稳定性又具有持久性，如：perpetual money problems（永远解决不了的缺钱问题）；**eternal** 指永久性的，尤指那些看上去似乎在时间上没有开端和结束的事物。

反义词：intermittent, interrupted, temporary

decompose[ˌdiːkəmˈpəuz] *v.* to divide or break up into smaller components or parts; rot 分解，（使）腐烂，（使）腐败

【例句】You can apply heat to **decompose** organic compounds. 你可以加热来分解有机化合物。

同义词：参见本课 decay

whirl[wəːl] *v.* to move rapidly in circular manner or as in an orbit 使飞快地旋转

【例句】The wind **whirled** the leaves into the air. 风把树叶刮到了空中。

forsake[fəˈseik] *v.* desert; give up; abandon 抛弃，放弃（思想、习惯等），遗弃

【例句】You must **forsake** your bad habits. 你必须革除你的坏习惯。

同义词：abandon, desert, quit

abandon 强调完全、永远地遗弃，尤其是指遗弃以前感兴趣或负有责任的人或物；**desert** 强调违背誓言、命令、责任、义务等；**forsake** 指遗弃某人以前所爱的人或物，强调断绝情感上的依恋；**quit** 强调突然停止。

malarious[məˈlɛəriəs] *adj.* of a disease of fever with a symptom of shaking body, caused by the bites of mosquitoes 疟疾的，空气污浊的

hamlet[ˈhæmlit] *n.* a very small village 小村庄

aberrant[æˈberənt] *adj.* not socially acceptable; deviating from what is normal or typical 违反常规的，偏离常规的，反常的

【例句】**aberrant** behavior 反常的举动

uncompromising[ˈʌnˈkɔmprəmaiziŋ] *adj.* unwilling to change one's opinion; deter-

mined 强硬的；不让步的；坚决的

【例句】We should take an **uncompromising** stance during the peace talks. 我们应该在和平会谈中采取决不妥协的姿态。

inimical[iˈnimikl] *adj.* harmful to sth; not helping sth; hostile 不利于；有害的

【例句】a climate **inimical** to health 有害于健康的气候

nations **inimical** to one another 互相敌视的国家

反义词：friendly

ingenuity[ˌindʒəˈnjuːəti] *n.* creative; cleverness 独创力

【例句】The boy showed **ingenuity** in making toys. 那男孩在制作玩具方面有独创性。

grotesquery[grəuˈteskri] *n.* the state of being ugly and strange, usually frightened 奇形怪状，怪诞

【例句】The **grotesqueries** of the buildings shocked me. 我被这些奇形怪状的建筑震惊了。

retrospect[ˈretrəspekt] *n.* a looking back on the past, often with a different opinion 回顾，追溯

【例句】It was, in **retrospect**, the happiest day of her life. 回想起来，那是她一生最幸福的日子。

diabolical[daiəˈbɔlikəl] *adj.* of or like a devil; evil or wicked 邪恶的；魔鬼般的

【例句】a **diabolical** plan to destroy the world. 一个毁灭世界的邪恶的计划

同义词：diabolic, devilish, fiendish, demoniac, demonic

diabolical 更强调冷酷和诡计多端；**diabolic** 可与 **diabolical** 互换，但 **diabolic** 可用来指有特定特征的邪恶个体；**devilish** 通常指不正常的邪恶，也可指非人类或魔鬼般的破坏能力；**fiendish** 通常指极度残酷残忍；**demoniac** 和 **demonic** 通常指狂热过度，或生活中无法解释的、超人类的元素。

反义词：angelic

concoct[kənˈkɔkt] *v.* to invent a story 虚构

【例句】John **concocted** an excuse for being late and the manager believed him. 约翰编造了一个迟到的借口，经理却相信了。

insensate[inˈsenseit] *adj.* unable to feel or react 无感觉的；麻木的

【例句】She is **insensate** to the changing weathers. 她对变化的天气没有感觉。

反义词：sensible, sane, judicious

brute[bruːt] *n.* a large strong animal; a brutal person 畜生，笨蛋，粗野的人

【例句】The horse broke its leg, the poor **brute**. 那匹马跌断了腿，可怜的马。

abomination[əˌbɔmiˈneiʃən] *n.* something that is very offensive and causes disgust and hatred 令人憎恨的东西

【例句】They considered adultery as an **abomination**. 他们认为通奸是令人厌恶的罪行。

save[seiv] *prep.* except for, but 除……之外

【例句】She answered all the questions **save** one. 她除了一个问题之外，其余都回答出来了。

putrid[ˈpjuːtrid] *adj.* decaying or decomposing and therefore smelling very foul 腐烂的，腐败的

【例句】**putrid** food 腐烂的食物

pull[pul] *n.* preference, tendency 吸引力，倾向

【例句】The old sailor still felt the **pull** of the sea. 老船员仍能感觉到大海的牵引力。

yield[jiːld] *v.* to surrender or give into 放弃，投降，让步

【例句】The army **yielded** when it was suddenly attacked. 这支军队在受到突然进攻时投降了。

level[ˈlevəl] *n.* position, elevation or rank considered as one of the planes in a scales of values 等级，阶层

【例句】the local **level** of government 地方一级政府

deface[diˈfeis] *v.* to damage or destroy the appearance of sth 损坏……的外表

【例句】It is forbidden to **deface** an inscription. 禁止损坏碑文。

inadvertence[ˌinədˈvəːtəns] *n.* doing things without realizing it 不经意；无意

【例句】He failed the exam because of his **inadvertence**. 他由于粗心而考试不及格。

反义词：consciousness, awareness

obscene[ɔbˈsiːn] *adj.* connected with sex in a way that most people find offensive 猥亵的，淫秽的

【例句】n **obscene** publication 伤风败俗的刊物

同义词：coarse, gross, indelicate, vulgar

coarse 指由于举止和言谈不雅，不符合他人的审美或道德标准；**gross** 暗示缺乏文雅，近于野蛮；**indelicate** 意指缺乏雅致、得体或大方，接近于不得体或无礼；**vulgar** 强调不合适的举止、粗鲁和缺乏教养；**obscene** 强烈强调讨厌的淫荡和下流。

unfathomable[ʌnˈfæðəməbl] *adj.* too difficult to understand 难以理解的，深不可测的

【例句】**unfathomable** theories 难以了解的理论

obscure[əb'skjuə] *adj.* not easily perceived, in an inconspicuous position; hidden 朦胧的,模糊的,晦涩的

【例句】The moon was **obscured** by dark clouds. 月亮被乌云遮住了。

同义词:vague, enigmatic, ambiguous, equivocal

obscure 表示意思隐含,或者是因为表达不清楚,或者因为话本身就难以理解;**vague** 指由于缺乏准确性而导致模糊不清;**enigmatic** 指神秘的,谜一样的,常为挑战性的;**ambiguous** 指存在多种解释而产生的意义模糊。

反义词:clear, distinct, obvious

enigmatical[ˌenig'mætikəl] *adj.* mysterious and hard to understand 谜一般的,费解的

【例句】I didn't grasp the meaning of that **enigmatical** comment until much later. 直到后来我才领会那个谜一般评论的含义。

同义词:参见 obscure

dogmatic[dɔg'mætik] *adj.* being assertive on one's own idea and force others to accept it 教条(主义)的,武断的

【例句】When people are least sure, they are often most **dogmatic**. 当人们越不确定时,他们经常越固执己见。

同义词:dictatorial, arbitrary, doctrinaire

dictatorial 指独裁者专横独裁的行为;**arbitrary** 指按照自己的意愿随意使用权力;**dogmatic** 用于形容牧师所宣讲的不容质疑的教义;**doctrinaire** 指坚持某些抽象的理论或教义,而不考虑它们的实际运用。

edifice['edifis] *n.* a large and impressive building 建筑物,尤指大型建筑物

【例句】Their head office was an imposing **edifice**. 他们的总部在一幢宏伟的大厦里。

banner['bænə] *n.* a flag; a piece of cloth bearing an emblem, motto, slogan, etc. 旗帜,横幅,标语

【例句】school **banner** 校旗/banner **bearer** 旗手

mellow['meləu] *v.* to make or become mellow 使醇香,使柔美,使成熟

【例句】Apples **mellow** after they have been picked. 苹果摘下之后变熟。

depravity[di'præviti] *n.* the state of being morally corrupted 道德腐化;堕落

【例句】His behaviors of **depravity** are intolerable. 他的堕落是令人无法忍受的。

impossible[im'pɔsəbl] *adj.* not capable of being endured, used, agreed to, etc. because of being disagreeable or unsuitable; hard to tolerate 难以忍受的,令人讨厌的

【例句】an **impossible** situation 无法忍受的局面

an **impossible** person 十分讨厌的人

penthouse[ˈpenthaus] ***n.*** set of rooms at the top of a tall building 阁楼套房

lust[lʌst] ***n.*** very strong desire for sth 欲望，贪欲

【例句】A miser **lusts** for gold. 守财奴贪财。

同义词：参见本课 libido

etiology[ˌiːtiˈɔlədʒi] ***n.*** the scientific study of the causes of disease 病因学

term[təːm] ***n.*** conditions of a contract, agreement, sale, etc. that limit or define its scope or the action involved 合同或协议书的条件、条款、细则

【例句】If you agree to my **terms**—free meals and good wages— I will work for you. 如果你同意我的条件——免费用餐并给高薪——我就为你工作。

pathological[ˌpæθəˈlɔdʒikəl] ***adj.*** of pathology; of or concerned with diseases 病理学的

短语表达

border upon：to be like; almost be 相近，类似

【例句】His emotion is **bordering upon** hysteria. 他的情绪接近歇斯底里。

put down... to：be attribute to 归因于

【例句】I **put** Jane's moodiness **down to** the stress she was under. 我认为简由于所承受的压力而闷闷不乐。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. Mencken：Mencken, H. L. (1880—1956)："The Bad Boy from Baltimore", a newspaperman renowned for his tough, cynical style and wit, editor of *The American Mercury* and *The Smart Set*. He despised popular taste, refusing to follow the popular cry and coined the word "Booboisie". His *The American Language*(1919) is now a classic which reflects his belief that American speech is the unique product of a new environment. In a field where one can find many great names, but none stands for a livelier discourse and happier illustrations of its points than Mencken's. By the time of his death in 1956, in his beloved Baltimore, his contribution to the language is globally recognized.

亨利·路易斯·门肯(1880—1956),美国新闻记者,被称为"来自巴尔的摩的坏男孩",他因其犀利的文风和愤世嫉俗之志而闻名,随后成为《美国水星》及《时髦者》杂志的编辑。他鄙视大众品位,不愿迎合主流,并自创了 Booboisie(愚民阶级)来指代这一阶级。他所著的《美国语言》(1919)已成为了经典著作,在门肯看来美国语是新环境下的独特产物。虽然许多著名学者就这一领域做过研究,但没有任何人能与门肯生动的对话和快乐的观点阐述相媲美。1956 年门肯于巴尔的摩逝世,他对与语言的贡献已被全世界所承认。

2. Pittsburgh: a city in Southwest Pennsylvania. It is one of the most important industrial cities of America, and a center of rail and river transportation. Termed the "Steel City" or"Smoky City", it is the center of rich bituminous-coal(生煤)region, producing also natural gas, oil and limestone; a large part of U. S. steel and iron is produced here.

匹兹堡:美国宾夕法尼亚州的西南部城市。美国最重要的工业城市之一,铁路和内河运输中心。由于盛产生煤、天然气、石油和石灰而被誉为"钢铁城市"或"烟雾城市"。美国大部分钢铁均产自这里。

3. Westmoreland county: a county in Southwest Pennsylvania. Its county seat is Greensburg. It is a mining and manufacturing region.

威斯特摩兰县:美国宾夕法尼亚州西南部的一个县,政府所在地是威斯特摩兰,采矿业和制造业中心。

4. Greensburg: a county city of Westmoreland county, Southwest central Pennsylvania, 25 miles east southeast of Pittsburgh.

格林斯堡:威斯特摩兰县中心,美国宾夕法尼亚州西南部中心城市,位于匹兹堡东南部以东 25 英里。

5. Jeanette: a small city in Westmoreland County, 21 miles east southeast of Pittsburgh.

简那特:威斯特摩兰县一个小城市,位于匹兹堡东南部以东 21 英里。

6. New England: a region of the northeast United States comprising the modern-day states of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island.

新英格兰:美国东北部的一个地区,由现在的缅因州、新罕布什尔州、佛蒙特州、马萨诸塞州和康涅狄格州和罗德岛组成。

7. Utah: a state of the western United States. It was admitted as the 45th state in 1896. First explored by the Spanish in 1540, the region was settled in 1847 by Mormons led by Brigham Young. Salt Lake City is the capital and the largest city.

犹他州:美国西部州。在 1896 年它作为第 45 个州被纳入美国。在 1540 年首次由西班牙人探险,在 1847 年由布里格姆·扬格率领的摩门教徒在此地区居住。盐湖

城是此州的首府及最大城市。

8. Arizona: a state of the southwest United States on the Mexican border. It was admitted as the 48th state in 1912. First explored by the Spanish in 1539, the area was acquired by the United States in 1848 through the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. Phoenix is the capital and the largest city.

亚利桑那:美国西南部一个州,与墨西哥接壤。1912 年成为美国第 48 个州。西班牙人首次在 1539 年到此勘探,1848 年通过瓜达卢佩—伊达尔戈条约该地区划归美国。菲尼克斯为该州首府和最大城市。

9. Texas: a state of the south-central United States. It was admitted as the 28th state in 1845. Explored by the Spanish in the 16th and 17th centuries, the region became a province of Mexico in the early 19th century. Texans won their independence in 1836. Denied admission as a state by anti-slavery forces in the U. S. Congress, the leaders of Texas formed an independent republic that lasted until 1845. Austin is the capital and Houston the largest city.

德克萨斯:美国中南部一州,1845 年它被接受为第二十八个州。西班牙人于 16 和 17 世纪探索此地,该地区于 19 世纪早期成为墨西哥的一个省,于 1836 年赢得独立。美国国会反奴隶力量拒绝接受其为一州,德克萨斯的领袖们建立了独立的共和国直到 1845 年。奥斯汀是其首府,休斯顿是其最大的城市。

10. Newark: a city in northwest New Jersey.

纽瓦克:美国新泽西州西北部城市和港口。

11. Brooklyn: a borough of New York City on west Long Island.

布鲁克林:位于长岛西南部,为纽约市行政区。

12. Chicago: a city and port in northeast Illinois on Lake Michigan.

芝加哥:美国伊利诺伊州最大的城市,位于该州的东北部密歇根湖上。

13. Camden, N. J.: Camden, New Jersey; city in southwest New Jersey on the Delaware river.

卡姆登:美国新泽西州西南部的一座城市,位于特拉华河上。

14. Newport News, Va.: Newport News, Virginia; seaport in southeast Virginia on the James River at Hampton roads.

纽波特纽斯:美国弗吉尼亚东南的港口城市,位于詹姆斯河口的汉普顿海峡外侧。

15. Pullman: a railroad car with private compartments or seats that can be made up into berths (卧铺) for sleeping. It is so-called after the U. S. inventor, George M. Pullman (1831—1897).

卧车,普式火车:有单独车厢或卧铺的列车,以美国设计者 George M. Pullman 的

名字命名。

16. Iowa: a middle western state of north-central U. S.

艾奥瓦州:美国中北部的中西部州。

17. Kansas: a middle western state of north-central U. S.

堪萨斯州:美国中北部的中西部州。

18. Georgia: a southern state of southeast United States.

佐治亚州:美国东南部的南部州。

19. Bridgeport, Conn.: Bridgeport, Connecticut; seaport in southwest Connecticut on Long Island Sound.

布里奇波特:美国康涅狄格州西南部的港口城市,位于长岛海峡上。

20. Los Angeles: the city and seaport on the southwest coast of California.

洛杉矶:美国加利福尼亚州西南海岸的港口城市。

21. Privat Dozent: in German universities, an unsalaried lecturer paid only by his students' fees

德国大学里一种无薪的教师,靠学生的学费来当工资。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

This text is a piece of subjective, impressionistic or emotional description. One day on one of the expresses of the Pennsylvania Railroad, the author passes through the familiar land of Westmoreland county. But to his surprise, he finds it is appallingly desolate and agonizingly ugly. All the local houses are misshapen and shabby, the important buildings included, such as the crazy little church the rat-trap-shaped headquarters of the Veterans of Foreign Wars. The landscape itself is comely. In fact, it is due to the aesthetic(美学的) tastes of the local people who make the houses lean in a bizarre way. Even the house of brick has an eccentric and disgusting color of uremic yellow, which make the towns and villages the most loathsome ones. The buildings there are incomparable in design and color, which is concluded by the author after laborious research and incessant prayer. In Westmoreland, there exists a pull towards ugliness, which even borders upon passion. Such a state of mind deserves systematical psychological study. Ugliness is not due to poverty but to something innate in the American character—a love of ugliness for its own sake or, as the title says, the libido for the ugly.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This is a piece of subjective, impressionistic or emotional description. The main purpose of impressionistic description is to share with the reader a single dominant impression,

which may be a sense impression or an emotion. In writing emotional description, a writer tries to evoke in the reader his feelings about the subject; therefore he selects words rich in connotative meaning and appeals strongly to the senses. In this strong impressionistic or highly emotional piece of description, ugliness, as the dominant impression, stands out vividly and prominently.

Mencken is well-known for his bombastic(夸大的)style and acid(讽刺的)tongue and in this piece he seems to have excelled himself. Mencken doesn't just satirize the ugliness of Westmoreland, but he attacks the whole American race as well—a race that loves ugliness for its own sake, a race that lusts to make the world intolerable, and one which hates beauty as it hates truth. In his vitriolic(刻薄的)attack he employs the strongest words possible, words bordering upon the abusive. Besides, he makes full use of figures of speech profusely to create nauseating(作呕的)and dreadful images to reinforce his verbal attack, such as metaphor, simile, hyperbole, sarcasm, ridicule and irony.

这是一篇主观印象主义或带有主观情绪色彩的描写文。印象主义描写的主要目的是使读者同样获得一种单一的、占支配地位的印象。这种印象或许是感官印象，也可能是某种情绪。由于作者在写作时试图唤起读者对于主题的主观情绪，因此他的措辞富有内涵，并强烈激发读者的感官。在这篇强烈印象主义的、或带有强烈感情色彩的描述中，丑陋作为主导性印象非常鲜明地表现出来。

门肯以夸大其谈的风格和讽刺刻薄的笔触著称，并在本文中将这些特色发挥得淋漓尽致。门肯并不仅仅是讽刺了威斯特摩兰县的丑陋，而是转而批评了整个美国种族——一个因为丑陋本身而恋丑，强烈希望将世界变得乱七八糟的种族，一个仇视美如同仇视真理一样的民族。在他刻薄的批评中，他运用了带有强烈感情色彩的措辞，几乎等同于谩骂。除此之外，他还充分运用了大量的修辞手法，如隐喻、明喻、夸张、讽刺、嘲弄和反讽，来描述可怕恶心的形象，以此来加强批判的力度。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. The Libido for the Ugly: The strong urge to love things ugly. (恋丑僻。)这里 libido 一词使文章的主题带有科学的色彩。

2. boy and man... before: As a boy and later when I was a grown-up man, I had often traveled through the region. (从孩提时代到长大成人，我以前曾多次经过这里。)

3. But somehow... desolation: But somehow in the past I never really perceived how shocking and wretched this whole region was. (但以前我从没有感觉到它是如此的荒凉。)

4. Here was the very heart... activity: The region around Pittsburgh was one of the most important industrial centers of America. Here was the center of the most profitable and

characteristic American activity— industrial activity (manufacture and production of goods as distinguished from agriculture).(这里是美国的工业中心,是最赚钱、最具有美国工业特点的地方。)。

5. the boast of pride... earth: The United States, the richest and grandest nation ever seen on earth, both boasts about and feels proud of this center of industrial activity.(是令世上最富有、最伟大的美国感到骄傲和自豪的地方。)这里运用了夸张(hyperbole)的修辞手法,夸大了整个美国的富有与伟大,称之为史上最富有最伟大的国家。

6. and here was... joke: The scene that met the eye was terribly ugly and the whole region was so miserable and gloomy that it was unbearable. This dreadful scene (in a region which produces through its industry the wealth to make America the richest and grandest nation) makes all human endeavors to advance and improve their lot appear as a ghastly, saddening joke.(然而,这里却是令人害怕的丑陋,令人无法忍受的荒凉和孤独。在这里,人的热情会化作恐惧的玩笑,消失于阴沉之中。)

7. Here was wealth... alley cats: People could not imagine or calculate the amount of wealth that was to be found in this region. And in this same region there were such terrible and disgusting houses that even homeless, mongrel cats would feel ashamed to live in them. (这里的财富不计其数,多得几乎无法想像,但这里人的住所却丑陋得令人恶心,连街头的流浪猫都会觉得为此蒙羞。)

8. What I allude... in sight: What I refer to is that every house a passenger saw was ugly and painful and that every house a passenger saw was absolute disgustingly hideous. (我所说的并不只是脏。钢城的脏是不会令人惊讶的。我所指的是满眼的、整片整片的丑陋得令人厌恶的房子。)

9. From East Liberty... the eye: Every house a passenger saw when traveling by train from East Liberty to Greensburg, a distance of twenty-five miles, was so ugly that it offended and hurt his eyes.(从东自由镇到格林斯堡,全程二十五英里。在这二十五英里的沿线上,从火车上一路望去,没有一处景象不是让人看了眼睛不舒服和难受的。)

10. Some were so bad... pretentious: Some houses were especially ugly, and they were also important buildings, claiming some distinction.

11. one blinked... shot away: The ugliness of these houses was as gruesome as a face that has been shot and mangled.(它们在眼前晃过,就像是一个个脸被炸开了花的人在眼前晃动一样。)

12. a crazy... leprous hill: A foolish little church just west of Jeannette was built like a dormer-window on a hillside that was bare and looked as repulsive as the skin of a leper. (简那特西面的一所极其奇怪的小教堂,建在一个光秃秃的山坡上,如同一扇老虎窗粘在有一个长着麻风散鳞的秃头上。)

13. a steel stadium... the line: The headquarters of the Veterans of Foreign Wars was in another desolate town a bit further down the line than the church at Jeannette. It was a large and round oval structure made of steel and looked like a big rat-trap.(它是一座圆顶的钢架结构,看上去活像一个巨大的捕鼠器。)这里运用了明喻和嘲讽(ridicule)的修辞手法,将退伍军人总部的建筑比作捕鼠器,讽刺了当地建筑的丑陋和缺乏美感。

14. There was not... shabby: Every house was misshapen and every house was shabby.(放眼所及,找不到一幢体面的房子,找不到一幢不是歪歪扭扭,不是破破烂烂的房子。)这一句式里作者运用了双重否定(double negation)和重复(repetition)的修辞手法,用以强调突出 misshapen 和 shabby 两词。

15. The country itself... mills: The country itself is pleasant to look at, despite the sooty dirt spread by the innumerable mills in this region.(抛开充斥着密密麻麻分布的工厂制造出的烟尘这一点不看,这个地方本身的自然风景还是不错的。)not uncomely 是一个 litotes 和双重否定的修辞手法,意思是 quite comely or pleasant and fair to look at,即非常赏心悦目。

16. It is thickly... overcrowded: In this area a great number of people live close together but it doesn't give the impression of being overcrowded.

17. Obviously... the hillsides: There were no architects worthy of the honor or the high standards demanded of by its profession. If there had been such architects they would naturally have built Swiss-type houses which would lie low and clinging to the hillsides.(很明显,如果这儿还有具备那么一点职业责任感和荣誉感的建筑师的话,他们就会依照地形,在山坡上修建一些仿瑞士木屋式的房子。)

18. a chalet with... Winter snows: a chalet whose roof was steep in slope so that heavy winter snows would slide off easily.(这种房子房顶坡度大,有利于冬天自动清除屋面上的积雪。)

19. They have taken... on end: The model they followed in building their houses was a brick standing upright. All the houses they built looked like bricks standing upright.(他们把直立的砖块看成造房子的模型。)

20. This they have... low-pitched roof: These brick-like houses were made of shabby, thin wooden boards and their roofs were narrow and had little slope.

21. By the hundreds... decaying cemetery: Hundreds and thousands of disgusting houses cover the bare hillsides, which looked alike gravestones in the big and rotting cemetery. 这是一个明喻,将丑陋的房屋比作坟场里的墓碑。

22. on their low sides... mud: Since these houses are built on the hillsides and set on brick piers, one side is high and the other is low. The low sides make them look like pigs burying themselves in the mud.

23. And one and all... the streets: All the houses here are smeared with sooty dirt, and some paint which is not covered up by the soot looks like the dried-up scales formed on the skin by eczema.

24. But what brick:这是个省略句,完整句应该是:But what (horrible) brick (it was)!

25. When it has taken... or caring: When the brick is covered with the black soot of the mills it takes on the color of a rotten egg.(但天长日久,受到工厂排放的烟尘的锈蚀之后,就变得像无人问津的臭蛋一样。)

26. Red brick... dignity: Red brick, even in a steel town, looks quite respectable with the passing of time. Even in a steel town, old red bricks still appear pleasing to the eye.(如果使用红砖,即使在钢城,随着岁月的流逝,也会越发显得气派。)

27. Let it become... by the train: Even when it becomes absolutely black, it still appears pleasing to the eye, especially if the borders are of white color, with black soot in the hollow places and the protruding parts washed clean by the rain.(就算是使用黑砖,也会很好看,特别是用白石镶边的那种,天长日久,凹槽处残存着黑色,凸处被雨水洗刷干净,显得黑白分明。)

28. they have the most... mortal eye: Their towns and villages are the most detesting in the world.(他们的城镇和乡村就成了世界上最丑陋,最令人讨厌的城镇和乡村。)这里运用了夸张的修辞手法,夸张了威斯特摩兰县城镇的丑陋。

29. I award... prayer: I have given Westmoreland the highest award for ugliness after having done a lot of hard work and research and after continuous praying. I came to the conclusion that Westmoreland had the most loathsome towns and villages only after visiting and comparing many places not only in the United States but also in other countries and after constantly praying to God for guidance.

30. Safe in... Georgia: Traveling in a Pullman car, I passed through the gloomy, desolate villages of Iowa and Kansas, and the malaria infested hamlets of Georgia. 这里的Pullman是一个换称(antonomasia)的修辞手法,即用专有名词(proper nouns)替换普通名词(common noun)。

31. They are incomparable... in design: People can't find such terrible color and design in any other region. 这里作者运用了讽刺的修辞手法,incomparable一词的隐含义是非常出色,作者却用它来形容当地房屋糟糕的颜色和设计,有讽刺之意。

32. It is as if... of them: It is as if some genius of great power, who didn't like to do the right things and who was an inflexible enemy of man, employed all the cleverness and skill of hell to build these ugly houses.(仿佛是一个极端另类的巨人,对人类怀着深仇大恨,运用地狱般的邪恶力量,造出了这些丑陋无比的房屋。)这里作者运用了夸张和

反讽的修辞手法。

33. They show... diabolical: They show such fantastic and bizarre ugliness that, in looking back, they become almost fiendish and wicked. When one looks back at these houses whose ugliness is so fantastic and bizarre one feels they must be the work of the devil himself.（这些房子样子极其丑陋怪异，想起来，就像丑陋的恶魔。）

34. One cannot... in them: One cannot imagine that people inventing such ghastly buildings like that, and one can scarcely imagine people living in these houses and bearing and bringing up children in them.（人们不能想像单凭人类的力量如何能造出如此难看的东西来，也很难想像人类如何在其中栖居生活。）

35. Are they... in them: Are the houses so frightfully ugly because the valley is inhabited by a lot of foreigners who are stupid and unfeeling like animals and who have no love of beauty in them?（难道这里的建筑如此的丑陋是因为住在这个河谷中的都是那些外来的、麻木、没有感觉的，对美没有向往的人吗？）这是一个修辞性疑问句，用以表达强烈的感情，以引起深思。

36. But in the American... upon passion: But in the American village and small town, the appeal is always towards ugliness, and in that Westmoreland valley people have given it to this appeal eagerly or almost passionately.（但在美国的村庄和城镇，总有一股崇尚丑陋的力量，特别是在威斯特摩兰河谷地区，人们对崇尚丑陋已经有了超乎寻常的热情。）这里作者运用了讽刺的修辞手法。

37. It is incredible... of horror: It is hard to believe that people built such horrible houses just because they did not know what beautiful houses were like.（单纯的无知居然造就了这样恐怖之笔，这真实令人难以置信。）这里作者运用了讽刺和反讽的修辞手法。

38. On certain levels... for the beautiful: People in certain strata of American society seem definitely to hunger after ugly things; while in other less Christian strata, people seem to long for things beautiful.（在美国，某些阶层确实有着一种恋丑之僻，另一些不怎么虔诚的基督教信徒阶层还有着一种尚美之心。）

39. It is impossible... of the manufacturers: It is impossible to attribute the wallpaper that makes the average American home of the lower middle class look so ugly to mere oversight, or to the indecent humor of the manufacturers. The wallpaper that makes the average American home of the middle class look so ugly could not have been chosen unintentionally or put up through oversight nor were they produced by manufacturers with an indecent sense of humor.（那些墙纸将一般美国中下层阶级的家庭装饰得丑陋不堪，这不能怪选购者的漫不经心，也不能怪制造商的那些伤风败俗的玩笑。）

40. They meet... demands: These ugly designs, in some way that people cannot un-

derstand, satisfy the hidden and unintelligible demands of this type of mind.(它们用某种难以理解的方式迎合了某些人令人厌恶,难以明示的需求。)

41. But they chose... depravity: They chose, fully understanding what they were doing, this horrible house made of clapboard and then let it deteriorate to this present shocking, sinful condition.(他们却精心选择了这座由泥墙垒起来的令人恐怖的建筑,选好之后,又任由它变得这么一副破烂不堪的样子。)

42. They like it... offend them: They like things ugly and do not know what is beautiful. If one were to put a beautiful building like the Parthenon there, they would be offended. 这里作者运用了讽刺的修辞手法,对当地人对美的欣赏品位大加嘲讽。

43. In precisely... choice: The authors of the round oval structure that was like a rat-trap that I mentioned before also made a deliberate choice fully knowing what they were doing.(同样地,前面提到的像捕鼠器形状一样的钢架运动场的建造者们也是特意选择这种样式的。)

44. they made it... on top of it: They put a penthouse on top of it, painted in a bright, conspicuous yellow color and thought it looked perfect but they only managed to make it absolutely intolerable.(他们又不可思议地在房顶上盖了一个小阁楼,并刷上引人注目的黄色油漆,这在他们看来,是更加完美的设计。)

45. The effect is that... eye: The effect of the ugly rat-trap stadium with an impossibly yellow penthouse is similar to a fat woman with a black eye because of a sharp blow or contusion. 这里作者运用了隐喻的修辞手法,将带有黄色屋顶的捕鼠器式的运动场比作有一只乌青眼的肥胖女人。

46. It is that... grinning: It is as if a puritanical, sombrefaced religious man is laughing broadly. 这里作者同样也运用了隐喻的修辞手法,将不和谐、令人难以忍受的建筑风格比作令人不解的长老会牧师的微笑。

47. Its habitat... states: The place where this psychological attitude is found in the United States.(这种心理的发源地在美国。)

48. Out of... hates truth: From the intermingling of different nationalities and races in the United States emerges the American race which hates beauty as strongly as it hates truth.(这个大熔炉炼就了一个既仇视真理,又痛恨美丽的种族。)

49. it arises... act of God: The birth and development of this madness is governed by the scientific laws of biology and not due to some supernatural act of god.(它不仅仅是上帝创造出来的,更是按照生物学的规律产生和丰富、发展起来的。)

50. What precise... laws: What are the conditions or requirements set forth by those laws?(那么,准确地说,那些规律到底是什么呢?)

V. 参考译文

恋丑僻

H·L·门肯

数年前的一个冬天，我搭乘宾州铁路公司的直快列车从匹兹堡出发，一路东进，在威斯特摩兰县的煤镇和钢镇之中穿行了一个多小时。这个地方，我很熟悉。从孩提时代到长大成人，我以前曾多次经过这里。但以前我从没有感觉到它是如此的荒凉。这里是美国的工业中心，是最赚钱、最具有美国工业特点的地方，是令世上最富有、最伟大的美国感到骄傲和自豪的地方，然而，这里却是令人害怕的丑陋，令人无法忍受的荒凉和孤独。在这里，人的热情会化作恐惧的玩笑，消失于阴沉之中。这里的财富不计其数，多得几乎无法想像，但这里人的住所却丑陋得令人恶心，连街头得流浪猫都会觉得为此蒙羞。

我所说的并不只是脏。钢城的脏是不会令人惊讶的。我所指的是满眼的、整片整片的丑陋得令人痛苦厌恶的房子。从东自由镇到格林斯堡，全程二十五英里。在这二十五英里的沿线上，从火车上一路望去，没有一处景象不是让人看了眼睛不舒服和难受的。有些房子真是糟糕透顶，特别是那些夸张、炫耀的教堂，商店，仓库等，它们在眼前晃过，就像是一个个脸被炸开了花的人在眼前晃动一样。有一些可怕的丑陋形象现在还记忆犹新：简那特西面的一所极其奇怪的小教堂，建在一个光秃秃的山坡上，如同一扇老虎窗粘在有一个长着麻风散嶙的秃头上；海外退伍军人总部，设在离简那特不远的另一个荒凉的小镇上，它是一座圆顶的钢架结构，看上去活像一个巨大的捕鼠器。但我回忆里印象最深的还是绵延不断的丑陋这种总体形象。从匹兹堡到格林斯堡火车调车场，放眼所及，找不到一幢体面的房子，找不到一幢不是歪歪扭扭，不是破破烂烂的房子。

抛开充斥着密密麻麻分布的工厂制造出的烟尘这一点不看，这个地方本身的自然风景还是不错的。从地形上看，这是一条狭窄的河谷，两边的山坡陡峭地绵延至山顶部。这里人口密集，但不是特别拥挤。这儿有大片的建筑空间，即使是在较大的城镇上，也很少见大片大片密集的街区。几乎所有的房子，无论大小，四周都还有空地。很明显，如果这儿还有具备那么一点职业责任感和荣誉感的建筑师的话，他们就会依照地形，在山坡上修建一些仿瑞士木屋式的房子，这种房子房顶坡度大，有利于冬天自动清除屋面上的积雪，当然，更重要的是，房子要依照地形，建在低处，宽度大于高度。可是，实际上，他们都建了些什么样的房子呢？他们把直立的砖块看成造房子的模型，用肮脏的纸板围成了房子的泥墙，再在上面戴上一个又窄又矮的屋顶。整个房子架在单薄滑稽的砖墙上。成百上千座这种丑陋的房子盘踞在光秃秃的山坡上，就像树在一个

硕大腐朽的坟场中的一座座墓碑。在高的一边,房子有三四层,甚至五层,矮的一边就好像猪栏一样伏在泥中。墙壁直立的房子不到五分之一,大多数是东倒西歪,摇摇晃晃地架在地基上。每座房子上都是斑斑点点的污痕,污痕之中隐约可见湿疹痂一样的油漆。

偶尔也可以看到那么一、两座砖砌的房子。但那都是些什么样的砖啊?新砖墙的颜色像煎蛋,但天长日久,受到工厂排放的烟尘的锈蚀之后,就变得像无人问津的臭蛋一样。有必要使用那么跳跃的颜色吗?这如同把所有的房子都造成直立式的样子一样毫无必要。如果使用红砖,即使在钢城,随着岁月的流逝,也会越发显得气派。就算是使用黑砖,也会很好看,特别是用白石镶边的那种,天长日久,凹槽处残存着黑色,凸处被雨水洗刷干净,显得黑白分明。然而,在威斯特摩兰,他们却喜欢那种难看的尿黄色。结果是,他们的城镇和乡村就成了世界上最丑陋,最令人讨厌的城镇和乡村。

我将威斯特摩兰称为世上最丑陋和令人讨厌的县是经过仔细的考察研究和不断祈祷的。我认为,我已经见识过世界上所有丑陋的城镇,它们全都在美国。我见过新英格兰的充斥着腐化气息的工业重镇,也见过位于犹他州、亚利桑那州和德克萨斯州的沙漠城市。我熟悉纽瓦克、布鲁克林和芝加哥的后街小巷,并曾经坐着普式火车对新泽西州的卡姆登和弗吉尼亚州的纽波特纽斯作过科学的勘察。我曾经多次往返于爱荷华州和堪萨斯州那些阴郁荒凉,被上帝遗弃的城镇和佐治亚州那些疟疾横行的海边小渔村。我曾经去过康涅狄格州的布里奇波特,也曾去过洛杉矶。但世界上没有任何一个地方,无论美国国内还是国外,其丑陋程度能够跟杂乱堆积在宾州铁路从匹兹堡调车场到格林斯堡沿线上的村庄相比。无论是在颜色方面,还是在样式方面,这里的丑是无与伦比的。仿佛是一个极端另类的巨人,对人类怀着深仇大恨,运用地狱般的邪恶力量,造出了这些丑陋无比的房屋。这些房子样子极其丑陋怪异,想起来,就像丑陋的恶魔。难以想像,单凭人类的力量怎么能造出如此难看的东西来呢?更难以想像,有人类居然生活在如此的丑陋之中。

难道这里的建筑如此的丑陋是因为住在这个河谷中的都是那些外来的、麻木、没有感觉的,对美没有向往的人吗?如果是这样,那么他们为什么没有在自己的家乡造出同样丑陋的东西来呢?事实上,在整个欧洲,我们都找不到像这类丑陋的建筑——也许在英国某些破乱腐败地区可能会有。几乎整个欧洲大陆都找不到一个像这么样丑陋的村庄。农民,即使是很穷的农民,都会尽力将他们的房子修建得幽雅舒适,甚至在西班牙也是这样。但在美国的村庄和城镇,总有一股崇尚丑陋的力量,特别是在威斯特摩兰河谷地区,人们对崇尚丑陋已经有了超乎寻常的热情。单纯的无知居然造就了这样的恐怖之笔,这真是令人难以置信。

在美国,某些阶层确实有着一种恋丑之僻,另一些不怎么虔诚的基督教信徒阶层还有着一种尚美之心。那些墙纸将一般美国中下层阶级的家庭装饰得丑陋不堪,这不能怪选购者的漫不经心,也不能怪制造商的那些伤风败俗的玩笑。很明显,有些人就

是喜欢墙纸上的那种可怕的图案。它们用某种难以理解的方式迎合了某些人令人厌恶，难以明示的需求。他们的品味虽然难以琢磨，但实际上，也就像对教条主义的神学和埃德加·A·格斯特的诗歌的迷恋一样，平凡而泛滥。

因此，我怀疑（虽然老实说我并不确切知道）威斯特摩兰县的那么多诚实的人们，特别是其中的那些地道的美国人，实际上是真心地喜欢他们的房子，甚至为他们的房子感到自豪。因为他们花同样多的钱本可以修出更好的房屋，但他们却宁可要现在这样的房子。海外战争退伍军人组织肯定有权自主选择它的总部地址，事实上铁路沿线有很多闲置未用的房子，而其中的一些房子比他们的大楼要漂亮得多。实际上，他们本来也可以自己建一幢更好的建筑。但是，他们却精心选择了这座由泥墙垒起来的令人恐怖的建筑，选好之后，又任由它变得这么一副破烂不堪的样子。他们就是喜爱这种样子。如果在它旁边修建起一个像巴特农神殿那么漂亮的房子，他们一定会很恼火。同样地，前面提到的像捕鼠器形状一样的钢架运动场的建造者们也是特意选择这种样式的。在认真设计、修建好运动场之后，他们又不可思议地在房顶上盖了一个小阁楼，并刷上引人注目的黄色油漆，这在他们看来，是更加完美的设计。这简直和一个肥胖的女人再加上一副黑眼圈，或者是一位长老会教友突然咧嘴而笑一样，令人无法忍受，但他们就喜欢这样的效果。

这里隐藏着一个被心理学家忽视了的问题：恋丑僻，一种将世界变得丑陋不堪的欲望。这种癖好产生的发源地在美国。这个大熔炉炼就了一个既仇视真理，又痛恨美丽的种族。这种怪僻产生的病源值得进一步研究。这种怪僻之后必然有其成因；它不仅仅是上帝创造出来的，更是按照生物学的规律产生和丰富、发展起来的。那么，准确地说，那些规律到底是什么呢？为什么它们在美国比在任何其它地方发展得更厉害呢？这个问题还是让那些诚实的大学无薪教师从社会病理学的角度把它弄清楚吧。

（选自卡罗琳·什罗迪斯，克里福德·A·约瑟夫森，
詹姆斯·R·威尔逊编《修辞读物》）

习题解析

I. 口语展示：参见“背景介绍”。

II. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. All of the houses were ugly. The houses looked like bricks set on end（竖立着）. They were made of clapboards, with narrow, low-pitched roofs. And the whole house is set upon thin brick piers. All the houses are streaked with grime and many of them are not even perpendicular but they lean this way and that. And they have the most loathsome color. The

color of a fried egg when new and after some time they take on the color of uremic yellow. The writer suggests a chalet-type house for the hillsides. A chalet with high-pitched roof, to throw off the heavy winter snows, but still essentially a low and clinging building, wider than it is tall.

2. The author thinks the houses in the European countries are normal, and there is scarcely an ugly village on the whole Continent. No, Mencken's description of the immigrant is not fair, but with personal prejudice.

3. Mencken doesn't believe that mere ignorance is the reason for such ugliness. He believes on certain levels of American race, there seems to be a greater passion for the ugly. Ugliness seems to give some sort of satisfaction to this type of mind. Mencken, however, doesn't understand why they have such tastes.

4. Mencken thinks dogmatic theology and the poetry of Edgar A. Guest is enigmatical and yet common.

5. The author doesn't just berate and revile the ugliness of Westmoreland; he attacks the whole American race.

6. He suggests a deeper study on the cause of the libido for ugly from the perspective of psychology and pathological sociology. No, he is only implying in a sarcastic tone, that he doesn't understand why so many Americans seem to love ugliness for its own sake. He doesn't understand the psychology of these people who lust to make the world intolerable. He thinks these people have a diseased mind.

7. Open-ended question.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. This dreadful scene makes all human endeavors to advance and improve their lot appear as a ghastly, saddening joke. As a boy and later when I was a grownup man, I had often traveled through the region.

2. The country itself is pleasant to look at, despite the sooty dirt spread by the innumerable mills in this region.

3. The model they followed in building their houses was a brick standing upright.

4. These brick-like houses were made of shabby, thin wooden boards and their roofs were narrow and had little slope.

5. When the brick is covered with the black soot of the mills it takes on the color of a rotten egg.

6. Red brick, even in a steel town, looks quite respectable with the passing of time.

7. I have given Westmoreland the highest award for ugliness after having done a lot of hard work and research and after continuous praying.

8. They show such fantastic and bizarre ugliness that, in looking back, they become almost fiendish and wicked.

9. It is hard to believe that people built such horrible houses just because they did not know what beautiful houses were like.

10. People in certain strata of American society seem definitely to hunger after ugly things; while in other less Christian strata, people seem to long for things beautiful.

11. These ugly designs, in some way that people cannot understand, satisfy the hidden and unintelligible demands of this type of mind.

12. The place where this psychological attitude is found is the United States.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. express: a fast, direct train, making few stops

2. roll: to travel in a wheeled vehicle

3. revolting: disgusting

4. downright: completely

5. yard: a railway center where trains are made up, serviced, switched from track to track, etc.

6. streak: to mark with a line or long, thin mark

7. sightly: pleasant to the sight

8. Pullman: a railroad car with private compartments or seats that can be made up into berths for sleeping.

9. save: except

10. pull: drawing force, appeal

11. yield: to surrender, to give in to

12. positive: complete, absolute, out-and-out

13. put down to: to attribute to

14. impossible: not capable of being endured, used, agreed to, etc. because of being disagreeable or unsuitable; hard to tolerate

B.

1. profitable

2. dwellings, homes

3. refer to

4. wound, hurt

5. absurd, ridiculous

6. xactly upright, vertical

7. unsafely, insecurely

8. unfriendly, hostile

9. insensitive, without feelings

10. hateful or disgusting things

11. carelessness, oversight

12. building

13. causes

C.

1. *Dirt* refers to any unclean or soiling matters, as mud, dust, dung, trash, etc. *Filth* is applied to that which is disgustingly dirty. Soot is a black substance consisting chiefly of carbon particles formed by the incomplete combustion of burning matter. *Grime* suggests soot or granular dirt deposited on or ingrained in a surface.

2. *Love* implies intense fondness or deep devotion and may apply to various relationships or objects (sexual love, brotherly love, love of nature, etc.). *Passion* usually implies a strong emotion that has an empowering or compelling effect (e.g. His passions overcame his reason.) *Lust* is a desire, especially as seeking unrestrained gratification, to gratify the senses, especially sexual desire. *Libido* is a psychoanalytic term describing psychic energy generally; or specifically a basic form of psychic energy, comprising the positive, loving instincts and manifested variously at different stages of personality development.

D.

hideous, horrid, horrible, frightful, dreadful, terrible, awful, repulsive, repugnant, ghastly, revolting

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. The cultural diversity of Shanghai Expo is the richest ever seen on earth.

2. The poverty of that region is beyond imagination.

3. Don't ask him about his father's death in the car accident; don't even allude to it.

4. On the vast expanse of wilderness there is not a single tree in sight.

5. Despite severe natural catastrophe, people in the stricken areas still believe in love

and the future.

6. On the whole your report is well-written, but there is still plenty of room for improvement.

7. I've made up my mind not to buy a car as I prefer to ride a bike in the city.

8. Many children's love of the Internet games borders upon craziness.

B. 英译汉：参见“参考译文”。

C. 段落翻译：参见“参考译文”。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

（略）

Lesson Six

Mark Twain — Mirror of America (Excerpts)

词汇注释

idyllic[ai'dilik] *adj.* of or having the nature of an idyll; simple and carefree 田园诗般的,质朴宜人的,简单而美妙的

【例句】an **idyllic** holiday 恬静愉快的假日

cynical['sinikəl] *adj.* scornful of the motives, virtue, or integrity of others 愤世嫉俗的,玩世不恭的

【例句】They've grown rather **cynical** about democracy. 他们逐渐感到民主制度也不过如此。

obsess[əb'ses] *v.* to preoccupy the mind of excessively 使困扰,使着迷

【例句】The fear of death **obsessed** her throughout her old age. 她晚年一直受到死亡恐惧的困扰。

frailty['freilti] *n.* a fault, especially weakness of resolution, arising from the imperfections of human nature 品格上的缺点,短处

【例句】Our **frailties** are invisible, our virtues barren. (***Robert Louis Stevenson***) 我们看不到自身的缺点,而我们的美德却又十分贫乏。(罗伯特·路易斯·斯蒂文森)

tramp[træmp] *v.* to walk with a firm, heavy step; trudge 踩着脚行走

n. the act of **tramping** 徒步旅行

【例句】He **tramped** up and down the platform waiting for the train. 他脚步沉重地在月台上走来走去,等候着火车。

pilot['pailət] *n.* (nautical) one who is licensed to conduct a ship into and out of port or through dangerous waters(航运术语)领航员

confederate[kən'fedərit] *adj.* joined together by an agreement or a treaty 联盟的，同盟的

【例句】the **Confederate** States of America 美国南部邦联

guerrilla[gə'rilə] *n.* person engaged in fighting in small secret groups 游击队员

prospector[prɔ'spektə(r)] *n.* one who explores an area for mineral deposits or oil 探勘者，采矿者

starry-eyed *adj.* having a naively enthusiastic, overoptimistic, or romantic view; unrealistic 过于理想化的，不切实际的

【例句】He is completely **starry-eyed** about his new girl-friend. 他对这个新女朋友充满了美好的幻想。

acid-tongued *adj.* sharp, sarcastic in speech (说话)尖刻的

cynic['sinik] *n.* a person who believes all people are motivated by selfishness 愤世嫉俗者

navigable['nævigəbl] *adj.* sufficiently deep or wide to provide passage for vessels, 可通航的(河流、海洋等)

【例句】The Rhine is **navigable** from Strasbourg to the sea. 莱茵河从斯特拉斯堡入海这一段可以通航。

attest[ə'test] *v.* (fml) be or give clear proof of sth. 证明，表明

【例句】I can **attest** to the absolute truth of his story. 我可以证实他的话是千真万确的。

artery['aːtəri] *n.* a major route of transportation into which local routes flow 干线，要道

keelboat['kiːlbəut] *n.* (nautical) a riverboat with a keel but without sails, used for carrying freight(一种有龙骨的内河)运货船

flatboat['flætbəut] *n.* (nautical) a boat with a flat bottom and square ends used for transporting freight on inland waterways 平底船(用于在内陆河道上运送货物的平底方边船)

delta['deltə] *n.* a usually triangular alluvial deposit at the mouth of a river 三角洲

molasses[mə'læsiz] *n.* a thick syrup produced in refining raw sugar and ranging from light to dark brown in color 糖蜜，糖浆

cub[kʌb] *n.* (dated) a youth, especially one who is inexperienced, awkward, or ill-mannered(旧语) 毛头小子，年轻又无经验的人

【例句】You cheeky young **cub**! 你这莽撞的毛头小伙子！

cosmos['kɔzmɔːs] *n.* the universe regarded as an orderly, harmonious whole 宇宙

pilothouse[pailəthaus] *n.* (nautical) an enclosed area, usually on the bridge of a

vessel, from which the vessel is controlled when under way(船上的)驾驶舱

feud[fjuːd] *n.* a bitter, often prolonged quarrel or state of enmity, especially such a state of hostilities between two families or clans (部落或家族间的)世仇

【例句】The tragedy of Romeo and Juliet lies in their family **feud**. 罗密欧与朱丽叶的悲剧根源于两家世代的恩怨。

piracy[ˈpaiərəsi] *n.* robbery committed at sea 海盗行为,海上劫掠

lynching[ˈlintʃiŋ] *n.* execution without due process of law, especially to hang 处以私刑

phonographic[fəunəˈgræfik] *adj.* of a record player 留声机的

teem[tiːm] *v.* to be full of things; abound or swarm 充满,大量涌现

【例句】His head is **teeming** with bright ideas. 他的脑子里有许多聪明的主意。

flotsam[ˈflɔtsəm] *n.* vagrant, usually destitute people 流离失所者,无业游民

hustler[ˈhʌslə(r)] *n.* (slang) a prostitute; one who solicits and accepts payment for sex acts 妓女

thug[θʌg] *n.* violent criminal or hooligan 暴徒,恶棍

motley[ˈmɔtli] *adj.* having elements of great variety or incongruity; heterogeneous 混杂的,异质的

【例句】Most Ivy League freshman classes are chosen from a **motley** collection of constituencies ... and a bare majority of entering students can honestly be called scholars. (*New York Times*) 常春藤联合会的大部分新成员选自于五花八门的候选人集合体……而且有过半数的新生简直可以被称作学者。(《纽约时报》)

stagecoach[ˈsteidʒkəutʃ] *n.* a four-wheeled horse-drawn vehicle formerly used to transport mail, parcels, and passengers over a regular route 公共马车,驿站马车

epidemic[ˌepiˈdemik] *n.* the rapid, widespread occurrence of a fad, fashion, *etc.* (风尚等的)流行

【例句】Football hooliganism is now reaching **epidemic** proportions. 足球比赛中恣意闹事现在已达到愈演愈烈的地步。

flirt[fləːt] *v.* behave (towards sb.) in a romantic or suggestive way but without serious intentions 调情

【例句】It is embarrassing when they **flirt** like that in public. 他们在大庭广众之中那样调情,真让人难堪。

rebuff[riˈbʌf] *v.* to reject bluntly, often disdainfully 回绝,断然拒绝

【例句】Her kindness to him was met with a cruel **rebuff**. 她一片好心却遭到他冷酷的拒绝。

pickax[ˈpiːkæks] *n.* large tool consisting of a curved iron bar with sharp ends fixed onto a wooden handle, used for breaking up stones, hard ground, *etc.* 镐

hone[həun] *v.* to sharpen on a fine-grained whetstone 用磨刀石磨

scathing[ˈskeiðiŋ] *adj.* bitterly denunciatory; harshly critical 严厉的，尖刻的

【例句】The report was **scathing** about the lack of safety precautions. 该报道对缺乏安全预防措施一事严加指责。

sluggish[ˈslʌgiʃ] *adj.* displaying little movement or activity; slow 行动迟缓的，不活跃的

【例句】These tablets make me feel rather **sluggish**. 我吃了这些药片感到困倦无力。

sloth[sləuθ] *n.* (literary) aversion to work or exertion; laziness(文学用语)懒惰，懒散

astounding[əˈstaundiŋ] *adj.* amazing 使人震惊的

【例句】The figures revealed by the report are **astounding**. 这份报告透露的数字使人震惊。

notation[nəuˈteiʃən] *n.* a system of figures or symbols used in a specialized field to represent numbers, quantities, tones, or values 记号，符号

【例句】develop a new and simpler **notation** 形成一套新的、更简单的符号

tedious[ˈtiːdiəs] *adj.* long and tiring, uninteresting 沉闷的，乏味厌烦的

【例句】Too many abstract statements made his paper very **tedious** to me. 他的文章中抽象的讲法太多，使我生厌。

同义词：boring，tiresome

tedious 既可以指演讲、报告、说话、戏剧、文章等冗长枯燥而令人生厌倦，又可指因某事无意思、无趣味，做起来感到厌烦；**boring** 指事物无趣味或长时间地干某事而使人厌烦；**tiresome** 指人或事物本身毫无趣味而使人厌倦。

entry[ˈentri] *n.* item written in a list, a diary, an account book, etc.(写进清单、日记、账本等的)项目

【例句】**entries** in dictionary 词典的条目

cruise[kruːz] *n.* pleasure voyage 海上航游，乘船游览

【例句】a round-the-world **cruise** 乘船周游世界

milestone[ˈmailstəun] *n.* stone put at the side of a road showing distances in miles 里程碑 (fig.) very important stage or event 重大阶段或事件，转折点

【例句】This victory was a **milestone** in our country's history. 这一胜利是我国历史的转折点。

travelogue[ˈtrævəlɔg] *n.* a lecture illustrated by travel slides or films 叙述旅行见闻的演讲

sorely[ˈsɔːli] *adv.* extremely; greatly 极度地，非常

【例句】Your financial help is **sorely** needed. 你的资助实在是太要紧了。

Sultan[ˈsʌltən] *n.* a ruler of a Moslem country 苏丹(伊斯兰国家的最高统治者)

debunk[diːˈbʌŋk] *v.* to expose or ridicule the falseness, sham, or exaggerated

claims of 揭穿,揭露

【例句】The doctor **debunks** a supposed miracle drug. 医生戳穿了这种所谓的神奇药物。

revere[ri'viə] *v.* to regard with awe, deference, and devotion 尊敬,敬畏

【例句】The professor was **revered** for his immense learning. 这位教授学识渊博而备受敬重。

同义词:adore, venerate, worship

这一组词都表示"敬重,尊崇"的意思。**revere** 指对钦佩的人表现由衷的敬重和尊崇;**worship** 和 **venerate** 这两个词可直接用于宗教方面,这时 **worship** 专门用来表达人们对神的态度;**venerate** 可用于尊敬某个虔诚的教徒、某种典范的宗教观念或宗教的某个方面,在其他场合 **venerate** 经常含有高官显职、年高德劭之意;**worship** 也可用于普通场合,但有时可能指过分而盲目地尊崇;**adore** 在这些词里面指最亲切最热烈的感情。虽然也用于宗教方面,但是当它用在其他情况时却极少带宗教色彩。

ingenuity[ˌindʒi'nju:iti] *n.* inventive skill or imagination; cleverness 机灵,聪明才智

【例句】The boy showed **ingenuity** in making toys. 那男孩在制作玩具方面有独创性。

pariah['pærzə] *n.* a social outcast 贱民,底层民众

flee[fli:] *v.* run or hurry away 逃跑,逃开

【例句】The customers fled from the bank when the alarm sounded. 警铃响起,顾客纷纷从银行逃走。

同义词:escape, abscond, run away

这四个词均表示"逃脱、逃往、逃跑"的意思。**escape** 表示脱离或避去不愉快的环境;**abscond** 指贪污或盗窃后携带赃物潜逃;**run away** 指趁别人没有注意,匆忙走掉到别的地方去;**flee** 指仓促地,紧急地逃跑。

puritanical[ˌpjuəri'tænikəl] *adj.* rigorous in religious observance; marked by stern morality (在宗教或道德上奉行)作风严格的

panorama[ˌpænə'rɑ:mə] *n.* a comprehensive presentation; a survey 全景,综合评述

【例句】The book presents a **panorama** of British history since the Middle Ages. 该书概述了中世纪以来的英国历史。

deplore[di'plɔ:] *v.* to feel or express strong disapproval of; condemn 谴责,感到强烈的不满

【例句】Somehow we had to master events, not simply **deplore** them. (*Henry A. Kissinger*)无论如何,我们必须控制时局,而不能只简单地谴责时局。(*H*·*A*·基辛格)

sap[sæp] *v.* to deplete or weaken gradually; devitalize 使逐渐耗竭,削弱

【例句】The criticism **sapped** his determination. 批评削弱了他的决心。

robust[rə'bʌst] *adj.* full of health and strength; vigorous 健壮的，精力充沛的

【例句】His **robust** strength was a counterpoise to the disease. 他身体强壮，抵抗住了这疾病。

同义词：healthy, sound, hale

这几个单词都含有“身体健康的”的意思。**healthy** 指“拥有良好的健康状况”，侧重体力和能量，如：If you exercise regularly and eat properly, you'll stay fit and healthy.（如果你经常锻炼并适当饮食，你会保持健康的。）**sound** 指“健全的”即“没有任何病的”或“未受过伤害的”，如：You should pray for a sound mind in a sound body.（你应祈盼在健全的身体里有健全的头脑。）**hale** 强调“老年人不虚弱的”；**robust** 表示“强健的”，尤其指“肌肉发达、神气好、精力充沛的”，如：He is pretty well advanced in years, but hale, robust, and florid.（他虽上了年纪，但仍很健壮、结实且脸色红润。）

haunt[hɔːnt] *v.* to come to mind continually; obsess 时常萦绕心头，使困窘

【例句】be **haunted** with gloomy thoughts and sad memories 为悲观的思想和悲痛的追念所困扰

meningitis[ˌmenin'dʒaitis] *n.* (medical) inflammation of the membranes enclosing the brain and spinal cord（医）脑膜炎

epileptic[ˌepi'leptik] *n.* person who suffers from the kind of disease of the nervous system causing him or her to fall unconscious, often with violent uncontrolled movements of the body 癫痫症患者

pad[pæd] *v.* fill or cover sth. with 覆盖，填塞

【例句】a **padded** envelope 有垫料夹层的封套

crater['kreitə] *n.* a bowl-shaped depression at the mouth of a volcano or geyser 火山口

crumble['krʌmbl] *v.* be broken or rubbed into very small pieces 弄碎，碎成细屑 (fig.) gradually deteriorate or come to an end 渐渐垮掉，走向末路

【例句】The great empire began to **crumble**. 这个大帝国开始衰落了。

Providence['prɔvidəns] *n.* God 上帝

短语表达

every bit：(infml) equally; entirely 完全，同样地

【例句】He is **every bit** as mean as she is. 他与她同样平庸。

in print：(of a book) available for sale from the publisher; (of a person's work) printed in a book, etc.（指书）可买到，已出版

【例句】It was the first time he had seen his work **in print**. 这是他第一次看见自己

的作品出版。

soak up: to receive and absorb sth. 接受并吸收

【例句】That child **soaks up** new facts like a sponge! 那孩子吸收新知识像海绵似的!

succumb to: stop resisting; yield to, submit to 屈服,屈从

【例句】Several children have measles, and the others are bound to **succumb to** it. 有几个孩子患了麻疹,其他孩子也必然会被传染。

flirt with: to deal playfully or superficially with 不认真考虑、对待

【例句】I am **flirting with** the idea of getting a job. 我胡思乱想着要去找份工作。

of sorts: (derogative) of a poor or inferior type(贬义)差劲的,劣等

【例句】It was a meal **of sorts**, but nobody enjoyed it. 这勉强算是一顿饭,谁都没有吃好。

all over: what one would expect of the person specified 正像所说的人一样

【例句】That sounds like my sister **all over**. 听起来跟我姐姐一模一样。

in earnest: seriously, not jokingly 严肃地,认真地

【例句】Both sides are deeply **in earnest**, with passions that approximate those of civil war. 双方都很坚决认真,像是鼓足劲要打一场内战似的。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. Mark Twain (1835—1910), pseudonym of Samuel Langhorne Clemens, was born in Florida, Missouri. After his father's death in 1847, he left school. He worked successively as a printer's apprentice, a tramp printer, a silver miner, a steamboat pilot on the Mississippi, and a journalist in Nevada and California. With the publication of his story *The Celebrated Jumping Frog of Calaveras County*, Twain became nationally famous.

Having got married in 1870, he moved to Hartford, Connecticut, where he lived his most productive years. His first novel, *The Gilded Age* (1873), gave its name to the America of the post-bellum period which it attempts to satirize. *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* (1876) was an immediate success; its sequel, *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* (1884) became his masterwork. In his later works, however, the change from an optimist and humorist to an almost satirical determinist is unmistakable. His works during this period include *A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court* (1889), *The Man That Corrupted Hadleyburg* (1900), *The My sterious Stranger* (1916) and his *Autobiography* (1924). His significant contributions to American literature lie in his colloquial style and satirical humour. No wonder W. D. Howells called him

"the Lincoln of our literature".

马克·吐温(1835—1910)原名塞缪尔·朗荷恩·克莱门斯,他出生于密苏里州一个叫做佛罗里达的村子。1847年,他的父亲去世后,他便辍学了。在此之后,他当过印刷厂的学徒工,排字工,银矿的矿工,密西西比河上的领航员,内华达州和加利福尼亚州的记者。他的短篇小说《卡拉韦拉斯县驰名的跳蛙》一经发表,便大获成功,马克·吐温也因此声名大噪。

1870年结婚之后,他定居康涅狄格州的哈特福德,是他最为多产的时期。他的第一部长篇小说《镀金时代》(1873)对内战后的美国大肆讽刺,这一时期也因此得名"镀金时代"。《汤姆·索亚历险记》(1876)一经出版,便获得了巨大的成功;随后的《哈克贝里·费恩历险记》(1884)更是成为其代表作品。在其后期创作的作品中,幽默、滑稽的笑声少了,讽刺、批判的成分多了。他这一时期的作品包括《亚瑟王朝上的康涅狄格美国人》(1889),《败坏了哈德莱堡的人》(1900),《神秘来客》(1916)及其《自传》(1924)。他那口语化的语言风格,带有讽刺意味的幽默对美国文学产生了极大的影响。W·D· 豪威尔斯称他为"美国文学中的林肯"。

2. *National Geographic*:《国家地理》杂志,1888年10月,《国家地理》杂志问世,其创办人之一,便是电话的发明者科学家贝尔。当时它仅是一份学术性质的科学杂志,读者仅限于一小群具有专业背景的人。《国家地理》杂志的改变,是从1899年开始的。当时年仅23岁的总编格罗夫纳提倡以第一人称撰写平铺直叙的文体,这已经成为了该杂志的一个传统。到了20世纪的20年代,《国家地理》杂志首次刊登了一连串探险活动的纪实报道,并附有彩色图片。1979年9月,该杂志开始永久使用现在的封面版式。自创刊以来,该杂志在一个多世纪的时间里都只有英文版,直到1995年,才出版了第一个外文版。到2001年为止,该杂志已经在全世界出版了20种文字的版本,发行量已经达到1 000万册。《国家地理》杂志讲究字字珠玑,强调文字与图片的和谐。它带给读者的不仅仅是知识,更是艺术感。

3. Mississippi River: 密西西比河,美国第一大河流,密西西比河的名称起源于居住在美国北部威斯康星州的阿尔贡金人。阿尔贡金人是当地印第安人的一支,在印第安语中,"密西"意为"大","西比"意为"河","密西西比"即"大河"或"河流之父"的意思。密西西比河发源于美国西部偏北的落基山北段的崇山峻岭之中,逶迤千里,曲折蜿蜒,由北向南纵贯美国大平原,把美国分为东西两半,最后注入墨西哥湾。滔滔不绝的河水像乳汁一样抚育着密西西比河整个流域的人们,美国人民感恩于密西西比河的慷慨,因而将密西西比河尊称为"老人河"。对于马克·吐温而言,密西西比河上密苏里州的汉尼拔是他的故乡,而在他的一生中,密西西比河既是美国向西拓展领土的重要基地,又是南北双方激烈争夺的地区。

4. Westward Expansion: 西部领土扩张。在美国历史上,自殖民地时期开始,就一直在向西部的广大地区进行扩张、移民和开发。十九世纪中叶,对西部领土的扩张进入高潮,二十世纪初扩张基本结束,这一过程几乎贯穿了美国近代化的全部进程。但是19世纪上半期进行的扩张并非严格意义上的西进运动(Westward Movement),这一

时期的领土扩张主要包括以下几件大事:1803 年,美国从法国手中购买了路易斯安那的广大地区;1810 年和 1819 年美国从西班牙手中夺得佛罗里达;1846 年和 1853 年,美国对墨西哥发动战争,胜利后购买了墨西哥的大片国土。到 1853 年,美国已把其国境线推进到太平洋沿岸,比宣布独立时的版图增加了 7 倍多。密西西比河以西的人口在 1840 年以前还极为稀少,40 年代移民开始多起来,特别是 1848 年加利福尼亚发现金矿,在美国掀起了一股“淘金热”,对西部的开发是一大推动。

5. The Civil War:美国内战,又称南北战争(见第 7 课“背景介绍”⑥)。

6. San Francisco:旧金山,又译圣弗朗西斯科或三藩市,地处加利福尼亚州西北部,美国西海岸中点,是太平洋沿岸仅次于洛杉矶的第二大港市。旧金山居民民族构成复杂,其中非白种人约占总人口 2/5 以上,以黑人、华人、日本人、菲律宾人居多。来自世界各地的移民分区而居,形成语言文化、风俗习惯和宗教礼仪迥异的社区,因而,它也是美国西部人口密度最高的城市。1847 年,这里的居民只有 800 多人,但自从 1848 年这里发现金矿后,移民蜂拥而至,掀起了淘金热。此后大批移民在这里安家落户,他们称这座城市为旧金山,以区别于澳大利亚的墨尔本。1906 年,一场大地震毁掉了市内的许多设施和建筑后,旧金山开展了大规模重建。

7. Sacramento Valley:萨克拉门托河谷,位于萨克拉门托河岸边,在旧金山北面约 70 英里处。

8. Holy Land:圣地,即巴勒斯坦地区。公元前 3000 年迦南人定居于此,《圣经》上有记载,称之为迦南。

9. Sultan of Turkey:苏丹,土耳其统治者,即奥斯曼帝国的皇帝。Sultan(苏丹)在《古兰经》上原指道德或宗教方面的权威人士,自 11 世纪起苏丹便成为穆斯林统治者的称号。

10. Puritan:清教徒,美国的清教主义(Puritanism)是从 Anglo-Saxon 母体文化中分离出来的一支。造成它分离的历史原因是 16 世纪宗教改革和 1640 年英国资产阶级革命。1334 年英国教会向罗马教皇宣告独立,自称国教(Anglicanism)或新教(Protestantism)。1571 年伊丽莎白一世颁发国教教义《三十九信条》,宣布宗教改革结束,但激进派坚持改革,要求进一步清除腐败,纯洁教会组织——这一派即所谓清教(Puritanism)。清教徒因反对王室的宗教专制和经济压榨,屡遭镇压迫害,于是有相当一部分被迫逃往北美避难。在他们眼中,并非一切的人类都平均地享有救赎的恩宠,而他们相信只有他们才是神挑选出来的,才有资格得救的选民。这就是“上帝选民”理念。也正因为此,清教徒们教导人生要勤俭、诚实、守信用,为证明自己是上帝的选民而努力入世活动,从而形成了节俭、节制和勤勉的价值观。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

This excerpt is a brief yet impressive introduction to Mark Twain, one of the greatest writers in America. His adventurous, patriotic, romantic and humorous characteristics are known by most people. Before becoming a writer, he had done various kinds of jobs which

greatly enriched his writings. His experience on the Mississippi River left such a profound and permanent influence on him that he was at his best when he wrote about this river. He came to fame with a short novel about the Calaveras jumping frog, and then reached the peak of his career by ***Tom Sawyer and Huck Finn.*** However, the bitterness of his life, especially the successive deaths of his family members, is seldom made known to the public. And it is this dark side of his life that makes his later works filled with a satiric tone. Ironically, the man who makes the world laugh is made bitter by his own misfortunes. Thus his bitter life experience seems to be in contradiction with his humorous works. And by presenting both sides of his life, the author presents to his readers a fuller picture of Mark Twain that will help them understand his works much better.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

In everyday speech and writing and in literature, figures of speech are often used to emphasize or clarify tones or atmosphere of discourse, to give life to inanimate objects for amusement or ornament. And it is exactly the immense use of figures of speech that achieves a special effect in this present text. For example, metaphor, metonymy, antithesis, alliteration, personification, euphemism, parallelism, hyperbole are seen elsewhere in the text for different effects.

Examples from the text for the above figure of speeches:

a black wall of night; cast of characters; main current of pioneering humanity; flotsam of hustler; the epidemic of gold and silver fever; new writing muscles; main artery of transportation in the young nation' s heart (metaphor)

his pen would prove mightier than his pickax (metonymy)

what people claim to be and what they really are; lament them a day and forget them forever (antithesis)

cast of characters; all the slow, sleepy, sluggish-brained sloths stayed at home; dashing and daring; cost or consequences (alliteration)

the thirsty ground; leaves dancing in the wind; the smiles of spring. Examples from the text: the grave world smiles as usual; America laughed with him; Bitterness fed on the man who had made the world laugh. (personification)

avoided contact with the enemy; man' s final release from earthly struggles (euphemism)

eternal boyhood and ... endless summer (hyperbole)

人们在说话、写作或者文学作品中经常使用一些修辞手法来表示强调，说明问题，渲染气氛，赋予无生命的物体以生命，引起读者的兴趣，或者增加文章的色彩。本篇课文的语言特色正是大量地运用了修辞手法，如：隐喻、借代、对照、押头韵、拟人、委婉语、夸张、排比等。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Mirror of America: a faithful reflection of the American society 作者在这里使用了 mirror 的喻义,表明马克·吐温的作品是他所处的那个时代美国人民的物质生活及其精神世界的真实写照。在文学创作中,作品皆由作家思想而生,而作家的思想又多是因时代刺激而生,任何优秀的作品,总是与作家所处的那个时代血脉相通的。也正因为如此,这些作品才能引起读者的反思与共鸣,成为经典之作。

2. Most Americans remember ... and adventure: Mark Twain is known to most Americans as the author of *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and its sequel *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*, which are regarded as his greatest works. 作者在此没有使用 author,而是用了 father 一词,这说明马克·吐温笔下的人物在读者看来是那么的栩栩如生、活灵活现,他就像父亲一样赋予了小说人物以血肉和生命。

3. who saw clearly ahead a black wall of night: who felt hopeless and despairing about the future 这句话是一个隐喻,作者把"这堵黑夜形成的屏障"比作"对前途彻底的悲观和绝望"。

4. starry-eyed optimist, acid-tongued cynic: an unrealistic person expecting favorable outcomes as well as a sarcastic one seeing no good in anything (充满幻想的乐天派、语言尖刻的讽刺家。)类似 starry-eyed 和 acid-tongued 这样的形容词 + 表人体部位的名词 + -ed 所构成的复合词,英语中还有许多,例如:red-faced(面红耳赤的),clear-headed(头脑清楚的),clear-eyed(有洞察力的),grey-haired(头发花白的)等。

5. The geographic core ... nation's heart: When Mark Twain was young, the central part of America—a nation with a short history—was the extensive area of land by the Mississippi River, and the river itself served as the main channel of transportation. (在马克·吐温早年时,美国的地理中心是密西西比河流域,而对于这个年轻国家来说,密西西比河就是其中心的交通大动脉。)作者在这里使用的是隐喻的修辞手法,即把美国的地理中心——密西西比河流域比作人体的"心脏",而把密西西比河比作人体的"动脉",这条河流对于整个流域而言就如同动脉对于心脏的重要性一样。

6. The cast of characters ... rich and varied—a cosmos: He came across people from all walks of life in his new job as a river pilot, and the steamboat was a miniature of the boundless universe. (他所从事的新的工作使他得以接触到形形色色的人物——这里俨然是一个芸芸众生的大千世界。)作者在这句话中多处使用了修辞手法:cast of characters 既使用了押头韵的修辞手法,又使用了隐喻的修辞手法,借"戏剧中的全体演员"来比喻"各式各样的人物";同样的,cosmos 也是一个隐喻,cosmos 原意是"宇宙",在这里用来比喻"大千世界"。

7. Steamboat decks teemed ... thugs as well: There were a great many people of daring and venturous spirit as well as social outcasts like prostitutes, gamblers or criminals on the steamboat. (汽船的甲板上挤满了当时美国主流的富有开拓精神的人群,但同时也

混杂着一些社会上游手好闲的人，如妓女、赌徒和恶棍。）这里的 current 和 flotsam 均是隐喻：current 本义为“水流、气流”，此处用来比喻“事物发展的主要方面”；flotsam 原意是“沉船后仍漂浮在水面上的残片或货物”，在这里比喻“流离失所者”或“无业游民”。

8. of the difference of what people claim to be and what they really are：of the difference between their words and deeds（人们的言行不一。）作者在这里运用了对照的修辞手法，以此来突出人们言行之间不一致。

9. He tried soldering ... with the enemy：He had joined the Confederacy as a guerrilla for two weeks, and this group of guerrillas of various sorts constantly and carefully avoided fighting against their enemies.（他在南方联邦游击队的一支总是设法避免与敌军交战的杂牌军里呆了两个星期。）作者在此并没有直截了当地指责南部联邦的游击军，而是用 avoided contact with 拐弯抹角地说他们是一群胆小鬼，而且还使用了 diligently（勤勉地）一词，颇带讽刺意味。

10. I know more about ... invented retreating：The soldiers always draw back in fights against their enemies, however, I know more about drawing back.（我比那些发明撤退的人更懂得如何撤退。）这里引用的是马克・吐温的原话，这句话充分的体现出其幽默中带有讽刺的语言风格。

11. succumbed to the epidemic of gold and silver fever：got involved in the gold rush that were prevailing then（由于受到淘金热的驱使，他加入了淘金者的行列。）这里作者使用的是隐喻的修辞手法，把淘金热描述为像瘟疫一样在当时四处蔓延开来。

12. For eight months ... and was rebuffed：He tried his fortune to get the enormous wealth, however, since he was neither lucky nor persevering, he failed.（那些巨大的财富只有既幸运而又百折不挠的人才能取得，而马克・吐温态度并不认真地同这笔财富打了八个月交道之后，就被这笔财富断然回绝了。）此处作者用的是暗喻的修辞手法，flirt 原本指“调情”，rebuff 指“断然拒绝（某人的求爱）”，都与 love 有关，这里用来描写马克・吐温的淘金历程，反映出他对淘金并不十分认真的态度。

13. Twain began digging ... reporter and humorist：Mark Twain began working hard in order to become famous locally as a newspaper reporter and humorist.（马克・吐温开始努力工作，希望能在当地成为一个小有名气的报社记者和幽默作家。）dig 本来指“采掘探寻（黄金等）”，这里作者以此来比喻“辛勤地工作”，十分巧妙地把他作为“淘金者”和“记者”的这两种身份联系起来，形成自然的过渡。

14. The instant riches ... than his pickax：Working as a reporter, he didn't become rich overnight as a gold-miner might have done by sudden discovery of a vein of gold. But he made more money by writing reports than mining unsuccessfully.（从事新闻工作不可能像淘金挖到金脉时一样一夜暴富，但单就赚钱而言，他的笔杆比他的锄镐更加锋利。）作者在此使用的是借代的修辞手法，即分别拿新闻报道和开采矿山的工具 pen 和 pickax 来指代 reporting 和 mining 这两种工作。

15. Mark Twain honed ... writing muscles: Mark Twain practiced and tried out his new writing ability.(马克·吐温尝试并磨炼了他新的写作手法。)这句话里作者使用了隐喻的修辞手法:hone 原意是"在磨刀石上磨",此处引申为"磨炼……使完美";muscle 原本指"肌肉",这里比喻"写作技能"。

16. all the slow, sleepy, sluggish-brained sloths stayed at home: All those lazy-bones that are slow in action, dull with sleepiness and slow of understanding stayed at home.(所有那些迟钝、懒散、思想不活跃的懒汉都在家待着。)这句话的潜台词是所有来西部拓荒的人都是精力充沛、勇敢无畏、具有开创精神的。注意这句话中的押头韵的修辞手法:slow, sleepy, sluggish, sloths, stayed 均是以/s/音开头,给人一种懒散的感觉。

17. when she projects ... smiles as usual: When California proposes an unexpected undertaking, those conservative people in the east still smiles as they always do.(每当他们采取任何新的举措时,那些性格沉稳的人们还会像往常一样露出笑容。)作者在这句话里使用了拟人的修辞手法,实际上 the grave world 指的是 people in the grave world。

18. Well, that is California all over: Well, that is typical of California.(瞧,这就是典型的加利福尼亚人。)

19. the Old World: The term is often used to refer specifically to Europe, Asia and Africa, in comparison to North and South American which is called the New World. 旧世界,指欧洲旧大陆、亚洲和非洲,用以区别与被称之为"新世界"的美洲新大陆。

20. Quaker City: Philadelphia 费城的别名

21. a milestone, of sorts: It is something like a milestone, however, it does not really deserve the name.(这倒是勉强可以算作美国发展史上的一个"里程碑"。)

22. Casually he debunked ... the Holy Land: He ridiculed the false glamour of the highly respected artists and art treasures with an unconcerned tone and attacked the Holy Land orally.(他更是漫不经心地批判受人景仰的艺术家及艺术珍品,甚至以亵渎性的言辞来诋毁宗教圣地。)马克·吐温的这一态度在他的旅行游记《傻子出国旅行记》中得以反映。该书从一个美国民主主义者的角度出发,叙述了欧洲、埃及以及巴勒斯坦的风景及风俗。

23. ... are sure to be studied ... the Declaration of Independence: Just as the *Declaration of Independence* is learned at all the American schools, so will *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* be studied at these schools. 此状语从句中的 as is the Declaration of Independence 省略了同前半句重复的单词,力求做到简洁。此外,这个状语从句同下一个自然段中的 Twain's own declaration of independence 形成了呼应,非常巧妙地起到了承上启下的作用。

24. Six chapters into *Tom Sawyer*: after six chapters in *Tom Sawyer*(从《汤姆·索亚》第六章起)。

25. I've tried it ... can't stand it: 该句反映了哈克贝克·费恩没有受过多少教

育，语言错误百出。比方说，这句话当中的 don't 应当是 doesn't，ain't 应当是 isn't，body 应该是 person。

26. if we would only ... renew our edges：if we would stay away from all the crazy struggle for success at times and keep our edges sharp（如果我们能偶然地彻底放松一下来恢复我们的锐气。）在马克·吐温看来，美国人应当保持一种有胆识，有进取心的精神。

27. Bitterness fed on ... the world laugh：The man who had brought laughter to his readers through his works was himself consumed by bitters of life.（这个曾经给全世界带来欢笑的人自己却饱尝了人世间的苦难。）这句话是一个拟人的表达：feed on 在这里表示 take ... as food。

28. Now the glove came off with biting satire：Now the outwardly gentle Twain became bitter and satirical.（可现在幽默退尽变成了尖锐的讽刺。）英语里有个习语 have an iron hand in a velvet glove，常被用来指"表面温和而内里强硬的东西"，即"外柔内刚"之意。

29. he commented with ... from earthly struggles：He made a comment on death in an overwhelmingly hopeless way.（他极度绝望地评论人们从尘世间的争斗中得以最终解脱。）这里作者使用了委婉语的修辞手法：人从尘世的纷争中得以最终的解脱，是"死亡"的委婉表达。

30. ... they vanish from ... they had existed：这是一个排比修辞手法，作者连续使用了四个由 where 引导的定语从句修辞 a world，使得结构平衡。

31. a world which will ... forget them forever：A world which would mourn for their death for a short time and then forget them and never recall such a loss. 这一句话作前面 a world where ... 的同位语，起到了概括的作用；此外，这句话还是一个对照的修辞手法。

V. 参考译文

马克·吐温——美国的一面镜子

（节选）

诺埃尔·格罗夫

在大多数美国人印象中，马克·吐温作为作家，向我们描述了哈克·费恩在其永恒的童年时代所进行的牧歌式的旅行，还有汤姆·索亚在漫长的夏日里自由自在的生活及探险故事。的确，这位最受美国人民喜爱的作家完全像人们想象中那样冒险、爱国、浪漫和幽默。但我同样发现还有另外一个马克·吐温——一个由于饱受了人生悲剧的打击而变得玩世不恭、痛苦的马克·吐温，一个为人类的弱点所困扰而忧心忡忡，清楚地看到前途是一片黑暗的马克·吐温。

印刷工、领航员、南部邦联游击队员、淘金者、不切实际的乐观主义者、言语刻薄

的讽刺家——这就是马克·吐温,出生时原名叫塞缪尔·朗格合恩·克勒孟斯,他一生中有超过三分之一的时间游历于美国各地,亲身体验美国的新气象,然后便以作家和演讲家的身份与全世界一同分享他所感受到的一切。他的笔名来自于他在蒸汽船上做工时听到的水手们测量水深时说的话,意思是"水深两浔"——即可以通航的信号语。在他创作的所有作品中,有二十多部至今仍被印刷发行,在世界各地其译文版本也被广泛阅读,这足以证明他的作品大受欢迎的程度。

马克·吐温早年时,美国的地理中心是密西西比河流域,而对于这个年轻国家来说,密西西比河就是其中心的交通大动脉。运货船、平底船和大木筏运送着最初的重要商品。木材、玉米、烟草、小麦以及毛皮制品顺河而下,被运送到该流域的三角洲地带;食糖、糖蜜、棉花和威士忌酒则被输送到美国北方地区。19 世纪 50 年代,在西部拓疆运动的高潮到来之前,密西西比河辽阔的流域占当时美国已有人定居领土面积的四分之三。

1857 年,年轻的马克·吐温踏上了这片土地,当时他在一艘蒸汽船上做见习领航员。他所从事的新的工作使他得以接触到形形色色的人物——这里俨然是一个芸芸众生的大千世界。他全身心地投入到这种生活之中,在操舵室里他常听见人们谈论家族间的世仇,海盗的掠夺,私刑的滥用,药品的兜售,以及河边野蛮贫民窟生活的故事。他的所见所闻,连同他那留声机般牢记下来的丰富多彩的语言,都重现在其作品中。

蒸汽船的甲板上挤满了当时美国主流的富有开拓精神的人群,但同时也混杂着一些社会上游手好闲的人,如妓女、赌徒和恶棍。从他们身上,马克·吐温洞察了人类的本性,同时也看到了人们的言行不一。他在蒸汽船上四年半的光阴标志着他真正地开始接受教育,而这也是对他影响最为久远的教育。晚年时马克·吐温说过密西西比河使他了解到了人类的各种本性,这种对人性的了解促进了他的文学创作。他创作最为成功的人物形象还是那些密西西比河上的人们。

当铁路的发展使得对蒸汽船的需求开始减少,美国内战中断贸易交往的时候,马克·吐温离开了密西西比河流域。他在南方联邦游击队的一支总是设法避免与敌军交战的杂牌军里呆了两个星期,一番思考后马克·吐温离开了该队伍,"……我比那些发明撤退的人更懂得撤退"。

他搭乘一辆公共马车来到西部,由于受到内华达州华苏地区淘金热的驱使,他加入了淘金者的行列。那些巨大的财富只有既幸运而又百折不挠的人才能取得,而马克·吐温态度并不认真地同这笔财富打了八个月交道之后,就被这笔财富断然回绝了。身无分文、心灰意冷的情形下,他接受了弗吉尼亚市《领土开发》记者一职,这一行为是文学界永久感念的事情。

淘金失败而倍感沮丧的马克·吐温开始努力工作,希望能在当地成为一个小有名气的报社记者和幽默作家。从事新闻工作不可能像淘金挖到金脉时一样一夜暴富,但单就赚钱而言,他的笔杆比他的锄镐更加锋利。1864 年春,他在《领土开发》工作还不到两年的时候,便搭乘了一辆马车前往旧金山。无论在当时还是现在,旧金山都是前途光明的年轻作家成长的摇篮。

在那儿,马克·吐温尝试并磨炼了他新的写作手法,但却因为写了一些文笔辛辣

的专栏文章被迫暂时离开这座城市。他就虐待华人等一类的问题对市政府进行了抨击，激怒了政府官员们，只好逃到萨克拉曼多河谷的金矿区。他对那儿拓荒者的描写，在今天那些领导潮流的西海岸地区的人们看来，依旧十分亲切。“这是一群了不起的人物——因为所有那些迟钝、懒散、思想不活跃的懒汉都在家待着……也正是这些人为加利福尼亚赢得了这样的名声：当他们着手开创一番事业的时候，他们会毫不顾及后果、代价，以一种豪迈的闯劲和勇往直前的精神，坚持到底。直到今天，加利福尼亚人仍然保持着这样的名声，因而每当他们采取任何新的举措时，那些性格沉稳的人们还会像往常一样露出笑容说：‘瞧，这就是典型的加利福尼亚人。’”

1864 与 1865 年之交的那个沉闷的冬天，在安琪儿矿区，马克·吐温记了一本笔记。在零零散散的有关天气和单调乏味的矿区饭菜的记录中，有一条记录叙述了他当天听到的一则故事——一条决定了他一生事业发展的记录：“科尔曼用他的跳蛙——同陌生人打赌，赌了 50 美元——陌生人没有跳蛙，科尔曼给了他一只——与此同时，陌生人往科的跳蛙肚子灌满了铅弹，这样一来，科的跳蛙便跳不动了。陌生人的跳蛙获胜。”

该故事经过马克·吐温的天才改写刊登在美国各地的报纸上，这便是著名的“卡拉韦拉斯县驰名的跳蛙”。至此，马克·吐温被公认为“太平洋海岸粗犷的幽默大师”，其声望已在全国范围内牢固地确立起来。

两年之后，他得到了一次机会，以美国人特有的眼光去观察欧洲旧世界。在纽约市，一艘名为“费城号”的汽轮准备游览航行到欧洲和圣地。这次旅行可以看作是美国发展史上的一个“里程碑”，因为这是美国人有史以来第一次组织这么大规模团体以观光为目的的旅游。

马克·吐温受加州一家报社的指派，作为记者随同他们一起旅行，进行采访活动。如果读者们期待着能读到通常情况下的生动有趣的旅行见闻录的话，那就会出乎他们意料之外了。

比如，土耳其的君主苏丹没有给他留下什么印象，所以，他在报道中写到：“……你可以随便在什么地方设一个陷阱，一个晚上的时间准能捉到一打比他更有能耐的人。”他更是漫不经心地批判受人景仰的艺术家及艺术珍品，甚至以亵渎性的言辞来诋毁宗教圣地。回国后，越来越多的报纸开始刊登他的作品。美国人都同他一起欢笑。他一回到美国，其旅行杂记《傻子出国记》一书立刻成为畅销书籍。

马克·吐温在 36 岁时定居在康涅狄格州的哈特福德市。他最优秀的几部作品全是在定居该地时出版的。

早在 1870 年，马克·吐温便尝试着写过一篇他命名为比利·罗杰斯的男孩的童年冒险的故事。两年以后，他把人物名字改成了汤姆，并开始把他的历险故事编写为舞台剧。直到 1874 年，马克·吐温才真正认真地完善这个故事。1876 年，《汤姆·索亚》问世，这部小说一经出版，很快便成为描述美国儿童时代的经典故事。汤姆的顽皮勇敢、聪明机灵，以及他对贝蒂·撒切尔甜蜜天真的感情，让这部小说几乎与《独立宣言》一样成为现在美国学校里的必读之物。

马克·吐温本人的独立宣言来自于另外一个人物形象。从《汤姆·索亚》第六章起，他插入了“村里的一个流浪儿，镇上一个酒鬼的儿子哈克贝里·费恩”的故事。

由于不习惯在清教徒道格拉斯寡妇家体面的生活，哈克逃了出来，他向汤姆抱怨道："我试过了，但太难受了；真难受啊，汤姆。我真不适合过这种生活……那寡妇要听钟声吃饭，要听钟声睡觉，连起床也要听钟声——一句话，她干什么事都规规矩矩的，真叫人受不了了。"

《汤姆·索亚》风靡美国九年之后，马克·吐温在一部被公认为描写美国人的最为成功的作品给予了哈克独立的生命。哈克同一位逃亡的奴隶乘着木排沿着密西西比河顺流而下，他们的航程生动地展示了美国社会生活的全貌。

马克·吐温通过密西西比河，在哈克·费恩这一人物上淋漓尽致地表达了自己的愿望，从束缚他并时常令他苦恼的生活中逃离出去，摆脱生活的一切清规及为了成功而进行的苦苦挣扎。

马克·吐温认为，美国式的理想抱负中缺失了某些内容。他说："如果我们能偶然地彻底放松一下来恢复我们的锐气，我们民族将多么有朝气，我们的人民将多么善于思考啊！"

然而马克·吐温的一生却笼罩在悲剧和不幸的阴影之中，他的亲人接连地离他远去：在他 12 岁时，他的父亲便因患上了肺炎而去世；他的兄弟亨利在一次蒸汽船爆炸事故中丧命；他的儿子朗顿才 19 个月大便夭折了；他的大女儿苏茜死于脊膜炎；他的妻子在佛罗伦萨死于心脏病；他最小的女儿简患有癫痫，发病时溺死在楼上的浴缸里。

这个曾给全世界带来欢笑的人自己却饱尝了人世间的苦难。他早期作品中的道德说教充满了幽默的色彩，可现在幽默退尽变成了尖锐的讽刺。对于美军在一火山口上屠杀 600 名菲律宾摩洛人的行径，他假装为之高唱赞歌。在他的《神秘的陌生人》一书中，他坚持，为创造一个更加美好的世界，人类应该抛弃宗教幻想，依靠自己，而不是上帝。

到晚年他自己的最后幻想似乎也落空了。在他口述其自传时，他极度绝望地评论人们从尘世间的争斗中得以最终解脱："……他们从世界上消失了，在这个世界上他们毫无价值，一事无成，在这个世界上他们本身的存在就是个错误，就是个失败，就是一桩愚蠢的事；在这个世界上，他们不会留下任何印迹表明他们曾经存在过这个世间——这个世界将为他们哀悼一日，然后永远地将他们忘却。"

（摘自《国家地理》，1975 年 9 月）

习题解析

Ⅰ. 口语展示：参见"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. The other Mark Twain who grew cynical, bitter, saddened by the profound personal tragedies life dealt him, a man who became obsessed with the frailties of the human race,

who saw clearly ahead a black wall of night.

2. His experience as a steamboat pilot immensely influenced him, so he adopted the pen name "Mark Twain" from the cry heard in his steamboat days, signaling a navigable depth.

3. The story entitled "The Celebrated Jumping Frog of Calaveras County".

4. He satirizes the Europe and the Holy Land, arousing intense interest among the Americans.

5. Because Tom Sawyer is a classic tale of American boyhood describing Tom's mischievous daring, ingenuity, and sweet innocence of his affection. Because Huck Finn's raft flight down the Mississippi with a runaway slave presents a moving panorama for the exploration of American society.

6. According to Twain, American people should stay away from all the crazy struggles for success at times and keep their edges sharp.

7. Twain suffered the deaths of his beloved ones, and because of those painful sufferings he became bitter late in life.

8. He commented with a crushing sense of despair on men's final release from earthly struggles.

9. The author calls Mark Twain "a mirror of American" because the great writer lived a colorful life, doing a great variety of jobs and traveling extensively. He met all kinds of people whom he later depicted in his works. Mark Twain's life and work reflect America by "digesting the new American experience before sharing it with the world as writer and lecturer".

B. 课文欣赏问答：

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. Mark Twain is known to most Americans as the author of The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and the Adventures of Huckleberry Finn. Huck Finn is noted for his simple and pleasant of journey through his boyhood which seems eternal and Tom Sawyer is famous for his free roam of the country and his adventure in one summer which seems never to end. The youth and summer are eternal because this is the only age and time we knew them. They are frozen in that age/season for all readers.

2. His work on the boat made it possible for him to meet a large variety of people. It is a world of all types of characters.

3. All would reappear in his books, written in the colorful language that he seemed to be able to remember and record as accurately as a phonograph.

4. Steamboat decks were filled with people who explored and prepared the way for others and also lawless people or social outcasts such as hustlers, gamblers and thugs.

5. He took a horse-drawn public vehicle and went west to Nevada, following the flow of people in the gold rush.

6. Mark Twain began to work hard as a newspaper reporter and humorist to become well known locally.

7. Those who came pioneering out west were energetic, courageous and reckless people, because those who stayed at home were the slow, dull and lazy people.

8. That's typical of California.

9. If we relaxed, rested or stayed away from all this crazy struggle for success occasionally and kept the daring and enterprising spirit, we would be able to remain strong and healthy and continue to produce great thinkers.

10. At the end of his life, he lost the last bit of his positive view of man and the world.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. starry-eyed: romantic, dreamy; with the eyes sparkling in a glow of wonder

   a) cid-tongued: sharp, sarcastic in speech

2. medicine shows: shows given by entertainers who travel from town to town, accompanied by quacks and fake Indians, selling cure-alls, snake-bite medicine, etc.

3. flirt: originally meaning pretending love without serious intention, here meaning trying but not hard or persistently enough

4. strike: the sudden discovery of some mineral ores

5. hotbed: a place that fosters rapid growth or extensive activity, often used of something evil

6. ring: to produce, as by sounding, a specified impression on the hearer trend setting: taking the lead in starting a new trend or new ways of doing things

7. project: propose or make plan for

8. entry: an item in his notebook

9. shot: quantity of tiny balls of lead used in a sporting gun against birds or small animals

10. sorely: greatly or extremely

11. shots: critical remarks

12. bowl: a hollow land formation

B.

1. *Romantic* means full of or dominated by thoughts, feelings, and attitudes characteristic of or suitable for romance; passionate, adventurous, idealistic, etc. *Sentimental* suggests emotion of a kind that is felt in a nostalgic or tender mood or emotion that is exaggerated, affected, foolish, etc.

2. *Humorous* means having or expressing humor, funny, amusing, comical. *Witty*

means cleverly amusing, intelligent, clever.

3. A *cynic* is a cynical person. A *critic* is usually a person whose profession is to write comments on books, music, paintings, plays, motion pictures, etc. for a newspaper or magazine. *A critic can also mean a person who indulges in fault finding.*

4. In American usage, timber is wood suitable for building houses, ships, etc. whether cut or still in the form of trees (木材或可作木材的树木), while lumber means timber sawed into beams, planks, boards, etc. of convenient sizes (木材). In British usage, timber and lumber mean the same thing.

5. *Claim* means to state as a fact or as one's belief (something that may be called into question). Proclaim means to announce officially.

6. *Demand* is an economic term, meaning the desire for a commodity together with the ability to pay for it; also, the amount people are ready and able to buy at a certain price: opposed to supply, as in *supply* and demand. In the case of our text, the demand is not for a commodity, but for steamboat pilots. *Need* is a general term.

7. *Mistreatment* means being treated wrongly or badly. *Ill-treatment means being treated unkindly, cruelly, brutally.*

8. *Consequence* may refer to simple causation in a neutral way, but more often the word suggests a negative result. *Result* is a general word, indicating a strict causal link.

9. A *pleasure* cruise is one for pleasure or sightseeing, a tourist expedition by ship. A *pleasant* cruise is a voyage (not necessarily a tourist one) that is pleasant. A *pleasure* cruise may turn out to be not pleasant.

10. A correspondent is a reporter hired by a magazine or newspaper to furnish news, articles, etc. of a certain type or from a distant place.

11. *Desperation* is the state of being desperate, rash or violent resulting from *despair* (loss of hope). When one is in despair, he may kill himself. When one is in desperation, he may kill others.

C.

1. metaphor
2. metaphor
3. metaphor
4. metaphor
5. metonymy
6. metaphor
7. alliteration
8. alliteration
9. personification
10. antithesis

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. Tom was every bit as intelligent as the top one in his class.
2. He was obsessed with fear of poverty.
3. Dongting Lake teems with fish and shrimps.
4. Under pressure, he had no choice but quit.
5. At that time many children succumbed to small pox.
6. Much to his horror, he found the cabin flooded.
7. Not until midnight did the surgeon finish the operation.
8. That's Peter over all.
9. The history course has acquainted me with ancient civilizations.
10. The pursuit and anxiety of young people find expression in the newly-staged play.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

VI. 阅读，思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Seven

Everyday Use

词汇注释

groove[ɡruːv]　***n.*** a long, narrow furrow or channel（长而窄的）沟或槽

elm[elm]　***n.*** any of the various deciduous trees, characteristically having arching or curving branches and serrate leaves with asymmetrical bases 榆树(一种落叶树木,有拱形或曲线形树枝和锯齿形不对称的树叶)

【例句】**Elms** are widely planted as shade trees. 榆树作为蔽荫树被广泛地种植。

totter[ˈtɔtə]　***v.*** to walk unsteadily or feebly; to sway as if about to fall　蹒跚,踉跄

【例句】The child **tottered** across the room. 那孩子跌跌撞撞走到房子那一边。

limousine[ˈlimu(ː)ziːn]　***n.*** any of the various large passenger vehicles, esp. a luxurious automobile usually driven by a chauffeur and sometimes having a partition separating the passenger compartment from the driver's seat 高级轿车,特指由专用司机驾驶的豪华轿车,有时乘客和驾驶座之间相隔开

sporty[ˈspɔːti]　***adj.*** sporting ; exhibiting sportsmanship 运动的,显示运动气魄的

【例句】Janet is very **sporty**. 珍妮特十分爱好文体活动。

orchid[ˈɔːkid]　***n.*** a member of the orchid family, especially one cultivated for ornament 兰科的一种植物,尤其为装饰而培植

tacky[ˈtæki]　***adj.*** lacking style or good taste; tawdry; neglected and in a state of disrepair 缺乏风度或良好品味的,俗艳的,破旧不堪的

【例句】The hunter lived in a **tacky** old cabin in the woods. 那个猎人住在树林里一间又老又破的小棚屋里。

flannel[ˈflænl] *n.* a soft woven cloth of wool or a blend of wool and cotton or synthetics; outer clothing made of this cloth 法兰绒(用羊毛、羊毛与棉纱或化纤的混合物织成的一种柔软的布),法兰绒外衣

sidle[ˈsaidl] *v.* (常与 along, up 连用) to move sideways; to advance in an unobtrusive, furtive, or coy way 侧向移动,(羞怯或偷偷地)侧身而行

【例句】She **sidled** up to me and asked if I recognized her. 她羞怯地向我走来,问我是否认识她。

shuffle[ˈʃʌfl] *v.* to move with short sliding steps, without or barely lifting the feet; shift 拖着(脚)走

【例句】The crowd **shuffled** out of the theater. 人群缓慢地移动,走出剧院。

dingy[ˈdindʒi] *adj.* dirty or discolored; shabby or squalid 暗黑的,肮脏的或褪色的,褴褛的,邋遢的

【例句】He lived in a **dingy** room in a cheap hotel in order to save money. 为了省钱,他住在一个低级旅馆中又黑又脏的房间里。

make-believe *n.* pretending or imagining things; fantasizing 假装,幻想

【例句】Dreamers always indulge themselves in **make-believe**. 爱做白日梦的人总喜欢沉溺于幻想之中。

shove[sʌv] *v.* to push someone or something with force (使劲)推, 挤, 撞

【例句】**Shove** over, friend, and make some room for me. 朋友,挪过去点儿,给我留出点地方。

dimwit[ˈdimwit] *n.* (*slang*) a stupid person 笨蛋

organdy[ˈɔːgəndi] *n.* (= organdie) a stiff transparent fabric of cotton or silk, used for trim, curtains etc. 一种细薄的棉织品

pump[pʌmp] *n.* a woman's shoe with medium or low heels and no fastenings 无带中低跟轻便舞鞋

flicker[ˈflikə] *v.* to move waveringly, flutter; to burn unsteadily or fitfully; (of an emotion) be felt or seen briefly 颤动,闪烁,忽隐忽现,(指感情)稍纵即逝

【例句】The candle **flickered** and then went out. 蜡烛忽亮忽暗,接着就全熄了。

A slender hope still **flickered** within him. 他心中仍闪现出一线希望。

shingle[ˈsiŋgl] *n.* a thin oblong piece of material, such as wood or slate, that is laid in overlapping rows to cover the roof or sides of a house or other building 木瓦(一种长方形的薄片,由木头或板岩等材料制成,搭接铺成行,用于覆盖房子或其他建筑物的房顶或侧面)

porthole[ˈpɔːthəul] *n.* a small, usually circular window in a ship's side 舷窗(位

于船的一侧的小的，通常为圆形的窗口）

rawhide['rɔːhaid] *n.* the untanned hide of cattle or other animals 生牛皮

shutter['ʃʌtə] *n.* a hinged cover or screen for a window, usually fitted with louvers 百叶窗（一个带有铰链用来遮蔽窗户的盖子或隔板，通常安有百叶窗板）

furtive['fəːtiv] *adj.* surreptitious; expressive of hidden motives or purposes 偷偷摸摸的，鬼鬼祟祟的，诡诈的，耍花招的

【例句】The man's **furtive** manner gave rise to the suspicion of the theft among the policemen. 那个男人鬼鬼祟祟的样子，引起警察怀疑盗窃案是他所为。

同义词：secret, covert

secret 是常用词，指"隐藏某物以防他人知道或见到的"，如：a secret document（机密文件）；**covert** 是正式用语，指"（面目、意义、行动等）隐蔽的、伪装的或不公开的"，如：a covert threat（隐蔽的威胁）。

scalding['skɔːldiŋ] *adj.* causing a burning sensation, as from contact with hot liquid; harshly critical or denunciatory 滚烫的，灼人的，措辞尖锐的，贬低的

【例句】Critics made a **scalding** review of the play. 批评家们对这出戏剧做出了尖刻的评价。

flashy['flæʃi] *adj.* cheap and showy; gaudy 俗艳的，浮华的，庸俗而华丽的

recompose[kəm'pəuz] *v.* reorganize or rearrange; to restore to composure 改组，重写；使恢复镇定，平静下来

【例句】It was not until the police arrived that the quarrel was **recomposed**. 直到警察来了，争吵才被平息下来。

stocky['stɔki] *adj.* solidly built; sturdy 坚固的，矮而壮的，结实的（身体）

【例句】Catherine is self-contemptuous of her **stocky** legs. 凯瑟琳因为那双又短又粗的腿而感到自卑。

kinky['kiŋki] *adj.* tightly twisted or curled 绞缠的，（头发）卷曲的

【例句】Jack fell in love with a **kinky**-haired woman. 杰克爱上了一个卷头发的女郎。

wriggle['rigl] *v.* to turn or twist the body with sinuous writhing motions 扭动，蠕动

【例句】The boy **wriggled** on the hard chair. 那个小男孩在那把硬椅子上扭来扭去。

armpit['ɑːmpit] *n.* the hollow under the upper part of the arm at the shoulder 腋下，腋窝

navel['neivəl] *n.* the mark on the surface of the abdomen 脐，肚脐

perspiration[ˌpəːspə'reiʃən] *n.* sweat; the act or process of perspiring 汗水，出汗，排汗

【例句】Drops of **perspiration** rolled down his forehead. 汗珠从他的额头上落下。

Polaroid['pəulərɔid] *n.* (= Polaroid camera) a camera that produces instant photographs 拍立得照相机

cower['kauə] *v.* to cringe in fear 畏缩,退缩,(因寒冷,恐惧等而)抖缩

【例句】The dog **cowered** under the table when his master raised the whip. 主人举起鞭子时,狗抖缩在桌子下边。

nibble['nibl] *v.* to eat with small, quick bites or in small morsels 一点一点地咬,细咬

【例句】No **nibbling** between meals! 不要在两顿饭之间吃零食!

snap[snæp] *v.* to break suddenly with a brisk, sharp, cracking sound; to take a photograph 突然折断,突然断裂,拍照,拍……的快照

【例句】The photographer **snapped** the governor as he was getting into the car. 当州长进入汽车时,摄影师为他拍了一张相片。

limp[limp] *adj.* lacking or having lost rigidity, as of structure or substance; weak or spiritless 柔软的,易曲的,无力的

v. to walk lamely, esp. with irregularity, as if favoring one leg 跛行,瘸着走

【例句】The flowers looked **limp** in the heat. 花在天热的时候发蔫。

The project limped along with half its previous funding. 这个项目得到预定资金的一半,进展得很缓慢。

ream[riːm] *n.* a quantity of paper, formerly 480 sheets, now 500 sheets, in a printer's ream 令(量词,500 张纸为 1 令)

【例句】I've ordered a **ream** of the best typing paper. 我订购了一令最好的打印纸。

collard['kɔləd] *n.* a kind of kale, and the leaves of which are used as a vegetable (植)羽衣甘蓝(作蔬菜用)

chitlins['tʃitlinz] *n.* (pl.)(亦可拼作 chitterlings 或者 chitlings) the small intestines of pigs, esp. when cooked and eaten as food 猪肠(作食用的)

rump[rʌmp] *n.* the buttocks; the last or inferior part 臀部,尾部,残余

churn[tʃəːn] *n.* a vessel or device in which cream or milk is agitated in order to make butter (制黄油用的)搅乳器

v. to agitate or stir 搅拌,搅动

【例句】The bitter argument left her feeling **churned** up inside. 这场激烈的争论使她忐忑不安。

clabber['klæbə] *n.* sour, curdled milk 酸牛奶

whittle['(h)witl] *v.* to cut small bits or pare shavings from (a piece of wood); to reduce or eliminate gradually, as if by whittling with a knife 切,削(木头),削弱,削减

【例句】The number of employees is being **whittled** down in order to reduce costs.

为节省开支现在正逐渐裁员。

dasher[ˈdæʃə] ***n.*** one that dashes, esp. the plunger of an ice-cream freezer（奶油）搅拌器

centerpiece[ˈsentəpiːs] ***n.*** sth. in a central position, esp. a decorative object or arrangement placed at the center of a table 中心装饰品,（餐桌中央的摆饰）

alcove[ˈælkəuv] ***n.*** a recess or partly enclosed extension connected to or forming part of a room 凹室,壁橱

rifle[ˈraifl] ***v.*** to ransack or plunder; pillage 抢劫,洗劫或掠夺

【例句】The safe had been **rifled** of its contents. 保险柜被洗劫一空。

porch[pɔːtʃ] ***n.*** a covered platform, usually having a separate roof, at an entrance to a building 门廊,走廊

teeny[ˈtiːni] ***adj.*** (infml) = tiny

top[tɔp] ***n.*** the upper half of a two-piece garment, esp. a sweater or knit shirt 上衣套装的上半部分,尤指毛衣或针织衬衫

lavender[ˈlævində] ***adj.*** light purple or very pale violet 淡紫色的

stump[stʌmp] ***v.***（尤其用于被动语态）(infml) to bring to a halt; baffle 使困惑,难倒

【例句】I'm **stumped**: I just don't know what to do. 我很为难,简直不知该如何是好。

scrape[skreip] ***v.*** injure or damage sth. by rubbing with sth. rough, sharp, etc.; make (a surface) clean or smooth by drawing sth. rough across it 擦伤,刮坏,削平,磨光

【例句】I **scraped** the side of my car against a wall. 我的汽车车身蹭在墙上划坏了。

checkerberry[ˈtʃekəbəri] ***n.*** the edible, red, berrylike fruit of the wintergreen 平铺白珠果

snuff[snʌf] ***v.*** to inhale (sth.) audibly through the nose; to extinguish 用鼻子使劲地吸;熄灭

n. the act of snuffing or the sound produced by it 抽鼻子或由此发出的声音

【例句】Her hopes were quickly **snuffed** out. 她的希望很快就破灭了。

dopey[ˈdəupi] ***adj.*** dazed or lethargic, as if drugged; stupid, doltish 昏昏沉沉的,无精打采的,似被麻醉的;愚笨的,迟钝的

【例句】I am feeling really **dopey** this morning. 今天上午我一直昏昏沉沉的。

hangdog[ˈhæŋdɔg] ***adj.*** shamefaced or guilty; downcast or intimidated 羞愧的,低贱的,垂头丧气的,受到恐吓的

【例句】The shy boy always had a **hangdog** expression on his face. 那个害羞的男孩

脸上总是挂着羞愧的表情。

portion[ˈpɔːʃən] *n.* (fig.) a person's lot or fate 命运

【例句】I accept my **portion** of the blame. 我有部分责任。

Under such circumstances I can not but accept my **portion** in life. 在这种情形下，我只能安于天命。

snatch[snætʃ] *v.* to grasp or seize hastily, eagerly, or suddenly 攫取，抢，夺取

【例句】A bird had **snatched** up the snake from the ground and then dropped it on to the wires. 一只飞禽从地上抓起了这条蛇，后来把它丢落在电线上。

同义词：take, seize, grasp, clutch, grab

这一组词都含有“抓、握、取”的意思。**take** 是一个常用词，指“拿、握、取”，如：take sb.'s hand(握住某人的手)；**seize** 强调“突然用力地抓住、握住”，如：The policeman seized a criminal suspect.(警察捉住一个嫌疑犯。)；**grasp** 指“紧紧地抓住”，用于比喻意义时常表示“掌握、领会”，如：grasp sb.'s meaning(懂某人的意思)；**clutch** 指“突然抓住”时常伴有“急切或害怕的心情”，如：A drowning man will clutch at a straw.(将要溺死的人连一根稻草也要去抓。)；**grab** 指“抢夺、攫取”，如：The boy grabbed the apple and ran off with it.(那个男孩抢了那个苹果就跑了。)；**snatch** 指“突然快速地拿、取、夺、抢走”，如：The hawk snatched the chicken and flew away.(老鹰叼了小鸡就飞走了。)

短语表达

crop up: *v.* to appear unexpectedly or occasionally 意外出现，偶然出现

【例句】All sorts of difficulties have **cropped up** at work. 在工作中，各种各样的困难意想不到地出现了。

课文理解

I. 背景介绍

1. Alice Walker was born in 1944 in Georgia, the eighth and youngest child to a poor sharecropper family. When she was eight years old, she was blinded in her right eye while playing with her brothers. After graduating from high school in 1961, she studied first at Spelman College in Atlanta and then at Sarah Lawrence in New York. Upon graduation from

Sarah Lawrence in 1965 she took part in the Civil Rightsmovement. From 1967 on, she has been teaching creative writing and black studies at Jackson State College, Tougaloo College, Wellesley College, University of Massachusetts. And she currently resides in Northern California.

Walker's literary career began with *Once*: *Poems* (1968). about her trip in Africa. However, she is more successful in the genre of novel, such as *The Third Life of Grange Copeland* (1970), *In love and Trouble* (1973), *Meridian* (1976), *The Color Purple* (1982), *By The Light of My Father's Smile* (1998). Generally speaking, *The Color Purple*, which won all the three major book awards in America—the Pulitzer Prize, the National Book Award and the National Book Critics Circle Award, represents her best in her creative writing. Walker's novels, short stories, and poems are noted for their insightful treatment of black American culture.

艾丽斯·沃克，1944年生于佐治亚州的一个佃农家庭，她是家里8个孩子中最小的一个。8岁时，在和哥哥们玩游戏时被玩具枪射瞎了右眼。1961年艾丽斯高中毕业，进入亚特兰大的斯佩尔曼学院学习，随后就读于纽约沙拉·劳伦斯学院。1965年从沙拉·劳伦斯学院毕业后，艾丽斯加入到了黑人民权运动的行列中。自1967年以来，她先后在杰克逊州立大学、陶格鲁学院、威斯利学院、马萨诸塞大学教授写作创作及黑人研究。她现在居住于北加利福尼亚州。

沃克的创作生涯开始于她的诗集《一度》(1968)，记录了她的非洲之行。但她却更擅长于小说的创作，其主要作品有《格兰奇·科普兰的第三次生命》(1970)、《爱情与烦恼：黑人妇女的故事》(1973)、《子午线》(1976)、《紫色》(1982)、《父亲的微笑之光》(1998)。其中最具代表性的小说当属《紫色》，这部小说赢得了美国图书界三项大奖——普利策文学图书奖、国家优秀图书奖和全国图书评论奖。沃克的小说及诗歌显示出她对美国黑人文化的深刻的洞察力。

2. *Everyday Use* was published early in Alice Walker's writing career, appearing in her collection *In Love and Trouble*: *Stories of Black Women* in 1973. The work was enthusiastically reviewed upon publication, and *Everyday Use* has since been called by some critics the best of Walker's short stories.

《外婆的日用家当》是艾丽斯·沃克的早期作品，收录在她的《爱情与烦恼：黑人妇女的故事》(1973)一书中。这篇小说一经发表就受到了好评，因此，有评论家认为《外婆的日用家当》是其短篇小说的经典之作。

3. Johnny Carson：约翰尼·卡森(1925—)，出生于美国爱荷华州，是一位由喜剧演员改行的电视节目主持人，他以口齿伶俐、出言诙谐、表情自然而著称，因主持脱口秀节目《今夜秀》(1961—1992)而出名。故事中主人公两次提到这一名字，可见这位主持人深受广大观众的喜爱。

4. Augusta：奥古斯塔，位于美国佐治亚州东部一座城市，位于南卡罗来纳州边境，萨凡纳西北偏北，是著名的名胜地区，尤以高尔夫锦标赛闻名。

5. The Black Power Movement：黑人民权运动，自从奴隶制度在美洲建立起，黑人就开始了反抗奴役的斗争。绵亘200多年的奴隶制度因19世纪60年代美国内战而解体，黑人世世代代争取人身解放的斗争终于获得胜利。然而，奴隶制的废除并没有给黑人带来真正的自由和解放。虽然他们不再是奴隶了，但依然饱受种族歧视和压迫。热爱自由的美国黑人为反对种族歧视和争取平等权利进行了长期不懈的斗争，但是一直以来收效不大。直到第二次世界大战后，美国黑人反对种族压迫的斗争才发展成为波澜壮阔的群众运动。黑人民权运动，主要是指50年代中期到60年代中期美国南部黑人和一些白人同情者以抵制、静坐、游行、“进军”等非暴力抗议手段争取黑人选举权、受教育权、享用公共设施权和经济机会平等的大规模群众运动。民权运动的领导人物是黑人中产阶级知识分子和宗教领袖，而广大黑人学生、城市贫民、自由职业者和妇女则构成运动的群众基础。但自1964年之后，美国黑人运动已经不再局限于南部几个州，而且逐步摆脱了非暴力主义的束缚，走上了武装抗暴斗争的道路。

6. The Civil War：南北战争（1861年4月至1865年4月），是美国北方联邦（the North 或者 the Union）与南部联盟（the South 或者 the Confederacy）之间的战争，又称美国内战。北方领导战争的是资产阶级，战斗力量是广大工人、农民和黑人。在南方，坚持战争的只是种植场奴隶主，他们进行战争的目的是要把奴隶制度扩大到全国，北方目的则在于打败南方，以恢复全国统一。

7. Model A car：福特A型车，福特汽车公司成立于1903年，其创始人亨利·福特的目标是生产“全球车”，1903年到1908年间，亨利·福特和他的工程师们狂热地研制了19款不同型号的汽车，并按字母顺序将它们命名为A型车到S型车。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

The story begins with the narrator, a black woman, awaiting the homecoming of her daughter Dee, an educated woman who now lives in the city. Accompanying her is her younger daughter Maggie. As they wait, the narrator reveals details of the family history, specifically the relationship between her two daughters. To the mother's surprise, Dee, who has been scornful of the black, is now delighted by the old way of life, and she is even more interested in the old handmade quilts pieced by Grandma. However, these quilts have already been promised to Maggie. Although Maggie is intimidated enough to surrender the beloved quilts to Dee, the mother snatches the quilts from Dee and offers her instead some of the machine-stitched ones, which Dee does not want.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

1. Point of View: It refers to the perspective the writer takes in the narration of a story.

To put it simpler, it is the position from which details are perceived and related. It is frequently employed in novels allowing readers more perspectives to view the beings and existence. Generally speaking, it includes the first-person point of view and the third-person point of view. In contrast to the narrow scope of the first person narrator, the third person narrator's realm is expansive.

Everyday Use is told in the first-person point of view. This point of view involves readers in the story as if they were experiencing it by themselves, and thus reinforces the authenticity of the story. This technique seeks to validate the experiences of an often oppressed group of people: lower-class black women.

叙述视角，即故事与叙述者之间的关系，通俗地说，就是整个故事是由谁的口吻来讲述的。这是小说叙述技巧的一种惯用形式，通过运用不同的叙述视角，可以向读者提供观察世界的多维角度。一般说来，小说的叙述视角包括第一人称和第三人称叙述视角。两者相比，第三人称叙述视角的视线则显得更为开阔。

《外婆的日用家当》这篇课文采用的是第一人称的叙述视角。这一视角使读者在读小说时以为自己在接触现实，从而增强了叙事的真实性。这一叙述视角也使得读者能够更为真切地体会到这些生活在社会底层的黑人妇女的生活经历。

2. Story-telling: Africans have revered good stories and storytellers, as have most past and present peoples around the world who are rooted in oral cultures and traditions. When they came to America, they planted the seeds of black literature on American soil. In contrast to written literature, early black literature was orally composed and transmitted. And this is where the black literature starts. Alice Walker inherits this tradition in this short novel in which all the events are presented in the form of story-telling. Therefore lots of short and elliptical sentences are used.

讲述故事的形式：同那些以口头形式作为文化载体的民族一样，非洲人崇拜那些讲故事的人。当他们来到美国时，他们一并将黑人文化带到了这片土地。与书面作品相对，早期的黑人文学常常是通过口头的形式进行创作和传播的。这就是黑人文学的起源。艾丽斯·沃克在这篇短篇小说里继承了黑人文学的这一传统，以讲述故事的形式展开全文，因此，使用了大量的短句和省略句。

3. Symbolism: In addition to the skillful use of point of view, *Everyday Use* is enriched by Alice Walker's employment of symbols. In particular, the contested old quilts are clearly a symbol of the cultural heritage of the black people. Their different feelings about the quilts reveal their different attitudes towards their heritage as blacks. Another example may be Hakim-a-barber, who does not eat collard greens and pork — traditional African-American foods. In other words, he symbolically denies his own heritage despite his complicated African name.

象征手法:本文除了巧妙地使用了第一人称叙述视角以外,艾丽斯·沃克还大量地运用了象征手法,从而极大地丰富了整篇文章的内涵。尤其值得一提的是迪伊一心想要得到的那两床旧被子,它们是黑人文化遗产的象征。人们对于它们的不同情感可以折射出他们各自对于黑人文化遗产不同的态度。除此以外,哈吉姆·阿·巴波不吃羽衣甘蓝和猪肉这两种传统的美国黑人的食物,这暗示着虽然他有一个复杂的非洲名字,可是他仍然抵触和排斥自己的文化。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. It is not just a yard. It is an extended living room: It is more than a yard because we have made it so clean and comfortable as if it is a living room. (它不仅仅是一个院子,而是像一间扩大了的客厅。)这两句看似简单,但实际上暗含了一位母亲急切地想见到离家许久的女儿的心情。为了迎接女儿的到来,母亲提前一天收拾好的屋子,就连院子都被她打扫得干干净净,布置得舒舒服服。

2. ... and the fine sand around the edges lined with tiny, irregular grooves: The broom left on the ground an irregular pattern of small particles. (四周边缘的细沙面上被扫出了不规则的细纹。)fine 在这里表示"精细的,小颗粒的,不粗糙的",例如:fine salt (精盐),fine dust(微尘)。此外,这句话是一个被动语态,由此可以推断 lined with 前面的 is 被省略了。由于整篇文章是以母亲的口吻来讲述的,而母亲本人并没有受过多少教育,因此全文大多数句子都是短句,大量使用了省略句型,这是本文的一大特色。

3. eying her sister with a mixture of envy and awe: looking at her sister in an envious and awe-struck way (怀着既羡慕又敬畏的心情看着她的姐姐。)在这里,eye 由一个名词活用转为了动词,类似的例子还有很多,例如:When their car broke down, they had to foot it the rest of the way. (当他们的车抛锚后,他们不得不走完剩余的路。)另例:Who headed the department? (谁主管着这个部门?)

4. She thinks her sister has held life always in the palm of one hand: She believes that her sister can decide her own destiny. in the palm of one hand 是一个隐喻,意思是"在完全控制之下",即能够主宰自己的命运。

5. Dee and I ... on a TV program of this sort: Dee and I suddenly appear on such a TV program of inferior quality. (迪伊和我突然上了这类节目。)在竞争日益激烈的美国传媒界,有时候为了吸引观众,许多电视节目不得不大卖噱头,引入空洞的、甚至猥亵的话题招引观众。此处的 this sort 含有贬义的色彩,表示这类节目多半也是质量低劣、胡编乱造的,所以母亲才会对其真实性产生怀疑。

6. In real life ... man-working hands: Let me bring you back to reality. In fact, I am a strong woman with coarse hands which are fit for manual work. (然而现实生活中的我却

是一个粗壮的妇女，长着干男人活儿的粗糙的双手。）

7. I am the way my daughter ... an uncooked barley pancake: I am a slim woman with fair complexion just as my daughter wishes me to be. 这一句里的 like an uncooked barley pancake 是一个明喻，把光滑的皮肤比喻成大麦面团。这句话的潜台词是母亲永远不可能成为女儿希望的那样子，她只不过是一个皮肤黝黑的普通劳动妇女，而大女儿迪伊却以此为耻辱。

8. Who ever knew a Johnson with a quick tongue? Who can ... in the eye?: I never knew an eloquent man named Johnson, nor did I dare to look at a strange white man in the eye because there was a fear in me.（谁认得一个名叫约翰逊的伶牙俐齿的家伙？谁能够想象我敢直视一个陌生的白人？）这里连用了两个反问句（rhetorical question），目的是为了加强语气，强调作者的思想感情，从而同上文中女儿假想中的母亲形成鲜明的对比，告诉读者这才是真正的母亲。

9. Dee, though: However, Dee is completely different from me in that she dares to look at anyone in the eye.（不过，迪伊却不这样。）这是一个省略句（elliptical sentence），是一种具有明显语体功能的句子，其结构紧凑，能收到言简意赅的效果，尤其多用于口语中。

10. Dee is lighter than Maggie ... a fuller figure: Dee's complexion is not as dark as Maggie; her hair looks much softer and she is plumper. light 这里指"白皙的（皮肤）"或者"浅色的（头发）"，相当于 fair，例如：light hair and skin（浅色头发和皮肤）。而此处的 full 相当于 plump，表示"丰满的"。

11. And Dee: And there was Dee.（还有迪伊，她当时也在场。）这是一个省略句。

12. the church and me：正确的说法应该是 the church and I，因为这是主语的同位语。但是由于母亲没有受过教育，所以作者在以她的口吻叙述事情时特意使用了一些不符合语法规则的句子，以符合说话人的身份。

13. forcing words, lies ... underneath her voice: She compelled us to accept the language, views and values of the white people, and her reading was like a trap while we were like animals caught in the trap, unable to escape.（她将文字、谎言、白人的习惯以及整个生活都强加于我俩。我和麦琪困坐在那里，表现得非常无知，她的声音萦绕在我头上。）force 一词暗示了麦琪所读的书都是白人写的，用的是白人的语言，写的是白人的生活。母亲把这些书比作一个 trap（陷阱），表明在她看来，这不过是些骗人的谎话。而 other folks 一词则把黑人与白人之间的隔阂与对立表现得淋漓尽致。

14. She washed us in ... need to know: She imposed on us the falsities and so-called knowledge of the white which was completely useless to us.（她对我们灌输一大堆编造出来的事物和我们不需要掌握的知识。）水和火是自然界中极具破坏力的力量，在这里 wash 和 burn 用其比喻义，暗示了白人文化犹如洪水猛兽般给黑人文化带来了巨大的

冲击。

15. to her graduation: to attend her graduation ceremony 去参加毕业典礼

16. She was determined to stare down any disaster in her efforts: She had made up her mind to face difficulties squarely and try to overcome them.(她要得到的东西,她总会想尽一切办法克服一切困难去得到它。)这里作者将 disaster 拟人化了。

17. At sixteen she had a style of her own: and knew what style was: At sixteen she had her own way of doing things and she did know what fashion was. 在这同一句中,两个 style 有着两种不同的意思:前一个 style 可以理解为"说话、做事、表达及行为的一种风格或者方式",例如:doing things with style(做事很有个性),the style of the very rich (巨富们的生活方式);而后一个则是"(服装的)时尚,流行样式",例如:the style of the 1990's(20 世纪 90 年代的流行款式)。

18. in 1927 colored asked fewer questions than they do now: The black people were more passive in the 1920s, or to be more exact, in the year 1927, than they are now. 第一次世界大战之后,美国脱身于欧洲事务,把其注意力转向国内。与此同时,一系列恐怖主义的炸弹引起了"红色恐惧"。美国政府对政治集会进行了袭击,并驱逐了数百名出生于外国的政治激进分子,因此,黑人民权运动与其他一些激进运动一起受到了压制。本文写作的时间背景恰逢黑人民权运动高涨的六七十年代。那时,由于越南战争不得人心,国内社会动荡不宁。加上 1961 年黑人和白人公民共同展开"自由乘客"运动,1963 年马丁·路德·金发表了"我有一个梦"的演讲,黑人已经逐渐开始要求种族觉醒、种族认同以及捍卫自己的种族文化遗产。这也就是为什么 20 年代的黑人处于一种被动的地位,但是,直到今天,黑人仍然没能进入美国的主流社会。

19. Cows are soothing ... the wrong way: Cows are calm and lack of intelligence; they will not hurt you unless you milk them inappropriately. 这句话虽然谈的是生性恬静的奶牛,但实则暗指生性怯懦的黑人,或者更为具体一点,指的是性格温和的麦琪。正如奶牛一般不会伤人,同样的,她(或他们)如果不被逼上绝路也是不会反抗的。

20. no matter where we "choose" to ... come see us: Dee will contrive to come to see us wherever we "choose" to settle down.(无论我们"选择"在哪里定居,她都会设法来看望我们。)这句话中的 choose 加了引号,是一种反语(irony)。黑人始终处于美国社会的边缘,他们无法享有同白人一样的权利,所以,他们是不可能自主选择在哪里居住的。所以,我们可以把这里的"choose" to live 应当理解为 be forced to live。

21. Mama, when did Dee ever have any friends?: Mom, I doubt if Dee had ever had any friend.(妈妈,迪伊到底什么时候有过朋友啊?)这是一个反问句,不需要做出回答。迪伊没有朋友一方面可能是由于她个性强硬,脾气暴躁,不容易与人相处;但是更为重要的是,虽然她是黑人,但是由于她所受的教育使得她对黑人文化产生了歧视,所以她有意或无意地把自己排除在黑人群体以外了。

22. but I stay her with my hand: however, I stop her with my hands from running away.（但我伸手挡住了她。）这里的 stay 相当于 stop 或者 halt。此段以及后面的五个自然段都是用一般现在时来描述过去发生的事情，这种时态被称作“历史现在时（historical present）”，是讲故事时常用的一种时态，其目的是重现故事，使之更加生动、逼真。

23. A dress so loud it hurts my eyes: Her dress is in offensively bright color that it is unpleasant to the eyes.（裙子的颜色鲜艳得耀眼。）loud 在这里表示“（衣服，颜色）过分鲜艳的，俗气的，过分花哨的”，如：a loud necktie（一条花哨的领结），a loud dresser（穿着庸俗）。

24. It is her sister's hair: 原句是一个不规则的省略句，完整的句子是 This time it is her sister's hair style that makes Maggie utter such an exclamation of disapproval.（这次是因为她姐姐的发型。）

25. and kisses me on the forehead: and then she touches my forehead with her lips as an expression of affection 亲吻礼是西方国家常用的一种会面礼，在行礼时，双方由于关系不同，亲吻的部位也会有所不同。长辈吻晚辈，应当吻额头；而晚辈吻长辈，则应当吻下颌或吻面颊。但在这里，迪伊作为晚辈，却吻了母亲的额头，这看似不合逻辑，实际上反映了迪伊性格中高傲的一面。由于她全盘接受了白人的文化，她打心底瞧不起黑人，所以，才会做出这样的举动。

26. Maggie's hand is as limp as a fish: Maggie's hand is lack of strength just as if it is a fish.（麦琪的手像鱼一样柔软无力。）这句话里的 as ... as 结构是一个明喻。英语中有许多这种表达，例如：as cold as ice（冷若冰霜），as clear as day（一清二楚的），as dark as night（漆黑），as poor as a church mouse（一贫如洗），as timid as a hare（胆小如鼠），等。

27. "What happened to 'Dee'?" I wanted to know: I was wondering what was wrong with Dee?（“那‘迪伊’呢？”我问到。）值得注意的是从 17 ~ 25 自然段，作者使用的都是一般现在时，而这里时态却发生了变化，原因在于母亲所熟悉的“迪伊”已经不复存在了，取而代之的是一个陌生的完全被白人文化同化了的“万杰萝小姐”。

28. There I was not.: You are not right. I could have traced the name further back if I wished.（我还没有呢。）英语里面没有这样的表达，这不过是母亲模仿 Asalamalakim 的 There you are 而回敬他的一句话。

29. and pork was unclean: eating pork is regarded as impious for Muslims（猪肉不干净）穆斯林信徒不吃猪肉的主要原因是服从真主的命令，在《古兰经》第六章一、四、五节中提到：“血、猪肉、自死的以及未以真主之名宰牲的，不可食。”

30. Maggie's brain is like an elephant's: Maggie has a fairly good memory.（麦琪的记性可真好。）迪伊在这里以一种讽刺的口吻来谈论麦琪。

31. and a minute later the kitchen door slammed: And after a few minutes, Maggie shut the door with force.(一分钟之后厨房的门砰地关上了。)麦琪的这一举动让我们看到她并非生性怯懦,她也有自己的个性,只不过是因为在迪伊的相比之下,使她显得相形见绌罢了。

32. When I looked at her ... of my feet: When I looked at her, I suddenly felt enlightened.(我这样看着她,突然产生了这样一种感觉:似乎头顶上受了什么东西的敲击,其力量自头顶直透脚心。)这句话是一个隐喻,把这种"顿悟"带来的冲击力比作受到了重击一般。

33. You ought to ... of yourself: You had better try to be successful in the future.(你也应该有些出息才行。)这里的 make sth. of sb. 表示"想让某人成为……",例如:His father wants to make a doctor of him.(他父亲想让他做一个医生。)something 表示"重要的或了不起的人或事物",如:He thinks he is something in that uniform.(他认为他穿上制服就神气非凡)。

V. 参考译文

外婆的家什

艾丽斯·沃克

我和麦琪昨天下午就已将院子打扫得干干净净了,地面上还清晰地留着扫帚扫出的波浪形痕迹。此刻,我在院子里等候她的到来。这院子比大多数人想象的要更舒适,其实这不单单只是个院子,简直就像一间加大了的客厅。当院子的泥土地面被打扫得如地板般的干净,院子四周角落的细沙上被扫出了不规则的细纹时,谁都可以进来小坐一会,抬头看看院中的榆树,并享受从来不曾吹进屋内的和风。

在她姐姐离去之前,麦琪将会一直心神不定:她将会神情沮丧地站在角落里,一面因为自己相貌平平,胳膊和大腿上又有烧伤后留下的疤痕而自惭形秽,一面却怀着羡慕而又敬畏的心情怯生生地看着自己的姐姐。在她看来,姐姐是一个能主宰自己命运的人,无论想要什么都能得到,这个世界竟没有学会对她说个"不"字。

你一定从电视上看到过"功成名就"的儿女突然面对那跌跌撞撞从后台走出来的父母时,那副满脸惊讶的表情。(当然,那场面必定是令人惊喜的:假如电视上的父母和儿女之间只是相互攻击、辱骂,那他们该会是什么样的呢?)在电视上,母亲和女儿见了面总是相互拥抱和微笑。有时,父母亲也会痛哭流涕,这时,他们那颇有出息的孩子便会紧紧地抱住他们,隔着桌子,探过头,向他们表白,说如果没有他们的帮助,自己就绝不可能有今日的成功。这样的节目我自己都看过了。

有时我做梦梦见自己和迪伊突然上了这类节目。我从一辆软座的黑色轿车上一

下来，便立刻被人引进一间宽敞明亮的屋子里。在这屋里有许多人，其中有一个身材挺拔，面带微笑，长得颇有点像著名电视节目主持人约翰逊·卡森的美男子马上迎上前来和我握手，并对我说我真是养了个好女儿。然后，我们来到台上，迪伊一把抱住我，泪水夺眶而出。她还把一朵大大的兰花别在我的衣服上，尽管她曾对我说过兰花实在是俗不可耐。

在现实生活中，我是一个粗壮、大骨架的妇女，粗糙的双手就好比干男人活的。在冬天睡觉时，我套着绒布睡衣，白天干活时便穿一件罩衫。我能像男人一样毫不心慈手软地宰杀一头猪，并把它收拾干净。我身上的脂肪让我在严冬也不感到寒冷。我能一整天都呆在户外干活，敲碎冰块，然后打水洗衣服。从刚宰杀的猪体内取下来还冒着热气的猪肝，在明火上烤一下我就吃。有一年冬天，我拿一把铁捶击倒了一头小牛犊，锤子恰好砸在它两眼之间的大脑上。天黑之前，我就已经把牛肉挂起来晾着了。当然，这一切都不会在电视上出现。电视上的我是我女儿希望的那副模样：体重减掉了一百磅，皮肤好比入锅前的大麦饼那样光滑柔润，头发在耀眼的灯光下无比光泽。不仅如此，我还伶牙俐齿，妙语连珠，就连约翰逊·卡森也只能甘拜下风。

可惜，这一切都不过是白日梦，我还没醒来之前就已经意识到了。谁认识一个叫什么约翰逊的口齿伶俐的家伙？谁能想象我竟然敢直视一个陌生的白人？和他们讲话时，我似乎总是紧张不安，准备随时溜走，头也总是扭到一边，尽可能不看他们。不过，迪伊就不这样。她从来都是直视所有的人。犹豫不决不是她的个性。

“妈妈，我看上去是啥样啊？”麦琪问道。她那瘦弱的身躯就几乎被一条粉色的裙子和一件大红的罩衫给全遮住了，她又躲在门后，我好不容易才看到了她。

“快出来，到院子里来，”我说。

你可曾见过一只跛了腿的动物，比方说一条狗，被一个粗心莽撞、但却有钱买得起车的人给压伤后，侧着身子朝一个对此一无所知、却万般呵护它的人走去时的样子吗？麦琪走路时就是这个样子。自从那次大火把房子烧垮以后，她就成了这般模样，下颚贴着胸口，眼睛老是看着地面，走路慢吞吞的。

迪伊生得比麦琪要白一些，头发也好看一些，而且身材也更为丰满。她现在已经是一个成熟的女人了，不过我时常忘记这一事实。那座房子被火烧毁是多久以前的事了？十年？十二年？有时我似乎还能隐约听见燃烧的火焰发出的声响，隐约感觉到紧紧地抓住我的麦琪的双手，她的冒烟的头发，她的衣服被烧成黑灰，一片一片掉落的情景。当时，她的眼睛瞪得大而圆，燃烧的火焰把她的眼睛照得亮亮的。迪伊当时也在场。我看见她远远地站在那棵香枫树下，她从前常从树中挖树胶玩。当屋顶上最后一块木板被烧成焦黑色，对着烧烫了的砖砌烟囱滚落下来时，她脸上的神色显得异常专注。你为什么不在废墟上跳个舞呢？我很想问她这个问题，因为我知道她非常憎恨那幢房子。

过去我一直以为她也很讨厌麦琪。但那是在我和教堂筹钱送她到奥古斯塔上学

之前的事了。那时她经常给我们读点什么东西，可是她没有丝毫同情心，常凭借这种方式把别人的文字、谎话、习惯以及生活方式强加于我俩。我和麦琪别无选择，困坐在那儿，表现得一无所知，任由她的声音凌驾于我们之上。迪伊向我们灌输一大堆编造出来的事物和一些我们无需掌握的知识。她一脸严肃，强迫我们听她读书，等到我们刚刚有点似懂非懂的时候，她却把我们晾在了一边，简直把我俩看成了傻瓜。

迪伊爱打扮。中学毕业那会，她身穿一件黄色纱质的连衣裙去参加毕业典礼。而为了配那件用别人送我的旧衣服改制而成的绿色套服，她又穿了一双黑色的浅口皮鞋。她想要得到的东西，她总会想尽一切办法，克服一切困难去得到它。她甚至可以一连好几分钟都不眨眼。我常常是费了好大的劲才克制住自己不去动摇她的想法。等到16岁时，她的言谈举止已经有了自己的风格，而且她也清楚什么是风格了。

我没有受过教育。我念完小学二年级时，学校被关闭了。不要问我原因是什么：1927年时的有色人种问问题可不像现在这么多。有时麦琪也给我读点东西。虽然她看不大清楚，但由于她性情温和，仍然结结巴巴地读着。她知道自己并不聪明。正如美貌与金钱一样，机敏也没有光顾她。她就要嫁给约翰·托马斯了（他有一张诚实的面孔和一口像长了苔藓的牙齿）。麦琪嫁给他之后，我就没什么事可做了，我也许会坐在家里，随口哼上几句教堂歌曲，尽管我唱得不好，而且总是跑调。对于干男人的活儿，我倒是更为在行。过去我一直喜欢挤牛奶，直到1949年我的肋骨被牛角给顶伤了，就再也不怎么喜欢挤奶了。其实母牛生性安静、动作迟缓，除非你挤奶时动作不到位，否则它是不会伤人的。

我有意背对着房子。这个屋子有三间房，除了房顶是锡皮的，其他的一切都与被烧毁的那间保持了一致。现在再也没法找到做木瓦屋顶的了。房子没有真正意义上的窗子，就只在侧面的墙上挖了几个洞，有点类似船上的舷窗，但不是圆的，也不是方的。窗格子朝外敞开着，用牛皮悬吊起来。同那间被烧毁的屋子一样，现在的这座房子也被建在了牧场上。毫无疑问，迪伊要是见到了这房子，一定又想毁掉它的。她曾经写信告诉我，不管我们"选择"在什么地方定居，她都会想法子来看望我们的，但是绝对不会带上她的朋友。我和麦琪想了想，麦琪突然问我："妈妈，迪伊到底什么时候有过什么朋友啊？"

她还是有过几个朋友的。那是几个穿着粉色衬衣、鬼鬼祟祟的男孩子，他们总是在洗衣日放学后到处闲荡；还有几个有些神经质的女孩子，她们从来不曾笑过。他们被迪伊所吸引，崇拜她巧妙的措辞、优美的身材以及她那像碱水里的气泡一样尖酸的幽默。迪伊读书给他们听。

可当迪伊在追求吉米时，她就没时间来搭理我们了，她那挑剔的毛病全都发泄在他的身上了。可是，吉米很快便娶了一个很一般的城市姑娘，她的家庭愚昧低俗。这事让迪伊万分难过，她几乎无法平静下来。

我正盘算着要去接她——可是，他们已经到了。

麦琪以她往常的步态，拖着脚就要往屋里跑，但是我伸手挡住了她。“回来，”我说道。她停了下来，用脚拇指在沙地上挖起坑来。

在强烈的阳光下很难看清他们的面目，但我一瞥见从车上下来的那条腿就知道那一定是迪伊。她腿部的线条看起来总是那样的完美，好像是上帝特意为她亲手制作的。从车子的另一边下来一个矮矮胖胖的男人，他满头都是头发，一英尺长，从下巴往下垂着，颇像卷毛骡子的尾巴。我听见了麦琪吸气的声音，就像“呃”的声音，好像在路上突然看到的一条蛇尾巴在你脚尖前蜿蜒爬行时发出的声音。“呃”。

接着就是迪伊。这样的酷热天，她竟然穿一件及地长裙。裙子的颜色亮丽得刺眼，金黄色和橙色，亮得足以能够反射到太阳的光芒了。被它反射出的热浪照着，我感到我的整张脸都是烫烫的。她的耳环也是金的，长长地垂到了肩上。手臂上还带着手镯，当她抬起胳膊想去抖平衣服腋窝上的褶皱时，臂上的镯子便开始叮当作响。她那宽松的裙子在风中飘飘的，当她走近时，我觉得那裙子式样好看。我又听见麦琪“呃”的一声吸了一口气，这一次是因为她姐姐的发型。她姐姐的头发像绵羊身上的羊毛一样竖立着，乌黑的头发两边各扎着一根长辫子，就像两条小蜥蜴般，盘绕拢在耳后。

“瓦——苏——佐——啼——诺！”她一边说着，一边拖着长裙步态轻盈地走到跟前。“阿萨拉玛拉吉姆，我的母亲和妹妹！”她话音刚停，那头发直到肚脐的矮胖男人面露笑容走上前来。他往前想拥抱麦琪，但麦琪往后退，一直退到我的椅背挡住了她的退路，才停下。我感觉到她在发抖，抬头望去，只见她下巴上的汗水直往下滴落。

“不要站起来，”迪伊说。因为我胖，站起来有点费力，必须要动动身子才站得起来。她转身朝汽车的方向走去，透过她穿的凉鞋，我可以看到她白净的脚后跟。她拿起一架“拍立得”相机对准过来。马上，她就蹲下去，抢拍了一张张照片，那些镜头都是我坐在房子前面，而麦琪缩着偎在我身后。在每拍一张照片前，她都是认真选好镜头，以确保每张照片都能把屋子照进去。当一头奶牛走过来在院子边吃草时，她立刻拿起相机，把牛、我、麦琪连同房子一起拍了下来。之后，她将相机放回到汽车后座，跑过来吻了吻我的额头。

就在这时，阿萨拉玛拉吉姆作势拉麦琪的手欲行礼。麦琪的手就如同鱼儿一般柔软乏力，也如鱼儿般冰凉凉的，她身上正在出汗，但一个劲地往回缩手。看起来阿萨拉玛拉吉姆想同她握个手，并且把握手的姿势做得花哨一点。不过也有可能是他根本不知道人们是如何握手。反正不管怎么说，他很快就放弃了同麦琪握手。

“喂，”我开口道，“迪伊。”

“不对，妈妈，”她说。“我不叫‘迪伊’，我改名叫‘万杰萝·李万理卡·科曼乔’了！”

“那‘迪伊’呢？”我问道。

“她已经死了，”万杰萝回答到。“我无法容忍拿那些压迫我的人的名字来给自

己取名。"

"可你和我都知道,你的名字是依照你迪茜姨妈的名字,"我说。迪茜是我妹妹,名叫迪伊。迪伊出生后,我们就改叫她为"大迪伊"了。

"那她的名字又是照谁的名字呢?"万杰萝追问道。

"我猜是依据迪伊外婆的名字,"我说。

"那迪伊外婆的名字又是依照谁的名字呢?"万杰萝逼问道。

"她妈妈,"我答道。我察觉到万杰萝已经有点不耐烦了。"这是我所能追溯到的,"我说。其实,对我们的家史我大概能够追溯到南北战争以前。

"噢,"阿萨拉玛拉吉姆说,"我们说到这儿了。"

我听到麦琪发出了"呃"的声音。

"我还没有说完呢,"我反驳道,"那是在'迪茜'来我们家之前的事了,但我干吗要追溯到年代久远的时候呢?"

他站在那儿咧着嘴笑着,眼光朝下瞥着,用人们查A型轿车的眼神看着我。他还不时地跟万杰萝在我头顶上交换着眼神。

"你的名字是怎么念的啊?"我问。

"您若不情愿,可以不必用这名字叫我,"万杰萝说。

"干吗不叫这个名字?"我反问到。"如果你希望别人用这个名字称呼你,我们就拿这个名字叫你好了。"

"我知道这名字猛一听起来有些别扭,"万杰萝说。

"我会习惯的,"我答道,"再念一遍吧。"

很快我们就习惯了这个名字。阿萨拉玛拉吉姆的名字有迪伊的名字两倍那么长,三倍那么难念。我试着念了几遍还是出错,于是他就让我直接叫他"哈吉姆·阿·巴波"好了。我本来想问问,他是不是理发师,但我感觉他不像,所以也就没问。

"你一定是路那边的养牛部落的人吧,"我问道。那些人碰面也是说"阿萨拉玛拉吉姆",不过他们相互并不握手。他们总是忙碌着:饲喂牲口、翻修篱笆,编扎帐篷、堆放草料,等等。要是白人毒死了他们的几头牛,那些人便会彻夜地端枪守卫。我曾经走了一英里半的路程,仅仅是为了目睹这一情景。

哈吉姆·阿·巴波答道:"我接受他们的一些想法观念,但是我不会去干种田和养牛的营生。"(至于万杰萝(迪伊)到底有没有同他结婚,他们没告诉我,我也没问。)

我们坐下来吃饭,他马上声明说他不吃甘蓝和猪肉,吃猪肉是一种亵渎神灵的行为。万杰萝却是什么都吃,猪肠子、玉米面包、蔬菜,等等。在吃红薯时她更是兴致勃勃。这一切都令她开心,就连我们仍用着当年她爸爸因买不起椅子而改做的条凳这种事情也让她兴奋不已。

"啊,妈妈!"她尖叫道。接着转头对哈吉姆·阿·巴波说:"我以前从来不晓得这条凳竟有如此可爱,你还可以摸得到屁股的痕迹呢,"她一边说,一边把手伸到屁股

下去摸长凳。接着，她叹了一口气，并紧紧地捏住了迪伊外婆用过的黄油碟。“对了！”她说。“我早就知道这里有些我想要的东西，不知您肯不肯给我？”她一起身离开了桌子，走到放着一个搅乳器的角落里，搅乳器里面的牛奶早已经凝结成了酸奶。她瞧了瞧搅乳器，又看了看酸奶。

“我想要这个搅乳器的盖子，”她说。“那难道不是巴迪叔叔用你们种的那棵树的木料做的吗？”

“是的，”我说。

“哈，”她高兴地说。“我还想要那根搅乳棒。”

“那难道也是巴迪叔叔做的吗？”巴波问道。

迪伊（万杰萝）抬头看着我。

“那其实是迪伊姨妈的第一个丈夫做的，”麦琪用蚊子般的声音回答道。“他名字叫亨利，可我们总习惯叫他斯达西。”

“麦琪的记忆力跟大象一样的好，”万杰萝说着哈哈大笑起来。“我可以把这搅乳器的盖子当作凹室桌子上的主要饰物，”她边说，边拿一个托盘放在搅乳器上。“至于那根搅乳棒嘛，我会想出它应该具有的某种艺术用途的。”

她将搅乳棒裹了起来，但木柄裸露在外。我拿起把柄握了一会儿。那上面由于常年的使用而形成的凹痕甚至不用将眼睛凑近看，你也能够感觉到。那上面有许多小凹槽，很轻易地辨认大拇指压出的印痕或其他手指头压出的印子。这棒子的颜色是漂亮的浅黄色，用材来自大迪伊和斯达西曾住过的院中长的一棵树。

晚饭后，迪伊（万杰萝）走到我床脚边的衣箱，开始翻箱倒柜地找东西。麦琪在厨房里洗着碗，故意拖延时间。万杰萝突然怀抱两床被子走出房间。这两床被子是迪伊外婆用碎布片一块一块拼起来，然后由我和迪伊姨妈两人在前厅的缝被架上一针一线缝出来的。一床被子上是单星图案，另一床是青山远足的图案。两床被子上都缝载着迪伊外婆五十多年前穿过的衣服上拆下来的旧布片，还有杰雷尔爷爷穿过的花呢衬衣上的碎布片，那火柴盒大小的一小块褪了色的蓝布片，则是来自于依兹拉曾祖父在南北战争时穿过的军装。

“妈妈，”万杰萝用甜蜜的声调问道，“我可不可以把这两床被子带走？”

我听到厨房里有什么东西落在了地上，一分钟后又听见厨房门“砰”的一声关上了。

“你为什么不拿另外几床被子呢？”我问道。“这两床旧被子还是你外婆在世时用碎布块拼接，迪伊姨妈和我两人缝起来的破旧被子。”

“不，”万杰萝说。“我不要其他的被子，那些被子的边缝都是拿机器缝的。”

“那样的话还更耐用些，”我说。

“这不重要，”万杰萝说。“关键是这两床被子都是用外婆曾经穿过的衣服上拆下的旧布片，由她一针一线缝制而成的。想想看吧！”她牢牢地抓紧被子，就怕被别人

抢了去似的,一面用手在上面轻轻地抚触着。

"那上面还有些布片,淡紫色的,还是从她妈妈传给她的旧衣服上面拆下来的,"我说着便走上前去伸手去摸那被子。迪伊(万杰萝)往后退了一步,没有让我摸着。那两床被子仿佛就已经是她的了。

"想想吧! 外婆多不容易呀!"她喃喃地说,紧攫被子把它抱在了怀里。

"可是问题是,"我说,"我早就答应等麦琪和托马斯结婚时把这两床被子送给她的。"

迪伊就像被蜜蜂蜇了似的,大叫了起来。

"麦琪怎么会懂得这两床被子的价值啊!"她说。"她可能真会蠢得把它们就铺在床上用。"

"我想她会的,"我说。"只有上帝才知道这两床被子被我保留了多久,一直都没人用它们。我希望麦琪来用!"我不想重提迪伊(万杰萝)进大学时我送给她一床被子的事。她当时埋怨说那被子老土,根本就是老掉牙了。

"可是那两床被子真是无价之宝呀!"她现在却又这么说,一副生气的样子,她就是爱发脾气。"麦琪就会把它们铺床上,照那样,五年之后,那两床被子就会彻底破了,说不定还用不到五年呢!""就算破了她也会重新补的,"我答道。"麦琪会缝被子啊。"

迪伊(万杰萝)凶巴巴地看着我。"你根本不清楚,关键是这被子,就这两床被子!"

"那么,"我实在有点迷惑了,便问道,"那你要这两床被子干吗用呢?"

"就把它们挂起来,"她答道,听上去这好像就是被子所能派上的唯一用场了。

麦琪这时正在门口站着,我仿佛可以听见她双脚相互摩擦时发出的声响。

"就让她拿去吧,妈妈,"麦琪说,她似乎已经习惯了从来得不到什么,或者从来也不能拥有什么东西。"没有那些被子我也能记得迪伊外婆。"

我紧盯着她。看着她的沾满了黑草莓汁的下嘴唇,一种迟钝而又羞愧的神色仿佛在她脸上显现了出来。迪伊外婆和迪伊姨妈以前教给了她怎么缝被子。她就站在那儿,将一双满布疤痕的手藏在裙子的褶皱里。她怯生生地瞅着她姐姐,可是并没有生她的气。麦琪的命运就是如此,她明白这是上帝的安排。

我看着她时,感到似乎什么东西击中了我的头部,其撞击力自头顶直透脚心。这就像是在教堂里受到了上帝的感召后激动得喊叫时的那种感觉。于是,我干了一件我从不曾干过的事情:一把将麦琪搂过来,拉她进了房间,接着一把从万杰萝手中抢过被子放到麦琪的腿上。麦琪就这样坐我床上,一副目瞪口呆,不知所措的样子。

"你要么就拿两床别的被子吧,"我对迪伊说。

她默不作声,转身往哈吉姆·阿·巴波身边走过去。

"你根本不懂,"当我和麦琪来到汽车边时,她说。

"我不懂什么？"我问道。

"你的遗产，"她答道。接着，她转向麦琪，吻了吻她，说："麦琪，你也应该有点出息才行啊！我们现在生活的时代与以往大不一样了，不过凭你和妈妈现在的生活状态来看，你们是绝对没法体会到这一点的。"

迪伊戴上一副宽大的太阳镜，遮住了下巴和鼻尖以上的整张脸。

麦琪笑了，可能是看到太阳镜的原因吧，可是这是真正开心的笑，找不到一丁点害怕的意味。我们就这样目送汽车远去，看着车轮扬起的灰尘渐渐消散了，我喊麦琪给我端来一碗草莓汁。后来，我们俩便坐下来慢慢地品尝着，一直到天色已晚才进屋睡觉去了。

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**：参见"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. **问答**

A. 课文内容问答：

1. In real life, the mother is a large, big-boned woman with rough, man-working hands. The mother would have one foot raised in flight and turn her head away when she met a strange white man. Dee would like her mother to be a slim lady with a fair complexion and glistening hair and with a quick mind and witty tongue. Mama talked about TV programs in order to indicate that Dee's dissatisfaction towards the family and the relationship between Dee and her is just like what have been shown on the TV programs.

2. Dee is lighter than Maggie, with nicer hair and a fuller figure. And she is a woman. Dee used to read to Maggie and her without pity, forcing words, lies, other folk's habits which were beyond their understanding.

3. Maggie got her arms and legs burned. Dee was just standing off under the sweet gum tree she used to dig gum out of, and with a look of concentration on her face, watching the last dingy gray board of the house fall in toward the red - hot brick chimney. She thought Dee hated the house very much.

4. Dee brought with her a man named Asalamalakim. A short , stocky man with hair all over his head a foot long and hanging from his chin like a kinky mule tail.

5. Wangero Leewanika Kemanjo. She couldn't bear her old name any more, and she thought the old one was named after the people who oppress her.

6. No. The name Dee was named after her aunt Dicie.

7. She found two quilts in the trunk in her mother's bedroom. She realized the herit-

age value of those old quilts, and she wanted them perhaps because of vanity to show off. She would hang the two old quilts for their artistic value. Actually she once thought those quilts were old – fashioned and out of style when she was offered one when going away to college. The heritage value of those everyday objects representing African culture caused her new interest.

8. Yes. Maggie said Dee could have them and she herself could member Grandma Dee without the quilts.

9. They felt released and began to enjoy themselves.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. She thinks that her sister has a firm control of her life and that she can always have anything she wants.

2. Because I am fat, I feel hot even in freezing weather.

3. Johnny Carson has a witty and glib tongue. But I outdo him and so he has to try hard if he wants to catch up with me.

4. I' m ready to leave as quickly as possible because of discomfort, nervousness, timidity, etc. and turn my head away from them in order to avoid them as much as possible for the same reason.

5. She would always look at somebody directly and steadily, not feeling embarrassed or ashamed.

She imposed on us lots of falsity and so – called knowledge that was totally useless and irrelevant to us.

7. She was homely and poor. Besides she was not smart.

8. Meanwhile Dee' s boyfriend is trying to shake hands with Maggie in a fancy and elaborate way.

9. In fact, I could have traced it back before the Civil War through the family branches.

10. He just stood there with a grin on his face and looked at me as if inspecting something old and out-of-date.

11. Now and then he and Dee communicated through eye contact in a secretive way.

12. I don' t need the quilts to remind me of Grandma Dee. She lives in my memory.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. extended: enlarged by a new addition to the original space

2. homely: plain-looking

3. make it: to achieve something, to become successful

4. tacky: cheap-looking, of bad quality

5. overalls: loose-fitting trousers of some strong cotton-cloth, often with a part extending up over the chest, worn, usually over other clothes, to protect against dirt and wear

6. fuller: rounded or large in an attractive way

7. make-believe: a state of imagining or pretending something is real; falsity

8. stare down: to stare back at another until the gaze of the one stared at is turned away

9. rawhide: untanned or partially tanned cattle hide

10. washday: a day, often the same day every week, when the clothes, linens, etc. of a household are washed

11. well-turned: carefully expressed

12. loud: attracting attention by being unpleasantly colorful and bright

13. salt-lick: a block of rock salt placed in a pasture for cattle, etc. to lick

14. talk a blue streak: to talk much and rapidly

15. centerpiece: an ornament, like a bowl of flowers, placed in the center of a table

16. portion: lot, fate

B.

1. Dee, however, is not like me.

2. And there was Dee.

3. It was like the reaction you have when you see the wriggling end o f a snake just in front of your foot on the road.

4. She is wearing a dress long enough to touch the ground in spite of this hot weather.

5. Her earrings are gold, too, and they hanging down to her shoulders.

6. "No, mama," she says, "My name is not Dee anymore. It has been changed to Wangero Leewanika Kemanjo!"

7. Those people were always too busy with feeding in the cattle, fixing the fences, putting up salt-lick shelters, throwing down the hay, etc.

8. In the quilt there were bits and pieces of Grandpa Jarrell's Paisley shirts.

9. The quilts would be in even worse condition than rags.

10. She smiled a real smile from the bottom of her heart without any shadow of mental

suffering.

C.

1. I am the way my daughter would want me to be: …my complexion had a smooth and creamy texture.

2. Impressed with her they worshiped her well-turned phrases, the cute shape, and the quick humor like something very hot that hurt people.

3. He wasted no time in marrying a contemptible city girl from a family of ignorant ostentatious and vulgar people.

4. And she stops and moves her toe in the sand because she feels great discomfort.

5. Maggie's hand is limp, lacking firmness, and very cold, too.

6. "Maggie's memory is very good," Wangero said, laughing.

7. "Mama", Wangero said in an extremely sweet voice.

8. She breathed suddenly in painful surprise.

9. For us colored people, this is a new era, and we must seize our opportunities.

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. A big fire burned to the ground more than 300 homes in the slum neighborhood.

2. If you are upright and not afraid of losing anything, you will be able to look anyone in the eye.

3. This blouse doesn't match the color or the style of the skirt.

4. Let's talk about the matter over a cup of coffee.

5. He couldn't imagine why people were opposed to his views.

6. Stepping out of a car the official was confronted by two terrorists.

7. As long as we stick to these principles, we will surely succeed.

8. She was shocked at the news, but before long she recomposed herself.

9. It's hard to trace the origin of the reference.

B. 英译汉:参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译:参见"参考译文"。

VI. 阅读，思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Eight

Three Cups of Tea (Excerpts)

词汇注释

Spiral['spaiərəl] ***v.*** to move in a continuous curve that gets nearer to or further from its central point as it goes round 螺旋上升，旋转上升

【例句】The falling leaf **spiralled** to the ground. 落叶盘旋着飘到了地上。

disheartened[dis'hɑːtnd] ***adj.*** disappointed, so that you lose hope and the determination to continue doing something 灰心的，沮丧的

【例句】He's easily **disheartened** by difficulties in his study. 他很容易因为学习上遇到困难而灰心。

quarry['kwɔri] ***v.*** to dig out stones from a place where stones are excavated 采石

【例句】Many companies hire to local people to **quarry** the hillside for marbles. 许多公司雇用当地人从山坡上开采大理石。

butt[bʌt] ***v.*** to hit or push against something or someone with head 用头或角顶撞或顶推

【例句】Jackson kept on **butting** me but the referee did not warn him. 杰克逊一直用头撞我，但是裁判并没有警告他。

porter['pɔːtə] ***n.*** person whose job is carrying people's luggage and other loads, eg in railway stations, airports, hotels, markets, etc 搬运工

【例句】Leo used to be a **porter** in the airport. 里奥以前曾是机场的搬运工。

squeeze[skwiːz] ***n.*** affectionate hug or clasp 亲切的拥抱或握手

【例句】She gave me a hug and a **squeeze**. 她给了我一个亲切的拥抱。

squint[ˈskwint] *v.* to look at something with your eyes partly closed in order to see better 眯眼

【例句】Bell is **squinting** in the bright sunlight. 贝儿在明亮的阳光下眯起了眼。

flurry[ˈflʌri] *n.* a time when there is suddenly a lot of activity and people are very busy 骚动或突然的爆发;骚动

【例句】There was a **flurry** of activity when the plane landed. 飞机降落时引起了一阵骚动。

novel[ˈnɔvəl] *adj.* new and unusual, of a kind not known before 新颖的;新奇的。

【例句】Protesters found a **novel** way of demonstrating against rising oil prices. 抗议者们找到了一种新的示威方式,抗议油价上涨。

exotic[igˈzɔtik] *adj.* not native; unusual and interesting 外来的;奇异的

【例句】My grandpa grows some **exotic** tropical plants in the greenhouse. 我爷爷在温室里种植了一些从国外引进的热带植物。

同义词:foreign, alien.

foreign 最为常见,指外国的、陌生的人或事;**alien** 所侧重的是外国的那种"不熟悉"、"陌生"、"难以理解"的感觉,而且 alien 做名词是还可以指外星人;**exotic** 侧重于"奇"和"异",即与本国不同的且较为吸引人的一些特质。

grin[grin] *v.* to smile widely 咧嘴笑

【例句】Robert walked out of the room, **grinning** widely. 罗伯特走出了房间,咧嘴大笑。

同义词:laugh, smile, giggle

laugh 最常用词,指因喜悦、愉快或轻视而出声的笑或大笑。**smile** 指面露笑容,侧重于无声。**giggle** 是指发出咯咯的笑声,较多地用于女人或孩子。**grin** 指露齿而笑。

smolder[ˈsməuldə] *v.* to burn slowly without flame (无火焰)缓慢燃烧

【例句】She had spent the evening **smoldering** with jealousy. 她整个晚上妒火中烧。

ignite[igˈnait] *v.* to cause to catch fire 点燃;点火

【例句】The petrol tank suddenly **ignited**. 油箱突然着火了。

同义词:fire, light

fire 指将某物点燃使其燃烧起来,火势可大可小。**light** 指点燃易燃物,使其能发光,满足各种需要。**ignite** 指使某物受热直到燃烧或发光,也可指用火花使易燃物迅速燃烧起来。

exacting[igˈzæktiŋ] *adj.* demands hard work and a great deal of care 严格的;吃力

的

【例句】I guess I could never live up to her **exacting** standards. 我想我永远也达不到她严苛的标准。

buttress[ˈbʌtrəs] ***v.*** support or strengthen sth 支持或加强某事物

【例句】After three weeks, she manged to find more evidence to **buttress** up her argument. 三周以后，她找到了更多的证据来支撑自己的论点。

foothold[ˈfuthəuld] ***n.*** a place providing support for the foot in climbing or standing 立足点

【例句】The computer company is trying to gain a **foothold** in the European market. 这家电脑公司正试图找到进入欧洲市场的立足点。

respectful[riˈspektfəl] ***adj.*** feeling or showing respect 表示尊敬的

【例句】He stood at a **respectful** distance. 他表示尊敬在保持距离站着。

辨析：respectful, respectable

respectful 指表示尊敬的，或出于尊敬的。**respectable** 指值得尊敬的、正派的（人）。

disperse[disˈpəːs] ***v.*** to spread over a wide area 散开；分散

【例句】Police fired shots and used teargas to **disperse** the demonstrators. 警察开枪并使用催泪弹来驱散抗议者。

同义词：scatter, spread, diffuse

scatter 指用暴力等手段使人或物向四处散开，或把物随意撒开。**spread** 指一直延伸、蔓延，侧重遍及。**diffuse** 指光线、声音或气味等在空中传送或散布，强调覆盖面积与物质分布相对密度之间的关系。**disperse** 多指把一群人或物等彻底驱散。

faithful[ˈfeiθful] ***adj.*** remaining loyal to 忠诚的；忠实的

【例句】Mark is **faithful** to his beliefs. 马克忠实于自己的信仰。

同义词：loyal

loyal 指“坚定不移地忠于某人、事业或国家等”，而且含有“愿为其不顾艰苦而奋斗到底”的意味，如：We must be loyal to our motherland.（我们必须忠于祖国。）而 **faithful** 常指“一贯忠于誓言、责任和义务等的”，如：She is a faithful wife.（她是个忠实的妻子。）

chant[tʃɑːnt] ***v.*** to sing or say a religious song or prayer 唱，吟颂

【例句】Children are **chanting** a prayer in the church. 孩子在教堂里唱赞美诗。

covenant[ˈkʌvənənt] ***n.*** formal agreement that is legally binding 有法律约束力的约定；契约

【例句】It is the sign of a great **covenant** between Man and God. 它是人与神的伟大

契约的标志。

accomplished[ək'ʌmpliʃt] *adj.* being very good at sth; skillful 娴熟的;有造诣的

【例句】He came to London in 1976, already **accomplished** in the English language. 他于1976年来到伦敦,在英语方面已经很有造诣。

build[bild] *n.* shape and size 体形,体格

【例句】He is a man of average **build**. 他是一个体形中等的人。

haul[hɔːl] *v.* to pull something heavy with a continuous steady movement 用力曳或牵

【例句】A crane had to be used to **haul** the car out of the stream. 需要用起重机把汽车从河里拖出来。

同义词:drag, draw, pull

drag 是指沿斜坡而上或水平方向缓慢地拖或拉十分沉重的人或物。作借喻时可指把人硬拉扯过来。**draw** 指将人或物朝出力者的方向拖,不涉及力的大小,含平稳意味。**pull** 最普通用词,包含本组其它各词的一些意思,可指朝各个方向拉,侧重一时或突然拉动的动作。**haul** 指用力拖或拉,不涉及方向。

quiver['kwivə] *v.* to shake with a slight, rapid, tremulous movement 颤抖,颤动

【例句】The leaves **quivered** in the breeze. 叶子在微风中颤动。

同义词:shake, tremble, shudder

shake 最普通用词,指人或物不自主地颤动、摇摆,侧重剧烈和无规律。**tremble** 指由于寒冷、虚弱、愤怒或恐惧等而发抖、战栗。**shudder** 着重指由于恐惧、震惊等而引起的全身突然而强烈地战栗。**quiver** 多用于指事物。

sanctify['sæŋktifai] *v.* to make something seem morally right or holy 使神圣化

【例句】St. Francis wanted to **sanctify** poverty, not to abolish it. 圣弗朗西斯想使贫困神圣化而不是消除它。

延伸:sanctity, sanctuary

sanctity 名词,神圣、庄严,圣洁。如 the sanctity of sth, 某物/某事的严肃性或神圣性。**sanctuary** 名词,圣地,圣域,庇护所。如 a sanctuary for refugees, 难民的避难所。

marrow['mærəu] *n.* the soft fatty substance in the hollow centre of bones 骨髓;(比喻)精华,精髓

【例句】Doctor may recommend a bone **marrow** transplant if the patient has leukemia. 如果病人得了白血病,医生会建议他做骨髓移植。

alpine['ælpain] *adj.* existing in or relating to high mountains 高山上的(尤指阿尔卑斯山上的)

【例句】Its main attractions are **alpine** lakes and waterfalls. 它以高山湖泊和瀑布群

为主要特色。

注意：**alpine** 只能做定语修饰名词，不能用做表语。

spatter[ˈspætə] ***v.*** to scatter (a liquid) in drops or small splashes 泼洒，溅污

【例句】His clothes were **spattered** with mud. 他的衣服上溅起了泥浆。

wax[wæks] ***v.*** when the moon waxes, it seems to get bigger each night 渐满：显出逐渐变大的光亮区域；变大，增加

【例句】They know that they could observe the **waxing** moon these days. 他们知道最近能观察到盈月。

反义词：wane

hover[ˈhɔvə] ***v.*** to remain in the air in one place (指鸟等)盘旋

【例句】Two hawks were **hovering** overhead. 两只鹰在头顶盘旋。

scrawl[skrɔːl] ***v.*** to write hastily or illegibly. 潦草地写；匆忙地或难认地写

【例句】She **scrawled** a few words on a postcard. 她在明信片上草草地写了几个字。

envision[inˈviʒən] ***v.*** to imagine something that you think might happen in the future, especially something that you think will be good 想象，构想

【例句】They **envision** an equal society, free of poverty and disease. 他们向往一个没有贫穷和疾病的平等社会。

operation[ɔpəˈreiʃn] ***n.*** business company 公司

【例句】Mr. Anderson founded a huge multinational electronics **operation** in the 1980s. 在 20 实际 80 年代，安德逊先生创办了一家大规模的跨国电子公司。

humanitarian[hjuːmæniˈteəriən] ***adj.*** If a person or society has humanitarian ideas or behaviour, they try to avoid making people suffer or they help people who are suffering. 人道主义的

【例句】Both countries say their intervention is purely **humanitarian**. 两国均表示他们的干预是出于人道主义考虑。

unravel[ʌnˈrævəl] ***v.*** if you unravel threads, string etc, or if they unravel, they stop being twisted together 解开；拆开

【例句】My knitting has **unravelled**. 我编织的东西散开了。

precipice[ˈpresipis] ***n.*** a very steep side of a high rock, mountain or cliff 悬崖峭壁

【例句】The stock market is on the edge of a **precipice**. 股市正处于崩溃的边缘。

flank[flæŋk] ***v.*** to be on both sides of sb or sth 位于……的侧面

【例句】Two stone lions **flanked** the entrance. 两头石狮位于入口处两侧。

interminable[inˈtəːminəbəl] ***adj.*** very long and boring 没完没了的

【例句】Their quarrels about the trivia are always **interminable**. 他们对琐事的争吵

总是没完没了。

humble[ˈhʌmbəl] *v.* to easily defeat sb who is much stronger than you are 压制,击败

【例句】That event **humbled** Ivy's pride。那次事件打掉了艾薇的傲气。

exertion[igˈzəːʃən] *n.* great effort 努力;尽力

【例句】He failed to lift the rock in spite of all his **exertions**. 他虽然竭尽全力,但仍未能将那石块搬起。

scrub[skrʌb] *v.* to rub sth hard,especially with a still brush in order to clean it 彻底擦洗某物

【例句】Surgeons began to **scrub** their hands with soap and water before operating. 医生在手术之前需要用肥皂和清水将手洗干净。

同义词:clean,clear,sweep,wipe

clean 是最为最常用的词,指将某物或某处的污物等清除掉,弄干净;**clear** 指清除不要的东西;**sweep** 指用扫帚等进行清扫;**wipe** 多指用布、纸等物把东西擦净;**scrub** 指用硬刷、肥皂或水用力地擦洗某物。

transfix[trænsˈfiks] *v.* to make sb unable to move,think or speak because of fear,astonishment,etc.(使人因恐惧、惊愕等)不能动弹

【例句】He stood staring at the ghost,**transfixed** with terror. 他站在那里看着那个鬼,吓得不能动弹。

cure[kjuə] *v.* to preserve food,tobacco etc by drying it,hanging it in smoke,or covering it with salt(用腌、熏、烤等方法)加工处理(肉、鱼、烟草等)

【例句】My little brother loves well-**cured** bacon. 我弟弟特别喜欢精制的熏猪肉。

mouth[mauð] *v.* to move your lips in the same way you do when you are saying words,but without making any sound 嘴动而不出声地说

【例句】I **mouthed** the words as the others sang. 别人唱歌时我做口形。

halt[hɔːlt] *v.* to prevent sb or sth from continuing; to stop 停止;暂停

【例句】Safety concerns have led them to **halt** work on the dam. 出于安全考虑他们暂停了大坝的修建工作。

同义词:stop,cease,pause

stop 指动作、运行、进展等被停下来,含突然、断然的意味。**cease** 是书面用词,指逐渐、徐徐中止某种状态的存在。**pause** 指暂时的、瞬间的停顿,隐含有再进行之意。**halt** 侧重突然地地终止、停止某一活动,有暂停的意思。

agony[ˈægəni] *n.* very severe pain 巨大的疼痛;痛苦

【例句】The wounded man was in **agony**. 受伤的人痛苦至极。

club[klʌb] *n.* a thick heavy stick used to hit people or things 棍棒

【例句】He hit the bad guy with a **club**. 他用棍子打了那个坏人。

smack[smˈæk] *v.* hit them with your hand（用手）打

【例句】We have a heated debate about whether parents should **smack** their children. 关于家长是否能打孩子问题，我们展开了激烈的讨论。

devout[diˈvaut] *adj.* someone who is devout has a very strong belief in a religion 虔诚的

【例句】His grandfather is a **devout** Buddhist. 他的爷爷是一个虔诚的佛教徒。

outrageous[autˈreidʒəs] *adj.* very offensive or immoral; shocking 蛮横无礼的；无道德的；骇人的

【例句】Charges for local telephone calls are particularly **outrageous**. 当地的电话费尤其高得吓人。

expedition[ekspiˈdiʃən] *n.* an organized journey that is made for a particular purpose such as exploration 旅行；考察

【例句】They plan to embark on a scientific **expedition** to the South Pole. 他们决定开始去南极考察。

同义词：voyage, excursion

voyage 是指在水上旅行，尤指海上旅行，也可指空中旅行。**excursion** 是较正式用词，常指不超过一天的短时期娱乐性游玩，也可指乘火车或轮船往返特定景点的远足旅游。**expedition** 则是有特定目的的远征或探险。

cut[kʌt] *n.* sb' share of sth, especially money 份额

【例句】She was determined to claim her **cut**. 她决心拿回她的那一份钱。

decline[diˈklain] *v.* to say no politely when sb invites you somewhere, offers you sth, or wants you to do sth 拒绝；谢绝

【例句】The band **declined** to comment on the story. 乐队拒绝对这件事发表看法。

defuse[diːˈfjuːz] *v.* to reduce the dangerous tension in (a difficult situation) 缓和紧张状态

【例句】Local police are trying to **defuse** racial tension in the community. 当地的警察竭力缓和这个社区种族间的紧张局面。

menacing[ˈmenisiŋ] *adj.* making you expect sth unpleasant 不友好的；吓人的

【例句】His voice was quiet and almost **menacing**. 他语气平静，带有些许威胁的口吻。

finger[ˈfiŋgə] *v.* to touch or handle sth with fingers 触摸

【例句】She **fingered** the coins in her pocket – did she have enough for a cup of tea? 她摸了摸口袋里的硬币。她有足够的钱喝杯咖啡吗？

degrade[diˈgreid] *v.* cause (sb) to be less moral and less deserving of respect 贬

低;降低

【例句】He **degraded** himself by cheating in exam. 他因考试作弊而降低自己的身分。

prize[praiz] *adj.* winning or likely to win a prize; excellent of its kind (可能)获奖的; 该得奖的; 出类拔萃的

【例句】That is the **prize** exhibit in the flower show. 那是在花展中获奖的展品。

注意:**prize** 做形容词时,只能做定语。

sacred[ˈseikrid] *adj.* holy and to have a special connection with God 神圣的

【例句】Certain animals were regarded as **sacred**. 有些特定的动物被视作是神圣的。

区别:**scared**[skeəd] *adj.* frightened, or nervous 害怕的,恐惧的

同义词:holy, divine

holy 侧重于内含一种神圣的本质,使之值得崇拜,通常具有传统、世袭或固有的性质。**divine** 指来源于神或神有关,侧重神性。**sacred** 指由于是献给上帝或神的事物,因而是神圣的,不容亵渎;也指被普遍视为神圣不可侵犯的东西。

devastate[ˈdevəsteit] *v.* completely destroy (sth); ruin 彻底毁坏(某事物);毁灭;摧毁

【例句】He was **devastated** by the rude remark. 他被粗鲁的言论搅昏了头。

mournfully[ˈmɔːnfəli] *adv.* very sadly 悲伤地

【例句】He stood **mournfully** at the gate waving bye bye. 他悲伤地站在大门口,挥手道别。

herd[həːd] *v.* to bring people together in a large group, especially roughly 使…集在一起,把…赶在一起

【例句】The teacher **herded** the children into the auditorium. 老师使孩子成群地进入礼堂。

snugly[snʌgli] *adv.* tidily and tightly 整齐而紧密地

【例句】He fitted the map **snugly** into the bag. 他把地图整齐地塞进包里。

plaster[plˈɑːstə] *v.* to put wet plaster on a wall or ceiling 用灰泥(石灰、石膏)涂抹

【例句】The ceiling he had just **plastered** fell in and knocked him off his ladder. 他刚刚涂抹过灰的天花板掉落下来,把他从梯子上砸了下来。

shattered[ˈʃætəd] *adj.* very shocked and upset 震惊的,沮丧的

【例句】It is desperately bad news and I am absolutely **shattered** to hear it. 这绝对是一条坏消息。我听到后非常震惊。

beckon[ˈbekən] *v.* to call or summon by a silent gesture (以手、臂或头部的动作)

召唤某人

【例句】In China, to use a finger to point or **beckon** is rude. 在中国，用一个指头指别人或招唤别人是不礼貌的。

dog-eared['dɔgˌiəd] *adj.* A book or piece of paper that is dog-eared has been used so much that the corners of the pages are turned down or torn. 被翻烂了的；被翻旧了的

【例句】She studies very hard; her English dictionary is completely **dog-eared**. 她非常用功，她的英文字典已经翻烂了。

illiterate[i'litərit] *adj.* not able to read or write 不会读或不会写的；不识字的

【例句】I was an **illiterate** in the old society, but now I can read. 我这个旧社会的文盲，今天也认识字了。

反义词：literate

短语表达

mark out: to show the shape or position of something by drawing lines around it 画出界限，标示

【例句】The coach **marked out** a tennis court on the grass. 教练在草地上画出了一个网球场。

keep to oneself: to not tell anyone about something 不把某事告诉别人

【例句】I would very much appreciate it if you **kept** it **to yourself**. 如果你不把这件事告诉别人，我将非常感激。

hollow out: to make a hole or empty space by removing the inside part of sth 挖洞

【例句】The birds **hollow out** a nest in a tree trunk. 小鸟在树干上凿巢。

reach critical mass: to reach a very important or crucial stage 至关重要的（阶段）

【例句】The battle for the TV market has now **reached critical mass**. 现在电视市场的竞争已经到了极其关键的阶段。

fill out: to write all the necessary information on an official document, form 填写表格

【例句】Please **fill out** the form in block capitals. 请用正体大写字母填写表格。

give a bear hug: to give sb a tight and affectionate hug 热情的拥抱

【例句】Every time I see my grandfather, he **gives** me **a bear hug**. 每次见到爷爷，他都紧紧地拥抱我。

tap sb on the shoulder: to hit sb one the shoulder lightly to get the person's attention 轻拍了某人的肩膀

【例句】His mother **tapped him on the shoulder**. 他的妈妈轻轻地拍了一下他的

肩膀。

slip away: if time slips away, it passes quickly (时间)飞逝

【例句】The search for the missing flight continued, but time was **slipping away**. 寻找失联客机的工作还在继续,但是时间正在飞逝。

an air of: if sth or sb has an air of confidence, mystery etc, they seem confident, mysterious etc 给人的印象;气质;态度

【例句】She had **an air of** confidence. 她非常的自信。

be shy of: to have less than a particular amount of sth 少,缺少

【例句】We **are** still two men **shy of** a full team. 我们还少两个人才能凑成一个队。

back down: give up a claim to sth; yield 放弃对某事物的要求;屈服

【例句】Both sides have refused to **back down**. 双方都不肯让步。

rip off: to charge sb too much money for sth 剥削、诈取、欺骗或诈骗

【例句】That travel agency really **ripped** us **off**. 那家旅行社狠狠宰了我们一刀。

turn on one's heel: to suddenly turn away from sb, especially in an angry or rude way 转身离开

【例句】Before anyone could say a word, he **turned on his heel** and walked out of the room. 在其他人说出话来前,他转身离开了房间。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. About the text: This text is taken from the book Three Cups of Tea, co - authored by Greg Mortenson and David Oliver Relin. For four years, the book remained on the New York Times nonfiction bestseller's list. The book describes Mortenson's transition from a mountain - climber to a humanitarian committed to reducing poverty and promoting education for girls in Pakistan and Afghanistan. The book's title comes from a Balti proverb: "The first time you share tea with a Balti, you are a stranger. The second time you take tea, you are an honored guest. The third time you share a cup of tea, you become family…"

本文选自葛瑞格·摩顿森和大卫·奥利佛·瑞林所写的《三杯茶》这本小说。该书连续四年荣登《纽约时报》非小说类畅销书排行榜。本书由讲述了摩顿森如何由一次偶然的登山事件,完成了从登山家到致力于减少贫困,推动巴基斯坦及阿富汗的女性教育的人道主义者的转变。本书的书名来源于巴尔蒂的一句谚语:"当你第一

次跟巴尔蒂人喝茶的时候，你是个陌生人；第二次，你就是我们的贵客；第三次你再和我们一起喝茶，就已经是我们的家人了……"

2. About the author: Born on December 27th 1957, Greg Mortenson is an American humanitarian, writer, and former mountaineer. He and Dr. Jean Hoerni co – founded the non – profit Central Asia Institute. He is the protagonist and co – author of Three Cups of Tea.

In 1992, Mortenson's young sister died. Therefore in 1993, to honour his deceased sister's memory, Mortenson joined an expedition to scale K2, the world's second highest mountain. After more than 70 days on the mountain, Mortenson and three other climbers completed a life – saving rescue of a climber, which took more than 75 hours. The time and energy devoted to this rescue prevented him from attempting to reach the summit. After that rescue, he began his descent of the mountain and became weak and exhausted. Mortenson took a wrong turn along the way and ended up in Korphe, a small village. The village head Haji Ali gave him food and the warmest quilt and Mortenson recovered from hunger, cold and fatigue.

To pay the remote community back for their generosity and hospitality, Mortenson promised to build a school for the village where there had been no for six hundred years. After a frustrating time trying to raise money, Mortenson convinced Jean Hoerni, a Silicon Valley pioneer, to fund the building of the Korphe School.

关于作者：葛瑞格·摩顿森出生于1957年12月27日，是美国人道主义者、作家以及前登山家。摩顿森和金·赫尔尼共同成立了非营利性组织中亚协会。摩顿森同时也是《三杯茶》一书的主角和作者之一。

1992年，摩顿森的妹妹去世。为了纪念死去的妹妹，摩顿森于1993年参加了一项测量世界第二高山乔戈里峰的探险活动。在山上探险70多天后，其中一位队员出现状况。摩顿森和另外三名登山者进行了75个多小时的抢救，才换回他的生命。这次抢救耗时耗力，最终大家也没有登上山顶。在这次抢救之后，摩顿森决定下山，而此时他也已经比较虚弱，体力耗尽。而摩顿森在途中又走错了方向，最后到了一个名叫 Korphe 的小村庄。村长 Haji Ali 给了他食物和被褥，使摩顿森慢慢恢复起来。

为了感谢这个村子和村民的热情和慷慨，摩顿森承诺为这个600年来没有学校的村庄建一所学校。在筹集资金时，摩顿森屡受挫折，但最终他说服了硅谷的一位有开拓精神的人士金·赫尔尼，筹集到了建校资金。

3. Characters in Chapter 12

Mortenson: Greg Mortenson is the co – author and protagonist of the book. He promised to build a school in Korphe.

Greg Mortenson 是本书的作者和主角。他承诺在 Korphe 建一所学校。

Haji Ali: Chief of the Village Korphe, an old man who played a key role in leading the

villagers in building the School. He died in 2001.

Korphe 村年迈的村长，在建校中起到了关键性的领导作用。他于 2001 年去世。

Twaha：Haji Ali's son. His wife died in giving birth. He has a daughter.

Haji Ali 的儿子。妻子死于难产。有一女。

Tara：Mortenson's wife. She is a psychotherapist. She met Mortenson when he was having difficult time raising money for the first school.

Mortenson 的妻子，心理医生。Mortenson 在为建校筹集资金四处奔走时邂逅 Tara。

Sakina：Haji Ali's wife.

Haji Ali 的妻子。

Sher Takhi：Korphe's mullah, religious leader, who supported building a school to educate girls.

Korphe 的宗教领袖，支持建学校，让女孩上学。

Hussain：a strong climbing porter who performed the execution of the ram for the celebration.

一位强壮的登山搬运工，在仪式上完成宰羊的工作。

Hoerni：He provided the fund for building the Korphe School. Later, he found the Central Asia Institute and appointed Mortenson as its Executive Director.

他为 Korphe 学校的修建提供资金。后来他成立了中亚协会并任命 Mortenson 为执行董事。

Jahan：Twaha's daughter. She was nine when the School was built and one of the first girls who graduated from this school.

Twaha 的女儿。学校修建时，她 9 岁。之后她也成为了该校毕业的第一批女学生。

Makhmal：a mason who participated in the construction of the school.

参与学校修建的泥瓦匠。

Hussein：teacher of the Korphe School

Korphe 学校的老师。

Tahira：Hussein's daughter who was ten when the school was built. She graduated with Jahan in the Korphe School's first class.

Hussein 的女儿，学校修建时 10 岁。她与 Jahan 一样，是该校第一批毕业生。

Changazi：a trenking agent and tour operator who organized Mortenson's K2 expedition. Mortenson asked him to get the school supplies. Changazi managed to do that but he turned out to be a dishonest man and stole the supplies.

Parvi：CAI's Pakistan – based manager and accountant.

Mortenson 乔戈里峰探险活动的组织者。Mortenson 向他寻求帮助，给学校弄一些物资。Changazi 弄到了，但是后来发现其实他是个手脚不干净的人，偷了一些物品。

Haji Mehdi：chief of Askole，someone like a mafia boss who forced Korphe villagers to give him twelve big rams.

Askole 的村长，行事霸道，有点黑道的味道。他强迫 Korphe 村给他 12 只公羊。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

In this article，the author narrated the school building process in Korphe. At the very beginning，he was worried about the slow process. He talked with the village head，Haji Ali，but Ali seemed to be much patient. Later，Mortenson witnessed the sacrifice of the ram and the massive feast prior to the construction，which was carried out to sanctify the school. It occurred to him that this village，though with no written history，was a place of great cultural tradition and that despite the superficial differences，the religions here and in America shared so much in common. The construction work then was carried on smoothly. And one day，Haji Ali invited Mortenson to his house and treated him three cups of tea. Haji Ali explained the meaning of three cups of tea to Mortenson，who came to realized that building relationship was as important as building project and that he had more to learn from the people he worked with. Several weeks later，there was a landslide. Many villagers，including the religious chief，came to offer help. However，Haji Mehdi，the chief of Askole，came to rip off the villager. He asked for twelve rams or he would destroy the school. That was a big price to pay，but Haji Ali did not even hesitate. He gave the rams to Haji Mehdi because he knew that opportunities for education was more valuable than rams. Illiterate as he was，Haji Ali was fully aware of the value of education and willing to make any sacrifice for this purpose. He was a very wise man indeed.

作者在本文描述了在 Korphe 修建学校的过程。最初，他非常担心，因为修建的进展缓慢。他曾与村长 Haji Ali 谈过此事，但 Ali 看上去很有耐心，一点儿也不着急。随后，Mortenson 目睹了学校修建前的宰羊祭祀活动以及随后的盛宴，这样的仪式使学校的修建变得神圣。在这个过程中，他忽然意识到，这个村庄虽然没有文字历史但却有着深厚的文化底蕴和悠久的传统。尽管这里和美国有着不同的宗教信仰，却有许多共同之处。在仪式之后，学校的修建进展顺利。某日，Haji Ali 邀请 Mortenson 到他家中并请他喝了三杯茶。Haji Ali 向 Mortenson 解释了三杯茶的含义，而 Mortenson 也认识到建立人际关系的重要性并发现他可以从这些村民身上学到许多东西。几周之后，发生了山崩。包括村里宗教领袖在内的许多村民都来帮忙。然而，Askole 村的村长 Haji Mehdi 却在此时来敲诈村民。他威胁村民交出 12 只公羊，否则他就毁了学校。这是笔不小的数目，但是 Haji Ali 却毫不犹豫地答应了。他之所以这么做是因为

他深知教育的机会比这些羊更加的珍贵。尽管Haji Ali没读过书,但他却十分清楚教育的重要性并且愿意付出一切代价为村民提供教育的机会。他是一位真正的智者。

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This article is a piece of narration. By applying various kinds of rhetorical devices, the author pictured the life in Korphe and the feature of different characters vividly: the beautify scenery there, the crowded and noisy feast, the generosity and hard work of villagers, the wisdom and determination of Haji Ali, the innocence and eagerness of Jahan and Tahira, the kindness of Sher Takhi, and the rudeness and hostility of Haji Mehdi. The rhetorical devices he used in writing includes the following:

本文是一篇记叙文。作者通过使用各种修辞手法,生动地描写了Korphe的生活,并刻画出了不同的人物性格。美丽的自然风光,喧闹的聚餐,村民的热情与努力,Haji Ali的智慧与决心,Jahan与Tahira的天真烂漫与期待,以及Haji Mehdi的粗暴与恶意,不胜枚举。作者使用的修辞手法主要有以下几种:

明喻(simile):

(Para. 4): You look like the young ram at the time of butting.

(Para. 41): Getting the construction going was like conducting an orchestra...

暗喻(metaphor):

(Para. 9): ...and a bubble of happiness rose up so forcefully that he couldn't keep it to himself.

(Para. 24): A grin smoldered, then ignited at the center of his thick beard.

(Para. 46): The air had the fresh-scrubbed clarity that only comes with altitude.

(Para. 46): Beyond Korphe K2, the ice peaks of the inner Karakoram knifed...

(Para. 46): A thousand feet below, Korphe, green with ripening barley fields, loked small and vulnerable, a life raft adrift on a sea of stone.

提喻(synecdoche):

(Para. 37) These faces ringing the fire didn't need to be taught so much as they needed help.

In addition, the third-person narration is employed throughout the book. But in many places direct speech by Mortenson is used to add vividness and authenticity to the description.

除此之外,本书大部分是以第三人称叙述的。但是也有一些地方是以摩顿森为第一人称来叙述,以增强故事的生动性和真实性。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Though he stood on a plateau high above the Braldu River...Mortenson was disheart-

ened by the prospect before him. Mortenson was deeply disappointed by the view before him. K2 又名 Mount Godwin Austen，乔戈里峰，1856 年被命名为 K2 峰，因为该峰是喀喇昆仑山脉的第二座被测高的山峰。

2. He'd left Haji Ali enough cash to hire laborers from villages downriver to help quarry and carry the stone. Mortenson 在那年冬天离开村子前做了很多准备工作，并留给了 Haji Ali 一部分钱用于雇佣工人采石、运石。他期待在第二年重回村子时，学校的修建工作应该至少有个雏形。

3. He had arrived here in mid - October, nearly a month after he'd told Haji Ali to expect him. Mortenson 告诉 Haji Ali 他会九月中旬回来，但是实际上晚了一个月才来，因为他和 Tara 结婚了，所以因为婚期拖延了一个月。

4. Now that married, he need a career. Since Mortenson has got married, he need a stable job and work as a responsible husband. 书中的主人公之一 Mortenson 在结婚前是一名登山者，只是偶尔找些兼职做。在一次旅行中 Mortenson 被 Haji Ali 相救，并承诺帮助他们修建一所小学。但是现在 Mortenson 结婚了，他希望能做一名有责任的丈夫，养家糊口。因此，Mortenson 是非常希望能尽快将小学建好，然后回到自己的国家找一份工作。

5. You look like the young ram at the time of butting. 本句是明喻(simile)。明喻与暗喻(metaphor)的区别在于明喻要使用 like 或 as 等词。本句 Haji Ali 将 Mortenson 比喻成正在抵角打架的羊，生动地描写出了 Mortenson 生气的样子。

6. Doctor Greg, we discussed your plan after you returned to your village…：当地村民称呼 Mortenson 为"Doctor Greg" 是因为他曾用西药和自己所掌握的医学知识治疗了当地的一些病人。"your village"是指的 Mortenson 在美国居住的地方。Haji Ali 用 village 来指代一些地方。

7. They know the school is being built by a rich foreigner…：Mortenson 不是个有钱人。但是对于这些山区的村民来说，“外国人”这三个字本身就代表了有钱。

8. …because many of the men had to leave for porter work. Korphe 是位于巴基斯坦的山区，周围有很多高山。竟然会有登山者来到这里，他们常常会雇佣当地人帮助自己背行李和其他东西。

9. What is one winter more?：What does it matter if we have to go without a school for another winter? Haji Ali 已经预见到在这个贫困偏远的小村庄修建一所学校有多么的困难，同时他也非常清楚在这个过程中耐心和努力同等重要。

10. …and a bubble of happiness rose up so forcefully that he couldn't keep it to himself. 此处为暗喻。Mortenson 心中充满了喜悦，迫不及待要与人分享。

11. Mortenson heard a click…for his friend. Upon hearing that Mortenson got married, Twaha turned on the torch Mortenson had given him as a present. Apparently, Twaha direct-

ed the light at Mortenson so that the latter had his eyes partly closed. Mortenson 听到"咔嗒"一声,然后眯眼看到亮起的手电筒灯光,手电筒是他从美国带来刚送给 Twaha 的礼物。显然,Twaha 手电筒的光是照着 Mortenson 的方向,所以 Mortenson 才半眯着眼。

12. …Mortenson felt a sharp flurry of fists pummeling his arms and shoulders in congratulations. Twaha congratulated Mortenson by hitting his arms and shoulders suddenly and repeatedly. …Motenson 感到一阵表达祝福的拳头重重地落在他的臂膀上。

13. "Haji Ali say Doctor Greg look different this time…He really know everything.": Haji Ali says that Mortenson looks different this time and he really knows everything. Twaha 只会讲一点点英语,因此他说的话里有一些语法错误。此处的例子也说明了 Haji Ali 是一位观察事情很到位的人。

14. How many goat and ram you must give her father?:How many goats and rams did you have to give her father. 这里错误的语法再次证明 Twaha 文化程度不高。他这么问是因为在巴基斯坦有这样的风俗,即男方要给女方父亲羊作为"彩礼"。

15. Did she cry when she left her mother:这也是当地的风俗。在许多国家,新娘出嫁时要哭,表示不愿意离开家门,同时也表示对父母养育之情的感激。

16. A grin smoldered, then ignited at the center of his thick beard. 此处依然是暗喻。He tried to suppress a grin but hen his face broke into a broad smile through his thick beard.

17. Haji Ali climbed to his roof and called for all the men…the local mosque:在 Korphe,房顶不仅仅是有遮风挡雨的作用。天气热的时候,大家会睡在房顶。Haji Ali 集合村民的时候,也是站在房顶。

18. The Balti, lacking a written language, compensated by passing down exacting oral history. The Balti people do not have a written language. Nevertheless, this was made up by passing down an oral history which was strict, demanding great care, patience and effort. 巴尔蒂人没有文字,但通过口述历史传承得到了补偿。"lacking a written language"为插入语,修饰主语 the Balti。

19. It has stood for nearly five hundred years…a foothold in Baltistan. 七世纪时,Baltistan 处于藏人统治之下,其宗教信仰也逐渐开始从印度佛教转向为藏传佛教。十五世纪时,伊斯兰教才传入这里。

20. During his visits he had kept a respectful distance from the mosque. While vising the sacred place, Mortenson kept a distance to show his respect. 第一次进清真寺,Mortenson 保持一定的距离不是因为信仰而是出于尊敬。这是因为他不确定当地的宗教领导者对于他这样一个非穆斯林教徒的人提议在此修建学校,让女孩上学有什么看法。因为这样的提议是与伊斯兰教的传统不相符的。

21. Sher Takhi, who called Korphe's widely dispersed faithful to prayer.... with his booming voice. Sher Takhi had a deep and loud voice, and without the advantage of amplification it filled the small room. He called Korphe's believers, who were widely scattered working on their jobs, to pray five times a day. Sher Takhi 每天要召集住处十分分散的村里的虔诚的信徒来此祈祷五次,没有扩音器帮助,但他低沉有力的声音回荡在祷告室内。

22. Haji Ali provided the string, locally woven twine. 在前文中, Mortenson 使用红蓝尼龙绳来围出学校的平面图的。但是因为建筑工作几乎停滞了一年,绳子已被强劲的山风吹走。之后, Mortenson 发现当地妇女用这些被吹坏的绳子扎头发,非常的勤俭。现在,因为要重新开始修建学校的工作, Haji Ali 给了 Mortenson 当地人编好的绳子。

23. Gently, he turned the animal's head toward Mecca...His test of loyalty. 麦加是伊斯兰的胜地之一。将羊的头朝向麦加表示这是一场祭祀活动。这场祭祀让 Mortenson 想起了在圣经旧约中的亚伯拉罕献以撒的故事。

24. "Watching this scene straight out of the Bible stories...trace so many of their traditions back to the same root. ": The scene in which Korphe villagers sacrificed the ram before Allah exactly resembled the Bible story about Abraham that Mortenson had leaned in Sunday school. He was amazed at how much the different faiths had in common and how one could trace their separate traditions back to the same root. 在宗教问题上,人们有两种态度:一种是只看到两者的分歧和不同,因此带来了许多冲突;另一种是强调两者之间的相似之处,这样更易于双方间的相互尊重、相互理解。Mortenson 所说的话体现了他是认同后者观点的。

25. Haji Ali was in a hurry to sanctify the school. Since building a school to educate girls was not part of the tradition here, Haji Ali must have thought it was important to make the school building socially and religiously acceptable. Haji Ali 忙于举行仪式使学校神圣化。在他看来,让学校得到社会和宗教认可至关重要。

26. As the moon rose over Korphe K2, thy dance around the fire ...and introduced him to their inexhaustible supply of Balti folk songs. At this time, the moon went up high in the sky above Korphe K2. The villagers danced around the fire and taught Mortenson lines from the Himalayan Epic of Gesar, which was beloved across the most parts of Himalayas, and introduced him to a tradition of Balti folk songs so rich that it could never be used up. 当月亮悄悄爬过科尔飞乔戈里峰,村民们围着篝火跳舞,教摩顿森诵唱受到这片世界屋脊地区人民敬爱的喜马拉雅山的伟大英雄格萨尔王的史诗,以及一首又一首永不枯竭的巴尔蒂民谣。

27. The fact that it wans't written down didn't make it less real. The Balti didn't have a

written history, but that didn't mean that its rich history didn't exist. 巴尔蒂人有着悠久的历史和灿烂的传统，虽然他们的历史没有文字记载，但丝毫不减其历史的真实。

28. These faces singing the fire didn't need to be taught so much as they needed help. 这里使用了提喻的手法，用 faces 指代 people。Mortenson felt that his job was to help the men who surrounded he fire in a circle rather than to teach them. 围着火堆跳舞的张张面孔，无需什么教诲，而是帮助。

29. …during that night of dancing, the school reached critical mass in his mind – it became real to him. Although he knew they couldn't do much work before returning home, he could see the completed school standing before him in his mind because these people with whom he was singing and dancing told him they had a history and a rich tradition and they knew what they were doing. He began to understand them better and thus have more confidence in them. That night he realized with confidence that the school would be built. ……但在这个跳舞的夜晚，学校在他心里变得沉甸甸的——对他来说，学校已经成真了。他对于这里有了更好的认识，同时也有了更多的信心。

30. Hoerni had suggested the name. The scientist envisioned an operation that…spilled across the Silk Road. Hoerni 建立了这一机构并为之命名。他希望这家机构也能像自己在硅谷的公司一样迅速发展，并将这些人道主义的项目扩大到巴基斯坦以外的地方，尤其是丝绸之路上的这些以“斯坦”结尾的国家。这些国家大多是处于内陆山区，经济文化都欠发达。

31. He'd had too much trouble getting one school off the ground to think on Hoerni's scale. He had had so much trouble getting the plan of building one school started successfully. And he had to concentrate on completing this one and had no time or energy to think on the large scale of building more schools envisioned by Hoerni. ……Mortenson 则没那么肯定，第一所学校基建的起步都十分困难，更不敢想象 Hoerni 那么大的规划。

32. On the far bank of the Braldu, Haji Ali stood, sculpted as always to the highest point on the precipice. On the far bank of the Braldu River, Haji Ali stood like a sculpture as always on the highest point of a very steep side of the high mountain. 在远处的布劳渡河堤上，哈吉 · 阿里像往常一样雕像般站在峭壁的最高处……

33. …and he was determined that there would be no more interminable meetings and banquets; he would drive the construction swiftly to completion. Mortenson 感觉到了自己肩上责任重大，不能再放任村民这样搞聚会打零工拖延建学校的进度。他希望学校能够尽快建好，然后自己可以开展其他的一些类似项目。因此在后面 Mortenson 自己也说到自己变得比较严格，给了大家很多压力。

34. …Mortenson met them, plumb line, level, and ledger in hand. "plumb line, level, and ledger in hand" 是一个独立主格结构。Mortenson 带上这三样工具表明他是真的

严肃认真的对待这件工作了。

35. Getting the construction going was like conducting an orchestra…: Building the school seemed to be quite simple but actually it was quite complicated, needing someone to direct the work and others to cooperate. 这里是一个明喻，将修建学校的工作比作指挥乐团。第41段的后半部分详细描述了修建学校的过程。

36. Finally, dozens of children would art in, wedging slivers of stone into the chinks between bricks. Finally, children would move in suddenly and fast, solidly fixing small pieces of cut stones into the cracks between bricks. 几十个孩子们一起趁水泥没干赶紧冲过来，用小石子填满石砖间的空隙。

37. Para. 42—43：这两段是两个小女孩的对话，表现了她们对于修学校这件事非常激动兴奋，也积极参与进来。这两个女孩子后来也成为了学校毕业的第一批学生之一。

38. All through June, the school walls rose steadily…for Mortenson's liking. All through June, the school walls became higher and higher. But half the construction workers were missing every day as they had to tend their crops and animals and so for Mortenson the progress was too slow, not something he had wanted. 整个六月，学校房子的墙缓慢筑高，但是每天都有一半的人员由于要去照顾庄稼或是牲畜，建筑进度比摩顿森所高兴见到的进度要慢很多。

39. I tried to be a tough but fair taskmaster…: I trie to make everyone work very hard but treat them in a reasonable and equal way. 我努力扮演严厉公正的工头角色。

40. From sunrise to sunset：押头韵，如 bread and butter。

41. …anxious to account for every rupee. anxious to make sure every rupee donated by Hoerni be used for a good purpose. 我手拿笔记本，眼睛盯着每个人，焦虑地计算每一块卢比是否用到了刀刃上。

42. …so I drove people hard. so I make people work excessively hard. ……我不得不紧逼每个人。

43. One clear afternoon at the beginning of August, Haji Ali…to take a walk：在大家都在努力干活时，Haji Ali 提议邀请 Mortenson 去散散步，这是极为不寻常的一件事。因此他一定是有重要的事情和 Mortenson 谈。这一句起到了过渡的作用。

44. The old man led the former climber uphill for an hour, on legs still strong enough to humble the much younger man. Haji Ali led Mortenson to climb the mountain for an hour. Though he was old, his legs were still strong enough to leave Mortenson, the younger man, far behind and thus feel ashamed. 老人带着 Mortenson 这位早先的登山者往山上走了一个小时，老人脚劲坚强有力，让他这位年轻得多的美国人自叹弗如。

45. Mortenson was panting, as much from the thought of all the tasks he was failing to

supervise as from his exertion. Mortenson 气喘嘘嘘不仅仅是因为爬山很累,更是因为他觉得时间在不知不觉间溜走,他非常担心项目的紧张。

46. The air had the fresh – scrubbed clarity that only comes with altitude. The air was so clear as if it had been just scrubbed. You can have such clear air only when you get to a certain high altitude. 这里使用了暗喻这一修辞方法。

47. A thousand feet below, Korphe, green with ripening barley fields … on a sea of stone. 这里为暗喻,将 Korphe 比作救生筏,将山比作石海。

48. These mountains have been here a long time… You can't tell the mountains what to do. 此处 Haji Ali 所说的话体现了他对于自然的敬畏之情。他认为人与自然之间有着不可切断的联系。这种观点也与课文最开始引用的 Helena Norberg-Hodge 的话相呼应。

49. …he said, with an air of gravity that transfixed Mortenson as much as the view. Haji Ali said these words with a solemn air that filled Mortenson with great awe and made him motionless, just like as he felt when he saw the awesome view before his eyes. 一如眼前的景色,他严肃语气的震慑住了 Mortenson。

50. I followed him all the way to his house, worrying about what he was doing. I followed him all the way to his house, feeling uneasy because I didn't know what he was doing. 我跟着他回到屋里,不知道他葫芦里卖什么药。

51. …He stared out into inward space: Haji Ali 并没有看任何东西,而是看进了他的心里和思想里。

52. The first time you share tea with a Balti, you are a stranger…we are prepared to do anything, even die…:第 52 段解释了三杯茶的含义,三杯茶也象征着双方的关系由陌生到亲密的过程。

53. We're the country of thirty – minute power lunches and two – minute football drills. We in America do everything quickly, without much patience. We discuss business over lunch that only lasts 30 minutes and do football drills that only last two minutes. 我们美国人认为任务必须尽快完成,我们是个三十分钟吃完午餐、两分钟完成橄榄球训练的国度。

54. Our leaders thought their "shock and awe" campaign could end the war in Iraq before it even started. "Shock and Awe"是美国的一个军事理念,即通过展示自身的军事力量摧毁敌方的战斗意愿。这是"快速占领"这一理念的分支,即通过快速行动使对方无法反抗。所以这里从军事和政治上再次体现了美国是一个讲究效率和速度的快速社会的观点。

55. Haji Ali taught me to share three cups of tea, to slow down…building project. 这是 Mortenson 学到的重要的一课。他认识到三杯茶的象征意义,即建立良好的人际关系

和信任感。这也正是美国这样一个充满了独立感和隔离感一切以效率为上的社会所欠缺的。

56. Three weeks later, with Mortenson demoted from foreman to spectator…: After the talk with Haji Ali, Mortenson changed his role from foreman to spectator. 三个星期后，当 Mortenson 从监工变成旁观者时……

57. The roof beams Changazi pilfered were never recovered…deepest winter: They never got back the beams that Changazi stole, and so Mortenson returned to Skardu where he and Parvi took charge of the purchase and construction of wood beams that had to be strong enough to support the heavy burdens of snows on the roofs when Korphe was wrapped up in snow and became helpless and paralyzed throughout deepest winter. Changazi 偷走的屋梁再也找不回来了，Mortenson 回到 Skardu，跟 Parvi 一起监督新房梁的采购和制作，确保它们足够坚韧，能顶得住严冬时覆盖整个 Korphe 地区的大雪。

58. Predictably, the jeeps carrying the wood up to Korphe…eighteen miles shy of their destination: As predicted, the moving of the jeeps carrying the wood beams from downhill up to Korphe was stopped by another landslide that blocked the track eighteen miles before they reached Korphe. 一场山崩让前往 Korphe 的路再度中断，这也是意料之中。运送木材的吉普车停在了离目的地十八英里外的地方。

59. Haji Ali somehow heard about our problem, and the men of Korphe had walked all night. Haji Ali somehow heard about this problem and he organized men to carry the wood beams on their shoulders by walking the eighteen miles all night. Haji Ali 不知从何途径听说了我们的困境，Korphe 的男人们连夜步行下山……

60. They arrived clapping and singing and in incredible spirits for people who hadn't slept. Though they hadn't slept and and walked such a long distance, they arrived clapping and singing, in incredibly high spirits. ……他们抵达时拍着手、唱着歌，对一夜未睡的人来说，显得十足精神。

61. And then the most amazing thing of all happened: 让人惊讶的事情是宗教老师 Sher Takhi都来了，还坚持要搬第一包货。这一行为让人惊讶的原因有两个：其一，作为宗教教师或是领导者，本不应该做体力活，因为这样会没面子；其二，他小时候患过小儿麻痹症，因此负重行走必然会带来疼痛。

62. Not all the people of the Braldu shared Sher Takhi's view. 这句起到了过渡作用，引出了后文。

63. A band of strangers was crossing the bridge, they warned, and on their way up to the village. 男孩子们站在屋顶上，站得高看得远。所以当他们看到这群人过桥的时候，赶紧告诉了 Mortenson 和 Twaha.

64. The four burly men walking behind carried clubs made of poplar branches…in time

with their steps. 这些大块头手上拿着棒子，不停的拍打着掌心，威慑 Korphe 的村民。他们是 Haji Mehdi's 的打手。

65. He made a show of being a devout Muslim…Like a mafia boss. Haji Mehdi 只是表面上装作是个虔诚的穆斯林，但实际上更像是黑帮老大，不仅收取保护费，还经常敲诈。在后文中，他反对 Haji Ali 修学校的理由是伊斯兰教不允许女孩子上学。但是其实他真实的目的只是要狠狠敲一笔。

66. He took a percentage of every sheep, goat, or chicken the Balti sold, and he ripped off climbers, setting outrageous prices for supplies. When a Balti sold sheep, goat or chicken, he would charge the person a percentage of money for the sales. He also took advantage of climbers by setting unreasonably high prices for supplies. Balti 人所卖的每一只绵羊、山羊或是鸡，他都要提成。他也盘剥登山者，用高得离谱的价钱卖给登山所需的物品。

67. If someone sold so much as an egg to an expedition without paying him his cut, Haji Mehdi sent his henchmen to beat them with clubs. If someone sold a small article like an egg to an exploration team without paying him his share, he sent his henchmen to beat them with thick heavy sticks. 如果有人胆卖给探险者一枚鸡蛋，而不给他抽头，Haji Mehdi 就会派打手们用棍棒揍打他。

68. After Haji Ali embraced Mehdi, Askole's nurmadhar declined his invitation to tea. Haji Ali treated Haji Mehdi as a guest by walking out to meet him, embracing him and inviting him to tea. But the latter was very rude, and refused the invitation, implying that he didn't come for a friendly visit but for something else.

69. Mortenson stepped forward, hoping to defuse the violence gathering in the air. Seeing violence was about to take lace, Mortenson came forward, in an attempt to make the situation less tense. Mortenson 往前走去，试图化解空气中弥漫的冲突气息。

70. You have to understand, in these villages, a ram is like a firstborn child, prize cow, and family pet all rolled into one. In these villages, a ram was very much valued, meaning something extremely precious like a firstborn baby, a prize cow a family pet combined. 你得理解，在这些村子里，一只公羊是头胎孩子、珍贵的奶牛、家里的宠物加在一起才比得上它的珍贵。

71. The most sacred duty of each family's oldest boy was to care for their rams, and they were devastated. Caring for the family's rams was considered a sacred duty which was entrusted to the oldest boy in the family. So the boys were extremely shocked and sad when they heard that their village had to pay the man from Askole twelve of their largest rams. 每户人家的长子最神圣的任务就是照料公羊，Haji Mehdi 的索贿对他们而言简直是毁灭性的。

72. ...but he was smiling like he'd just won a lottery. Haji Ali was smiling although they had lost twelve large rams, almost half of the wealth of the village. 十二只羊的确是很高的代价。从表面上看，Haji Mehdi 在这场冲突中大获全胜，得到了自己想要的东西。但是 Haji Ali 赢得了孩子们上学的机会，这更是无价的。

V. 参考译文

三杯茶

（节选）

葛瑞格·摩顿森

大卫·奥利佛·瑞林

似乎很荒谬的是，喜马拉雅山地区的"原始"文化，竟然可以给我们现代工业社会提供一些教诲；我们对未来发展的探寻，总是不断螺旋式地寻求人类与地球的古老联结——这种联结是那些古老文化从来没有抛弃的。

——海琳娜·诺伯·霍吉

那堆石头与其说是为盖新学校所预备的建材，倒不如说是远古时代遗留下来的废墟遗迹。摩顿森站在布劳渡河边的一块高地上，虽然美妙的秋天气候让金字塔山形的科尔飞乔戈里峰草木茂密，但眼前的景象却让他心灰意冷。

去年冬天离开科尔飞之前，摩顿森已把帐篷地桩楔进冷冻的地里作为标识，并在上面系上红蓝色尼龙绳，用来标记他所规划的学校的五间教室。他留给了哈吉·阿里足够的现金，让他请河下游村子的人采运石材。再回到科尔飞，摩顿森本来是期待至少可以看到挖好的学校地基，但眼前所见的却是堆在地里的两大堆石头。

同哈吉·阿里一起查看学校的建设地，摩顿森极力掩盖着自己的失望之情。同他妻子一起四次去机场，加上收回建材所费的周折，返回科尔飞时已是十月中旬，比跟哈吉·阿里约定的再见面时间快晚了一来月。他们这个礼拜本应该在砌墙啦，摩顿森心里升起了怒火，但也责怪自己：我不可能一直到巴基斯坦来，我现在结婚了，我得有自己的事业。摩顿森希望先尽快盖好学校，再来考虑自己未来这一辈子的事业。可眼前冬天又会耽搁学校的建设进度，想到这，摩顿森生气地踢起了一块石头。

"怎么啦？"哈吉·阿里用巴尔蒂语问道，"你看起来像只横冲直撞的年轻气盛的公羊。"

摩顿森深深地吸了一口气，"你们怎么还没动工？"他问道。

"葛瑞格医生，我们在你返回的时候，讨论过你的计划。"哈吉·阿里说，"我们觉得，把钱付给孟冲村和阿斯科村那些懒人浪费你的钱是很愚蠢的。他们要是知道学校是一个有钱的外国人盖的，就会偷懒耍滑，漫天要价。所以我们就自己采石材，这

整整花了一个夏天,因为村里的男人得做搬运的工作。不用着急,你的钱我可是牢牢地锁在我家了。”

“我不担心钱。”摩顿森说,“但是我原本是想在冬天之前学校封顶,孩子们有个地方读书学习。”

哈吉·阿里把手放在摩顿森肩上,父亲般地捏了一下这个失去耐性的美国人。“感谢仁慈的安拉,感谢你为我们这里所做的一切。但是我们科尔飞人生活在这块没有学校的地方已经六百年了,”他笑道,“不就是又多一个冬天吗?”

当天夜晚,摩顿森和塔瓦哈躺在星空下哈吉·阿里家的的屋顶上,回想起上次睡在同样的位置时,那时心里是多么孤单。现在他脑海里出现了塔拉,闪现了她在旧金山机场隔着玻璃跟他挥手告别时的音容笑貌,强烈的幸福感油然而生,他很想与人分享这份幸福。

“塔瓦哈,你醒着了吗?”摩顿森问。

“还醒着。”

“有件事想告诉你,我结婚了。”

摩顿森听到“咔嗒”一声,然后眯眼看到亮起的手电筒灯光,手电筒是他从美国带来刚送给塔瓦哈的礼物。塔瓦哈在他身边坐起身来,在他新奇的电灯灯光下琢磨摩顿森的面部表情,看看摩顿森是否在开玩笑。

接着手电筒掉到了地上,摩顿森感到一阵祝福的拳头重重地落在他的臂膀上。最后塔瓦哈跌坐在床上的铺垫上,幸福地叹了口气道。“哈吉·阿里说葛瑞格医生这次看起来神情不同。”塔瓦哈笑着说,“他真的是无所不知。”塔瓦哈开心地将手电筒一开一关地玩弄着。“她叫什么名字?”

“塔拉。”

“塔-拉。”塔瓦哈嘴里念着这个发音。这个发音在乌尔都语里是“星辰”的意思。“她很美吧,您的塔拉?”

“是的,”摩顿森觉得自己脸都红了,“非常美。”

“那您要给她父亲多少只山羊和公羊呢?”塔瓦哈问。

“她父亲和我父亲一样,都已经去世了。”摩顿森说道,“在美国,我们不需要给聘礼。”

“离开母亲的时她哭了吗?”

“她是在婚后才告诉她母亲的。”

塔瓦哈陷入了沉默,思索着美国怪异的婚姻风俗。

第二天早上,除了往常的薄煎饼和酸奶外,摩顿森发现他的早餐盘里还多了枚珍贵的煮鸡蛋,莎琪娜站在通往厨房的门道上自豪地对他咧着嘴笑着。哈吉·阿里帮摩顿森边剥掉蛋壳儿边解释着:“你会更强壮,多生孩子的。”
莎琪娜则把脸藏在头巾后头咯咯地笑。

哈吉·阿里耐心地坐在摩顿森旁边，直到他喝完第二杯奶茶，脸上露出微笑，然后笑容满面。“我们去建学校！”他说。

哈吉·阿里爬到他的屋顶召集所有科尔飞村男人到当地的清真寺集合。摩顿森带着从常卡吉废弃的旅馆找回来的五把铲子，紧跟着哈吉·阿里通过泥泞的巷道来到清真寺，其他村民也从自家的家门里不断地走出来。

过去几个世纪来，科尔飞的清真寺和心怀信仰涌入寺里的人们一样，都在不断地改变以适应不断变化的环境。巴尔蒂人没有文字，历代都通过口述方式传承他们的历史文化。每个巴尔蒂人都能传诵祖先事迹，可以追溯到十代甚至二十代前的历史。因此每一位科尔飞村民都熟知这幢土墙加固的木制建筑的传奇故事。近五百年来这栋建筑耸立在这里，在伊斯兰教进入巴尔蒂斯坦地区立足之前，它本是一间佛教庙宇。

来科尔飞待了这么久，摩顿森还是第一次跨进这所清真寺的大门。他每次来到科尔飞地区，他都是对这所清真寺和这里的宗教领袖谢尔·塔希敬而远之。摩顿森不太确定这位伊斯兰毛拉对村里有他这样一位非穆斯林信徒有何想法，尤其是这位非穆斯林信徒还提倡让科尔飞的女孩们接受教育。谢尔·塔希对摩顿森笑了笑，把他领到房间后的祷告垫。谢尔·塔希瘦瘦的，蓄着灰白的胡子，同大部分住在山区的巴尔蒂人一样，比他四十多岁的实际年龄看起来要苍老许多。

谢尔·塔希每天要召集住处十分分散的村里的虔诚的信徒来此祈祷五次，没有扩音器帮助，但他低沉有力的声音回荡在祷告室内，他开始带着大家用一种特别的祷词祈求真主安拉在他们盖学校时赐予庇护和引导。摩顿森像村里裁缝所教给他的祈祷方式交叉双臂，弯下腰开始祈祷。

哈吉·阿里这次拿出了绳子，是当地人编的麻绳，不是用红蓝尼龙绳交错编织成的绳索。他和摩顿森一起量好准确的长度，把麻线浸放在钙粉和石灰粉的混合物里，然后用村里几百年来的经受过时间考验的方法来标识建设工地的面积：他和塔瓦哈拉紧麻绳，然后在地上使劲一弹，在夯实的地面上留下一条白色印记标识着学校墙壁的位置。摩顿森把五把铲子传给大家。他和其他的五十多位村民轮流不间歇地挖了一整个下午，直到在学校预定位置的周边挖好了一条三英尺深、三英尺宽的长沟。

沟挖好后，哈吉·阿里朝事先为此准备的两块巨石点点头，六名男人一起抬起石头，艰难地移动脚步走到挖好的长沟，把石头慢慢地放进面向科尔飞乔戈里峰的地基角落里了。接着哈吉·阿里让人把“肖古拉巴克”（大山羊）牵过来。

塔瓦哈神情严肃地走开，带回一只长着高贵的弯弯犄角的巨大灰色动物。“通常人要使劲拽着公羊才会走，”摩顿森说，“但这是全村最大的一只公羊，反过来是它拖着塔瓦哈走的，塔瓦哈用上了吃奶的劲才没被它甩掉。”

塔瓦哈在奠基石旁拉住了公羊并抓紧了它的犄角，当谢尔·塔希唱着上帝阿拉的故事，阿拉要求亚伯拉罕牺牲他的儿子献祭以考验他的诚心，在通过考验后用一只

公羊作为祭献的替代,塔瓦哈轻柔地将公羊的头转向麦加的方向。《古兰经》中的故事同《托拉》和《圣经》以撒和亚伯拉罕的契约故事以相同的方式呈现。"看到这个场景就如同我在主日学校学到的圣经故事一样。"摩顿森说道:"我认为不同的宗教其实有许多共性,许许多多的传统是可以追溯到共同的根的。"

侯赛因是一名技能熟练的登山挑夫,其体型硕大,算得上是巴尔蒂人中的相扑选手了,一直负责村里的屠宰任务。巴托罗的挑夫是依据所负重量收费的,每二十五公斤为一个负重单位,而侯赛因是有名的为探险服务的挑夫,每次至少能背三个负重单位,从来不低于过七十公斤。侯赛因从刀鞘中抽出十六英寸长的刀子,把刀轻轻放在毛发倒竖的公羊的喉咙上。谢尔·塔希举起双手,双掌向上,然后放在公羊头上,请求安拉的同意取走它的性命,然后朝握着刀的侯赛因点了点头。

当男人们忙着剥皮、分割羊肉时,女人们则在做饭、煮豆汤。"那天我们几乎没做任何别的事。"摩顿森说,"事实上,我们整个秋天都没做任何别的事。哈吉·阿里忙于举行仪式使学校神圣化,而不是修建学校本身。我们只是享受了一顿丰盛的大餐。当然,对于一年只能吃到几次肉食的村民来说,丰盛的大餐远比学校来得重要得多。"

每一位科尔飞村民都分到了属于他们的那一份羊肉。当最后的羊骨被吃得干干净净,最后一滴骨髓都被吸干后,摩顿森加入村民的队伍,他们一起在摩顿森希望有一天能成为竣工后的学校庭院的地点点起了篝火。当月亮悄悄爬过科尔飞乔戈里峰,村民们围着篝火跳舞,教摩顿森诵唱受到这片世界屋脊地区人民敬爱的喜马拉雅山的伟大英雄格萨尔王的史诗,以及一首又一首永不枯竭的巴尔蒂民谣。

巴尔蒂人和这个高大美国人一起像托钵僧般地旋转起舞,歌唱着高山王国,歌述着从阿富汗蜂拥而来的帕坦战士的野蛮;歌述着与巴尔蒂王公与亚历山大时代来自西方的陌生的欧洲征服者之间的战争,唱述着在廓尔喀族雇用军的帮助下欧洲征服者从英印度横扫到南方和东方的历史。科尔飞的女人们早已习惯了这个异教徒,她们站在熊熊火光边,脸孔发亮,拍掌跟她们的男人一起唱着歌谣。

摩顿森认识到,巴尔蒂人有着悠久的历史和灿烂的传统,虽然他们的历史没有文字记载,但丝毫不减其历史的真实。围着火堆跳舞的张张面孔,无需什么教诲,而是帮助。学校将是他们能够自助的地方。摩顿森研究着学校的建设地点,那里不过是几条喷洒了羊血的浅浅的沟渠。在他返回到塔拉身边之前,工程也许没有多少大的进展,但在这个跳舞的夜晚,学校在他心里变得沉甸甸的——对他来说,学校已经成真了。他好像觉得学校就矗立在他的眼前,像盈盈月光照耀下的科尔飞乔戈里峰一样。摩顿森将脸转向火光。

1996年5月,摩顿森在伊斯兰堡机场填入境表格时,他的笔在"职业"那一栏犹豫不决。多少年来他都是填写"登山者";这一次,他潦草地用印刷体填入"会长——中亚研究会",这个名称是霍尔尼建议的。霍尔尼这位科学家预见,这个机构将如同他创立的多个半导体公司一样迅速发展,学校建设和其他人道主义援助项目除了在

巴基斯坦，还会沿丝绸之路推广到各个"斯坦"地区，摩顿森则没那么肯定，第一所学校基建的起步都十分困难，更不敢想象霍尔尼的规划。不过他有了年薪 21798 元的稳定收入，这是他可以赖以依靠的，也可以思考一下长期的目标规划。

在远处的布劳渡河堤上，哈吉·阿里像往常一样雕像般站在峭壁的最高处，左右两边是塔瓦哈和嘉涵，哈吉·阿里热烈的拥抱欢迎他的这个美国儿子的归来。

第二天清晨，天还未亮，摩顿森就在哈吉·阿里家的屋顶上来回踱步。他现在是一个组织的会长，肩负的责任更广的，不光是盖好这个偏远村庄的一所学校而已。霍尔尼对他的信任重重地压在他的宽阔的肩膀上，他决定了，不能再参加没完没了的聚会和宴请，必须尽快将学校盖好。

所有村民在工地集合后，摩顿森带着铅垂线、水平仪、账簿跟他们碰头。"盖学校，就如同指挥交响乐团。"摩顿森说，"我们首先用炸药把巨石炸成细小的石头，然后几十个人在混乱中左弯右绕行进，把石头搬给石匠。石匠马克玛尔神奇地动了动他的铲子把石头整理成整齐的石砖。女人们则从河里挑水，倒在事先挖好的坑里搅拌水泥，然后石匠把混好的水泥抹在石砖上，石砖慢慢地一排一排砌起。几十个孩子们一起趁水泥没干赶紧冲过来，用小石子填满石砖间的空隙。"

"我们非常兴奋，特别想帮忙，"学校老师侯赛因的女儿泰希拉说。她当时年龄仅 10 岁。"父亲告诉我学校是个很特别的地方，可我不知道学校是什么样子，所以跑到工地看看为什么大家都这么兴奋。家里每个人都来帮忙了。"

"葛瑞格医生从他的国家带了些书来。"哈吉·阿里的孙女，当时 9 岁的嘉涵，她和泰希拉将成为了科尔飞学校第一届的毕业生。她说，"里头有些学校的照片，所以我基本上了解我们要盖的是什么了。葛瑞格医生衣着干净、高贵，照片上的孩子也干干净净的。我当时在想，如果我去上学，也许有一天我也会变得很高贵。"

整个六月，学校房子的墙缓慢筑高，但是每天都有一半的人员由于要去照顾庄稼或是牲畜，建筑进度比摩顿森所高兴见到的进度要慢很多。"我努力扮演严厉公正的工头角色。"摩顿森说，"我从早到晚都待在工地，用水平仪确定墙砌得平不平，用铅垂线量墙砌得直不直。我手拿笔记本，眼睛盯着每个人，焦虑地计算每一块卢比。我不想让霍尔尼失望，所以我不得不紧逼每个人。"

8 月初一个晴朗的下午，哈吉·阿里在工地拍了拍摩顿森的肩膀，邀他一起散步。老人带着摩顿森这位早先的登山者往山上走了一个小时，老人脚劲坚强有力，让他这位年轻得多的美国人自叹弗如，但摩顿森觉得时间在流逝。当哈吉·阿里终于在狭窄的村子上头的岩架上停下来时，摩顿森已经气喘吁吁，暂时忘了没有发挥好监督及领导责任的自责。

哈吉·阿里等到摩顿森缓过气来，让他看看眼前的美景。空气是高山上特有的清洌，远在乔戈里峰之外，喀喇昆仑山脉的冰峰直插蓝天。一千英尺之下的科尔飞，庄稼逐渐成熟的田地里翠绿一片，但看起来那么渺小脆弱，仿佛漂浮在岩石海洋中的

一叶小舟。

哈吉·阿里走过来把手放在摩顿森的肩上。“这些山很久很久就在这里,”他说,“我们很久很久就在这里。”说着他拿出象征村长权威的棕色羊毛“托比帽”,端端正正地戴在他满是银发的头上。“你不能决定山该做什么。”一如眼前的景色,他严肃语气的震慑住了摩顿森。“你必须学会聆听它们。所以我也请你听我讲,因为万能上帝安拉的仁慈,你为我的村民做了很多,我们很感谢。但是现在你得再为我做一件事。”

“我愿意做任何事。”摩顿森说。

“坐下,不要说话。”哈吉·阿里说,“你把我们都快逼疯了。”

“然后他伸手把我的铅垂线、水平仪、账簿全都拿走了,快步返回科尔飞。”摩顿森回忆道,“我跟着他回到屋里,不知道他葫芦里卖什么药。他从他脖子上一直戴着一个皮串里拿出一把钥匙。他用钥匙打开一个褪色模糊的佛像木雕柜子,把我的东西锁在里头。里面放的都是重要的东西,有一条腌山羊腿、他的祷告珠,还有他那把旧式英国滑膛枪。然后他吩咐莎琪娜端茶来。”

在莎琪娜泡煮白玉茶的时候,摩顿森焦虑不安地等了半个小时,哈吉·阿里则随手翻看着他最为珍贵的《古兰经》,嘴上默念着祷告词,沉浸在内心世界里。

瓷碗装着滚烫酥奶茶在他们手中热气腾腾,哈吉·阿里开了口,“如果你想在巴尔蒂斯坦事业蒸蒸日上,你就得尊重我们的方式。”哈吉·阿里边吹着他的碗边说,“第一次跟巴尔蒂人喝茶的时候,你是个陌生人;第二次,你就是我们的珍贵的客人;第三次和我们一起喝茶,就已经是我们的家人了,我们会为我们的家人做任何事,甚至是牺牲我们的生命。”他把温暖的手搭着摩顿森的手。“葛瑞格医生,你得花时间去同我们一起喝这三杯茶。我们虽然没接受过什么教育,但是我们并不笨,我们在这里生存已经很久很久了。”

“那天,哈吉·阿里教给了我这一辈子最重要的一堂课。”摩顿森说,“我们美国人认为任务必须尽快完成,我们是个三十分钟吃完午餐、两分钟完成橄榄球训练的国度。我们的领导人认为靠震慑行动,就能在攻进伊拉克之前打赢伊拉克战争。哈吉·阿里教我要花时间喝上三杯茶,把建筑速度放慢,既要重视盖学校,也要重视和建设者的关系。他给我上了宝贵的一课,让我知道我可以从和我一起工作的人身上,学到太多东西,而不是总想着教给他们些什么。”

三个星期后,当摩顿森从监工变成旁观者时,学校的墙已经砌得比他这个美国人还高,就只差盖屋顶。常嘎吉偷走的屋梁再也找不回来了,摩顿森回到斯卡都,跟帕尔维一起监督新房梁的采购和制作,确保它们足够坚韧,能顶得住严冬时覆盖整个科尔飞地区的大雪。

一场山崩让前往科尔飞的路再度中断,这也是意料之中。运送木材的吉普车停

在了离目的地十八英里外的地方。“第二天早上，帕尔维和我在讨论该怎么办时，我们远远地看见一大团尘土沿着山谷方向下来。”摩顿森说，“哈吉·阿里不知从何途径听说了我们的困境，科尔飞的男人们连夜步行下山，他们抵达时拍着手、唱着歌，对一夜未睡的人来说，显得十足精神。谢尔·塔希也来了，还坚持第一个搬货。”

“照理村里的宗教人士不应该屈尊做这些粗重活，但他坚持领着我们这一行三十五个人走了十八英里的山路，把屋梁扛回村里。谢尔·塔希小时候得过小儿麻痹症，走路一拐一拐的，这长长的一段路对他是件痛苦的事，但他肩扛屋梁面露笑容，若无其事，带领我们攀爬布劳渡河山谷。这位保守的毛拉是想用这种方式表达他对科尔飞孩子教育的支持——也包括支持女孩子的教育。”

但不是所有布劳渡河谷的人都持谢尔·塔希的观点。一个星期后，摩顿森和塔瓦哈站在一起，正惊叹玛克玛和他的队伍安放房梁的纯熟技艺，传来了一群孩子的喊叫声。孩子们通报说：一帮陌生人刚刚过桥，正朝村子里走来。

摩顿森跟着哈吉·阿里走到桥上方的山包上，看到有五名男子正向他们走来，其中一名看起来像是领头的，走在队伍的前面，紧跟着四名身材魁梧的男子手里拿着白杨树枝做的棍子，边走边用棍子敲着手掌。领头的年龄较老，身材干瘦，满脸病容，爬上科尔飞时拄着拐杖。离哈吉·阿里五十码时，他停了下来，傲慢地要科尔飞的村长走过去迎接他。

塔瓦哈靠向摩顿森悄声说，“糟糕，这人是哈吉·麦迪。”

摩顿森早就认识这个人，他是艾斯科里的村长。摩顿森说：“他表面是个虔诚的穆斯林，但实际上像个黑手党老大操控着整个布劳渡河谷地区的经济。巴尔蒂人所卖的每一只绵羊、山羊或是鸡，他都要提成。他也盘剥登山者，用高得离谱的价钱卖给登山所需的物品。如果有人胆敢卖给探险者一枚鸡蛋，而不给他抽成，哈吉·麦迪就会派打手们用棍棒揍打他。”

哈吉·阿里拥抱麦迪后，麦迪拒绝喝茶的邀请。“我就在这空旷的地方讲话，大家都听得到。”他对崖壁旁聚拢的人群道：“我听说有个异教徒来到了这里，企图用他的教导毒害穆斯林的男孩和女孩。”哈吉·麦迪咆哮起来。“安拉禁止女孩受教育，我也禁止你们盖学校。”

“我们会把学校建好的，”哈吉·阿里平静地说，“不管你禁止不禁止。”

摩顿森往前走去，试图化解空气中弥漫的冲突气息，“我们何不喝茶讨论这件事？”

“我知道你是谁，异教徒（ Kafir ）。”麦迪使用了形容异教徒最存有贬义的恶劣的词汇，“我跟你无话可说。”

“至于你，你不是穆斯林吗？”麦迪转身对着哈吉·阿里威吓道，“真主只有一位。你是敬奉安拉，还是敬奉这个异教徒（ Kafir ）？”

哈吉·阿里拍着摩顿森的肩膀道："从来没有人来这里帮助过我的村民，我每年交钱给你，但你从来也没为我们做过什么。这个人比起你来是位更好的穆斯林，他比你更值得我们的爱戴。"

哈吉·麦迪的打手们焦躁地挥动了棍棒，他举起手阻止他们先别动。"如果你坚持要建你们的异教徒学校，你必须付出代价。"麦迪下垂眼睑。"我要十二只最大的公羊。"

"就如你所愿。"哈吉·阿里背转向麦迪以鄙视他贬低自己身份的索贿行为，"把肖古拉巴克（大山羊）带过来。"哈吉·阿里命令道。

"你得理解，在这些村子里，一只公羊是头胎孩子、珍贵的奶牛、家里的宠物加在一起才比得上它的珍贵。"摩顿森解释道，"每户人家的长子最神圣的任务就是照料公羊，哈吉·麦迪的索贿对他们而言简直是毁灭性的。"

直到十二个孩子拖着粗角厚蹄的山羊过来，哈吉·阿里一直背对着那些人，他接过孩子手中缰绳，把羊绑在一起。孩子们把他们最珍贵的财产交给村长时，都忍不住哭了。哈吉·阿里伤心地低下身子，把羊群交给哈吉·麦迪，一句话都没说。接着阿里转过身，带领村民们回到学校。

"那是我见过的最低声下气的事情之一。"摩顿森说，"他把村里的超过一半财产给了那个恶棍，却还能笑得出来像刚中了头彩。"

哈吉·阿里停在村民们同心协力盖起来的学校前。它坚实地耸立在科尔飞乔戈里峰前，严丝合缝的石墙涂好石灰油漆成了黄色，厚重门板能把恶劣天气挡在门外，科尔飞的孩子们跪在冰冻的地上读书的年代一去不返了。"不要难过，"他告诉心碎的村民们，"那些羊终究会死的，被吃掉的，但学校还会在这里。哈吉·麦迪今天拿走了食物，但我们的孩子却永远都能接受教育。"

天黑之后，在哈吉·阿里家的文火焖烧着巴尔蒂锅菜的炉火旁，他招呼摩顿森坐到身边，然后拿起一本皱巴巴、油迹斑斑的《古兰经》，举在火光前面，"你能看到这本《古兰经》有多美吗？"哈吉·阿里问。

"是的。"

"可是我却读不了。"他哀伤地说，"我什么也读不了。这是我这一生最大的悲哀。只要能让村里的孩子们不要体验我的这种感觉，我什么事都可以做。我愿意付出任何代价，让他们得到他们应得的教育。"

"同他坐在一起我才意识到，" 摩顿森说，"自打我承诺盖学校那天开始，一直到经历各种波折和努力修好这所学校，我做的所有的事情、任何我所经历过的困难，都无法跟他准备为村民们做的牺牲相比。老人一字不识，几乎一生没有离开过喀喇昆仑山的那个小村子，却是我见到过的最有智慧的人。"

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**：参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. In the previous winter, Mortenson had done some foundational work of the building project. He used his tools to hit the tent pegs into the soil and tied braided nylon cord to the tent pegs. Thus, it clearly showed the place where the school would be built and the positions of the five rooms in it. Mortenson also gave Haji Ali enough money to hire some workers to do the labour job, such as extracting and carrying the stones. He thought that with the floor plan and the money, the villagers would at least dig the foundation for the school. However, when he came back the next year, he only saw two piles of stones in the field. The progress was very slow. Therefore, he felt quite disappointed and less confident.

2. Mortenson wanted to get the school finished as soon as possible because he was married now and he needed a career. Before his marriage, he spent most of time climbing mountains and only did sporadic jobs to meet his basic need. Now he must function as responsible husband and a future father.

3. Haji Ali was the chief of the village. He told Mortenson that he did not hire people from other villages to do the labour work, such as cutting and carrying the stones. It was because both he and his villagers thought that people from other villages were lazy and irresponsible and that they would not work very hard since they thought that the school project was invested by a rich foreigner (but actually Mortenson was not a rich man). Hence, the villagers cut the stones themselves. Since many of the villagers also did some porter work to earn money, it took them the entire summer to do the cutting thing.

4. No, the Balti did not have a written language. But that did not mean that they had no history or culture. They passed down their history by word of mouth.

5. Before starting to build the school, the villagers carried out a ritual. They digged a trench around the school's perimeter and put two large stones in the corner of foundation facing Korphe K2. Then, a ram was dragged to the corner stones. Its heads was turned to Mecca and people sang the religious song. Later, the ram was killed as a kind of sacrifice to God and a massive feast was held. Upon seeing this ritual, Mortenson came to realize that the Balti had a a history and a culture and that despite the differences, the traditions here and that in America could be traced back to the same root.

6. In May 1996, Mortenson's occupation changed from climber to the director of Central Asia Institute. The Institute was founded by Hoerni, a scientist and pioneer at the Silicon Valley. Hoerni expected the Institute to grow very fast and he hoped that he could spread other humanitarian projects beyond Pakistan. Mortenson was grateful to this man because now he had a stable job and salary and he could start thinking about the long – term humanitarian projects. To him, Hoerni was a very influential person.

7. Haji Ali aked Mortenson to leave his working post for a while and led him to climb up the mountain because he had something important to say. Mortenson felt quite uneasy and a bit worried because he had no idea what Haji Ali planed to do.

8. When they reached about a thousand feet higher than Korphe, Haji Ali told Mortenson that he could not tell the mountain what to do and that he must learn to listen to them. He expressed his appreciation to Mortenson for his work but he also pointed out that Mortenson had driven everybody too hard. Then he took Mortenson's plumb line, level and account book away. He wanted Mortenson to leave those work aside for a little while and share three cups of tea with him (to slow down and to build up relationship).

9. By depicting some daily things in America, Mortenson indicated that American was a quick fix society. Everybody was in a hurry and everything was accomplished very quickly. The "30 – minute business lunch", "two – minute football drills" and the "shock and awe" campaign illustrated the quick speed of American life in all aspects.

10. The new problem was that the landslide blocked the track and the jeeps carrying the wood up to Korphe were halted. Haji Ali heard the problem and the villagers came to carry the woods. Sher Takhi, the mullah, also came to help. This was significant. As a religious leader, what he did showed his support for girl's education which was not in line with the religious teaching. What's more, his illness made every step quite painful but he persisted. That was quite touching and inspiring.

11. Haji Mehdi was the head of Askole. Upon hearing that Haji Maji was building a school in the village with the help of Mortenson in order to provide education to both boys and girls, he came to criticize Haji Maji for allowing a foreigner to poison Muslim children and for doing what Allah forbids. However, that was only his excuses. Haji Mehdi's true intention was to get twelve of Haji Ali's largest rams. Haji Ali did meet his unreasonable demand because he knew that the opportunity for education was much more valuable than rams.

12. After handing over the rams, Haji Ali comforted the villagers and children. He told them that the rams was only a temporary loss for the village. They would be dead and eaten. Haji Mehdi had food. But for the children and future generations here, they had education forever.

B. 课文欣赏问题：

1. The main idea of the quotation is that the widely – acknowledged belief that the industrialized society is more advanced and better than the "primitive" culture is wrong and that the emphasis on the connection between man and nature shown in the ancient cultures has a lot to teach us. This quotation is put before the chapter because it foreshadows what happens in the chapter and provides some hints for the readers to grasp the meaning of the story. In Para. 47, Haji Ali's words indicates his respect and awe for the nature and the connection between humans and the earth. In Para. 53, Mortenson reflects on the American way of life and he comes to see that he, from a modern and prosperous society, had something to learn from the people he had come to help. These all echoes the quotation by Helena Norberg – Hodge.

2. Besides Mortenson, the most important character in this chapter is Haji Ali. He is the man who is in charge of the village and the one who teaches us a lot. When Mortenson is driving everybody hard, Haji Ali invites him to have three cups of tea and tells him the importance of looking around and building relationships with people. When the school project is in trouble, Haji Ali is also the one who endeavors to make it. He even pays the unreasonable price. Illiterate as he is, Haji Ali understands the importance of education and undoubtedly he is a very wise man.

3. The villagers' hospitality towards Mortenson is presented in the detailed description. In Para. 23, Mortenson found a boiled egg on his plate. In a poor mountain village like Korphe, eggs were rare and therefore previous. Thus it shows the hospitality and generosity of Haji Ali. In Para. 27, when Mortenson visited the mosque, Sher Takhi, the religious leader, smiled at him. This smile indicates his approval of Mortenson's proposal and his later behaviour (leading him to a prayer mat) shows that he treated the American almost like a Muslim. In Para. 35, after the massive feast, the villagers danced around the fire and taught Mortenson verses of the Himalayan Epic of Gesar and introduced him to Balti folk songs. They sang and danced with Mortenson just like friends.

4. Paragraph 52 explains the meaning of three cups of tea. It has a metaphoric significance. Three cups of tea symbolizes three stages of interpersonal relationship. The first cup of tea indicates that you are a stranger to the Balti. The second cup of tea shows a closer relationship for you are a guest to the Balti. The most intimate relationship is set up when you share the third cup of tea with a Balti. By then, you are part of the family.

5. The transition is achieve by the first sentence in paragraph 57: "Not all the people of the Braldu shared Sher Takhi's view". This sentence prepares the reader for something not so agreeable to happen.

6. The story ended with Mortenson's reflection on the school project and on Haji Ali.

Actually, Haji Ali taught him a lot. For one thing, he taught Mortenson to feel the nature and slow down his pace to establish good relationship with people around; for another, he served as an encouraging example for Mortenson for he could sacrifice everything for that school. This was particularly moving. Therefore, this chapter is entitled "Haji Ali's Lesson".

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. What does it matter if we have to go without a school for another winter?

2. Sher Takhi had a deep and loud voice, and without the advantage of amplification it filled the small room. He called Korphe's believers, who were widely scattered working on their jobs, to pray five times a day.

3. At this time, the moon went up high in the sky above Korphe K2. The villagers danced around the fire and taught Mortenson lines from the Himalayan Epic of Gesar, which was beloved across the most parts of Himalayas, and introduced him to a tradition of Balti folk songs so rich that it could never be used up.

4. The Balti didn't have a written history, but that didn't mean that its rich history didn't exist.

5. He had had so much trouble getting the plan of building one school started successfully. And he had to concentrate on completing this one and had no time or energy to think on the large scale of building more schools envisioned by Hoerni.

6. Haji Ali led Mortenson to climb the mountain for an hour. Though he was old, his legs were still strong enough to leave Mortenson, the younger man, far behind and thus feel ashamed.

7. The air was so clear as if it had been just scrubbed. You can have such clear air only when you get to a certain high altitude.

8. In these villages, a ram was very much valued, meaning something extremely precious like a firstborn baby, a prize cow a family pet combined.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. porter: person whose job is carrying people's luggage and other loads, eg in railway stations, airports, hotels, markets, etc

2. novel: new and unusual, of a kind not known before

3. foothold: a place providing support for the foot in climbing or standing

4. packed: pressed together firmly

5. sanctify: to make something seem morally right or holy

6. business: a matter, affair, activity, etc.

7. count on: to depend on or to be certain of sb or sth.

mandate: an official command given to a person or an organization to do sth.

8. flank: to be on both sides of sb or sth

9. level: a tool used in checking the surface flat

10. taskmaster: a person, especially a strict and demanding person, who assigns tasks or hard work to others

11. cure: to preserve food, tobacco etc by drying it, hanging it in smoke, or covering it with salt

12. mummified: originally the word means to preserve a dead body by putting special oils on it and wrapping it with cloth, as done by ancient Egyptians. Figuratively it means to make or become helpless, useless or inefficient.

13. shy: to have less than a particular amount of sth

14. cut: sb' share of sth, especially money

15. prize: winning or likely to win a prize; excellent of its kind

16. lead: leash, a cord, strap, etc. by which a dog or other animal is held in check.

B.

1. In autumn, if the weather is good and sky is clear, you could see the highest point of K2 which looks like a pyramid stand up straight in the sky.

2. He was so overwhelmed by his happiness that he couldn't hold it but must share with others.

3. Twaha congratulated Mortenson by hitting his arms and shoulders suddenly and repeatedly.

4. He tried to suppress a grin but then his face broke into a broad smile through his thick beard.

5. Men rushed out of every doorway very quickly.

6. Mortenson felt that his job was to help the men who surrounded the fire in the circle, rather than to teach them.

7. He was still not used to his new title ans so he hesitated for a moment when he filled out the arrival form.

8. ...Across many countries whose names end with "stan" scattered along the separate routes of the Silk Road.

9. On the far bank of Braldu River, Haji Ali stood like a sculpture as always on the highest point of a very steep side of the high mountain.

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. When he was saved from the river, he was more dead than alive.

2. In my previous visit, there was no school, but now one stands on the mountain.

3. As he came to himself, he opened his eyes, trying to figure out what had happened and why he was lying there.

4. At the exhibition there were many novel electronic products that attracted the attention fo visitors.

5. People were keen on taking pictures of the many exotic flowers and plants in the greenhouse.

6. This writer came from a large, prominent family whose genealogy stretches back fifteen generations.

7. Before killing an animal, the indigenous ethnic people usually hold rituals to request permission from their God.

8. The fact that the villagers are poor doesn't mean they are ignorant or stupid.

9. The volunteers made concerted efforts and got the project off the ground.

10. The climber felt so dizzy that he could hardly stand up, as much from over exhaustion as from starvation.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Nine

"A More Perfect Union" (Part I)

词汇注释

improbable[im'prɑbəbəl]　*adj.* not likely to happen 不大可能是真实的,不大可能的;未必确实的;未必会发生的

【例句】Still, we think this is **improbable**. 但是我们仍然认为这是不可能的。

同义词:impossible

improbable 是不太可能,未必会发生的。**impossible** 的语气更为决绝,说话者带有绝对否定的语气在里面:不可能!

launch[lɔːntʃ; lɑːntʃ]　*v.* to start a large and important activity 开展(重大活动);发起,发动

【例句】The President was on holiday when the coup was **launched**. 政变发动时,总统正在度假。

同义词:start

两者都有开办,创设的含义。**launch** 主要侧重发行,投放市场的意思。**start** 侧重于着手,准备的意思。

eventually[i'ventʃuəli]　*adv.* happening at the end of, or as a result of, a series of events 终于,最后;竟;总归;终究

【例句】**Eventually**, the army caught up with him in Latvia. 最终,大部队在拉脱维亚赶上了他。

ultimately['ʌltimətli]　*adv.* finally, after a long and often complicated series of events最终;最后;终于

【例句】Whatever the scientists **ultimately** conclude, all of their data will immediately be disputed. 不管科学家们最后得出什么样的结论,他们的全部数据将会立即引起争议。

同义词:eventually

ultimately 非常书面,而且有一种终结版的味道。**ultimate** 这个词可以理解为终结,最终,有绝对的意思在里面。**eventually** 主要指一件事情或人经过了很长时间或者挫折,终于达成了的感觉。

stain[sten]　***v.*** to spoil the appearance by patches or streaks of color or dirt; to bring shame upon(someone's character, reputation, etc.); to disgrace; to dishonor 玷污,染污;败坏(名声);给…染色

【例句】Some foods can **stain** the teeth, as of course can smoking. 某些食物会在牙齿上留下污渍,吸烟当然也会。

同义词:spot

stain 是污点,污迹的意思。**spot** 是点的意思,一般没有弄脏的含义。

stalemate[ˈsteilmeit]　***n.*** a situation in which neither side in an argument or contest can win or in which no progress is possible 僵局

【例句】He said the war had reached a **stalemate** and that a political accord was the only solution. 他说战争已陷入僵局,政治协议是唯一的解决办法。

embed[imˈbed]　***v.*** originally it means to set(flowers, etc.) in earth; here it means to fix firmly in the mind, memory, etc. 使(态度、感情等)植根于,在……中生根发芽

【例句】The example here is illustrative of the fact that it's often quite easy to **embed** your accountability system into your awareness system. 这个例子说明了一个事实,即要将你的责任系统植入到你的意识系统里还是相当容易。

core[kɔ:]　***n.*** the core of something such as a problem or an issue is the part of it that has to be understood or accepted before the whole thing can be understood or dealt with 核心

【例句】The notion that blacks comprise a problem is at the core of racist reasoning. 黑人总爱惹事这一观念是种族主义论断的核心。

parchment[ˈpɑːtʃmənt]　***n.*** a substance made from animal skin, used in the past for writing on; a document, manuscript, or diploma on parchment 羊皮纸;文凭

【例句】The trouble was that the constitution was set in stone, or at least on **parchment**. 麻烦的是,宪法是一成不变的,至少它们记载在羊皮纸上。

bondage[ˈbɔndidʒ]　***n.*** the condition of being someone's property and having to work for them 奴役;奴役处境

【例句】For without that light, the beast of **bondage** can continue to live in the shadows. 因为没有这光,奴役的枷锁将继续在阴暗里延续。

creed[krid]　***n.*** any set of beliefs or principles(尤指宗教)信条,教义;主义,纲领;

宗派

【例句】The center is open to all, no matter what race or **creed**. 该中心向所有人开放，不论种族和宗教信仰如何。

prosperous['prɔspərəs] *adj.* people, places and economies are rich and successful 繁荣的

【例句】The place looks more **prosperous** than ever. 这地方显得空前繁荣。

同义词：thriving

两个词的意思很接近，经常一起使用，如：繁荣昌盛 thriving and prosperous。**prosperous** 是经济学词汇，较为正式，意思更丰富，还有富裕的，有利的，顺利的，吉利的意思。如富裕的家庭，有利的气候条件等等，万事皆顺等。**thriving** 是从动词 thrive 来的。

unyielding[ʌn'jiːldiŋ] *adj.* not bending easily; inflexible 坚定不移的；不可弯曲的；不屈的；

【例句】His **unyielding** attitude on this subject was that since he had done it, so could everyone. 在这件事上他态度很坚决：既然他做到了，别人也能做到。

decency['diːsənsi] *n.* the quality of following accepted moral standards 正派；正直

【例句】**Decency**, self - restraint, the sense of justice, courage——these virtues belong only to a small minority of men. 正派、自我克制、正义感、勇气－－这些美德只属于一小部分人。

inheritance[in'heritəns] *n.* the particular characteristics or qualities which your family or ancestors had and which you are born with 血统；传统

【例句】And those views are shaped by cultural **inheritance**, more so than people may realize. 不过那些观点受到文化传统的影响，这比人们可能意识到的更甚。

conventional[kən'venʃənəl] *adj.* conforming to formal or accepted standards or rules rather than nature 保守的；传统的；依照惯例的

【例句】She is a respectable married woman with **conventional** opinions. 她是一位观念传统、受人尊敬的已婚女性

同义词：traditional

traditional 表示传统的，历史悠久的，流传下来的一种习惯或者习俗，有时候也表示一般的，常规的这层意思。**conventional** 表示传统的，含有守旧的意思，表示不愿意革新的。

candidate['kændideit, － dət] *n.* someone who is being considered for a position, for example someone who is running in an election or applying for a job 候选人，求职者

【例句】He is a **candidate** for the office of Governor. 他是州长候选人之一。

hungry['hʌŋgri] *adj.* the word is used metaphorically, meaning craving, eager 渴望的

【例句】Patients are **hungry** for transparency. 医疗过程透明是患者们一直所渴

望的。

同义词:starving

hungry 指饥饿。**starving** 指极其饥饿,濒临死亡。

coalition[ˌkəuəˈliʃən] *n.* a group consisting of people from different political or social groups who are co – operating to achieve a particular aim(政党、社团等的)同盟,联盟

【例句】He had been opposed by a **coalition** of about 50 civil rights, women's and Latino organizations. 大约有50个民权组织、女性社团和拉丁裔社团联合起来反对他。

同义词:union

两者都有联合,结合的意思。**coalition** 比较专业,正式,如:coalition cabinet 联合内阁,coalition government 联合政府。**union** 比较普通,有一般性。

primary[ˈpraiməri, – məri] *n.* (American English) in the U. S. a local meeting of voters of a given political party to nominate candidates for public office, select delegates to a convention, etc. (美国)初选,预选;候选人提拔会

【例句】New York holds its **primary** election on Tuesday. 纽约州将在星期二举行预选。

scour[ˈskauə] *v.* to search thoroughly 四处搜索

【例句】Rescue crews had **scoured** an area of 30 square miles. 救援人员已经搜遍了30平方英里的范围。

divisive[diˈvaisiv] *adj.* causing unfriendliness and argument between people 分裂性地;制造争端的;引起争议的

【例句】Abortion has always been a **divisive** issue. 人工流产一直是个引发争议的问题。

spectrum[ˈspektrəm] *n.* a continuous range or entire extent 范围;光谱

【例句】Gallery where the windows are illuminated in a moving **spectrum** of color. 那些被移动光谱的颜色照亮了的窗户是画廊。

pastor[ˈpɑːstə, ˈpæs –] *n.* a person, as a priest or minister, in spiritual and jurisdictional charge of a parish, church, congregation or community 牧师

【例句】As a **pastor** I face this all the time. 作为一个牧师我一直面对着这种状况。

incendiary[inˈsendjəri] *adj.* willfully stirring up strife, riot, rebellion, etc. likely to cause anger or violence 煽风点火的;煽动的

【例句】Nor are such gibes unusually **incendiary** for an american presidential campaign. 这样的嘲笑对于一支美国总统竞选团队而言也并非非常具有煽动性。

denigrate[ˈdenigreit] *v.* to blacken; disparage the character or reputation of; defame 涂黑;诋毁,诽谤;玷污;毁誉

【例句】Would you yell at a client, **denigrate** him to others or call him at home at all hours? 你会对着客户大吼、当着别人的面诋毁他或是不分时候往他家打电话么?

offend[ə'fend] *v.* to say or do something which upsets or embarrasses other people 冒犯；得罪；触怒

【例句】He apologizes for his comments and says he had no intention of **offending** the community. 他为自己发表的评论道歉并称无意冒犯该社群。

同义词：violate

两者都有违反的意思。**offend** 指冒犯别人。**violate** 指违反法律。

condemn[kən'dem] *v.* to say something that is really bad and unacceptable（通常因道义上的原因而）谴责

【例句】Political leaders united yesterday to **condemn** the latest wave of violence. 政界领袖昨日联合起来对最近激增的暴力事件予以谴责。

unequivocal[ˌʌni'kwivəkəl] *adj.* not ambiguous; plain, clear 旗帜鲜明的；不含糊的；明确的

【例句】Yesterday, the message to him was **unequivocal**: 'Get out.' 昨天，给他的信息很明确："走开。"

nagging['nægiŋ] *adj.* causing continuous discomfort; troubling 纠缠不清的；使人不得安宁的；挑剔的；唠叨的

【例句】He says that while all couples deal with **nagging** at some point, those who learn to reduce this type of negative communication will substantially increase their odds of staying together and keeping love alive. 他说，尽管所有夫妻都有应对唠叨的时候，但学会减少这种负面交流的夫妻会显著增加他们相守相伴和保持爱情新鲜的几率。

controversial[ˌkɔntrə'vəːʃəl] *adj.* stirring up disputes 引发争议的

【例句】The changes are bound to be **controversial**. 这些变化注定会引起争议。

同义词：contradictory

controversial 是有争议的，对错与归属等没有归属的意思。**contradictory** 是矛盾的，一定要有参照物，跟某事物是矛盾的，或者两者相互矛盾。

firestorm['faiəstɔːm] *n.* a strong, often violent, outburst, disturbance 大爆发；轩然大波

【例句】When news that the Reagan administration was not only selling arms to Iran but using the profits to secretly fund the rebels in Nicaragua, it caused a **firestorm** throughout the country. 当人们得知里根政府不仅向伊朗出售武器，甚至还利用获得的利润偷偷资助在尼拉加瓜的反叛军时，整个国家掀起了一场轩然大波。

distorted[dis'tɔːtid] *adj.* in an untrue way 扭曲的

【例句】But this process could in some cases produce faulty or **distorted** memories. 但在某些情况下，这一过程可能会导致错误或扭曲的记忆。

elevate['eliveit] *v.* to lift up, raise 举起；提升；提高

【例句】Will six hours of ethics boot camp **elevate** anyone's morality and behavior? 六个小时的道德培新真的能够提升每个人的道德行为吗？

endemic[en'demik] *n.* native to a particular country or nation, or region, said of plants, animals, and sometimes, customs 特有的人、宗教、动物、植物,又是也指习俗(天经地义)

stalwart['stɔːlwət] *adj.* loyal, steady, and completely reliable 可靠的;坚定的

【例句】The stalwart volunteers marched in this morning ready to go to work. 忠实的志愿者们今天上午已就位,随时准备开始工作。

monumental[ˌmɔnju'mentəl] *adj.* great, colossal 重大的;不朽的

【例句】And once credibility vanishes, regaining it becomes a **monumental** task. 而且一旦可信度消失了,重新获得就会变成一项巨大的任务。

given['givən] prep. taken as a premise(表示原因)考虑到;从…立场出发

profess[prə'fes, pro-] *v.* to make an open declaration of; affirm 声称;宣称;公开表明;信奉

confess[kən'fes] *v.* to admit doing something wrong 承认

【例句】Her husband **confessed** to having had an affair. 她丈夫承认有过外遇。

同义词:acknowledge concede

confess 一般用于向警方坦白错误,罪行等,有招供,招认的意思,还有就是承认自己尴尬的事。**acknowledge** 是一般的用语,大多数都用它。**concede** 一般指不情愿的承认,通常用在比赛或失败的时候。

snippet['snippit] *n.* a small piece, scrap, or portion, specifically of information 片段

【例句】I read a **snippet** she had cut from a magazine. 我读了她从杂志上剪下来的一段文字。

sermon['səːmən] *n.* a speech given as instruction in religion or morals, esp. by a priest, minister, or rabbi during services, using a text from Scripture 布道;讲道

peddle['pedl] *v.* to circulate(ideas), often used with mild contempt 传播,散播

【例句】They even set up their own news agency to **peddle** anti-isolationist propaganda. 他们甚至设立了自己的通讯社来宣扬反孤立主义。

obligation[ˌɔbli'geiʃən] *n.* something that a person feels morally or legally bound to do(道义或法律上的)义务,责任

【例句】When teachers assign homework, students usually feel an **obligation** to do it. 老师布置作业时,学生通常认为完成作业是一种义务。

同义词:duty responsibility

obligation 指合同或者法律上规定的责任,义务,强调其约束力。**duty** 指道义上的责任,强调自觉性,作可数名词时指本职工作的任务。**responsibility** 职责,强调对后果要负责任的意思。

seminaries['seminəri] *n.* a school that prepares students for the priesthood, ministry, or rabbinate 神学院

minister['ministə] *v.* to give help to 照顾;辅助

【例句】For 44 years he had **ministered** to the poor, the sick, the neglected and the deprived. 44 年来，他一直致力于帮助那些穷人、病人、无人照料的人和失去生活依靠的人。

rafter[ˈrɑːftə] *n.* 椽

merge[məːdʒ] *v.* to(cause to) become combined(使)混合；相融；融入

【例句】The rivers **merge** just north of a vital irrigation system. 就在一个重要的灌溉系统的北边，这些河流交汇在一起。

triumph[ˈtraiəmf] *n.* the act or fact of being victorious; victory; success 胜利；成功

【例句】In the moment of **triumph** I felt uneasy. 在成功的那一刻我反而感到了不安。

predominant[ˌpriˈdɔminənt] *adj.* having authority or influence over others 占主导地位的

【例句】The classical black mirror also follows the **predominant** colors in the house. 古典镜子也采用了在整个空间占主导的黑色。

同义词：dominant

两者意思相近。**predominant** 侧重主要的，有优势的。**dominant** 侧重支配地位的。

entirety[inˈtaiəti] *n.* completeness; the whole 完整，全部；整体

【例句】After all, yahoo is not outsourcing the **entirety** of search. 毕竟雅虎并没有将搜索业务整体外包。

同义词：totally

entirely 强调一个整体地"完全"。**totally** 强调数量上的"完全"。

raucous[ˈrɔːkəs] *adj.* loud and rough - sounding 沙哑的；刺耳的；喧闹的

【例句】They heard a bottle being smashed, then more **raucous** laughter. 他们听见酒瓶摔碎的声音，然后是一阵更喧闹的笑声。

bawdy[ˈbɔːdi] *adj.* coarse 低级下流的；色情的；

【例句】We got arrested once, for singing **bawdy** songs in a cemetery. 我们曾经因为在公墓唱下流歌曲而被拘留过一次。

yes[jes] *n.* agreement 同意

baptize[bæpˈtaiz] *v.* to sprinkle with or cover with water in baptism(用水)给…施洗礼

【例句】Though Jesus himself did not **baptize**, but his disciples. 其实不是耶稣亲自施洗，乃是他的门徒施洗。

derogatory[diˈrɔgətəri] *adj.* unflattering; belittling 贬低的；贬义的；贬损的

【例句】He refused to withdraw **derogatory** remarks made about his boss. 他拒绝收回那些贬损老板的话。

contradiction[ˌkɔntrəˈdikʃən] *n.* the act or fact of contradicting 矛盾;不一致

【例句】This is in complete **contradiction** to what you said before. 这同你之前所说的完全矛盾。

disown[disˈəun] *v.* cast off, repudiate 否认

【例句】Those comments were later **disowned** by an official army spokesman. 这些话随后遭到了军方一位官方发言人的否认。

cringe[krindʒ] *v.* to shrink from something dangerous or painful 畏缩;畏惧

【例句】I **cringed** in horror. 我吓得往后缩。

inexcusable[ˌinikˈskjuːzəbl] *adj.* that may not be excused 不可宽恕的;不可原谅的

【例句】This is an **inexcusable** mistake. 这是一个不能原谅的错误。

dismiss[disˈmis] *v.* to put out of one's mind, to reject as lacking in importance or value 不考虑;不理会;不屑一顾

【例句】I wouldn't **dismiss** it out of hand. 我不会不假思索地摈弃它。

crank[kræŋk] *n.* a person who has odd, stubborn notions about something; eccentric 怪人;疯子

【例句】Anyone who still believes that politics will uplift humanity is considered a **crank**. 任何人如果仍然相信政治将促进人类进步,就会被视为一个怪人。

demagogue[ˈdeməgɔg] *n.* a person who tries to stir up the people by appealing to emotion, prejudice, etc. in order to win them over quickly and so gain power 煽动者;蛊惑人心的政客

【例句】He is deliberately building upon the weakness of the mass mind, and in this he proves himself a genuine **demagogue**-honest, no doubt, in believing that what he does is for the general good, **demagogue** just the same. 他刻意利用群众心理的弱点,并由此证明了他是个不折不扣的煽动家毫无疑问,他真诚地相信他是为了公共利益,但不管怎么说,他也是个煽动家。

bias[ˈbaiəs] *n.* a tendency toward judging something without full knowledge of it; prejudice 偏见;成见

【例句】There were fierce attacks on the BBC for alleged political **bias**. 英国广播公司因被指具有政治偏见而遭到猛烈抨击。

corner[ˈkɔːnə] *n.* a remote, secret or secluded place 角落,角;拐角;一隅

【例句】Finally I spotted it, in a dark **corner** over by the piano. 最后我在钢琴旁的阴暗角落里发现了它。

短语表达

run for: to be a candidate for election 竞选

【例句】That may hamper his efforts to **run for** president. 这可能会对他竞选总统造成一些妨碍。

every color and creed: people of different ethnicities and beliefs, especially religions beliefs; color and creed: alliteration 不同肤色、不同信仰的人

genetic makeup: natural constitution 自然法则

on the cheap: at very little cost 便宜地;经济地

【例句】He bought that car **on the cheap**. 他很便宜地买了那辆小汽车。

in unequivocal terms: in words that express a clear and unambiguous attitude 鲜明地;明确地

【例句】Both groups deny having such links, and have long condemned terrorism **in unequivocal terms**. 两大伊斯兰组织都否认有这样的联系,并且长期以来立场鲜明地谴责恐怖主义。

bomber assembly line: 轰炸机装配线

purely racial lens: in terms of race and color 纯粹种族歧视的有色眼镜

walk away: avoid confronting the issue; desert 视而不见;回避;置之不理

【例句】The most appropriate strategy may simply be to **walk away** from the problem. 最好的对策可能就是回避这个问题。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

参见教材课文后"Notes"。

This text, together with Lesson Ten, is taken from Obama's address " A More Perfect Union " , which was delivered on March 18, 2008, during his campaign for presidency. This speech was written against a rather complex background, as a response to the Jeremiah Wright controversy. Reverend Wright was the pastor of Obama's campaign. In March 2008, ABC News released a story examining the sermons of Reverend Wright in which he denounced the United States and accused the government of crimes against people of color. Wright had said, among other things, " God damn America" for its racism and " for killing innocent people. " Before this, Obama had begun to distance himself from his pastor and right after the controversy Obama again denounced Wright's offending remarks. But Obama felt he should more sufficiently address and explain the context of his relationship with the Reverend. Therefore, he wrote the speech that became " A More Perfect Union. " This speech received general positive response, and is regarded by some as one of the biggest events in his campaign, a speech which helped him win the election.

本课以及接下来的第 10 课,作为演讲上下两部分,均选自奥巴马于 2008 年 3 月

18日竞选总统期间所作的《塑造一个更加完美的联邦》演讲，作为回应耶利米亚·莱特牧师富有煽动性的分歧辩论的复杂背景下创作的。2008年3月，ABC新闻播放了奥巴马曾经的莱特牧师的一篇布道。在其中，莱特牧师谴责了美国，控诉对美国黑人的迫害罪行，说“该死的美国要为屠杀无辜人民的种族歧视罪行负责。”此前，奥巴马曾谴责过莱特牧师冒犯性的言语表达，但他觉得还有必要就此作更加正式的声明，并解释和莱特牧师的关系，因此就作了《塑造一个更加完美的联邦》演讲，得到选民的积极回应，对于奥巴马赢得大选起了重要的作用。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

In this excerpt, together with part II in Lesson Ten, Obama delivered an address " A More Perfect Union" on March 18, 2008, during his campaign for presidency. This speech was as a response to the Jeremiah Wright controversy. Reverend Wright denounced the United States and accused the government of crimes against people of color. In order to explain his relationship with the Reverend, Obama wrote the speech " A More Perfect Union" and delivered at the National Constitution Center in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

Beginning with these words " We the people, in order to form a more perfect union" from the preamble to the U. S. constitution, Obama pointed out that one of the tasks of his campaign was to continue the long march " for a more just, more equal, more free, more caring and more prosperous America" and that he believed deeply that they could not solve the challenges of the time unless all Americans solved them together by perfecting the union. Obama discussed the race issues candidly and objectively and pointed out that race was an important issue that neither whites nor blacks could ignore. He stressed the complexities of the race issue in the U. S. by addressing the subjects of racial tensions, white privilege, and race and inequality in the United States, and discussing black " anger" and white " resentment. "

In the end, Obama called the American people to transcend distractions and focus on major issues facing America today, such as education, health care, employment and the war in Iraq. By telling the story of an ordinary young white woman and an elderly black man participating in his campaign as a sign of the beginning of a union grows stronger, that is " where the perfection begins".

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This is a speech which helped Obama win the Presidency election and regarded as by some as one of the biggest events in his campaign.

The title of this speech " A More Perfect Union" is taken from the Preamble to the Constitution of the United States. The preamble runs like this: We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common Defense, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of

Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

When the founding fathers wrote "to form a more perfect Union" they meant the U. S. established on the constitution would be a better state than those in the Old World (Europe). They were following the call of building "a City on the Hill." But when Barack Obama used the phrase, the implication was that the current union was far from being perfect and it was the task of the American people to make it more perfect, to realize the goal set out in the constitution.

To make the address vivid, fascinating and convincing, the author makes use of a lot of metaphor, metonymy, alliteration, antithesis, transferred epithet, parallelism and other figures of speech. Besides, the author skillfully makes story - telling strategies to argue his viewpoints and so on and so forth. All contribute to the great success of Obama's Presidency campaign.

作为帮助奥巴马赢得总统大选的重要演讲，这篇演讲被认为是竞选总统过程中的最重要活动之一。演讲题目《塑造一个更加完美的联邦》取自美国联邦宪法的序言："作为美国人民的我们，为了塑造一个更加完美的联邦，营造公正，维护民主稳定，造就民众福祉，确保自由、实现国民的繁荣，我们创立美利坚合众国的宪法。"

当先驱们写下"塑造一个更加完美的联邦"时，他们表达的是建立在宪法基础上的美国是比（以欧洲为代表）旧世界更好的国度。他们遵循着建立"大一统的国家"原则。然而，奥巴马重提这个表达，传达的是当前的联邦还远远不够完美，而这正是美国人民要努力去实现并完善美国宪法所制定的目标。

为了使演讲生动有趣、富有激情，信服有力，作者运用了大量的暗喻、转喻、头韵、对照、转换修辞、排比等各种修辞手段。除此之外，作者还娴熟的运用讲故事的策略来论证自己的观点，等等。所有这些都造就了奥巴马总统竞选的巨大成功。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. "We the people, in order to form a more perfect union." (para. 1)

Obama began the speech with a quote from the Constitution for two purposes: One is to show where the title came from. The other is to appeal to the audience because, according to American political scientists, the American people worship the Constitution, regarding it as a sacred document like the Bible. 演讲伊始，奥巴马就从《美国宪法》里引用"我们——人民，为建立一个更加完美的联邦的人民。"有两个目的：第一，表明演讲的标题是从哪里引用来的；其次，就是起到吸引听众的效果，因为按照美国的政治研究者的成果，美国人推崇《美国宪法》，并将其视为如同《圣经》一样的神圣文件。

2. Two hundred and twenty - one years ago —improbable experiment in democracy. (para. 2)

Paraphrase（英文释义）In 1787, in a hall opposite this meeting place on the other side of the street, 55 men gathered and worked out, after much debate and deliberation, the con-

stitution.

1) improbable: not likely to happen

2) This sentence is modeled on the beginning of the " Gettysburg Address" by the famous Black American President, Abraham Lincoln. The address began with " Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. " 这句话模仿著名的美国前总统亚伯罕姆·林肯在《葛底士堡演说》中演讲词，一开始就是"八十七年前，我们的祖先在这片土地上建立起一个新的国家,崇尚自由,并致力于建立一个人人平等的国度。"两者有着异曲同工之妙,表达了奥巴马以美国前黑人总统林肯为榜样,旨在建立一个更加完美的合众国而努力奋斗。

3) In American history and American government, many scholars hold that the writing and implementation of the Constitution is an experimentation of the Constitution because it was the first written document initiating the beginning of the end of the concept of the divine right of kings. At that time the U. S. was small and weak. No one could be sure if it would survive or the experiment could succeed. Therefore you have " improbable experiment. " 在美国历史或美国政府里,许多学者认为《美国宪法》的制定和事实都是一个实验过程,因为这是第一次结束王权至上的开始,谁也无法确信它能否幸存或实验成功,因此才有"不可能的实验"说法。

3. Farmers and scholarship——that lasted through the spring of 1787. (para. 2.)

1) traveled across the ocean: referring to the early settlers, the Puritans who sailed across the Atlantic ocean. 这里的漂洋过海是指早期在英国国内一群新教徒受基督教迫害,被迫乘坐"五月花"号船飘过大西洋,来到大洋彼岸,开始建立美国最初十三州的历史。

2) made real their declaration of independence: turned the concepts embodied in the Declaration of Independence into articles in the Constitution. 使得他们的《独立宣言》成为现实,写进了《美国宪法》。

3) that lasted through the spring of 1787: the Constitutional Convention met in the Philadelphia State House from May 25 to September 17, 1787; the Convention was attended by 55 delegates from 12 states. (Rhode Island declined to send delegates to the convention) 1787 年 5 月 25 日至 9 月 17 日,来自最初的 12 个州的 55 位代表参加了费城举行的制宪大会(只有洛德岛拒绝派代表参加制宪大会。)

4. The document they produced was eventually signed but ultimately unfinished. (para. 3):

1) After much sometimes heated, debated, the Constitution was finally adopted by the convention. Of the 55 delegates, only 39 signed. The convention provided that the new Constitution would go into effect when ratifying conventions mine of the thirteen states had approved it. In discussion, one issue that arose was the partitioning of seats in the House of Representatives according to population total when allotting Congressional seats but left out

in determining liability for direct taxation. The Northern States wanted slaves excluded from representation, since they were a species of property. The result was a compromise, the "three – fifths" clause, whereby a slave was counted as three – fifths of a person for the purposes of both representation and direct taxation.

2) eventual: happening at the end of, or as a result of, a series of events

3) ultimate: by which a process or series comes to an end

4) When Obama said the document they produced was eventually signed but ultimately unfinished, he meant the Constitution was finally adopted by the convention and in June 1788 New Hampshire became the ninth state to ratify the Constitution and later that year Virginia and New York also ratified the Constitution and it went into effect. But since the problem of slavery was not solved, the process did not end until the Civil War and the enactment of Constitutional Amendments 14 (1868) and 15(1870). 奥巴马说"他们起草制订的这份文件虽终于在费城制宪会议上获得签署通过，但其实并未画上圆满的句号。"意思是指美国宪法的签署是经历了一个漫长的过程，1788 年 6 月新罕布郡成为第九个州批准宪法通过，于此同一年晚些时候，弗吉尼亚和纽约州也批准宪法生效，但是由于奴隶制问题没有解决，这个过程一直持续到内战才结束，特别是在 1868 年的宪法修正案 14 和 1870 年的宪法修正案 15 的实施之后。

5. It was stained by this nation's original sin of slavery—— to future generations. (Para. 3):

1) stain: to spoil the appearance by patches or steaks of color or dirt; to bring shame upon (someone's character, reputation, etc.); to disgrace; to dishonor

2) original sin : 原罪, According to the Bible, this sin if having eaten the forbidden fruit committed by Adam and Eve, is traditionally viewed as transmitted in its essential guilt and consequently penalties from Adam as head of the human race to all unredeemed humanity.

3) During the War of Independence, the British announced that freedom would be given to those slaves left their masters and went over to the British side. Seventeen of the slaves owned by George Washington also deserted him and fled to the British side. So the slave issue was a serious issue at the Constitutional Convention.

In the end, the Constitution in Article One Section Two Point 3 states that Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three – fifths of all other persons. And in Article One Section Nine Point 1, the Constitution says "The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight——" As a result, South Carolina and Georgia imported 90,000 new slaves in the 20 years before 1808.

美国宪法导致不能完美无缺而产生白璧微瑕，美中不足的原因是这个国家的奴隶制原罪。由于奴隶制问题让各殖民立场出现分歧，致使费城制宪会议一度陷入僵局。

6. Of course, the answer to the slavery question—— that could be and should be perfected over time. (para. 4)

1) embed : Originally it means to set (flowers, etc.) in earth; here it means to fix firmly in the mind, memory, etc. To be embedded within our Constitution means to be set or in the Constitution.

2) It may be correct to say the ideal of liberty and justice in the Constitution makes it possible for the resolution of the slave issue, but the Constitution itself does not provided any solution. Otherwise it would not take a Civil War, a very destructive war, to put an end to a slavery system. And there would be no necessary for Constitutional Amendments 14 and 15 and Civil Rights Act of 1964 and the Voting Rights Act of 1965.

3) Note the parallel structure of " a constitution that ——" "a constitution that——" "a union that ——" for emphasis. 通过多个相似"名词 + 同位语从句"的排比结构达到强调作用。

Also note the use of modal auxiliaries: "could" and "should." "Could" indicates possibility and "should" denotes obligation or desirability. (情态动词"could"表示"可能性"而"should"表示"义务或愿望"。)

7. And yet words on a parchment —— as citizens of the United States. (para. 5)

Paraphrase(英文释义): And yet the Constitution or any law is not enough to set the slaves free or to give people of different origins or beliefs in the United States equal rights. Obama is referring to the fact that the black slaves were not legally free until after the Civil War and women did not have voting rights until 1921. (奥巴马此处提及的黑人奴隶直到内战结束才真正法律意义上自由；而妇女直到1921年才拥有选举权。)

1) words on a parchment: referring to the Constitution which is the first written constitution in the world; the idea may come from the Dead Sea Scroll discovered between 1947 and 1956 which were considered to be written between 3rd century B. C. and 1st century A. D. Obama meant that any law or agreement or treaty, if it is not enforced, is of no value. 奥巴马此处表达的是任何法律条文或合约或协议，如果不能实施的话，是没有任何价值的。(光靠写在一纸文件上的诺言尚不足以保证让奴隶们摆脱束缚获得自由，也不足以保证赋予不同肤色、不同信仰、不同性别的人们作为美利坚合众国公民应该享有的全部权利和对等义务。)

2) creed: any set of belief or principles

3) every color and creed: people of different ethnicities and beliefs, especially religion beliefs; color and creed: alliteration(头韵).

8. What would be needed ——and the reality of their time. (para. 5):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Only through struggles in different forms did generation after

generation of Americans succeed in bringing the rights promised in the Constitution to people of different sex, color or belief.（一代又一代美国公民自觉自愿地履行自己本份的职责和义务——可以是通过街头抗议和公堂抗争的温和斗争方式，也可以是通过内乱和内战这样的暴力反抗的方式。）

1) who were willing to do their part: Not all Americans in different periods of American history would struggle for this goal, only some who had the awareness and determination would take part in the struggle. This is exemplified by the Civil Rights Movement and the feminist movement.

2) on the streets, in the courts, through a civil war: Note the use of prepositions to avoid the repetition of the preposition of "in".

3) to narrow that gap between the promise of our ideals and the reality of their time: This is an important concept. Many Americans believe the founding fathers had worked out an ideal model and the current problems and drawbacks exist because Americans have not followed the guidance of the founding fathers. All they need to do is to go back to the founding principles.

In "I Have a Dream" , Martin Luther King Jr. said, " In a sense we've come to our nation's capital to cash a check. When the architects of our republic wrote the magnificent words of the Constitution and the Declaration of Independence, they were signing a promissory note to which every American was to fall heir. This note was a promise that all men—— yes, black men as well as white man—— should be guaranteed the unalienable rights of life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness. "

9. The function of the first five paragraphs of the speech: They serve as a background leading to Obama's campaign in 2008. Obama starts with a quotation from the Constitution, bringing out the idea of " a more perfect union. " Then he moves on to describe the birth of the Constitution and points out that because of the compromise on the slavery issue, the process of perfecting the union did not stop there. In the course of history, generations of Americans have struggled hard to narrow the gap between promise and reality and to perfect the union. Then in Paragraph 6 he points out this is one of the tasks he set forth at the beginning of this campaign, A smooth transition is thus achieved. 前五段旨在导入2008年奥巴马竞选提供背景。一开始，奥巴马就引用从美国宪法名言，提出“塑造一个更加完美的联邦”的观点，然后叙述宪法的诞生过程，指出正是因为奴隶制问题的相互妥协，联邦完善的进程一直没有停止，一代代美国人努力缩小理想与现实的鸿沟。第六段里，奥巴马指出这是他竞选之初的实现目标之一，自然而然过渡到本文的论述重点。

10. This was one of the tasks—— and more prosperous American. (Para. 6) Obama, through such description of his intention to run for presidency, put himself on the moral high ground. His running was not out of personal interests, not out of desire for power but out of a wish to make America better, and this is a continuation of a long march for a noble goal.

Note that the concept of " a long march" and " to make America better" are often found in presidential campaign, had this to say," We came here today to commemorate one of the epoch - making events of the long struggle for the rights of man—— the long struggle for the uplift of humanity. "(我们今天开启纪元的事件,是为人权努力斗争,提升人性的长久争斗。)

11. I chose to run for the President —— towards a better future for our children and our grand - children. (para. 6) 奥巴马选择总统竞选,旨在"为我们的子孙后代创造一个更加美好的未来。"

1) at this moment in history: Obama meant that this was a critical moment in history because America was experiencing two wars (the Iraq War and the Afghan War) and an economic recession. 美国此时正经历着两场战争(伊拉克战争和阿富汗战争),以及经济衰退。

2) The parallel structure of " unless ——unless" and the antithesis of " we may—— but " and " we may not —— but " are effective in bringing out the idea of unity. 排比句式强化了观点的一致和有效性。

3) Note the choice of words: Note " come from the same place" but " move in the same direction. " 不是"来自同一个地方"而是"向同一个方向努力",措辞的变换更加传神表达作者的思想。

12. This was one of the tasks—— and more prosperous America. (para. 6)

This is the topic sentence of paragraph 6. The theme of his whole speech is also embodied in paragraph 6. "本次竞选活动之初所提出的任务之一就是踏着前人的足迹接力继续其未竟事业,为建立一个更加公正、更加平等、更加自由、更加友爱、更加繁荣昌盛的美利坚而长征。"这是本段的主题句,也是整个演讲的主题所在。

13. Function of paragraph7: Paragraph 6, a long paragraph, is followed by a short one of two lines, This is for emphasis. 长段落之后使用短段落,简短有力。

14. This belief—— of the American people. (para. 7)

1) unyielding: not bending easily, inflexible

2) unyielding faith: firm, unquestioning belief

3) Obama used " the American people" instead of " the people" or " my people" to stress his family background which would come in the next paragraph. Because of his family background; he could see the qualities of the American people more clearly. 奥巴马使用"美国国民"而不使用"人民"或"我的国民"来强调家庭背景,由于自己的出身背景,他可以更清楚地明白美国式家庭的特点。

15. But it also comes from my own story. (para. 7)

Obama's story consists of two parts. One is his ethnic background: black father, white mother, white maternal grandparents, Asian stepfather. The other is his experience: best school in Hawaii, Columbia University and Harvard Law School. He taught law at the Uni-

versity of Chicago Law School for 12 years. He was elected to the U. S. Senate in 2004. This part is an "American Dream" realized. His life and experience is a success story of a non－white in American society, showing that the "American Dream" is still alive. This personal story will appeal to many potential votes because this is still a myth which many Americans believe. 奥巴马的故事包括两部分，其一是他的出身背景，其二是他的经历。奥巴马的故事对于非白种人而言具有很大的激励作用；对于很多的潜在美国选民来说具有很大的吸引力，因为这是"美国梦"实现的典型。

16. I was raised—— while he was overseas. (Para. 8)

1) survived the Depression: lived through the 1929 depression(特指1929年的经济大萧条。)

2) to serve in Patton's Army: The grandfather was in Europe in World War II, Fighting under General Patton, noted for his courage, dash and commanding skill. (巴顿将军在二战期间因其英勇和出色的指挥才能而著称，进而凸显其外祖父的品质优良。)

17. I've gone to—— the world's poorest nations. (para. 8) This is an example of antithesis: the best school vs. the poorest nation. This is to bring out his rich experience in life. Another contrast is the blood of slaves and slave owners. 通过顶针修辞格运用，"最好的学校"与"最穷的国家"对比来说明奥巴马的丰富人生经历。另外一个对照是"奴隶"与"奴隶主"的血统。

18. I have brothers—— even possible. (para. 8)

Paraphrase(英文释义) I will never forget that in no other country on Earth is my story even possible. I can become what I am only in America and I am grateful and will never forget this.

Hue: used to indicate modification of a basic color.

奥巴马说他永远不会忘记"我的成长经历就是美国特有的奇迹，在世界上其他任何一个国家都是根本不可能发生的"，进而表达他对美国的热爱和感激之情。

19. It's a story that hasn't made me the most conventional of candidates. (para. 9)

Paraphrase(英文释义): I did well in the United States so people would think I would be for the status quo. I would be happy with where I am. But no, I wanted change. (表达了奥巴马不会安于现状，决心革新创新。)

Conventional: conforming to formal or accepted standard or rules rather than nature.

20. But it is a story—— we are truly one. (para. 9)

Paraphrase(英文释义): My life experience has infused deeply in me the concept that in spite of the fact that we are different in race, ethnicity, political-view, religious belief, we are united because we have shared belief—— the American creed. 无论我们的肤色、种族、政治观点或宗教信仰如何千差万别，我们依然团结在一起，因为我们分享共同的信念——美国理念。

1) sear: to brand with a hot iron

2) Genetic makeup: natural constitution

3) seared into my genetic makeup: to be deeply ingrained in me

4) this nation is more than the sum of its parts: The United States is not just adding all the states or all the elements together; when the parts are melted or fused into whole, its power or influence is much greater. （国家的整体能量远远大于其个体能量之和。）

5) out of many, we are truly one: The phrase echoes the Three Musketeers cry: "out of many we are one". It is the English translation of the Latin phrase: E pluribus unum, which was found in 1776 on the Seal of the United States and formally adopted by an Act of Congress in 1782. The original phrase is "Out of many, One." Obama adopts it into "Out of many, we are truly one."（虽然是由众多分散的个体组合而成，但却是真正的合而为一。）

21. Throughout the first year of this campaign—— this message of unity. (para. 10):

When Obama first announced his intent of running for Democratic candidate for presidency, public media said the United States was not ready to have a black president and Obama would fail in the campaign. However, his campaign gained momentum which proved that ordinary Americans overlooked the issue of color and were eager for unity and change. （美国民众一开始忽视了人种问题以及渴望团结和改变的心态。）

1) against all predictions to the contrary: in spite of all announcements saying that Obama would not succeed.

2) hungry: The word is used metaphorically, meaning craving, eager.

3) how hungry—— message of unity; The American people were eager to support a candidate who advocated unity and change.

22. Despite the temptation—— in the country. (para. 10)

Paraphrase(英文释义): In the campaign, three issues were often raised by his opponents to testify ordinary Americans: Obama was not a native - born American, he was black and would give privileges to blacks and he was Muslim, not Christian. But the campaign so far proved if we insisted on the message of unity, many Americans, white Americans, conservative Americans, would support this idea. 奥巴马参选以来，奥巴马作为不是土生土长的美国人、黑人身份以及担忧他会给黑人和穆斯林人而不是基督教人特权而倍受对手质疑，但奥巴马竞选理念是以追求一个团结的联邦的话，无论是白种美国人还是保守的美国人都会支持他。

1) purely racial lens: in terms of race and color

2) commanding : very large

3) whites populations: referring to the white people living in the Southern States, who are more racially biased, more conservative; these states, since the 1980s, were states supporting the Republican Party.

23. In South Carolina—— white Americans. (para. 10):

Paraphrase(英文释义):South Carolina was one of the Confederate States in the Civil War. In 1962, the confederate battle flag of the "Southern Cross" was placed on top of the South Carolina statehouse by vote of the all - white legislature. It was not until 1 July 2002 that the flag was removed from the South Carolina Statehouse. 美国内战期间南卡罗利那州作为南方保守的邦联之一,1962 年"南十字军"军旗被所有选举白种人法案者高高地置于南卡罗利那州议会大楼顶,直到 2002 年 7 月 1 日才被拆除掉。

24. This is not to say that race has not been an issue in this campaign. (para. 11):

This statement serves as a correction and a change, leading to the discussion ofrace. (这凸显肤色问题,为后文谈论种族问题奠定基础。)

25. We saw racial tensions bubble to the surface—— Carolina primary. (para. 11):

Paraphrase(英文释义):Before the Democratic selection of candidates to the national convention in South Carolina, racial tension which seemed insubstantial in the past became a boiling issue. 南卡罗利那州的州大会议员民主选举之前,过去不存在的种族冲突现在成为了热点。

26. The press has scoured—— but black and brown as well. (para. 11):

1) scour: to search thoroughly

2) The press had checked or run over polls of people who had just voted to find evidence of people dividing into two opposing groups.

3) brown: referring to people of black and white origin, like Obama. 棕色人种特指像奥巴马这样的黑白人种,即母亲是白种人而父亲是黑种人。

27. And yet, it has only been in the last couple of weeks—— divisive turn. (para. 12):

This one-sentence paragraph serves as a further turn of the discussion. From this paragraph on, Obama took up the issue of his former pastor's incendiary language on race, and made his position clear. 从这一段开始,奥巴马转向讨论他的前牧师关于种族的煽动性言论并表明自己的态度。

28. On one end of the spectrum—— on the cheap. (para. 13):

Paraphrase(英文释义):At one end of the wide range of opinions, there are people who say that I decided to run because I wanted to show black and white should have equal opportunity and I wanted to play on the desires of na? ve liberals in achieving racial harmony without making a great effort. 一种观点认为奥巴马参选是为了实现白种人和黑种人分享同等机会,实现不需努力就实现种族和谐的天真民主。

1) spectrum: a continuous range or entire extent

2) wide-eyed liberals: na? ve or unsophisticated people who favor liberalism

3) on the cheap: at very little cost

4) Note how Obama presented the case. He did not just raise Reverend Wright's case. He put it in a conflict of two opposing views, two extremes. The implication may be Wright

was not the only one who took a wrong position yet he was picked out because of his relations with Obama. 奥巴马列出两种对立的观点，意在表明莱特牧师不是持这种错误立场的唯一人，之所以提及他就是因为和奥巴马有些联系的缘故。

29. On the other end—— white and black alike. (para. 13):

Obama considers Wright wrong because his views, and the language he used in expressing his views, will not only widen the gap between the blacks and the whites but are attacks on the basic nature of America as a nation, so his words cause the anger and condemnation of both white and black. 奥巴马认为莱特牧师错了是因为他的观点和使用的语言不仅仅加剧黑人和白人之间的分歧，而且有损于美国作为一个整体国家的本质，所以招致来自白人和黑人的愤怒和谴责。

1) former: indicating Obama's relationship with Wright has ended.

2) racial divide: divisions between races.

3) the greatness and the goodness: example of alliteration. (头韵修辞格)

4) that rightly offend white and black alike: Note the choice of words: "rightly" and "white and black alike," indicating that the anger is justified and is shared by white and black, so it is not a matter of race.

30. I have already condemned —— controversy and in some cases pain. (para. 14):

Paraphrase(英文释义): When Reverend Wright's statements were broadcasted in the news stations in early March, Obama's relation with his former pastor were repeatedly brought up. This would very negatively affect his campaign. So in one statement he condemned such statements in clear and unambiguous words.

In unequivocal terms: in words that express a clear and unambiguous attitude (态度明确的表达)

31. For some , nagging questions remains. (para. 14):

Paraphrase(英文释义): For some people, such condemnation seems not enough. They still have doubts which trouble them. 对于某些人而言，这样的谴责看来不够。他们仍然有顾虑困扰着。

Nagging: causing continuous discomfort; troubling.

32. Did I —— Absolutely—— (para. 14):

Three parallel questions beginning with " Did I" and three definite answers of " Of course," "yes" and "absolutely" are used here to address the doubts in people's minds. His affirmative answers show he is not avoiding straight answers. He has nothing to hide. 这种排列结构的运用强化美国人民的忧虑；奥巴马明确的答复说明他不是避免直接的答复。他没有什么要遮掩的。

33. —— just as I'm sure—— strongly disagreed. (para. 14):

Paraphrase(英文释义): At the end of his answers, he brings in the experience of the audience, saying that they may have similar experiences so this is not unique to Obama. He

also carefully mentions pastors, priests, or rabbis, referring to different churches of the Judeo-Christian tradition. 回答结束之际，奥巴马不忘提及听众的相似经历，显示他的经历并不是独特的。当然，他还谨慎地提及不同的犹太—基督教教派传统，如神父、牧师或执事等。

34. But the remarks that have caused—— controversial. (para. 15):

1) firestorm: a strong, often violent, outburst, disturbance, metaphorically referring to opinions of Wright's. 此处"轩然大波"喻指"莱特牧师有争论的言论"。

2) controversial: stirring up disputes 然而，这些引发铺天盖地争论的言论不仅仅是观点不同那么简单。

35. They weren't simply —— perceived injustice. (para. 15):

1) Note the use of "not simply" in the two sentences, forming a parallel structure, to be followed by a contrast through the use of "instead", to achieve emphasis

2) perceived injustice: acts that are perceived as injustice

36. Instead, they expressed—— radical Islam. (para. 15):

Paraphrase(英文释义): When Obama accused Wright of distortion, he raised two points. One is Wright thought America embraced white racism. The other is the cause of the conflict in the Middle East lies with Israel, not radical Islam. He thought Wright was wrong on both points. 奥巴马控诉莱特牧师歪曲他的观点，提到两点：其一莱特牧师认为美国具有白人种族歧视；其二中东冲突缘由在于以色列，而不是激进的伊斯兰教。奥巴马认为莱特牧师在这两点上是错误的。

1) the parallel structure: a distorted view, a view that sees——; a view that sees——

2) a view that sees white racism as endemic: a view that considers white racism as an inseparable part of America

3) elevate: to lift up, raise

4) that elevates—— right with America: to put white racism which we all consider to be wrong as characteristic of America, leaving out all the good characteristics which we associate with America.

5) in the actions of stalwart allies—— radical Islam: Note the contrast and choice of words: actions vs. ideologies and the description of "perverse" and "hateful" ideologies. The way of presenting the idea brings out the position of Obama.

6) In the United States, in discussing the conflict of the Middle East, criticizing Israel is politically incorrect. This is the result of popular sympathy for the victims of the Holocaust, and of the economic power of Jewish Americans and the work of Jewish interest groups in America. It is particularly so in an election year.

37. As such —— that confront us all. (para. 16):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Obama pointed out in the previous paragraph why Wright's statements were wrong. In this paragraph he stressed the point that these statements were di-

visive, especially when unity was called for. 上文中奥巴马指出为什么莱特牧师的观点是错误的。本段里，他进一步强调这些言论是具有分裂性质的，特别是国家呼吁团结的时候。

1) racially charged: to be filled or loaded with racial bias

2) monumental : great, colossal

3) Latino: a usually Spanish - speaking person of Latin American birth or descent who lives in the U. S.

38. Given my background—— are not enough. (para. 17):

1) given : taken as a premise 由于，鉴于，考虑到

2) professed: openly declared 公开承认的

39. And I confess that—— I would react in much the same way. (para. 17):

Paraphrase(英文释义): If Reverend Wright were the person represented by the repeatedly shown scraps of sermons, if the Trinity United Church of Christ were the one sold to the public by some commentators, I would have long deserted them. In this part, Obama wanted to show what was on the television sets and You Tube was not all, not even the major side of Reverend Wright. There was another side, an important side, of the pastor which was not shown to the public. 假如我对莱特神父的了解也像他们一样仅限于电视和 YouTube 视频分享网站上那些不断循环播放的牧师布道片段，又假如三一联合基督教会果真是如某些媒体评论员用漫画手法极力丑化的那个样子的话，那毫无疑问地，我对此事做出的反应很有可能就跟他们一样。

1) snippet: a small piece, scrap, or portion, specifically of information

2) loop: a segment of film or magnetic tape joined end to form a continuous strip for endless repetition

3) The subjunctive mood of the sentence shows that this is not the case.

4) peddle: to circulate(ideas) , often used with mild contempt

40. But the truth is, that isn't all that I know of the man. (para. 18):

In this paragraph, Obama points out that the above - mentioned problems are one side of Reverend Wright. There is another side, a positive side, to the man. And he goes on to talk about this side. The framing of the statement is very important. The use of " isn't all" and "I know of" limits the scope of his evaluation of the person. The phrase " isn't all " concedes what has been said about Wright is true but not the whole truth and "I know of " limits the following evaluation to his personal experience and observation. 通过使用"isn't all" and "I know of" 的措辞表达了奥巴马对于莱特牧师的了解和评价有限是，上文的评价是真的，但不是全部，限制了接下来就他个人的经历和观察的评价。

41. The man I met —— reaching out to those suffering from HIV/AIDS. (para. 18):

In this part, Obama mentions the things Reverend Wright taught him and Wright's services to the country. Parallel structures are used in this paragraph, e. g. the man I met, a

man, a man, (He is) a man; (He is a man) who served, who has studied and lectured, who—— led a church; by housing—— ministering—— providing—— reaching out. 通过排比结构运用提及莱特牧师对奥巴马本人的教诲和对美国的服务。

1) minister: to give help to

2) ministry: the function or service of a religious minister

42. "People began to shout—— and with which we could start to rebuild." (para. 19):

The description of Obama's first experience at Trinity is typical of sermons and responses of the pastors and congregations at black churches. The stories of survival, freedom and hope are repeated. The shouting, crying, stamping, clapping and singing are common scenes. This can be seen in news reels and films, The Bible stories are often used to relate the struggles of the blacks with the struggles as recorded in the Bible. And the whole paragraph is written in a highly rhetorical style. This again is typical of writings by black pastors. You would find this in many of Martin Luther King Jr.'s writings.

Rafter: 椽

奥巴马通过高超的修辞写作风格，再现自己第一次参加三一教会礼拜仪式的经历，说明自己在黑人教堂里就像大多数黑人教徒一样参加教会仪式，没有任何特殊之处。

43. "I heard something else—— Ezekiel's field of dry bones." (para. 19):

Obama is linking the particular scene with the experience and history of the black people, with the heroic stories in the Bible. The black people were not alone; they were a part of a greater struggle, a struggle for realizing God's teaching. 奥巴马通过《圣经》的英雄故事里特定的场景联系黑人的经历和历史说明黑人不是孤独的，他们是为实现上帝教诲的苦苦挣扎的人群中一部分。

44. "Those stories—— into a larger world." (para. 19):

Paraphrase(英文释义): The history, the struggle, the spirit became part of me and the church served as a carrier to pass this onto future generations and to spread it to the world beyond the black community. 圣经中所讲的这些关于生存、自由和希望的故事，也变成了我们黑人的故事、我的故事；故事中人物的血和泪，也仿佛变成了我们黑人自己的血和泪；矗立于青天白日之下的黑人教堂也仿佛再一次地化成了一条船，这条船将载着一个民族的故事，驶向未来属于后代的世界，进入一个更加广阔的天地。

Vessel: (Bible) a person thought of as being the receiver or repository of some spirit or influence

45. "Our trials and triumphs—— and with which we could start to rebuild." (para. 19):

In recalling the hardship and suffering and the success and victories which the black people had gone through but were not limited to the black people, we were filled with confidence and did not need to feel ashamed of the past. The past is food for study for all people and a starting point for the building of a bright future. 在回忆黑人所经历和遭受的一切，

奥巴马认为，黑人经历的苦难和成功立刻变得独特而普遍，是黑人的而又超越这个族群，在记录我们的历程中，那些故事和歌谣提供给我们不断回忆过往而不必羞耻的方法，有了这些故事，我们才能重建自己的过去。

Trials and triumphs; unique and universals; stories and songs: alliteration（头韵修辞格）

46. Like other predominantly black churches —— and the former gangbanger. (para. 20):

Trinity embraces all types of people into the community, the doctor and women living on government aid, good kids and kids who went astray in the past. A contrast is used to indicate different kinds of people: man, woman, educated, uneducated, good, former criminal. 三一教会包括社区各类人，包括走入邪路的青少年，进而对比社会上的各色人等。

Gang-banger: a member of a street gang, particularly a man who is part of a group of men who rape women.

47. Like other black churches, Trinity's services—— bawdy humor. (para. 20)

与其他黑人教会一样，三一教会的礼拜式上充满着喧闹和狂笑，有时甚至还有不堪入耳的黄段子。

1) This is a parallel structure for emphasis, pointing out the similarities of black churches. 通过排比结构的运用，强调黑人教堂的相似之处。

2) raucous: loud and rough - sounding

3) bawdy: coarse

4) The use of "raucous laughter" and "bawdy humor" gives the idea that the group at the religious ceremony is ordinary people, but natural, full of life and down to earth.

48. They are full of —— to the untrained ear. (para. 20):

Paraphrase（英文释义）: People who are not familiar with such practices may find the services too noisy , too rowdy. 黑人教堂里还经常有人在那儿跳舞狂欢、鼓掌尖叫和高声喧哗，这一切在一个不了解黑人社会的人的耳中听起来的确是有点刺耳，缺乏一般教堂礼拜式应有的和谐气氛。

49. The church contains in full—— the black experience in American. (para. 20):

Paraphrase（英文释义）: The device of antithesis is employed with a number of contrast: kindness vs. cruelty, fierce intelligence vs. shocking ignorance, struggles vs. success, love vs. bitterness, bias vs. yes. The contrasts are used to show the two sides of the experiences of the blacks in America. 三一教会包容性强，几乎将构成美国黑人社会的一切要素悉数囊括在内，其中自然既有仁慈，也有冷酷；有超常的智慧，也有雷人的愚昧；有奋斗与成功、欢爱与赞赏，也有难以排解的苦闷与偏见。这一切加在一起才是真实完整的美国黑人社会。

1) fierce intelligence: people who are very well - informed and intensely bright

2) shocking ignorance: people who are distressingly lack of knowledge

3) yes: agreement

50. Paragraphs 19 and 20: paragraphs 19 and 20 answer the question about the nature

of Trinity United Church of Christ. Obama points out that Trinity, like other black churches, is an embodiment of black history, black experience, black people in the community, the embodiment of complex contradictions. It is impossible to use "good" or "bad" to describe it. And this is part of American reality. 第19段和20段回答了三一联合基督教会的本质。奥巴马指出，像其他教会一样，三一教会体现了整个黑人历史、黑人经历、社区里的黑人各种复杂的乱象情况，不是简单的"好"、"坏"所能概括了的，这是美国现实的一部分。

51. And this helps explain—— has served diligently for so many years. (para. 21):

In this paragraph, Obama deals with two things. One is Reverend Wright's relations with him and his family. The other is the complexity of Wright's character. 这一部分里，奥巴马讨论两个事情：一个是澄清莱特牧师和他以及他的家族的关系；另一个就是莱特牧师性格的复杂性。

1) as imperfect as he may be: Obama does not use the statement "as imperfect as he is" because he is not so sure Wright is that imperfect and his personal contact with Wright does not convince him Wright is so imperfect. This is a statement of concession.

2) officiated at my wedding: performed the function of a pastor at Obama's wedding

3) in derogatory terms: use words to disparage or belittle

52. He contains within him—— for so many years. (para. 21):

Wright's fault is also the fault of the community he works for. A combination of opposites exists in him as well as in the black community. 他身上存在着一些矛盾——好坏善恶并存于一体 ——这正是他许多年如一日勤勤恳恳为之服务的社会所固有的矛盾。

53. I can no more disown him than—— the black community. (para. 22):

Paraphrase(英文释义): It is impossible for me to cash him off just as it is impossible for me repudiate the black community. 我不能宣布和他脱离关系，就如同我不能同整个黑人社会脱离关系一样。

disown: cast off, repudiate

54. I can no more disown him than—— that made me cringe. (para. 22):

Paraphrase(英文释义): The same applies to my white grandmother who helped raise me, who loves me yet who is biased against blacks. 那就好比是狼心狗肺地与含辛茹苦将我抚养成人的白人外婆也能脱离关系。我外婆这样一位善良的白人妇女也曾表示对黑人感到恐惧，表达种族偏见，让我听起来不寒而栗。

Cringe: to shrink from something dangerous or painful.

55. These people are part of me. And they are—— country that I love. (para. 23):

这些人与我的关系是骨肉至亲不可分离，他们与美国这个我热爱着的国家之间也是你中有我我中有你。

This is a summing up of Obama's attitude. He can condemn Wright's recent statements

in unequivocal terms but he can not disown Wright or the Trinity Church because there is another side to the man, the good side of the man, because Wright is not just an individual but a typical example of the embodiment of contradiction, of good and bad, of the black community. This is the reality of America, Obama is correct in such an analysis and it takes a man of his background and his experience to see the issue in this light. It also takes a man of courage to put it this way, especially in an election year. 这是奥巴马态度的总结,他一方面谴责莱特牧师的言行,但另一方面又不能隔断与莱特牧师或三一教会的联系,因为它们也代表着美国的现实,即代表好的一面,也有其不良的一面。这种现实的态度和认识对于赢得即将到来的大选很重要。

56. We can dismiss—— as harboring some deep - seated bias. (para. 24):

Paraphrase(英文释义):We can condemn Wright as being odd or eccentric and then reject him and put him out of mind just as some have dome with Geraldine Ferraro. 我们可以谴责莱特神父是一个精力过剩喜欢胡言乱语的怪咖或疯子而对其不加理睬,就像有些人在杰拉尔丁·费拉罗最近发表的饱含强烈的种族偏见的言论之后对她所做的那样。

1) dismiss: to put out of one's mind, to reject as lacking in importance or value

2) crank: a person who has odd, stubborn notions about something, eccentric

3) demagogue: a person who tries to stir up the people by appealing to emotion, prejudice, etc. in order to win them over quickly and so gain power

57. But race is an issue that I believe—— to ignore right now. (para. 25):

Obama is trying to bring people's attention to the issue of race. It goes beyond statements by Wright and the firestorm that followed. The use of the word "afford" means if we ignore the issue, the consequences will be serious. 奥巴马竭力使大家注意到种族的问题,远不是局限于莱特牧师的轩然大波的言论。

58. We would be making the same mistake—— distorts reality. (Para. 25):

1) What is the mistake made by Reverend Wright? The mistake is to simply and stereotype and amplify the negative to the point that it distorts reality. When one equates racial or ethnic bias or wrong doings to the nature of America, they are distorting reality; To Obama, America is fundamentally good and moving in the right direction. 莱特神父在其不合时宜地将事物的消极面简单化、模式化地无限放大到歪曲现实真相。

2) What would be the mistake made by us? According to Obama, the mistake would be to limit the issue to Wright, his relation with Obama and the black community, and to see only one side of the greater picture of race.

59. The fact is —— we have not yet made perfect. (para. 26): The offensive comments and the subsequent firestorm show that the race issue has not been thoroughly resolved and this is one of the issues we need to confront in making the union more perfect. So Obama is bringing the issue back to his theme. 这些冒犯性的言论和后续的轩然大波表明种族问

题还远没有消除，这是我们在塑造更加完善的联邦不可回避的问题，所以奥巴马重新回到这个话题。

60. And if we walk away now—— good jobs for every American. (para. 26)：

Paraphrase(英文释义)：If we are afraid of confronting the issue and do not bother to deal with it and go back to our respective businesses closing our eyes to the issue unresolved, we will never be able to work together to solve the pressing issues we mean to solve. 如果我们现在依然采取回避态度，不敢迎难而上而是退避三舍的话，那我们将永远无法携起手来解决事关每一个美国人福祉的诸如医疗保健、子女教育和就业等富有挑战性的问题。

1) walk away：avoid confronting the issue; desert

2) corner：a remote ，secret or secluded place

Ⅳ. 参考译文

塑造一个更加完美的联邦

（第一部分）

2008 年 3 月 18 日，宾夕法尼亚州费城　奥巴马

"我们美利坚合众国人民，为建立一个更加完美的联邦"

两百二十一年前，就在今天仍屹立于街对面的一个大会堂里，聚集了一群仁人志士，他们就凭借这种质朴的文字语句，启动了美利坚奇迹般令人不敢想象的民主实验。当初本为躲避暴政和迫害而飘洋过海来到新大陆的这些各自拥有农场主、学者、政治家和爱国者等不同身份的先辈们，于 1787 年的春天，召开了持续一整季长达 3 个月的费城制宪会议，最后终于让他们的独立宣言变为现实，而非一纸空文。

他们起草制订的这份文件虽终于在费城制宪会议上获得签署通过，但其实并未画上圆满的句号。导致它不能完美无缺，而产生白璧微瑕，美中不足的是这个国家的奴隶制原罪。由于奴隶制问题让各殖民地立场出现分歧，致使费城制宪会议一度陷入僵局，直到最后那批缔造合众国的先贤们无奈之下只好决定暂且允许奴隶贸易持续至少 20 年，并将最终解决这一问题的重任留待子孙后代去完成。

当然，奴隶制问题的解决之道其实早已内置于我们国家的宪法之中了，我们国家的宪法最基本的核心理念就是全体公民依法享有平等的权利；向国民承诺保障其享有自由与公平，并保证打造一个能够而且必须随着时间推移而日益完善的联邦政府。

不过，光靠写在一纸文件上的诺言尚不足以保证让奴隶们摆脱束缚获得自由，也不足以保证赋予不同肤色、不同信仰、不同性别的人们作为美利坚合众国公民应该享有的全部权利和对等义务。所以，还需要一代又一代美国公民自觉自愿地履行自己本份的职责和义务——可以是通过街头抗议和公堂抗争的温和斗争方式，也可以是通过内乱和内战这样的暴力反抗的方式，但无论采取哪种方式，对于参加者而言，都

应该敢于承担其可能带来的不测的风险——以期缩短我们理想的期许愿景与各个时代的现实之间的距离。

这正是我们在本次竞选活动之初所提出的任务之一——踏着前人的足迹接力继续其未竟事业,为建立一个更加公正、更加平等、更加自由、更加友爱、更加繁荣昌盛的美利坚而长征。我之所以选择在这一历史时刻竞选总统之职,乃是因为我深信,我们这个时代面临着许许多多严峻的难题,要解决这些难题,唯有通过有你有我的并肩努力,进一步完善我们的联邦制度,这就需要我们大家有这样一个共同的认识:我们大家可能有着各不相同的经历,但都怀有共同的希望;我们可能长着不同的相貌、来自不同的地方,但大家心中努力要达到的目标却是同一个方向——为我们的子孙后代创造一个更加美好的未来。

我的这一信念有两个坚实的基础,其一是我对美国国民正派而乐善的基本素质抱有的坚定信心,其二则是我个人的美国式成长经历。

我是一个黑白混血儿,父亲是来自肯尼亚的黑人,母亲是来自堪萨斯州的白人,帮着将我抚养长大的是我的白人外公外婆。我外公挺过了上世纪 30 年代的大萧条时期,这才有机会在第二次世界大战期间加入巴顿的部队服役参战。而在外公跟随巴顿将军远征海外的同时,外婆也在利文沃思堡的一条轰炸机装配线上辛勤地工作。我既曾有幸在美国一些最好的学校上学读书,也曾亲身体验过属于世界上最贫困的国家的生活的艰辛。我娶的妻子是一位美国黑人妇女,她的身体里流淌着奴隶和奴隶主的血液——这一特殊血统遗传现在又被我们传给了我们的两个宝贝女儿。我有许许多多的兄弟姐妹、侄儿侄女、甥儿甥女、叔伯姑舅及各种表亲,他们肤色不一,种族各异,分散在世界各地(三大洲)。只要我还能正常呼吸,我就永远不会忘记,我的成长经历就是美国特有的奇迹,在世界上其他任何一个国家都是根本不可能发生的。

这种经历没能让我成为最符合传统标准的总统候选人,但这样一种典型美国式的成长经历却在我的基因组织结构中烙进了这样一个理念:咱们这个国家的整体能量远远大于其个体能量之和——因为我们虽是由众多分散的个体组合而成,但我们却是真正的合而为一。

在本次竞选活动的第一年里,逆着一些人各种各样居心不良的测测预期,我们看到了美国人民是多渴望着互相传递团结一致的信息。尽管有些人可能会禁不住诱惑想纯粹以种族主义的有色眼镜来审视我参选总统的资格,我们依然在全国白人化程度最高的一些州取得了决定性的胜利。在代表南北战争中南方白人政府的邦联旗帜依然高高飘扬的南卡罗来纳州,我们让非裔美国人和白种美国人团结一心,建立起了牢不可破的联盟。

这并不是说种族问题在竞选活动中不是一个引发争议的问题。在选战的不同阶段,一些评论员不是认为我"太黑",就是认为我"不够黑"。在南卡罗来纳州初选之前的一个星期,我们就发现种族对立引起的紧张局面已经十分明显地冒着气泡浮出了水面。每一轮投票站现场民调结果都被新闻媒体挖出来翻找搜寻证明种族对立分化的最新证据,不光是黑人和白人之间,还包括黑人和棕色人种之间的对立。

不过本次选战中有关种族问题的议论开始出现特别明显的分歧对立的转变还只是直到最近两周的事情。

在意见分歧的一端，我们听出了这样一种弦外之音，认为我的参选无论如何至少也算是平权（消除歧视）行动的一次有意义的实践，纯粹是出于天真的自由派人士以廉价方式谋求种族和解的一种善良愿望。而在分歧的另一端，我们听到的是我以前所在教区的牧师，耶利米亚·莱特教士，用煽动性的语言表达出一些具有惊人影响力的观点，其影响力不仅足以加深种族分裂，而且可能损毁我们这个民族的伟大和善良，非常公平地使白人黑人一视同仁地受到伤害。

对于莱特神父那些引起如此的轩然大波的言论我已经旗帜鲜明地用毫不含糊的言辞予以谴责。可是有些人依然围绕一些鸡毛蒜皮的问题纠缠不休。有的人问我以前是否就知道他是一个喜欢时不时对美国内政和外交政策进行猛烈抨击的愤青？我当然知道。也有的人问我以前坐在教堂里听他布道时有曾听到过他发表过什么可以认为是有争议性的言论么？这也是有的。还有人问我对他的许多政治观点是否怀有强烈的不认同感？这更肯定的嘛——就像你们之中的许多人一样，不管你们信基督教、天主教还是犹太教，我相信你们从牧师、神父或拉比那里一定也听到过一些自己很不认同的言论。

不过，引起最近这场轩然大波的那些言论并不仅仅只是有争议性而已，也不仅仅只是一个宗教领袖眼见世道之不公，忍不住挺身而出仗义执言。那些言论的危害有甚于此，它们表达了对这个国家的一种深度扭曲的看法——认为白人种族主义是美国特有之恶，过分突出美国之弊而忽视众所周知的美国之利；认为导致中东冲突的根源主要在于像以色列这样美国的可靠盟友所采取的行动，而不是根源于激进伊斯兰教的乖戾可恨的思想意识。

如此看来，莱特牧师的言论不仅错误，而且危险，很有可能会制造族群分裂，分裂也不挑个恰当时机，偏偏赶在我们正需要团结的时候；搞族群攻击也没选对时机，偏偏是在当今这样危机重重的时代，我们正需要各族合作，同心协力以应对这个时代面临的一系列惊天动地的问题——两场战争、恐怖主义威胁、持续的经济衰退、长期得不到解决的医保危机，以及潜藏着毁灭性危害的气候变化等等等问题，它们并非只属于黑人、白人、拉美裔或是亚裔哪一个族群面临的问题，而是我们大家都必须直面正视的问题。

由于我的特定背景、个人政见以及我在公开场合所表达出来的道德理想和价值观等一系列因素的关系，虽然我已经发布声明对莱特神父加以谴责，肯定还有一些人不会因此而满足。他们或许要问，当初为何要与莱特牧师交往？为什么不加入别的教会？在这里我必须承认，假如我对莱特神父的了解也像他们一样仅限于电视和YouTube视频分享网站上那些不断循环播放的牧师布道片段，又假如三一联合基督教会果真是如某些媒体评论员用漫画手法极力丑化的那个样子的话，那毫无疑问地，我对此事做出的反应很有可能就跟他们一样。

然而，真实情况绝非如此，我对莱特神父的理解远比优图视频提供的片段客观而

全面。这位我结识于二十多年前的可敬的牧师先生是引导我接受基督信仰的入教介绍人,是他现身说法教给我做人的道理,让我明白人与人应该相亲相爱,对病弱者要真心关爱,见贫苦者要热心扶助。他还是堂堂七尺好男儿,曾参加美国海军陆战队英勇地为国家效力,他又是学富五车的大秀才,美国最顶尖的大学中学都留下了他求学和讲学的足迹。他更是德高望重的好神父,三十几年如一日无怨无悔地主持一个教堂的大小事务,通过尽职尽责替主作工来服务人间社会——收留无家可归者,帮助生活贫困者,为需要的对象提供日托服务、助学金及监狱布道感化服务,并不辞劳苦地向艾滋病患者提供帮助。

在我的第一本书《我父亲的梦想》中,我描述了第一次参加三一教会礼拜仪式的经历:

“人们开始大喊大叫,从座位上站起来并鼓掌喝彩,气氛十分热烈,如同一阵劲风吹送着牧师的声音直上屋顶,绕梁三日……只有一个基调——希望;我还听出了一些别的信息:我想象出这样的图景,在全城成千上百的教堂里的十字架下,普通黑人的生活经历融进了圣经故事里,与圣经中讲述的大卫和歌利亚的故事、摩西和法老的故事、但以理进出狮子洞的故事以及伊祁吉尔预言遍地枯骨复活的故事一起大放异彩。圣经中所讲的这些关于生存、自由和希望的故事,也变成了我们黑人的故事、我的故事;故事中人物的血和泪,也仿佛变成了我们黑人自己的血和泪;矗立于青天白日之下的黑人教堂也仿佛再一次地化成了一条船,这条船将载着一个民族的故事,驶向未来属于后代的世界,进入一个更加广阔的天地。我们所经历的一切艰难困苦的考验和所取得的一切光辉业绩顿时变得具有独特而普遍的意义,既是属于黑人的又不仅仅是属于黑人的。这些故事和歌谣记录了我们的历史足迹,让我们拾回不必为之遗憾的过去的记忆——这种记忆值得所有人加以研究和珍惜——有了这种属于自己的过去的记忆作为前提,我们方能重建属于自己的美好未来。”

这是我参加三一教会活动的亲身经历。和全国其他地方以黑人信众为主的教会一样,三一教会容纳了整个的黑人社区的各个阶层——从代表社会顶层的医生到代表社会底层的靠社会救济生产的五保老人,从优秀模范学生到曾经的黑帮混混。与其他黑人教会一样,三一教会的礼拜式上充满着喧闹和狂笑,有时甚至还有不堪入耳的黄段子。还经常有人在那儿跳舞狂欢、鼓掌尖叫和高声喧哗,这一切在一个不了解黑人社会的人的耳中听起来的确是有点刺耳,缺乏一般教堂礼拜式应有的和谐气氛。三一教会包容性强,几乎将构成美国黑人社会的一切要素悉数囊括在内,其中自然既有仁慈,也有冷酷;有超常的智慧,也有雷人的愚昧;有奋斗与成功、欢爱与赞赏,也有难以排解的苦闷与偏见。这一切加在一起才是真实完整的美国黑人社会。

这些情况或许有助于人们理解我与莱特神父的关系。虽然他也许并非完人,但对我而言,他就像是自己家人。他坚定了我的信仰,主持过我的婚礼,并且为我的孩子们施了洗礼。我在与他经常不断地交谈中从未听到他用贬损的语言谈论其他族群,对待与之有过交往的白人他也从来不缺礼貌与尊重。他身上存在着一些矛盾——好坏善恶并存于一体 ——这正是他许多年如一日勤勤恳恳为之服务的社会

所固有的矛盾。

我不能宣布和他脱离关系，因为那后果就与同整个黑人社会脱离关系一样让我承担不起；我若和他脱离关系，那就好比是狼心狗肺地与含辛茹苦将我抚养我成人的白人外婆也能脱离关系，我外婆一向爱我胜似掌上明珠，为了我不知道经受过多少的委屈和牺牲，但是这样一位善良的白人妇女也曾表示对在街上从她身边走过的黑人感到恐惧，并曾不止一次表达过对于某些种族和族群的偏见，让我听起来不寒而栗。

这些人与我的关系是骨肉至亲不可分离，他们与美国这个我热爱着的国家之间也是你中有我我中有你。

我说的这些，在有些人看来，好像是在为那些完全不可原谅的言论极力辩解或寻找原谅的理由。我可以负责任地告诉你，那不是我的本意。窃以为，从政治需要上讲，在这件事上不宜纠缠，最稳妥的对策是避开它，让它慢慢随着时间推移而烟消云散。我们完全可以将莱特神父看作一个精力过剩喜欢胡言乱语的怪咖或疯子而对其不加理睬，就像有些人在杰拉尔丁·费拉罗最近发表的饱含强烈的种族偏见的言论之后对她所做的那样。

但是，种族问题已经严重到我认为如今我们已经忽视不起的程度了。若继续忽视，我们就会犯与莱特神父在其不合时宜的布道视频中所犯一模一样的错误——将事物的消极面简单化、模式化地无限放大到歪曲现实真相的程度。

而现实真相就是，最近几周出现的这些不当言论及其引发的有争议的论题恰恰反映出我们国家的种族问题的复杂性。种族问题是一个我们国家迄今为止从未真正解决好的问题，这也正是我们的联邦内部尚需努力去完善的地方。如果我们现在依然采取回避态度，不敢迎难而上而是退避三舍的话，那我们将永远无法万众一心地携起手来解决事关每一个美国人福祉的诸如医疗保健、子女教育和就业等富有挑战性的问题。

习题解析

Ⅰ. 口语展示：参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. 问答。

A. 课文内容问答：

1. Racial Issues. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, USA.

2. He is the son of a black man and a white woman. He was raised by his white grandmother, then he married to a black woman and had two daughters. He used to study at the best schools in America and live in one of the world's poorest nations. Because the story is so special that nothing can be found in any country on the Earth is the same as his story.

3. NO. At various stages in the campaign, some commentators have deemed him either

too black or not black enough. And recently a rumor went that his candidacy was somehow an exercise in affirmative action. That it was based solely on the desire of wide – eyed liberals to purchase racial reconciliation on the cheap.

4. Reverend Wright sees white racism as endemic and the conflicts in the Middle East as rooted primarily in the actions of stalwart allies like Israel, instead of emanating from the perverse and hateful ideologies of radical Islam, and elevates what is wrong with America to cover what is right with America. His remarks were divisive, divisive at a time when we need unity; racially charged at a time when we need to solve many problems together. For a more perfect union, we need to face a lot together, at such a time, the remarks about the racial divide can not be correct.

5. Because those people thought that Obama could not have associated himself with Reverend Wright in the first place and he could have joined another church in terms of his background, his politics, and his professed values and ideals.

6. Reverend Wright was the man who helped introduce Obama to his Christian faith; who spoke to him about their obligations to love one another, to care for the sick and lift up the poor; who served his country as a U. S. Marine; who has studied and lecture at some of the finest universities and seminaries in the country; who for over thirty years led a church that serves community by doing God's work. The Trinity United Church of Christ embodies the black community in its entirety, Trinity's services are full of raucous laughter and sometimes bawdy humor. They are full of dancing, clapping, screaming, and shouting that may seem jarring to the untrained ear. The church contains in full the kindness and cruelty, the fierce intelligence and the shocking ignorance, the struggles and successes, the love and, yes, the bitterness and bias that make up the black experience in America.

7. Wright was the former pastor of Obama. He meant that to disown him was equal to disown the black community, to disown his white grandmother. In fact, Wright was kind of family to him.

8. YES. Because ignoring the problem means we would be making the same mistake that Reverend Wright made-to simplify and stereotype and amplify the negative to the point that it distorts reality.

9. Segregate schools were, and are, inferior schools, and the inferior education they provided, then and now, helps explain the pervasive achievement gap between today's black and white students; legalized discrimination – where blacks were prevented, often through violence, from owning property helps explain the wealthy and income gap between black and white.

B. 课文欣赏问题:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. After heated debated and compromises, the Constitution was finally adopted by the Constitutional Convention and39 out of 55 delegates signed the document. But the "three-fifths" clause and the twenty years allowed for the slave trade showed the slave issue was not solved, so the processes of forming a more perfect union did not end with the enforcement of the Constitution.

2. My personal background and my success story, rising from rags to riches, also teach me the importance of unity.

3. I am deeply ingrained, through my experience in the United States, with the idea that America is not a total of adding everything together but is the product of fusion, of sharing the same creed.

4. In spite of all announcements that America was not ready for a black president, that I would fail in the campaign, we gained momentum in the first year of the campaign, which showed that the American people demanded unity and change.

5. People were encouraged to judge me from the perspective of a black candidate, rising the question of whether the United States would fare better with a black president. However, we won great victories even in some of the more conservative states, states with stronger racial bias.

6. The week before the Democrats were to select their delegates to the national convention in South Carolina, attacks on me, on blacks became more frequent, more intense.

7. At one end of the entire range of opinion, there are people who say that I decided to run because I wanted to show black and white should have equal opportunity and I wanted to show play on the desires of na? ve liberals to achieve racial harmony without making great effort.

8. It is impossible for me to cast him off just as it is impossible for me to repudiate the black community.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. embed: to set (flowers) in earth; (figurative) to fix in the mind, to fix in the spirit (of the constitution)

2. hue: modification of a basic color

3. sear: to have a very sudden effect

4. spectrum: a continuous range or entire extent

5. wide – eyed: na? ve or unsophisticated

on the cheap: at very little cost

6. divide: division

7. firestorm: a strong, often violent, outburst

8. snippet: a small piece, scrap, or portion of information

loop: a segment of film or magnetic tape joined end to end to form a continuous strip for endless repetition

9. raucous: loud and rough – sounding

bawdy: coarse

10. officiate: to perform the function of a pastor

11. cringe: to shrink from something dangerous or painful

B.

1. union: the state of being united into a single organization for a common purpose

unity: the oneness, as in spirit, aims, interests, feeling, etc., of that which is made up of diverse elements or individuals

solidarity: form and complete unity in an organization, group, class, etc., as to make for the greatest possible strength in influence, action, etc.

ally: a country, person or group joined with another or others for a common purpose

alliance: any association entered into for mutual benefit

coalition: a temporary alliance of opposing parities, etc., as in times of emergency

2. Pastor: a person, as a priest or minister, in spiritual and jurisdictional charge of a parish, church congregation, or community, usually Protestant

priest in hierarchical Christian churches, a clergyman ranking next below a bishop and authorized to administer the sacraments, usually Catholic or orthodox

minister: an ordained member of a Protestant church; especially a pastor vicar: (Anglican Church) a parish priest who is not a rector and receives a stipend instead of the tithes a rector receives; (Episcopal Church) a minister deputizing for another

Chaplain: a minister, priest, or rabbi serving in a religious capacity with the armed forces, or in a prison, hospital, etc.

Reverend: (informal) a member of the clergy

C.

1. stained: disgraced, dishonored

2. march: steady advance

3. hungry: eager

4. a purely racial lens: (through) glasses that see things only in terms of race

5. bubble to the surface: (which were) originally concealed or insubstantial now came into the open and became an issue

6. incendiary: willfully stirring up strife, riot, rebellion, etc.

7. monumental: great , colossal

8. peddled : (ideas) circulated, often used with mild contempt

9. lift up: to elevate; to raise (from lower social position to higher ones)

10. vessel: (Bible) a person thought of as being the receiver or repository of some spirit or influence

11. walk away; to desert

Corner: remote, secret or secluded place

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. He dismissed the story circulating on the Internet as a joke.

2. Mark Twain's "Running for Governor" is a famous short story.

3. We should reach out without reservation to those who suffer from disasters.

4. Given their lack of experience, their work should be considered as above average.

5. She grew up in a community where the inhabitants were predominantly of Chinese origin.

6. Being in a bad mood can not justify your rude behavior toward your colleagues.

7. The police dismissed the incident as a case of misunderstanding.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读,思考与评论

The main idea of the first paragraph is: There is only one America——the United States of America. The main idea of the second paragraph is: Obama's personal experience convinces him that this is the correct vision. The third paragraph tells us that the Constitution ensures the carrying out of the core idea of equal citizenship under the law and equal opportunity to all.

The idea of one America can be found in Paragraph 9 in "A More Perfect Union." The idea of his experience can be found in Paragraph 8. The idea of a long march can be found in Paragraphs 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Lesson Ten

"A More Perfect Union" (Part II)

词汇注释

reminder[riˈmaində] ***n.*** a thing to help one remember something else 令人回忆起…的东西

【例句】Violence has broken out in the capital, a stark **reminder** that the religious tensions are refusing to go away. 首都爆发了暴力事件,这给了人们一个严酷的提醒——宗教紧张局势还在持续。

recite[riˈsait] ***v.*** to tell in detail; to enumerate 列举

【例句】All he could do was **recite** a list of Government failings. 他能做的只是列举政府的种种不是。

disparity[disˈpærəti] ***n.*** difference; inequality 不平等;不等;不一致;悬殊

【例句】The **disparity** is especially stark as companies are swimming in cash. 这种悬殊差异在那些拥有巨量现金的公司尤其明显。

同义词:difference distinction discrepancy

这四个名词呕有不同,差异的意思:**difference** 表示不同,差异是普通用词,指某些事物通过比较,在本质,数量,范围等方面的差异;**distinction** 指事物本质上的区别;**discrepancy** 指语言上出现的不同和差异;**disparity** 常指数量,等级,程度等的差别。

segregate[ˈsegrigit, -geit] ***v.*** to separate or set apart from others 使隔离;使分开

【例句】Police **segregated** the two rival camps of protesters. 警察把两个敌对阵营的抗议人群隔离开来。

同义词：separate

segregate 指把两个团体或把一组人与整体隔离，常指种族或宗教的隔绝。**separate** 指使原先合在一起的东西分开，也可以指从中隔开，常和 from 搭配，有时还有区别开来的意思。

inferior[in'fiəriə] ***adj.*** of low grade or worse condition; poor in quality（等级或条件）差的；劣质的

【例句】This resulted in overpriced and often **inferior** products. 这就导致了标价过高而往往质量低劣的产品的出现。

同义词：minor secondary subordinate

这一组形容词都有次等的意思。**inferior** 当下级讲时，强调职位的高低；当次等讲时，指素质，质量等得低劣；**minor** 常含有轻微的但并非不重要的意思；**secondary** 强调在重要性或者顺序上处于第二位；**subordinate** 强调主次地位或支配了隶属关系。

pervasive[pəː'veisiv] ***adj.*** tending to widely exist 普遍的

【例句】And **pervasive** petty bribery erodes the state's authority over taxpayers. 小额贿赂普遍存在的现象侵蚀了国家在纳税人心目中的权威性。

legalize['liːgəlaiz] ***v.*** to make legal; authorize 使合法化；使得到法律认可

【例句】The way to encourage this is to **legalize** the sale of kidneys. 鼓励人们捐献的最好办法就是让交易肾脏合法化。

discrimination[dis,krimi'neiʃən] ***n.*** the act or practice of discriminating 歧视；偏袒；不公平的待遇

【例句】She is exempt from sex **discrimination** laws. 她免受性别歧视法的追究。

loan[ləun] ***n.*** something lent, esp. a sum of money lent at interest 暂借的东西；（尤指）贷款

【例句】The country has no access to foreign **loans** or financial aid. 该国得不到任何外国贷款或经济援助。

mortgage['mɔːgidʒ] ***n.*** an amount of money loaned to buy a house（用于购房的）抵押贷款，按揭

【例句】The **mortgage** rate for second homes was also increased. 第二套房的按揭利率也有所提高。

同义词：loan

loan 是贷款，如 student loan 学生贷款读书。**mortgage** 是有抵押的借贷，如房产的 mortgage。mortgage 是 loan 的一种，loan 则不一定是 mortgage。

exclude[iks'kluːd] ***v.*** to shut or keep out; prevent the entrance of 排斥，阻止…的

进入

【例句】The Academy excluded women from its classes. 该学院不招收女学生。

同义词:refuse

exclude 表示排斥,除等意思,偏向于客观地,理智地;**refuse** 表示拒绝,否认等意思,强调主管情绪方面的拒绝。

bequeath[bi'kwi:ð] *v.* to dispose of (poverty or money) by means of a will(按遗嘱)把(财产或钱)遗留给

【例句】He **bequeathed** all his silver to his children. 他把他所有的钱财都留给了孩子。

blight[blait] *n.* destruction or frustration of hope or ambition 衰落;衰退

neglect[ni'glekt] *n.* an act or instance of neglecting; negligence 疏忽;忽略

【例句】But we shouldn't **neglect** the biggest anomaly. 但我们不应忽视最大的反常。

systematic[ˌsisti'mætik] *adj.* having showing, or involving a system 有系统的;系统化的;成体系的

【例句】They went about their business in a **systematic** way. 他们按部就班地做生意。

constrict[kən'strikt] *v.* to limit, restrict; to make smaller or narrower through binding, squeezing or shrinking 压缩

【例句】They purposely wear devices that **constrict** blood flow in order to shape their bodies. 她们特意穿上一些压缩血流量的衣服,从而保持她们的体形。

同义词:shrink

constrict 表示受到外力压缩挤压才导致的;**shrink** 是自主性的,处于内在因素,例如毛衣缩水或者货币紧缩等。

languish['læŋgwiʃ] *v.* to live under distressing conditions; to remain in a difficult or unpleasant situation for a long time 失去活力;烦恼,焦思;憔悴,潦倒

【例句】No one knows for certain how many refugees wander the world today, or **languish** in camps without a permanent place of settlement. 无人清楚如今有多少难民在到处流浪,或有多少人流离失所,在难民营里受苦。

prospect['prɔspekt] *n.* the possibility that something will happen, especially something good; the apparent chance for a long time 前景;前途

【例句】I chose to work abroad to improve my career **prospects**. 我选择出国工作以求在事业上有更好的前景。

exploit['eksplɔit] *v.* to use a situation so that you get benefit from, even if it is wrong or unfair to do this 利用(…为自己谋利)

【例句】The government and its opponents compete to **exploit** the troubles to their advantage. 政府及其反对派竞相利用这些问题为自己谋利。

pew[pjuː] *n.* (in a church) one of a number of benches fixed in rows for use by the congregation(供会众坐的)教堂长椅

【例句】I had an epiphany while sitting in the **pew** that day. 那天当我坐在教堂长凳上时，我恍然大悟。

truism[ˈtruːizəm] *n.* a statement the truth of which is obvious or well known 老生常谈；自明之理

【例句】Whilst this might sound like a **truism**, it is nevertheless a crucial problem to address. 尽管这可能听起来像是老生常谈，但却是待解决的重要问题。

squarely[ˈskwɛəli] *adv.* honestly; directly 公正地；笔直地

forge[fɔːdʒ] *v.* to develop a successful relationship, especially in business or politics, to work hard to achieve something 缔造；建立

【例句】The programme aims to **forge** links between higher education and small businesses. 这个项目旨在为高等教育和小企业之间建立联系。

chasm[ˈkæzəm] *n.* a very big difference that separates one person or group from another 鸿沟；(感情等的)分歧

【例句】But none of these can fill the **chasm** created by our deep sense of separation. 但是，这一切都无法填补由我们强烈的分离意识造成的鸿沟。

stagnant[ˈstægnənt] *adj.* of or relating to stagnation 不流动的；呆滞的；停滞不前的；不景气的

【例句】Many people still think Japan is broke and **stagnant**.

许多人仍然认为日本破产了、停滞不前了。

同义词：static stationary

这三个形容词都有静止的，静态的，停滞的意思。**stagnant** 侧重指停滞不前，不发展的，也克表示不景气的，不活跃的，死气沉沉的；**static** 基本意思是指某物体或者事物处于静止状态（相对而言），强调静态，常引申出不变化，平稳等相应的含义；**stationary** 侧重指变化不大或者没有变化，比较稳定的，不流动的，强调不动。

land[lænd] *v.* (informal) to get, win or secure 获得

【例句】He **landed** a place on the graduate training scheme. 他在毕业生培训计划中赢得了一个位置。

resentment[riˈzentmənt] *n.* a feeling of displeasure or anger because of an insult or other wrong 憎恨；愤恨；不满

【例句】Corruption and yawning disparities of wealth fuel **resentment**. 腐败和不断扩大的财富分配差距的反感。

shape[ʃeip] *v.* to influence the way a person, idea, or situation develops 塑造;使符合;体现;使成形;形成;决定…的形成;影响…的发展

【例句】Like it or not, our families shape our lives and make us what we are. 无论喜欢与否,家庭影响了我们的生活,决定了我们成为什么样的人。

bogus['bəugəs] *adj.* not genuine; very careful imitation and always implies intent to deceive 假冒的,伪造的;佯作

【例句】He said these figures were **bogus** and totally inaccurate. 他说这些数字都是捏造的,完全不准确。

同义词:fake counterfeit

bogus 是带有明显的错误行为的造假;**fake** 侧重于属性;**counterfeit** 强调行为背后有个原版,但这种行为不一定是错误的或者犯罪的。

counterproductive[ˌkauntəprə'dʌktiv] *adj.* bringing about effects or results regarded as contrary to those intended; having the opposite result to the one you intended 使达不到预期目标的;产生相反效果的;事与愿违的;适得其反的

【例句】It is **counter - productive** to address an interviewee in patronizing tones. 以盛气凌人的语气同面试者讲话将会适得其反。

culprit['kʌlprit] *n.* a person guilty of a crime or offense; someone who is responsible for doing something bad or illegal 罪魁祸首

squeeze[skwiːz] *n.* a period or situation marked by scarcity, hardship, insecurity, etc. 困境

rife[raif] *adj.* abundant 流行的;普遍的

【例句】Poor instruction by teachers who physically beat their pupils is rife. 老师教学质量普遍差,体罚学生更是家常便饭。

lobbyist['lɔbiist] *n.* a person acting for a special interest group, who tries to influence the introduction of or voting on legislation or the decisions of government administrators 说客

stick[stik] *v.* to become embedded and immovable 阻延或推迟

assert[ə'səːt] *v.* to state positively with great confidence but with no objective proof 坚持;坚持自己的主张

【例句】It is time for the congress to **assert** itself. 现在,正是美国国会坚持自己观点的时候。

同义词:affirm allege claim

assert 指不管事实如何,主观自信地宣称;**affirm** 指根据事实坚定不移地宣称,有无可争辩之意;**allege** 指在无真凭实据的情况下宣称,硬说;**claim** 往往表示说话者反对或者不同意某一观点。

conviction[kən'vikʃən] *n.* a fixed or firm belief 信念；坚定的信仰

【例句】This will require **conviction** as well as nous. 这将需要信念与机敏两者兼备。

wound[waund] *n.* any hurt or injury to the feelings, honor, etc. 情感上的创伤

【例句】It's an emotional block inside your own psyche, a **wound** in your heart and mind. 这是你自身灵魂内的情绪阻滞，你的头脑和心灵的创伤。

embrace[im'breis] *v.* to accept reality 接受；欣然接受

【例句】The new rules have been **embraced** by government watchdog organizations. 政府监察机构已经欣然接受了这些新规则。

burden['bəːdən] *n.* anything one has to bear or put up with as of sorrow, responsibility 重担；负担，包袱；责任，义务

【例句】They don't go around with the **burdens** of the world on their shoulders the whole time. 他们不会一直背负整个世界的重担。

同义词：**responsibility**

burden 强调负担，重负；**responsibility** 偏重义务，责任。

grievance['griːvəns] *n.* a wrong or unjust act considered as grounds for compliant 不满；委屈；抱怨

【例句】Our society is so focused on **grievance** and complaint.

我们的社会充满了太多的不满和抱怨。

aspiration[ˌæspə'reiʃən] *n.* one's desire to achieve things 抱负；志向；渴望

【例句】That is still an **aspiration**, not a reality. 那仍然只是一种抱负，而不是现实。

succumb[sə'kʌm] *v.* to give way to superior force; yield 屈服，顺从；不再抵抗

【例句】He believed that she had **succumbed** to his charms. 他认为她已经被自己的魅力迷倒。

quintessentially[kwinti'senʃəli] *adj.* being or representing the most perfect type or example of something 典型的，典范的

【例句】It is a familial, and **quintessentially** British ritual. 这是一个常见的典型英式仪式。

notion['nəuʃən] *n.* an idea or view, esp. one's own view 概念；（尤指某人自己的）见解

【例句】His **notion** of comfort meant comfortable shoes. 他所恩威的享受指的就是舒适的鞋子。

同义词：**concept**

notion 是对事物的总印象，非常朦胧，尤其指一些你认为不对的事情的概念；

concept 是对事物整体或者本质的感官，印象与看法。

embark[em'bɑːk] *v.* to start or participate in an enterprise 开始；参与；从事

【例句】The government **embarked** on a programme of radical economic reform. 政府开始实施一项彻底的经济改革计划。

static['stætik] *adj.* not moving or progressing; inactive 静止的；不变的

【例句】Both your pictures are of **static** subjects. 你的两张照片拍的都是静止物体。

irrevocably[i'revəkəbli] *adv.* unalterably 不能取消地，不能撤回地；不可改变的；不可推翻的

【例句】He said the decision was **irrevocable**. 他说这项决定是不可改变的。

bound[baund] *adj.* closely connected or related 紧紧捆绑住的；与…紧密相连的

【例句】Economic growth is still **bound** to the issues of poverty, social justice and conservation. 经济增长仍然与贫困、社会公正和资源保护等问题紧密相连。

genius['dʒiːnjəs] *n.* a great natural ability 天才；天赋；天才人物；(特别的)才能

【例句】Its very title is a stroke of **genius**. 其题目本身起得就很有才。

同义词：talent gift

genius 是属于特殊的一类，天生的；**gift** 指一个人的天赋，先天的能力；**talent** 指一个人的天赋并且能够发展和培养。

audacity[ɔː'dæsəti] *n.* the confidence to say or do what you want, despite difficulties, risks or the negative attitudes of other people 大胆；无所畏惧

【例句】They never let their **audacity** or tenacity drive them to ruin. 他们决不会让无畏或固执把自己带向毁灭。

ail[eil] *v.* to be the cause of pain or distress to; to trouble 使受病痛；使疼痛；使烦恼；折磨

【例句】It may provide answers to some of the problems that **ail** America. 这一点可能解答困扰美国的某些问题。

incident['insidənt] *n.* an occurrence or event 事件；事情

【例句】The **incident** under investigation in japan occurred last year. 正在调查中的日本事件发生在去年。

address[ə'dres] *v.* to deal or cope with; to handle 处理

【例句】Old – media firms have barely begun to **address** such problems. 旧媒体公司几乎没有着手处理此类问题。

ladder['lædə] *n.* a system that has different levels through which you can progress (一个系统中晋升或降级的)梯级；阶梯

【例句】She admired her mother's sister for moving up the social **ladder**. 她羡慕姨妈

社会地位的提升。

keeper[ˈkiːpə]　*n.* a guardian or protector 保护者

breed[briːd]　*v.* to be the source; to produce 产生，导致

【例句】Violence **breeds** violence. 暴力会催生更多暴力。

tackle[ˈtækl]　*v.* to undertake to do or solve (something difficult) 着手处理；（果断或高效地）应对，处理，解决（难题或任务）

【例句】Firemen later **tackled** the blaze. 消防队员们后来扑灭了这场大火。

spectacle[ˈspektəkl]　*n.* a public show or exhibition on a grand scale 公众情景剧

fodder[ˈfɔdə]　*n.* basic material for something 素材；材料

【例句】Old movies were the cheapest broadcast **fodder**. 老电影是最廉价的播放素材。

pounce[pauns]　*v.* to quickly jump on or hold someone or something with a view to getting some advantage 突袭，猛扑；掌握，抓住

【例句】'That's much too subtle, even for Sam.' – 'Even for Sam!' He pounced on the phrase with a sound of triumph. "那太微妙了，即便对萨姆来说。"——"即便对山姆来说！"，他得意洋洋地抓住了这句话。

gaffe[gæf]　*n.* an embarrassing mistake that you make in public, especially one that offends or upsets someone 失礼，出丑

【例句】He made an embarrassing **gaffe** at the convention last weekend. 他在上周末的会议上出了洋相，狼狈不堪。

shuttered[ˈʃʌtəd]　*n.* closed with shutters, here referring to closed – down factories 倒闭的（工厂）；关闭的（工厂）

wage[weidʒ]　*v.* to begin or carry on 开始；进行；从事；发动；作（战等）

【例句】They **waged** a price war. 他们打起了价格战。

bankruptcy[ˈbæŋkrəptsi]　*n.* the state of being **bankrupt** 破产；倒闭

【例句】Many established firms were facing **bankruptcy**. 许多成熟的企业正面临倒闭。

mustard[ˈmʌstəd]　*n.* the plant that gives this seed 芥菜

patriot[ˈpeitriət]　*n.* one who loves and defends his or her country 爱国者

短语表达

arrive at：to reach by development 完成；到达

【例句】They urged negotiators to make a final push to **arrive at** an agreement. 他们

敦促谈判者为达成协议作最后努力。

trace to:to go back(to something past)追溯到

【例句】The olympic games could **trace to** ancient era. 奥林匹克运动会可以追溯到古代。

achievement gap:performance disparity in study 成就差距

walk the beat:to walk along a fixed route on a round of duty 巡逻

building code:a set of rules or regulations concerning construction of houses 建筑守则,建筑规范;小区保安

come of age:to reach the age when one has full legal rights; often used figuratively for any arrival at maturity,one's prime,etc. 到了成年;长大成人;年及弱冠

【例句】Grove's technology had **come of age**. 格罗夫的技术已经相当成熟了。

make it:to succeed in a particular activity 成功

【例句】I wanted her to **make it** on her own. 我希望她靠自己的力量成功。

at times:occasionally; sometimes 有时;有时,间或

make up for:to provide something good,so that something bad seems less important; to compensate for 弥补;尤指因自己的错误而向…弥补

【例句】I must **make** it **up** to him **for** the awful intrusion of last night. 因为昨晚过分的打扰,我必须对他有所补偿。

wish away:to make something stop or disappear just by expressing a wish 希望…离开[消失]

【例句】I would like to **wish away** all my debts. 我祈盼望让我所有的债务都消失。

from scratch:from a point where nothing has been done,so you have to do everything yourself 白手起家;从零开始

【例句】Making efficient parallel software means starting **from scratch**. 设计有效的并行软件意味着从零开始。

slip away:to move quickly without attracting notice 悄悄溜走;不告而别

【例句】Neiros would **slip away** from his father when he could. 如有可能,内罗斯会从他父亲身边溜走。

at my expense:with the loss borne by me 由我承担损失

【例句】A cruel joke **at my expense**. 一个以我为代价的残酷笑话。

corporate culture:企业文化

【例句】Each company should foster its own **corporate culture**. 每个公司应培育自己的企业文化。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

参见教材课文后"Notes"和第9课的"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

参见第9课的"全文概述"。

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This is a speech which helped Obama win the Presidency election and regarded as by some as one of the biggest events in his campaign.

The title of this speech " A More Perfect Union" is taken from the Preamble to the Constitution of the United States. The preamble runs like this: We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common Defense, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

When the founding fathers wrote "to form a more perfect Union" they meant the U. S. established on the constitution would be a better state than those in the Old World (Europe). They were following the call of building " a City on the Hill. " But when Barack Obama used the phrase, the implication was that the current union was far from being perfect and it was the task of the American people to make it more perfect, to realize the goal set out in the constitution.

Specifically speaking, the characteristics on Obama's Address as follows:

1) The Approach of the Speech

The purpose of Obama's speech is obvious: His opponents in the Democratic Party as well as in the Republic Party were using the remarks of Reverend Wright, Obama's former pastor, to attack Obama, spreading doubt about his qualification as a presidential candidate. Responding to the political slur takes great skill. To concentrate on refuting the attacks would show that Obama could not see the issue in a broader perspective and on a higher plane. Talking about the race issue without directly addressing Wright's remarks would give the impression that he shunned the issue and would intensify suspicious.

Obama worked out a brilliant approach. He put the race issue in the context of perfecting the union, in the context of upholding the U. S. Constitution, the job of a president. A Historical approach puts the race issue, the legacy of slavery, in the course of historical development and shows the current conflict are the continuation of historical struggle. And Obama stated that he meant to carry on the struggle. He also adopted an approach in a straightforward way, facing the doubts in the minds of the voters and the arguments of blanks and whites. He described his relationship with Wright and the Trinity United Church, condemned Wright's statements but pointed out the other side of Wright and the influence of the church. He said he could not disown him any more than he could disown the black community. This comes as a shock to many but this is a claver strategy because Obama was linking this up with black experience, with history. He also listed the grievance and anger of the blacks and some segments of the white community. These angers were real and powerful but if people adopted an approach of mutual acrimony, the result would be counterproductive. Then Obama came to his theme: unity for perfecting the union; he once again related this to the founding fathers and the Constitution. In this way Obama addressed the doubts of many but put the issue in a much bigger context: the issue of making the union more perfect. This calls for unity and this is the campaign: united for change.

2) Personal Touches

In the speech Obama talked about his personal experience, his relation with Wright and the Trinity United Church and the story of Ashley Baia. These personal touches make the speech more human, establishing a closer relationship between the speaker and the audience. This is the practice of many public speakers.

参见第9课的“美文欣赏及写作特点”中文解释。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Understand this reality requires a reminder of how we arrived at this point. (Para. 27):

In the previous paragraphs Obama said that Wright's comments and the subsequent firestorm reflected the complexities of race in this country. In order to understand these complexities, we need to know the history and development of racial relations, the sufferings and injustices the blacks were subjected to. 在前面段落中，奥巴马认为莱特牧师的评论和后来的轩然大波的言论反映了美国种族问题的复杂。为了理解这些复杂性，我们应该知道种族关系问题的历史和发展过程以及美国所受的遭遇和不公平。因此，要了解这一现实，还须认清我们是如何走进今日这样的窘境。

1) Note how the idea is expressed: An impersonal structure is used here to achieve emphasis and conciseness. If "we" were used here, the structure would be clumsy.

2) reminder: a thing to help one remember something else

3) arrive at: to reach by development

4) how we arrive at this point: how the racial relations have developed to the current stage

2. As William Faulkner once wrote, "The past isn't dead and buried. In fact, it isn't even past." (Para. 27):

威廉·福克纳曾写道："过去并未死去也没有被埋葬。实际上，它根本就还没有过去。"

1) The idea is played on the change of the part of speech of the word "past." The first "past" is a noun meaning "what has happened." The second is an adjective, meaning "ended," "over."

2) The influence of what happened in previous times has not disappeared. Such influences can still be seen.

3. We do not…in this country. (Para. 27):

我们无须去复述这个国家种族歧视的历史。

recite: to tell in detail; to enumerate

4. … so many of the disparities … under the brutal legacy of slavery and Jim Crow. (Para. 27):

Paraphrase（英文释义）: The inequalities and differences you find in the African - American communities today came directly from blacks of an older generation who were the victims of racial discrimination. 今日非裔美国人群体中存在的众多不公正现象可直接追溯到奴隶制和"吉姆·克劳法"时期一代代谬种流传的不平等。

1) disparities: differences; inequalities

2) trace to: to go back (to something past)

3) the brutal legacy: a rhetorical device called transferred epithet – a legacy can't be brutal; what is brutal is the practices of slave owners, the slavery system

4) Jim Crow: traditional discrimination against or segregation of blacks, especially in the U.S

5. Segregated schools were, and are, inferior schools; …between today's black and white students, (Para. 28):

This is a one – sentence paragraph describing the existence of school segregation unconstitutional, and pointing out that inferior education in segregated schools is the cause of the poor performance of some black students. 实行种族隔离的学校过去是、如今仍是劣等学校。在布朗诉教育理事会案50年后的今天，我们还未真正整顿过这些学校。它们提供的劣等教育，无论是当年还是如今，都解释了为何今天的黑人学生和白人学生之间普遍存在成绩差距。

1) segregated schools: For a long time there existed in the United Stated schools for

white children and black children separately and the conditions in the two types of schools were very different.

2) In 1952, the Supreme Court under Chief Justice Earl Warren decided to hear a school case involving a suit by Reverend Oliver Brown against the school board in Topeka, Kansas. Because of the segregation system, Brown's daughter was forced to travel more than ten miles to school, even through her home was only five blocks from an all-white grade school. On May 17, 1954, the court read out the opinion, "We come then to the question presented: does segregation...deprive the children of the minority group of the educational opportunities? We believe that it does."

3) Pervasive: tending to widely exist

4) Achievement gap: performance disparity in study

6. Legalized discrimination...to bequeath to future generations. (Para. 29):

合法化的歧视——如常常通过暴力手段禁止黑人拥有财产、不向非裔美国企业主发放贷款、黑人家庭买房无法享受联邦住宅管理局抵押贷款,或将黑人排斥在工会、警队或消防队之外——意味着黑人家庭将无法积累起一定量的财富传之后代。

1) What is meant by "legalized discrimination"? The kind of discriminatory practices that are protected by law.

2) What legalized discrimination did the African Americans suffer? They were not allowed to have housing in some white areas; business loans or FHA (Federal Housing Administration) insured loans were denied on consideration of race, and unions and certain professions were not open to blacks.

3) could not amass any meaningful wealth: could not put aside or accumulate significant amounts of money or property (or enough money or property)

4) bequeath to future generations: to pass on to children or grandchildren

7. That history helps explain the wealth and income gap between blacks and whites... (Para. 29):

Paraphrase(英文释义): The existence of so many poor African Americans and the low pay they get compared with the whites is partly due to the existence of legalized discrimination. 这段历史解释了为什么黑人和白人之间存在财富和收入差距。

8. ...the concentrated pockets of poverty that persist...communities. (Para. 29):

如今众多城乡社区中一些地区的贫困痼疾。

This is also the reason you find people of extreme poverty crowded into small areas or slums, in cities and rural areas.

1) pocket: a small area of a specified type

2) persist: to continue to exist or prevail

9. A lack of economic opportunity...welfare policies for many years may have worsened. (Para. 30):

Paraphrase(英文释义):Black men not being able to find a good job and feeling ashamed of not being able to support a family, was one of the reasons for the breaking up of families. And the benefit for a single - parent family has made the situation even worse. 黑人男子缺少工作机会的现状，以及因不能支持家庭生活而产生的羞耻感和挫败感，加剧了黑人家庭所承受的冲击——而政府多年来的福利政策将该问题进一步恶化。

1) Once again the impersonal structure is used to lessen the pressure on black men. Obama did not mean to criticize these black men. He was only relating a fact.

2) Erode: to cause to deteriorate or vanish

3) Contributed to the erosion of black families: Note the way the idea is expressed, the use of "contribute" and "erosion" softens the bluntness of the statement ——helped to bring about the breaking up of black families.

4) How could welfare policies worsen the deterioration of relations in black families?

Maybe the welfare support of single - parent families makes a black man think if he deserts the family, the family without him could still live on, or even live better.

10. And the lack of basic services...that continues to haunt us. (Para. 30):

众多城市黑人社区面临着基础服务的匮乏——儿童乐园、巡警、定期垃圾回收以及强制建筑标准——所有这一切导致了我们无法摆脱的暴力、破坏和忽视的恶性循环。

1) walk the beat: to walk along a fixed route on a round of duty

2) building code: a set of rules or regulations concerning construction of house

3) blight: destruction frustrations of hope or ambition

4) a cycle of violence, blight and neglect: Indifference to the miserable conditions in urban black communities leads to frustration and loss of hope which in turn causes violence, one leading to the other and going round and round.

11. They came of age ...systematically constricted. (Para. 31):

他们于20世纪50年代末、60年代初的时候成年，当时这边土地仍旧实行种族隔离政策，他们能获得的机会在制度上受到了限制。

1) come of age: to reach the age when one has full legal rights; often used figuratively for any arrival at maturity, one's prime, etc.

2) constrict: to limit, restrict; to make smaller or narrower through

binding, squeezing or shrinking

3) They grew up and became mature in the late 1950s and early 1960s when racial segregation and racial discrimination were still strong and widespread, and opportunity was

mostly denied to black youth, they grew up in such an atmosphere which contributed to the forming of their views toward the country and the society.

12. What's remarkable…who would come after them. (Para. 31):

Obama here cleverly turned round his argument and gave the statement a positive note. The "not…but rather" structure succeeds in turning round the argument. 值得注意的并不是有多少人在种族歧视压力面前失败,而是有多少人克服了重重困难、在毫无出路的绝境中努力为像我这样的后来人开辟出一条道路来。

1) what was so remarkable about the situation? The remarkable thing was that many young black men and women, facing such strong segregation and discrimination, were not discouraged and disheartened. They struggled and surmounted difficulties and became successful. They walked a path out of the wilderness.

2) (the) odds: difficulties or conditions that make success unlikely

3) to make a way out of no way: Martin Luther King Jr. in the speech "Where Do We Go from Here" delivered on 16 August, 1967, at Atlanta, Georgia had this: "let us remember that there is…a power that is able to make a way out of no way out of no way and transform dark yesterdays into bright tomorrows." The concept is a biblical concept and Obama is using this concept to appeal to those who were listening.

13. But for all those…in one way or another, by discrimination. (Para. 32):

然而,纵使有一些美国黑人通过摸爬滚打最终小小成就了自己那份美国梦,可还有多少人无法实现自己的梦想——他们以这样或那样的方式被种族歧视这个敌人完全打败。

1) scratched and clawed: dug with one's nails and claws – fought really hard

2) Make it: to succeed in a particular activity

3) Out of those who worked or struggled very hard to climb the social ladder, many did not succeed. They were defeated in life's struggle, as a result of racial discrimination.

14. That legacy of defeat…without hope or prospects for the future.

(Para. 32): The fact of defeat and the cause of defeat made the younger generations feel they were doomed; no matter how hard they worked, they could not move ahead economically and socially. The fate of their elders was convincing enough. This could be seen in unemployed men and women on the street or criminals in prison. 现实是失败的阴影在后代的生活中继续延续——年轻的黑人男子和越来越多的青年女子,或闲立街角,或在狱中消磨着自己的意志,对未来不抱任何希望和憧憬。

1) Increasingly young women: more and more young black women adopted such an attitude toward life, toward society

2) Languish: to live under distressing conditions; to remain in a difficult or unpleasant

situation for a long time

3) Prospects: the possibility that something will happen, especially something good; the apparent chance for success

15. Even for those blacks who did make it…in fundamental way. (Para. 32):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Even for those blacks who were successful, they still viewed things through the lens of race and racism or determined their attitudes toward issues from the point of view of race and racism. 即使是那些成功实现了美国梦的黑人，他们的世界观依然从根本上被种族和种族歧视问题所主导。

16. But it does find voice…kitchen table. (Para. 32):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Views colored by race may come up at informal conversations at the barbershop where men may meet or over dinner among family members.

Find voice: to express 但在理发店里或茶余饭后，这种情感便找到了发泄的渠道。

17. At times…a politician's own failings. (Para. 32):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Sometimes, when a politician wants black votes or wants to use the issue of race to compensate for his defects, he would make use of such anger in order to benefit from it. 曾几何时，他们的这种愤怒被政客们加以利用，沿着种族界线来捞取选票，或用来掩盖政客自己的不足。

1) At times: occasionally; sometimes

2) Exploit: to use a situation so that you get benefit from it, even if it is wrong or unfair to do this

3) Make up for: to provide something good, so that something bad seems less important; to compensate for.

4) Failing: slight fault or defect; weakness

18. And occasionally it finds voice in the church on Sunday morning, in the pulpit and in the pews. (Para. 33):

Paraphrase(英文释义): And once in a while such sentiments are expressed in sermons and among church congregations, at Sunday morning black church services. 有时，我们还会在周日清晨的教堂礼拜上、讲坛上和做礼拜的人群中听到类似情感的宣泄。

In the pulpit and in the pews: rhetorical devices of metonymy and alliteration, "pulpit and pew" standing for the priest and the church congregations and the two words both start with "p."

19. The fact that …on Sunday morning. (Para. 33):

很多人在听到莱特牧师布道词中的愤怒之声后大感惊讶，其实这不过是提醒我们注意这样一个事实，那就是在美国人的生活中，种族隔离意识最为强烈的时刻便是周日早晨这段时间。

1) truism: a statement the truth of which is obvious or well known

2) Why is the statement an old truism? The place where the white and the black are most segregated is the church, when Christianity is supposed to say that all people are equal before God. Even when the churches are of the same denomination, black and white would go to separate churches.

20. That anger is not always productive...to bring about real change. (Para. 33):

1) How does Obama view such anger? Why does he think this anger is harmful to the movement for real change? He thinks such anger is not productive and prevents real change because it moves our attention away from concentrating on solving real problems, makes us unable to see our fault in the tense race relations and prevents the black community from forming a united front with the white people in bringing about real change. 这种发泄其实无济于事,反而常常将我们的注意力从解决实际问题上转移开来;它让我们一直未能正视我们自己对此境况应负的责任,并妨碍了非裔美国人群体组成一个能带来真正变革的联盟。

2) Distract: to draw (attention) away in another direction

3) Squarely: honestly, directly

4) Complicity: partnership in wrongdoing

5) Forge: to develop a successful relationship, especially in business or politics, to work hard to achieve something

21. But the anger is real...between the races. (Para. 33):

1) What is the wrong attitude toward black anger? According to Obama the wrong attitude is to think it will disappear sometime in the future without doing anything to solve the problem, or to criticize such anger, saying it is wrong, without understanding how it was formed. Empty wishing without action and blind condemnation are both wrong, because they will only make existing misunderstanding even stronger. 这种愤怒之情是实际存在的,也是强烈的;仅仅希望它自行消失,或在未认清其根源之前对其加以谴责,只会不断拉大种族间误解的鸿沟。

2) Wish away: to make something stop or disappear just by expressing a wish

3) Chasm: a very big difference that separates one person or group from another

22. Paragraphs 27 to 33:

Obama out lines the historical development of racial discrimination and the sufferings of the older generation. Then he pointed out that the anger it is shown is in black church services, in the sermons and in the response of the congregations. Obama is putting Wright's remarks in a broader picture – black experience, the black situation today and the hidden or suppressed anger. 奥巴马将莱特牧师的愤怒置身于广阔的黑人经历、黑人当今的处境

以及压抑的愤怒之情来考察黑人种族歧视的历史遭遇和发展,合情合理,容易引起公众共鸣。

23. In fact, a similar anger exists within segments of the white community. (Para. 34):

This statement serves as a transition, leading to the analysis of the anger among certain segments of white America. 作为过渡句,自然而然分析美国白人的隔离政策。事实上,类似的愤怒也存在于白人群体之中。

24. Most...by their race. (Para, 34):

Paraphrase(英文释义): A majority of white Americans of working class or middle class origin feel that their white skin has not brought them any benefit. The implication is that racial discrimination does not exist. 劳工阶层和中产阶级中的很多美国白人都觉得自己并没有因身为白人而获得特权。

25. Their experience is...they built it from scratch. (Para. 34):

他们的经历就是移民的经历——对他们而言,从未有人平白赠与过他们任何东西,他们靠的完全是白手起家。

1) Where do these white Americans come from? They are mainly immigrants or descendants of immigrants so they are viewing the issue from the experience of immigrants.

2) from scratch: from a point where nothing has been done, so you have to do everything yourself, 从零开始

3) they've built it from scratch: Note the use of "it" here; "it" does not refer to anything particular, maybe life, living in general. They succeed in establishing themselves in American society all through their own effort.

26. They've worked hard...after a lifetime of labor. (Para. 34):

Obama here mentions two cases: One is outsourcing by a corporation; the other is the sudden collapse of a corporation, making the loss of pensions or company stock in the hands of works worthless. These are all acute concern of workers and the middle class. This is also the position of CIO (Congress of Industrial Organizations) and independent trade unions and the mass the mass base for protectionism in trade. 一生勤奋耕耘的他们,常常眼见工作机会流向海外或一生辛苦劳碌后的养老金缩水。

dump: to get rid of in an abrupt, rough, or careless manner

27. They are anxious...at my expense. (Para. 34):

他们为未来焦虑不已,感到梦想也正悄然远离;在这个薪酬停滞、全球竞争的时代,所谓机会也成了一场零和博弈——你的成功必然以我的失败为代价。

1) anxious: uneasy in mind, worried

2) future: what will happen, what is going to be

3) slip away: to move quickly without attracting notice

4) zero sum game: a specific contest in which a gain for one must result in an equal loss for another or others

5) at my expense: with the loss borne by me

6) As a result white Americans are very much worried about their future, feeling that their American dream is coming to an end, feeling hopeless and helpless. So they have a hostile attitude toward those whom they consider their competitors.

28. So when they are told...resentment builds over time. (Pare. 34):

当他们得知自己的孩子必须坐着校车到外区上学;当他们听说非裔美国人在找工作或上大学时享受优待,原因是这些非裔美国人在历史上受过不公正的对待,而这种不公正却非现代白人之过;当他们得知自己对城区犯罪的忧虑有种族偏见之嫌,随着时间的推移,他们心中便产生了怨愤。

Busing, affirmative action and security are raised here. This is what many whites call reverse discrimination. They feel they are made responsible for slavery which had nothing to do with them, which they never practiced.

1) land: (informal) to get, win or secure

2) spot: (informal) position, situation, job

3) build: Compare the word in two sentences: They've built it from scratch and resentment builds over time. The first "built" means "to create or develop" and the second means "to increase in amount, force, etc."

4) resentment builds over time: A feeling of indignation from a sense of being harmed gradually grows in amount and intensity.

29. Like the anger...in polite company. (Para. 35):

与黑人的愤怒一样,这些怨恨一般不在有礼貌的交往中显露出来。

Polite company: people you should behave politely towards, people of a high social class. "Company" are people you are with.

30. But they have helped shape the political landscape for at least a generation. (Para. 35):

但它却塑造了延续至少一代人时间的美国政治形势。

By the end of the 1970s, liberalism had run its course and people felt that it could no longer solve domestic and foreign policy issues. People blamed this on affirmative action and on social welfare and they were worried about crime and refused to discuss racial inequality. People demanded change. This led to the election of Reagan and the dominance of conservatism for more than 25 years. This is the "political landscape" that Obama refers to.

1) shape: to influence the way a person, idea, or situation develops

2) political landscape: the main features of crime of the political situation

31. Political routinely exploited fears of crime for their own electoral ends. (Para. 35):

How could politicians link crime up with the blacks? Since the unemployment rate and school dropouts were higher among black youth and there were biased media reports about the crime rate among black youth, it would be easy for politicians to put the blame on blacks and appeal to white people with pent - up resentment.

政客们不断利用人们对犯罪活动的忧惧来捞取选票。

32. Talk show hosts…or reverse racism. (Para. 35):

脱口秀主持人和保守的时政评论员则一味地指责种族歧视一说有多么荒唐，同时认为关于种族不公和不平等问题的合理讨论只不过是政治正确或逆向歧视的表现。

1) talk show host：访谈节目主持人

2) bogus：not genuine; very careful imitation and always implies intent to deceive

3) unmask：to discover the real truth about somebody or something especially when it is bad; to discover the true nature of; to expense

4) political correctness：statements conforming or adhering to what is regarded as orthodox liberal opinion on matters of sexuality, race, etc, usually used disparagingly to connote dogmatism, excessive sensibility to minority causes, etc.

5) reverse racism：Here it means racism against the whites.

6) Talk show hosts and conservation commentators became famous through exposing so - called incidents of racism which were in fact not true. They said that reasonable discussions of unfair treatment of minorities were catering to excessive sensibility to minority causes or were racism against the whites.

33. Just as black anger often proved counterproductive… that favor the few over the many. (Para. 36):

In Paragraph 33, in talking about black anger, Obama says, "That anger is not always productive; indeed, all too often it distracts attention from solving real problems." But he also points out that if you handle it in a wrong way it would widen "the chasm of misunderstanding." Then Obama moves on to discuss white anger and points out the problem, "these white resentments distracted attention from the real culprits of the middle class squeeze." But he also says that if you handle it wrongly, it would block the path to understanding.

The argument is that black anger and white anger are real and powerful. If people fail to understand the cause of such anger and fail to handle this anger properly, misunderstanding will increase and this will play into the hands of selfish, biased politicians. 正如黑人宣泄愤怒却常常适得其反一样，白人的这些怨恨也让他们忽视了导致中产阶级困境的罪魁祸首——充斥着内幕交易、令人生疑的财务行为和追求短期利益贪婪行为的企业文化，被政治说客和特殊利益集团占领的华盛顿，还有偏向少数人利益的经济

政策。

counterproductive：bringing about effects or regarded as contrary those intended；having the opposite result to the one you intended

culprit：a person guilty of a crime or offense ；someone who is responsible for doing something bad or illegal，罪魁祸首

squeeze：a period or situation marked by scarcity，hardship，insecurity，etc.

corporate culture：企业文化

rife：abundant

lobbyist：a person acting for s special interest group，who tries to influence the introduction of or voting on legislation or the decisions of government administrators

According to Obama，what are the real culprits that put the middle class in a difficult situation? They are the wrong practices of big corporations，a government following the urge of special interests and an economic policy which favors the rich.

34. And yet…blocks the path to understanding. (Para. 36)：

Paraphrase(英文释义)：If you think such anger will disappear by good wishes，if you regard such anger as being racist without acknowledging that the concern behind the anger is justifiable，then misunderstanding will increase and the division between the whites and the blacks will grow. 然而，祈求白人的怨恨自行消失或给他们贴上受人误导或种族主义者的标签，而未认识到他们忧虑的理由——这同样也会扩大种族隔阂，阻碍种族间达成相互理解。

1) label：to classify as; to describe

2) misguide：to lead into error; to mislead

3) ground：to base (a claim，argument) on something specified

4) divide：a division

5) block：to create difficulty for progress; to obstruct

35. This is where we are right now. It's a racial stalemate we've been stuck in for years. (Para. 37)：

这就是我们目前的处境，一个交织着多年的种族僵局。

This is a summing – up of the racial Situation in the U. S. today. And this situation has lasted for many years. The anger of the blacks and the resentment of the whites are not groundless. Both groups have legitimate concerns. Yet their anger is directed toward the wrong targets，thus hampering the solution of the issues causing such anger. Neither side has come to see the problem. So a racial deadlock exists.

1) stalemate: any unresolved situation in which further action is impossible or useless; deadlock

2) stick: to become embedded and immovable

36. But I have asserted a firm conviction…a more perfect union. (Para. 38):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Although I was not so na? ve as to think the racial issue could be solved through one election, I did believe that if blacks and whites could work together they could move ahead to make the union more perfect. Obama was preparing for the following part: how they could move ahead. 但是，我已坚定地表达了我的不渝信念——它植根于我对上帝的信仰和对美国人民的信心——携起手来我们才能治愈种族问题的一些痼疾，事实上，若想在完善联邦的道路上继续走下去，我们已别无选择。

1) assert: to state positively with great confidence but with no objective proof

2) wound: any hurt or injury to tne feelings , honor, etc

3) that working together we can move beyond some of our old racial wounds: That if we can come together and unite, we will be ablr to make progress in healing some of the past injustices and get over them and deal with some of the pressing issues together.

37. For the African - American community…victims of our past. (Para. 39):

Paraphrase(英文释义): What should the African - American community do then?

According to Obama, they should face and handle bravely the legacy of racial injustices of the past while at the same time should feel wronged all the time. 对非裔美国人而言，这条道路意味着去坦然接受历史的包袱，而不要成为历史的受害者；还意味着要在美国生活的各个方面继续坚持实现全面公正。

1) embrace: to accept readily

2) burden: anything one has to bear or put up with as of sorrow, responsibility

3) victim: a person suffering from some act, condition, or circumstance

38. It means…they can write their own destiny. (Para. 39):

它意味着我们要对自己的生活负责——要求做父亲的尽更多的义务，花更多时间与孩子相处，给他们读书，教导他们在面对挑战和歧视时，绝不要屈服于绝境或愤世嫉俗，必须永远坚信自己可以书写自己的命运。

This paragraph consists of parallel structures: | " that path means …It means …But it also means …And it means…" Obama, in this paragraph, raises three things the African - American community should do. One is to insist that past wrongs should be corrected. The second is to link black grievnces with the demands of all Americans. The third is to improve themselves and behave in a more responsible way. 一系列的排比句式强调美国黑人社区需要急待解决的问题。

1) full measure of: all of something at its strongest, most powerful, etc.

2) glass ceiling: an unfair system that prevents some people, especially women, from reaching the most senior positions in a company or organization. There is a barrier but in-

visible.

3) take full responsibility for: to accept full obligation and accountability for one's behavior

4) succumb to despair or cynicism: to give way to the feeling that the situation is so bad that nothing can change it or to the belief that people care only about themselves and are not sincere or honest

5) they must always believe that they can write their own destiny:

They should have the conviction that in American they can chart their own course and achieve their goal.

39. Ironically...in Reverend Wright's sermons. (Para. 40):

具有讽刺意味的是,自立自助这个美国经典、保守主义的信条,也常常在莱特牧师的布道中体现出来。

1) What is the irony? The irony lies in the contrast between radical sermons and idea of self - help, a conservative notion.

2) self-help: things that you do to solve your own problems instead of depending on other people

40. It's that he spoke...bound to a tragic past. (Para. 41):

1) Obama thinks what is wrong with Wright is that he fails to see the that has taken place in the U. S., and the progress that has been made. To Wright, the society is static, nothing fundamental has changed and the country is still burdened by the past. Note the use of parallel structure: as if... as if...

2) static: not moving or progressing; inactive

3) irrevocably: unalterably

4) bound: closely connected or related

41. That is true genius of this nation. (Para. 41):

这才是这个国家的真正本质。

1) genius: a great natural ability

2) American is capable of change. This ability is a crucial factor in American progress.

42. ...for what we can and must achieve tomorrow. (Para. 41):

去成就我们将来有能力成就并且必须成就的事业。

Note the use of modal verbs: "can" denoting possibility and "must" denoting obligation.

43. Paragraph 42: In Paragraph 42, Obama points out to the white community that discrimination against African - Americans, and unjust practices, do exist should be addressed, But white people should realize that the measures that should be taken are not only for the blacks. They should be fpr all Americans. White people should see that black dream would

not come at the expense of the dreams of the white. 塑造一个更加完美的合众国意味着美国白人要承认困扰着非裔美国人的那些问题，种族歧视事件必须得到解决，不能仅仅停留在口头上，而要实际行动起来。

44. In the white community…must be addressed. (Para. 42):

对白人而言，塑造一个更加完美的合众国意味着要承认困扰着非裔美国人的那些问题并非他们自行臆造；种族歧视的流毒和当前发生的歧视事件——虽然不像以前那样明显——是真实存在的，而且必须得到解决。

1) ail: to be be the cause of pain or distress to; to trouble

2) less overt: not so open or apparent

3) address: to deal or cope with; to handle

45. …by providing this generation with ladders…previous generations. (Para. 42):

向这一代人提供更多前人所无法企及的发展机会。

by making it possible for the young black people today to move ahead, to climb the social ladder, to get out of poverty, which was impossible for their elders?

Ladder: a system that has different levels through which you can progress

46. In the end, then…do unto us. (Para. 43):

1) call for: to demand, require

2) we do unto others as we would have them do unto us: 己所不欲，勿施于人

3) keeper: a guardian or protector

47. Let us find…that spirit as well. (para. 43):

Paraphrase(英文释义): Let us find the common spirit we all share and let our policies show such spirit. 让我们寻找彼此间的共同利益，并将该精神贯彻到我们的政治生活中去。

48. paragraph 43: Paragraph43 is a summing - up paragraph. From paragraph 39 to 42 Obama analyses what was wrong with Wright and what the black community and the white community should do to solve the race issue. Then in Paragraph43 Obama sums up by stating that they should find the common spirit they share and the government's policies must be on such spirit. Then he moves on to point out there were two options.

49. For we have a choice in this country…(para. 44):

Paraphrase(英文释义): One of the options is to follow a campaign approach that breeds division, and conflict and cynicism. 我们国家总是面临着选择。

Breed: to be the source of ; to produce

50. We can tackle race only as spectacle…for the nightly news. (para. 44)

我们可以将种族问题处理成一场如辛普森案那样的闹剧——或在悲剧发生后再来亡羊补牢，正如卡特里娜飓风来袭之后——又或者使之成为夜间新闻的谈资。

1) tackle: to undertake to do or solve (something difficult)

2) spectacle: a public show or exhibition on a grand scale

3) fodder: basic material for something

4) Nightly news: 晚间新闻

5) We can handle the race issue by making it a grand show as in the trial of the famous black football player O. J. Simpson, or when a tragedy reveals the misery of the black community as the situation of the black community in New Orleans after the city was hit by Hurricane Katrina, or simply as material for the nightly news.

51. We can play...his most offensive words. (Para. 44):

我们可以在每个频道、每天都播放莱特牧师的布道,从此一直纠缠于他所讲的字字句句直至选举结束,使此次竞选活动只存在唯一一个话题,即美国人是否认为我对莱特极具冒犯性的言论表示认同或支持。

Here Obama is actually criticizing the Republic strstegy of linking Obama with Reverend Wright's offensive remarks, of insinuating that Obama had close relations with Wright and therefore might share Wright's views. In this case, it would be dangerous to elect Obama.

52. We can pounce on...regardless of his policies. (Para. 44):

我们可以对希拉里的某个支持者的失态大做文章,并由此指责她在打种族牌。

1) pounce: to quick jump on or hold someone or something with a view to getting some advantage.

2) gaffe: an embarrassing mistake that you make in public, especially one that offends or upsets someone.

3) we can pounce...the race card: We can jump on some remarks made by some Hillary supporters against me and use this to show that Hillary also tries to appeal to whites to defeat me in the Democratic campaign.

4) we can speculate...regardless of his policies: We can also make guess that white people would support John McCain, not because they support his policy but because McCain is white and I an black.

53. We can do that. (Para. 45):

我们可以这么做。

This is a one sentence paragraph and a short sentence paragraph. The purpose is a summing – up for emphasis.

1) What can we do? We can use race as a distraction or a cause of division, for election purpose. We can use the White case and play on it as if there were no other issue pressing for America to solve.

2) What will be the result, then, if we do this? This is the question implied and the answer is given in Paragraph 46.

54. That is one option. Or, at this moment, in this elcetion..." Not this time." (Para. 47):

当然，那只是我们的一个选项。又或者，我们可以在此时此刻的选举中走到一起来，向世人宣告“这次再也不能这样了”。

There is another option, that is, now and here, the American people, black and white, Asian and Hiapanic and Native American, unite and reject the politics that produces division and conflict. The use of "Not this time" serves two purposes. One is an answer to the first option: rejection of the first option and introduction of the second. The other is an introduction to a parallel structure beginning with "this time", showing what we can and should do.

55. This time...and Native American children. (Para. 47):

这一次，我们要谈谈每况愈下的学校，它们正在吞噬各族孩子的未来。

Obama is very careful in mentioning the children. He lists five groups: white, black, Asian, Hispanic and Native American. He wants to include all American children.

56. This time we want to reject the cynicism...in a 21st century economy. (Para. 47):

这一次，我们要摒弃那种厌世嘲讽的态度，抛却那些认为这些孩子不可教、那些非我族裔的孩子是别人的问题的想法。美国的孩子们不应受到如此冷遇，他们是我们的孩子，我们不能让他们在 21 世纪的竞争中落伍。

Obama here refutes two erroneous conceptions. One is the racist conception that children of certain minority groups are intellectually inferior and that is the cause of their high dropout rate. The other is that immigrant children are not one of "us", they are different and should be treated differently. These are arguments supporting racial discrimination. But Obama is criticizing such arguments in a tactful way. He stresses the children of American are not "those kids", they are "our kids". In this way, under the umbrella of "children of America", Obama brings everyone together.

57. Not this time. (Para. 47):

这一次，再不能这样。

With these words, Obama ends this paragraph. It echoes what he says at the beginning of this paragraph and leads to "this time" in the next paragraph. It serves as an emphatic ending and a smooth transition.

58. This time we want to talk about...if we do it together. (Para. 48):

这一次，我们要谈谈拥挤在急诊室里的白人、黑人和拉美裔人，他们没有医疗保险，仅凭自己的力量也无法与华盛顿特殊利益集团抗衡。但如若我们同心协力，他们便能与之好好较量一番。

Obama is refferring to health care here and implies that the reform of the health care system is an urgent issue. After his election Obama put health care reform at the top of his agenda and succeeded in getting Congress to pass a law on health care. Athough there is disagreement o this, it is an achievement many American presidents failed to get.

1) on their own: without any help

2) take on: to fight or compete against someone

3) special interest in Washington: referring to the insurance companies, the pharmaceutical industry and other interests which oppose health care reform.

59. This time…every walk of life. (para. 49):

这一次,我们要谈谈破败的工厂,它们曾一度让各种族的劳动者过上了体面的生活;还有那些抵押待售的房屋,曾几何时,它们属于来自各宗教、各地区和各行各业的美国民众。

Obama is talking about unemployment and foreclosure of mortgaged homes.

Shuttered: closed with shutters, here referring to close – down factories

60. This time…for nothing more than a profit. (Para. 49):

我们要谈谈这样一个事实,那就是,真正的问题不是那些与你相貌不同的人可能抢走你的饭碗,而是你所工作的公司把工作机会转移到海外,而其目的不过是追求利润而已。

Obama says that unemployment is not caused by your job being taken by one of another race or ethnicity. It is the result of outsourcing of corporation in the United States. Obama probably knew this. But this is how some of the American workers viewed the issue. This is the argument of American trade unions. In order to please this setion of the voters, Obama put it this way. This is election politics. But such view affects American trade policy.

61. This time…the benefits that they have earned. (Para. 50):

我们要谈谈那些肤色不同、信仰各异的男女,他们在同一面令人骄傲的旗帜下,一起服役,一起战斗,一起流血。我们要谈谈怎样才能让他们从一场本不该批准和发动的战争中回家,我们还想谈谈怎样通过关爱他们和他们的家人,以及给予他们应得的待遇,来体现我们的爱国主义。

Obama is discussing the Iraq War here. He considers that the war should never soldiers in Iraq and discussing how to bring them home and care for them and their families.

On August 31, 2010, President Obama announced " the American combat mission in Iraq has ended. " In the speech he said, " The Americans who have served in Iraq completed every mission they were given. They defeated a regine that had terrorized its people. Together with Iraq and our coalition partners who made huge sacrifices of their own, our troops fought block by block to help Iraq seize the chance for a better future… Because of our

troops and civilians-and because of the resilience of the Iraqi people-Iraq has the opportunity to embrace a new destiny, even though many challenges remain." American combat troops left Iraq. Obama carried out his promise in the election. But the idea that the war should never have been authorized and waged was no longer there.

62. I would not be running…for this country. (Para. 51):

若非完全相信这是大多数美国人对这个国家发出的心声，我便不会参加此次总统竞选。

Obama puts forward two points here. One is that he believes the people wanted "change" – the theme of his campaign. The other is that his running for President was for the purpose of change so he was representing the interests of the people. This puts him on a moral high ground.

63. This union…it can always be perfected. (Para. 51):

这个联邦可能永远无法成就完美，但多少年来的经验却证明了它总能获得改善。

The idea is organized around the different grammar of the word "perfect", the noun and the web. This is a way of putting across the idea in a more powerful way.

This union may not become faultless, without defect, but generations of Americans have proved that it can be improved and made better and better.

64. And today…history in this election. (Para. 51):

如今，每当我对这种可能性表示怀疑或不屑的时候，年轻的一代人给了我最多的希望——他们的态度、信念和对变革的包容已经在这次选举中创造了历史。

The young people who were active in Obama's campaign team encouraged and inspired Obama. These young activists played an important role in mobilizing people, in reaching out to wavering voters through door – to door calls, through e – mail, through blogs. This was a breakthrough and the key players were young people.

65. Paragraph 56:

阿什利告诉参加讨论的每一个人，她之所以加入我们的助选活动，是因为她能通过这种方式来为这个国家许许多多想要并需要帮父母做点事情的孩子们提供帮助。

Ashley said she helped organize Obama's campaign in Florence, South Carolina because she wanted to help millions of children who wanted to help their parents to fight against injustice, to fight for health care reform which Obama promised to do if he were elected.

66. Paragraph 57:

阿什利本可以做出一个不同的选择。也许有人曾不断告诉她，她母亲的问题源于那些靠福利维生、懒惰而不愿劳作的黑人，或是非法入境的拉美裔人。但阿什利并没有听信这些，而是选择与大家联合起来，与不公正现象做斗争。

The reason why Obama thinks Ashley's decision was significant: Obama thought Ashley's decision was significant, because Ashley is a white girl who does not follow the views of those who put the blame on ethnic minorities. Obama praises her for choosing to seek out allies in her fight against justice.

67. He simply says to everyone in the room, "I am here because of Ashley." (Para. 58):

他只是告诉在场的每一个人:"我来这儿是因为阿什利。"

The old man meant he was there to show support for the work of a young white girl in a mostly African – American community. He wanted to make her presence a sigh of racial unity.

68. Paragraph 58 to 60: At the end of the Paragraph 58, Obama brings up racial unity. In Paragraph 59 he further points out that this recognition of common goals and common stakes might not bring about change but it is the starting point. Then in the last paragraph Obama brings this idea of starting point back to the signing of the constitution to show that this is "where the perfection begins." The ending echoes the title and the beginning, making a perfect completion. 奥巴马在演讲结束再次提出种族统一问题,只有认识到共同的目标和共同的风险后,才能带来改善。这是一个新的起点,是"塑造一个更加完善的联邦开始",首尾呼应,一气呵成。

Ⅳ. 参考译文

塑造一个更加完美的合众国

(第二部分)

2008年3月18日,宾夕法尼亚州费城 奥巴马

要了解这一现实,还须认清我们是如何走进今日这样的窘境之中的。威廉·福克纳曾写道:"过去并未死去也没有被埋葬。实际上,它根本就还没有过去。"我们无须去复述这个国家种族歧视的历史,但我们必须提醒自己,今日非裔美国人群体中存在的众多不公正现象可直接追溯到奴隶制和"吉姆·克劳法"时期一代代谬种流传的不平等。

实行种族隔离的学校过去是、如今仍是劣等学校。在布朗诉教育理事会案50年后的今天,我们还未真正整顿过这些学校。它们提供的劣等教育,无论是当年还是如今,都解释了为何今天的黑人学生和白人学生之间普遍存在成绩差距。

合法化的歧视——如常常通过暴力手段禁止黑人拥有财产、不向非裔美国企业主发放贷款、黑人家庭买房无法享受联邦住宅管理局抵押贷款,或将黑人排斥在工会、警队或消防队之外——意味着黑人家庭将无法积累起一定量的财富传之后代。这段历史解释了为什么黑人和白人之间存在财富和收入差距,以及如今众多城乡社区中一些地区的贫困痼疾。

黑人男子缺少工作机会的现状，以及因不能支持家庭生活而产生的羞耻感和挫败感，加剧了黑人家庭所承受的冲击——而政府多年来的福利政策将该问题进一步恶化。众多城市黑人社区面临着基础服务的匮乏——儿童乐园、巡警、定期垃圾回收以及强制建筑标准——所有这一切导致了我们无法摆脱的暴力、破坏和忽视的恶性循环。

莱特牧师和他同时的非裔美国人正是在这样的环境中长大的。他们于20世纪50年代末、60年代初的时候成年，当时这边土地仍旧实行种族隔离政策，他们能获得的机会在制度上受到了限制。然而，值得注意的并不是有多少人在种族歧视压力面前失败，而是有多少人克服了重重困难、在毫无出路的绝境中努力为像我这样的后来人开辟出一条道路来。

然而，纵使有一些美国黑人通过摸爬滚打最终小小成就了自己那份美国梦，可还有多少人无法实现自己的梦想——他们以这样或那样的方式被种族歧视这个敌人完全打败。失败的阴影在后代的生活中继续延续——年轻的黑人男子和越来越多的青年女子，或闲立街角，或在狱中消磨着自己的意志，对未来不抱任何希望和憧憬。即使是那些成功实现了美国梦的黑人，他们的世界观依然从根本上被种族和种族歧视问题所主导。对莱特牧师那一代黑人男女而言，屈辱、怀疑和恐惧的记忆并未从他们脑海中消散，而那段岁月里的愤怒和辛酸也仍旧难以忘却。他们也许不会在公开场合表达这种愤怒，也不会在白人同事或白人朋友面前宣泄。但在理发店里或茶余饭后，这种情感便找到了发泄的渠道。曾几何时，他们的这种愤怒被政客们加以利用，沿着种族界线来捞取选票，或用来掩盖政客自己的不足。

有时，我们还会在周日清晨的教堂礼拜上、讲坛上和做礼拜的人群中听到类似情感的宣泄。很多人在听到莱特牧师布道辞中的愤怒之声后大感惊讶，其实这不过是提醒我们注意这样一个事实，那就是在美国人的生活中，种族隔离意识最为强烈的时刻便是周日早晨这段时间。这种发泄其实无济于事，反而常常将我们的注意力从解决实际问题上转移开来；它让我们一直未能正视我们自己对此境况应负的责任，并妨碍了非裔美国人群体组成一个能带来真正变革的联盟。但是，这种愤怒之情是实际存在的，也是强烈的；仅仅希望它自行消失，或在未认清其根源之前对其加以谴责，只会不断拉大种族间误解的鸿沟。

事实上，类似的愤怒也存在于白人群体之中。劳工阶层和中产阶级中的很多美国白人都觉得自己并没有因身为白人而获得特权。他们的经历就是移民的经历——对他们而言，从未有人平白赠与过他们任何东西，他们靠的完全是白手起家。一生勤奋耕耘的他们，常常眼见工作机会流向海外或一生辛苦劳碌后的养老金缩水。他们为未来焦虑不已，感到梦想也正悄然远离；在这个薪酬停滞、全球竞争的时代，所谓机会也成了一场零和博弈——你的成功必然以我的失败为代价。所以，当他们得知自己的孩子必须坐着校车到外区上学；当他们听说非裔美国人在找工作或上大学时享

受优待，原因是这些非裔美国人在历史上受过不公正的对待，而这种不公正却非现代白人之过；当他们得知自己对城区犯罪的忧虑有种族偏见之嫌，随着时间的推移，他们心中便产生了怨愤。

与黑人的愤怒一样，这些怨恨一般不在有礼貌的交往中显露出来，但它却塑造了延续至少一代人时间的美国政治形势。对福利政策和平权措施的不满催生出了"里根联盟"。政客们不断利用人们对犯罪活动的忧惧来捞取选票。脱口秀主持人和保守的时政评论员则一味地指责种族歧视一说有多么荒唐，同时认为关于种族不公和不平等问题的合理讨论只不过是政治正确或逆向歧视的表现。

正如黑人宣泄愤怒却常常适得其反一样，白人的这些怨恨也让他们忽视了导致中产阶级困境的罪魁祸首——充斥着内幕交易、令人生疑的财务行为和追求短期利益贪婪行为的企业文化，被政治说客和特殊利益集团占领的华盛顿，还有偏向少数人利益的经济政策。然而，祈求白人的怨恨自行消失或给他们贴上受人误导或种族主义者的标签，而未认识到他们忧虑的理由——这同样也会扩大种族隔阂，阻碍种族间达成相互理解。

这就是我们目前的处境，一个胶着多年的种族僵局。与一些批评我的人——无论黑人还是白人——所持观点相反的是，我从未如此天真地认为，因为一次选举或因为一个候选人——尤其是像我这样一个并不完美的候选人，我们就能使种族问题迎刃而解。

但是，我已坚定地表达了我的不渝信念——它植根于我对上帝的信仰和对美国人民的信心——携起手来我们才能治愈种族问题的一些痼疾，事实上，若想在完善联邦的道路上继续走下去，我们已别无选择。

对非裔美国人而言，这条道路意味着去坦然接受历史的包袱，而不要成为历史的受害者；还意味着要在美国生活的各个方面继续坚持实现全面公正。但这同样也意味着要将我们的委屈与不满（如要求更好的医疗卫生条件、更好的教育、更好的工作）与全体美国人——欲努力打破职场限制的白人妇女、失业的白人男子和为养家糊口而打拼的移民——更大的追求结合在一起；意味着我们要对自己的生活负责——要求做父亲的尽更多的义务，花更多时间与孩子相处，给他们读书，教导他们在面对挑战和歧视时，绝不要屈服于绝境或愤世嫉俗，必须永远坚信自己可以书写自己的命运。

具有讽刺意味的是，自立自助这个美国经典、保守主义的信条，也常常在莱特牧师的布道中体现出来。但我的老牧师往往忽略了一点，自立自助必须建立在这样一个信念之上，那就是相信社会可以变革。

莱特牧师布道中最深层次的错误，不是他指出了社会上的种族歧视问题，而是在他看来，我们这个社会是停滞不前的，没有取得过任何进步；这个国家——一个能够让其教众之一竞选这片土地上的最高公职，并建立一个由白人和黑人、拉美裔人和亚

裔人以及贫富老幼组成的联邦国家——注定无法走出悲剧的过去。但我们所知道并目睹的是，美国可以改变。这才是这个国家的真正本质。我们已经取得的成就赋予我们希望——以及敢于希望的勇气——去成就我们将来有能力成就并且必须成就的事业。

对白人而言，塑造一个更加完美的合众国意味着要承认困扰着非裔美国人的那些问题并非他们自行臆造；种族歧视的流毒和当前发生的歧视事件——虽然不像以前那样明显——是真实存在的，而且必须得到解决。要解决它不能仅仅停留在口头上，而要实际行动起来——加大对学校和社区的投入；严格执行民权法律，确保刑事司法体系的公正；向这一代人提供更多前人所无法企及的发展机会。要让所有美国人都意识到，你的成功并不一定要建立在我的失败之上；对健康、福利以及各种族儿童教育问题上做出的投资，最终都将促进美国的繁荣昌盛。

最终我们所呼吁的，正是世界上所有伟大宗教要求的那样——你们愿意别人怎样对待你们，你们也要怎样对待别人。《圣经》教导我们要成为兄弟的守护者，那就让我们也成为姐妹的守护者。让我们寻找彼此间的共同利益，并将该精神贯彻到我们的政治生活中去。

我们国家总是面临着选择。我们可以接受一种滋长分裂、冲突和愤世嫉俗态度的政治。我们可以将种族问题处理成一场如辛普森案那样的闹剧——或在悲剧发生后再来亡羊补牢，正如卡特里娜飓风来袭之后——又或者使之成为夜间新闻的谈资。我们可以在每个频道、每天都播放莱特牧师的布道，从此一直纠缠于他所讲的字字句句直至选举结束，使此次竞选活动只存在唯一一个话题，即美国人是否认为我对莱特极具冒犯性的言论表示认同或支持。我们可以对希拉里的某个支持者的失态大做文章，并由此指责她在打种族牌。或者，我们还可以猜测是不是全体白人男性选民都会不顾其具体政策而在大选中将票投给约翰·麦凯恩。

我们可以这么做。

倘若我们这么做了，我可以告诉你，下次选举中，我们又会开始讨论一些旁枝末节、无关紧要的问题，如此一而再、再而三，无穷无尽，而一切都得不到改变。

当然，那只是我们的一个选项。又或者，我们可以在此时此刻的选举中走到一起来，向世人宣告"这次再也不能这样了"。这一次，我们要谈谈每况愈下的学校，它们正在吞噬各族孩子的未来。这一次，我们要摒弃那种厌世嘲讽的态度，抛却那些认为这些孩子不可教、那些非我族裔的孩子是别人的问题的想法。美国的孩子们不应受到如此冷遇，他们是我们的孩子，我们不能让他们在21世纪的竞争中落伍。这一次，再不能这样。

这一次，我们要谈谈拥挤在急诊室里的白人、黑人和拉美裔人，他们没有医疗保险，仅凭自己的力量也无法与华盛顿特殊利益集团抗衡。但如若我们同心协力，他们便能与之好好较量一番。

这一次,我们要谈谈破败的工厂,它们曾一度让各种族的劳动者过上了体面的生活;还有那些抵押待售的房屋,曾几何时,它们属于来自各宗教、各地区和各行各业的美国民众。这一次,我们要谈谈这样一个事实,那就是,真正的问题不是那些与你相貌不同的人可能抢走你的饭碗,而是你所工作的公司把工作机会转移到海外,而其目的不过是追求利润而已。

这一次,我们要谈谈那些肤色不同、信仰各异的男女,他们在同一面令人骄傲的旗帜下,一起服役,一起战斗,一起流血。我们要谈谈怎样才能让他们从一场本不该批准和发动的战争中回家,我们还想谈谈怎样通过关爱他们和他们的家人,以及给予他们应得的待遇,来体现我们的爱国主义。

若非完全相信这是大多数美国人对这个国家发出的心声,我便不会参加此次总统竞选。这个联邦可能永远无法成就完美,但多少年来的经验却证明了它总能获得改善。如今,每当我对这种可能性表示怀疑或不屑的时候,年轻的一代人给了我最多的希望——他们的态度、信念和对变革的包容已经在这次选举中创造了历史。

今天,我想给大家带来一个特别的故事——在马丁·路德·金博士诞辰那天,我有幸在其生前主持的亚特兰大埃比尼泽浸礼会教堂讲过这个故事。

有这样一位23岁的年轻白人女士,名叫阿什利·拜亚,她负责组织我们在南卡罗来纳州弗洛伦斯市的竞选活动。从竞选一开始,她便一直致力于将一个非裔美国人为主的社区组织起来。一天,她参加了一个圆桌讨论会,每一位与会者都轮流讲述了他们各自的经历以及他们到这里(参加助选)的原因。

阿什利说,她9岁那年,妈妈患上了癌症,因此很多天没能上班,结果被雇主开除,医疗保险也就此化为泡影。她们一家只能申请破产,而正是在这个时候,阿什利决定要帮自己的妈妈做些事情。

她知道全家在食物方面开销最大,于是阿什利让妈妈相信,她真正喜欢吃的、最想吃的就是芥末泡菜三明治,因为这样吃最便宜。

阿什利就这么吃了一年,直至妈妈身体见好。她告诉参加讨论的每一个人,她之所以加入我们的助选活动,是因为她能通过这种方式来为这个国家许许多多想要并需要帮父母做点事情的孩子们提供帮助。

阿什利本可以做出一个不同的选择。也许有人曾不断告诉她,她母亲的问题源于那些靠福利维生、懒惰而不愿劳作的黑人,或是非法入境的拉美裔人。但阿什利并没有听信这些,而是选择与大家联合起来,与不公正现象做斗争。

阿什利讲完了她的故事之后,又挨个儿问房间里每一个人支持竞选的原因。大家都有不同的故事和理由,很多人都谈到了具体的事情。最后,轮到了一位黑人老者,他一直默默坐在一旁,没有什么言语。阿什利问他为什么来这儿,他没有讲述什么具体的故事,没有说到医保或经济方面的原因,没谈起教育或战争问题,也不是因为巴拉克·奥巴马。他只是告诉在场的每一个人:“我来这儿是因为阿什利。”

"我来这儿是因为阿什利。"单就这句话而言，这个年轻白人姑娘和一个年长的黑人男子之间那一刻达成的认同还无法改变什么。它还不足以为病弱者解决医保问题，为失业者找到工作，或为孩子们提供教育机会。

但它却是我们的新起点，是我们这个联邦日益强大的起点。221 年前，一群爱国志士在费城签署了那份宣言。而正如一代又一代美国人在这 221 年的历程中已经意识到的那样：这，就是走向完善的起点。

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示：**参见"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. **问答**

A. 课文内容问答：

1. A lack of economic opportunity among black men, and the shame and frustration that came from not being able to provide for one's family, contributed to the erosion of black families. The lack of basic services in so many urban black neighborhoods – parks for kids to play in, police walking the beat, regular garbage pick – up and building code enforcement – all helped create a cycle of violence, blight and neglect that continue to haunt them.

2. For all those who scratched and clawed their way to get a piece of the American Dream, there were many who didn't make it-those who were ultimately defeated, in one way or another, by discrimination. That legacy of defeat was passed on to future generations – those young men and increasingly young women who we see standing on street corners or languishing in our prisons, without hope or prospects for the future.

3. NO. That anger may not get expressed in public, in front of white co – workers or white friends. But it does find voice in the barbershop or around the kitchen table.

4. Most working – and middle – class white Americans don't feel that they have been particularly privileged by their race. Their experience is the immigrant experience – as far as they're concerned, no one's handed them anything, they've built it from scratch. They've worked hard all their lives, many times only to see their jobs shipped overseas or their pension dumped after a lifetime of labor. They are anxious about their futures, and feel their dreams slipping away; in an era of stagnant wages and global competition, opportunity comes to be seen as a zero sum game, in which your dreams come at my expense. So when they are told to bus their children to a school across town; when they hear that an African American is getting an advantage in landing a good job or a spot in a good college because of an injustice that they themselves never committed; when they're told that their fears about

crime in urban neighborhoods are somehow prejudiced, resentment builds over time.

5. A game is that your dreams come at my expense. In game theory, zero – sum describes a situation in which a participant's gain or loss is exactly balanced by the losses or gains of the other participant(s). It is so named because when the total gains of the participants are added up, and the total losses are subtracted, they will sum to zero. Chess and Go are examples of a zero – sum game: it is impossible for both players to win. Zero – sum can be thought of more generally as constant sum where the benefits and losses to all players sum to the same value. Cutting a cake is zero – or constant – sum because taking a larger piece reduces the amount of cake available for others. In contrast, non – zero – sum describes a situation in which the interacting parties' aggregate gains and losses is either less than or more than zero. It is the opposite of win-win game.

6. A corporate culture rife with inside dealing, questionable accounting practices, and short – term greed; a Washington dominated by lobbyists and special interests; economic policies that favor the few over the many.

7. YES. He has never been so naive as to believe that they can get beyond their racial divisions in a single election cycle, or with a single candidacy – particularly a candidacy as imperfect as his own. But He has asserted a firm conviction a conviction rooted in his faith in God and his faith in the American people that working together they can move beyond some of their old racial wounds, and that in fact they have no choice if they are to continue on the path of a more perfect union.

8. (Education) The crumbling schools that are stealing the future of black children and white children and Asian children and Hispanic children and Native American children; (Medical treatment, Welfare) how the lines in the Emergency Room are filled with whites and blacks and Hispanics who do not have health care, who don't have the power on their own to overcome the special interests in Washington; (House property, Job) the shuttered mills that once provided a decent life for men and women of every race, and the homes for sale that once belonged to Americans from every religion, every region, every walk of life; the corporation you work for will ship it overseas for nothing more than a profit; (War) how to bring the men and women of every color and creed home from a war that never should've been authorized and never should've been waged. Solve these problems.

9. He firmly opposes it. In Paragraph 50, he said the war never should have been authorized and never should have been waged.

B. 课文欣赏问题:

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. In order to understand the complexities of race we need to know the history and the development of racial relations, the sufferings and justice the blacks were subjected to.

2. The influence of what happened in previous time has not disappear. Such influences can still be seen.

3. Out of those who worked or struggled very hard to climb the social ladder, many did not succeed. They were defeated in life' struggle, as a result of racial discrimination

4. Views colored by race may come up at informal conversation at the barbershop (or barbershops) where men meet , or even dinner among family members

5. And once in a while such sentiments are expressed in sermons and among church congregations

6. As a result, which Americans are very much worried about their future, feeling that their American dream is coming to an end, feeling hopeless and helpless. So they have a hostile attitude toward those whom they consider their competitors.

7. Talk show hosts and conservative commentators became famous through exposing so-called unreal incidents of racism and labeled reasonable discussion of unfair treatment of minorities as catering to excessive sensibility to minority causes or as racism against the whites.

8. The anger of the blacks and the resentment of the whites are not groundless. Both groups have legitimate concerns. Yet their anger is directed toward the wrong targets, thus hampering the solution of the issues which cause the anger. Neither side has come to see the problem. So a racial deadlock exists.

9. The blacks community should face and handle bravely the legacy of racial injustice of the past while at the same time should not feel they are being wronged all the time.

10. For the whites, they should see clearly that the wrong done to the blacks in the past is a fact and subtle discrimination still exists today and should be solved properly

11. We can jump on some remarks made by some Hillary supporters against me and use this to show that Hillary also appeals to whites to defeat me in the Democratic campaign or predict that white people would support John McCain, not because of his policy but because of his skin color

12. Or , now and here, the American people , black and white, Asian and Hispanic and Native American, can unite and reject the politics that produce division and conflict

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. Jim Crow: in the U. S. unfair treatment of blacks people, especially in the past by the

use of laws that prevented them from going to the same schools and public place as white people

2. pocket:a small area of a specific type

3. odds:difficulties or conditions that make success unlikely

4. squarely:honestly,directly

5. dump:to get rid of in an abrupt,rough or careless manner

6. company:people you are with

7. landscape:the main features of a situation

8. squeeze:a period or situation marked by scarcity,hardship,insecurity,etc.

9. glass ceiling: an unfair system that prevents some people, especially women, from reaching the most senior positions in a company or organization; the invisible barriers to promotion

10. keeper:guardian or protector

11. pounce:to quickly jump on or hold someone or something to get some advantage

12. let go:to officially tell somebody that he/she can no longer work at a job

B.

1. erosion:gradual destruction

2. scratched and clawed:dug with one's nails and claws; struggled hard

3. In the pulpit and in the pews:the paster and church congregations

4. chasm:a very big difference that separate one person or group from another

5. shipped:moved (out of the country)

6. culprit:a person guilty of a crime or offense

7. wound:any hurt or injury to the feelings,honor,etc.

8. ladder:a system that has different levels through which you can progress

9. fodder:basic materials for something

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. These kids who have come of age in poverty treasure every opportunity they get.

2. After overcoming the odds,they succeeded in building a primary school in a remote village in the hills.

3. Although the earthquake shock was over,she was still haunted by fear.

4. More and more people have come to realize that economic development should not be promoted at the expense of environment.

5. With enthusiasm and effort,these young people have build a business from scratch.

6. Only a few have realized their dreams and the majority failed to make it.

7. The production of meat contributes carbon emissions.

8. The relations between man and nature have found expression in many early literary works.

B. 英译汉：

1. 法律上认可的歧视——譬如说禁止黑人拥有房产，有时甚至采取暴力手段达到此目的，或是不给非裔美国人的企业主贷款，不让黑人购房者取得联邦房屋部门的抵押贷款保险，把黑人排除在工会、警察队伍或者消防部门之外——这意味着黑人家庭难以积累家产以传给后代。

2. 无数的黑人社区缺乏基本服务设施——没有公园让孩子们玩，没有警察巡逻，没有定期的垃圾收集，不执行建筑规范——所有这些造成了暴力、挫折和无人监管的不断循环，至今仍让我们提心吊胆。

3. 黑人的愤怒常常产生不了什么作用，与此同时，这些白人的忿恨也把注意力从挤压中产阶级的真正罪魁祸首身上移开——真正的罪人是充满交易的企业文化，很成问题的会计惯例，只顾眼前的贪婪心态，被院外集团和特殊利益集团把持的政府，以及关注少数而不顾多数人的经济政策。

4. 与某些批评我的人说的相反，不管这些批评者是黑人还是白人，我从来没有天真到认为单凭一个选举周期，或者一个候选人，特别是像我这样不完美的候选人，就能让我们超越种族分歧的问题。

5. 但是我强调了一个坚定的信念——一个植根于我对上帝的信仰和对美国人信任的信念——如果我们共同努力，就能摆脱某些过去的种族伤痕。事实上，如果我们要沿着建设一个更完善的联邦这条路继续走下去，我们别无选择。

6. 在白人社区，建设更完善的联邦之路就是要承认困扰非裔美国人社区的问题并不是黑人头脑中想象出来的，而是事实存在在；种族歧视的后遗症以及当今的歧视事件，虽然没有过去那样明目张胆，却是真实存在且必须解决的。

7. 说到底，我们所需要的，正是世界上各大宗教所要求的，不多也不少——己所不欲，勿施于人。

8. 联邦可能不是十全十美，但一代代人的努力表明可以使其不断完善。

C. 段落翻译：

第 39 段

对于非裔美国人群体来说，这条路意味着我们必须面对过去但又不要背上受害者的心态；意味着我们要继续坚持美国生活的各方面都体现最大程度的公正；也意味着把我们的各种不满——争取更完善的医疗保险、更优质的学校、更好的工作——与全体美国人的更大的期盼——与为打破天花板效应而斗争的白人妇女，失业的白人

男人，想方设法养家的移民的期望联系在一起；意味着我们要对我们自己的一生负责——要求父亲们付出更多，与孩子们在一起的时间更多，讲故事给他们听，教导他们一生中他们也许会面对挑战与歧视，但一定不要绝望或看穿一切，他们应该相信他们可以书写自己的命运。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

1. Theme of the speech

President Obama is telling the American people the serious situation they are in and what they should do to remake America. He tries to inspire the people to face the odds and to overcome them.

2. Main ideas of the sections

1) Paras. 1 – 3

a. How I feel at this moment.

b. America has been in difficulty in the past and it is now.

2) Paras. 4 – 5

We are in the midst of crisis.

3) Paras. 6 – 8

a. The challenges will be met.

b. This election shows the American people have made a choice.

c. The time has come for us to remake the greatness of America.

4) Paras. 9 – 10

a. What our ancestors have done along the path.

b. What we should do.

5) Paras. 12

The work lying before us, "All this we can do. All this we will do."

3. Characteristics of the language

1) Short sentences and short paragraphs——easier for people to comprehend, more emphatic

2) Parallel structure

So it has been. So it must be with this generation of Americans. (Para. 3)

On this day, we gather...

On this day, we come to proclai... (Para 7)

We will build...

We will restore...

We will harness...

We will transform... (Para. 12)

3) Choice of words

I stand here today humbled by the task before us...

mindful of the sacrifices borne by our ancestors(Para. 1)

rising tides of prosperity

gathering clouds

raging storms(Para. 2)

Concord and Gettysburg

Normandy and Khe Sanh(Para. 9)

The place names standing for events: Shots at "Concord" were the beginning of the War of Independence; "Gettysburg" was where a bloody battle was fought in the Civil War; "Normandy" stood for the landing of Allied forces there for the beginning of the end of Nazi Germany; "Khe Sanh" stood for a tactical victory for the Americans in early 1968in the Vietnam War.

Lesson Eleven

The Way to Rainy Mountain

词汇注释

knoll[nəul] ***n.*** a small natural hill 圆丘;土墩

【例句】He crawled up a small **knoll** and surveyed the prospect. 他慢腾腾地登上一个小丘,看了看周围的地形。

range[reindʒ] ***n.*** a series of connected mountains considered as a single system. 山脉

【例句】The lake is situated at the eastern extremity of the mountain **range**. 湖位于山脉最东端。

landmark[ˈlændmɑːk] ***n.*** A landmark is a building or feature which is easily noticed and can be used to judge your position or the position of other buildings or features. You can refer to an important stage in the development of something as a landmark. 地标;陆标;里程碑;转折点

【例句】The Empire State Building is a familiar **landmark** on the New York skyline. 帝国大厦是人们熟悉的纽约高楼大厦中的地标。

The Russian Revolution represents a **landmark** in world history. 俄国革命是世界历史上的一个里程碑。

blizzard[ˈblizəd] ***n.*** a storm with widespread snowfall accompanied by strong winds. You can refer to a large number of things that you do not like or which annoy you as a blizzard of those things. 暴风雪;(指令人反感或恼火的事情)大量,铺天盖地

【例句】The **blizzard** struck while we were still on the mountain. 我们还在山上的时候暴风雪就袭来了。

Retailers were hit with a **blizzard** of new products and brands in all shapes, sizes and colours. 各种形色不一、大小各异的新产品和新品牌铺天盖地，让零售商们疲于应付。

tornadic[tɔːˈnædik] ***adj.*** of a tornado. 龙卷风（似）的，旋风（似）的

prairie[ˈprɛəri] ***n.*** a large, mostly flat area of land in North America that has few trees and is covered in grasses（尤指北美的）大草原，大牧场；草原地带；

【例句】The train tracks extend over miles of **prairie**. 铁轨在草原上延绵。

anvil[ˈænvil] ***n.*** a heavy iron block on which heated metal is shaped by hitting it with a hammer. You can refer to a difficult experience that changes someone or leads to something good as a particular type of anvil. 铁砧；锤炼；磨炼

【例句】His independence had been forged on the **anvil** of a harsh environment. 他的独立性是在艰苦的环境中锤炼出来的。

brittle[ˈbritl] ***adj.*** easily broken or cracked; unstable and easily change; sharp in sound 易碎的；难以相处的；声音尖利的

【例句】The pond was covered in a **brittle** layer of ice. 池塘覆盖了一层易碎的冰。

She has a **brittle** temper. 她动辄就要发脾气。

同义词：fragile, frail, crisp

这一组形容词都有"脆弱"的意思。**brittle** 通常是指坚硬的东西。The bones of elderly people become brittle and easily broken. 老年人的骨头变得脆弱，很容易骨折。**fragile** 常常修饰使用时必须小心才不会破碎的东西，也引申为体弱的，虚弱的。He's feeling a bit fragile after last night's party. 他参加了昨晚的聚会以后，现在感觉有些虚弱。**frail**（指人）体弱的，虚弱的，也可以指东西易碎的。His mother has grown old and frail. 他母亲已经年老体弱。**crisp** 指食品的松脆；清新的，爽快的；活跃的，有生气的，干净利落的。crisp biscuit 松脆的饼干。The student gave a clear, crisp answer to the teacher's question. 学生干净利落地回答了老师的问题。

creek[kriːk] ***n.*** a small stream or river. 小河；小溪

【例句】People sunbathe in the nude on the rocks above the **creek**. 人们在露出小溪的岩石上裸体晒日光浴。

linear[ˈliniə(r)] ***adj.*** formed by lines or made up of lines; forming a line; of or relating to the length of something 直线的，线形的；

【例句】Her novel subverts the conventions of **linear** narrative. It has no neat chronology and no tidy denouement. 她的小说颠覆了线性叙事的传统，没有清晰的时间线索，也没有简单明了的结局。

grove[grəuv] ***n.*** a small group of trees; especially a group of trees that produce fruit or nuts

【例句】A **grove** of trees shadowed the house densely. 树丛把这幢房子遮蔽得很密实。

hickory[ˈhikəri] ***n.*** a type of tree that has very hard wood and that produces nuts

which can be eaten 山胡桃树,山胡桃木

【例句】The hams were cured over a **hickory** fire. 火腿在山核桃树枝燃起的火上薰制。

pecan['piːkən]　*n.* Pecans or pecan nuts are nuts with a thin, smooth shell that grow on trees in the southern United States and central America and that you can eat. 美洲山核桃

【例句】A gigantic moon was rising behind Miss Maudie's **pecan** trees. 一轮明月正从莫迪小姐家的核桃树后冉冉升起。

foliage['fəuliidʒ]　*n.* the leaves of a plant or of many plants 植物的叶子(总称),叶子及梗和枝;树叶

【例句】Most trees lose their **foliage** in winter. 大多数树木在冬天落叶。

同义词:leaf

都可以表示"叶子"。但 **foliage** 指植物的叶子,尤其是树的叶子,通常作为一个整体;而 **leaf** 强调具体的叶片。

writhe[raið]　*v.* to twist into coils or folds; to twist so as to distort; to twist (the body or a bodily part) in pain (因极度痛苦而)扭动或翻滚;

【例句】The shark was **writhing** around wildly, trying to get free. 鲨鱼拼命挣扎,试图逃脱。

grasshopper['grɑːshɔpə(r)]　*n.* A grasshopper is an insect with long back legs that jumps high into the air and makes a high, vibrating sound. 蚱蜢;蝗虫

sting[stiŋ]　*v.* (of an insect, plant, or animal) to hurt (someone) by piercing the skin with a sharp, pointed part that usually contains poison 叮,螫;刺痛

【例句】I jumped as if I had been **stung** by a scorpion. 我像被蝎子蜇了似的跳了起来。

infirm[in'fəːm]　*adj.* having a condition of weakness or illness that usually lasts for a long time and is caused especially by old age 体弱的

"The infirm" are people who are infirm. 年迈体弱者

【例句】We are here to protect and assist the weak and **infirm**. 我们来这里保护、帮助年迈体弱者。

Kiowa['kaiəuwaː]　*n.* (pl. Kiowa, Kiowas) 基奥瓦人(美国俄克拉何马州印第安人)

headwater['hedwɔːtə(r)]　*n.* the source of a stream, usually used in plural (河流)上游源头

【例句】The eastern Qinghai Plateau is the **headwater** area for many large Asiatic rivers. 青藏高原东部是亚洲一些大河的发源地。

alliance[ə'laiəns]　*n.* a union between people, groups, countries, etc. ; a relationship in which people agree to work together; the state of being joined in some activity or effort :

the state of being allied; a group of people, countries, etc., that are joined together in some activity or effort(国家、政党等的)结盟,同盟,联盟,联合;联姻;同盟条约;同盟者

【例句】The two parties were still too much apart to form an **alliance**. 两党分歧甚大,还远未能结成同盟。

What will be the effect of the **alliance** between IBM and Apple? 若IBM公司和苹果公司联合将会有什么效果呢?

preeminently[pˈriːmainəntli] *adv.* to a very great extent 在很大程度上;极大地

【例句】This is **preeminently** the time to speak the truth, the whole truth, frankly and boldly. 现在正是坦白、勇敢地说出实话,说出全部实话的最好时刻。

warfare[ˈwɔːfɛə] *n.* the activity of fighting a war. 战争,战争状态;

同义词:battle, war, campaign, struggle, fight, combat

这些名词均有"战斗,战争"之意。**battle** 侧重指战争中的一次较全面、时间较长的战斗,也指陆军或海军在某一特定地区进行的战斗,或个人之间的争斗。**war** 是战争的总称,一般指包括多个战役的大规模战争。**campaign** 通常指在一场大的战争中在某一地区进行的一连串有既定目的的军事行动。也可作引申用。**struggle** 指激烈或时间持续长的战斗或奋力斗争。**warfare** 侧重指战争状态或具体的作战方法。**fight** 最普通用词,含义广,指战斗、斗争或打斗。**combat** 泛指军事行动,尤指小规模的战斗,甚至是格斗。

disposition[ˌdispəˈziʃn] *n.* the way someone tend to behave or feel 性情;性格

【例句】The rides are unsuitable for people of a nervous **disposition**. 骑马这一活动不适合天性易紧张的人。

同义词:temper, character, nature, personality, complexion

这些名词均有"性格,气质,性情,习性"之意。**temper** 指从感情方面体现出来,决定处理问题或应对形势的方式的性格或性情,这种性情可以是暂时的也可以长久的。**character** 指对个性或人格所作出的客观评价,常常与道德有关。**nature** 指天生的、不可改变性格。**personality** 主要指一个人稳定的心理特征。**disposition** 是书面用词,指人的主要爱好或思想、精神方面的重要习性、气质。也可指短暂的情绪。**complexion** 指由思维方式、态度和情绪所决定的本质特征。

grim[grim] *adj.* unpleasant or shocking to see or think about; causing feelings of sadness or worry :gloomy or depressing; having a very serious appearance or manner 冷酷的,残忍的;严厉的;阴冷的;可怕的,讨厌的

【例句】They painted a **grim** picture of growing crime. 他们描绘了犯罪率上升的严峻情形。

There was further grim economic news yesterday. 昨天又传来更多令人沮丧的经济消息。

unrelenting[ˌʌnriˈlentiŋ] *adj.* not slowing down, stopping, or growing weaker (used to describe someone who does something in a constant and determined way without stopping

or becoming less forceful）无情的；不松懈的；不屈不挠的

【例句】In the face of severe opposition and **unrelenting** criticism, the task seemed overwhelming. 在强烈的反对和毫不留情的批评声中，这个任务似乎让人难以招架。

provision[prəˈviʒn] *v.* to provide someone or something with a lot of food and supplies, especially for a journey 为…提供所需物品（尤指食物）

【例句】They stopped to **provision** the ship. 他们停止了供应船只。

"ill" is a prefix in English, which takes the meaning of " in a way that is bad or not suitable". So "ill – **provisioned**" means "without adequate supplies, especially food". "ill"是英语中的前缀，表示"不好的，不适合的"，因此"ill – provisioned"表示"没有充足的供给，尤其是食物"，有弹尽粮绝的意思。

abandon[əˈbændən] *v.* to leave a place, thing, or person for ever 放弃，抛弃；离弃，丢弃；

【例句】The baby had been **abandoned** by its mother. 这个婴儿被母亲遗弃了。

pillage[ˈpilidʒ] *v.* to steal something from a place or a person by using violence, especially during war. 抢劫；掠夺

【例句】The transfer of power in 1947 was accompanied by slaughter and **pillage** of huge proportions. 1947 年的权力转移是伴随着屠杀大面积掠夺而来。

corral[kəˈrɑːl] *n.* an area that is surrounded by a fence and that is used for holding animals (such as cows and horses) on a farm or ranch

【例句】The cowboys rounded up the steers and herded them into a **corral**. 牛仔们将小牛赶拢，并将它们拦起来。

spare[speə(r)] *v.* to prevent (someone or something) from experiencing or being affected by something unpleasant, harmful, etc. 使某人免遭（麻烦等）；

【例句】Malaysian PM announced that Fight MH370was ended in the ocean and not a man was **spared**. 马拉西亚总理宣布 MH370 航班坠海，无人得以幸免。

affliction[əˈflikʃn] *n.* something (such as a disease) that causes pain or suffering or the state of being affected by something that causes suffering

【例句】Mary labored under the **affliction** of having a drunken husband. 玛丽苦于有个酗酒的丈夫。

brooding[ˈbruːdiŋ] *n.* the feeling of sad, worried, or angry for a long time（尤指对令人不快的事物）沉思，苦苦思索

【例句】The disease of **brooding** was beginning to claim him as a victim. 他已经开始成为郁郁沉思这一毛病的牺牲品。

forebear[ˈfɔːbɛə] *n.* a person from whom you are descended 祖先；前辈

【例句】I'll come back to the land of my **forebears**. 我将回到祖先的土地上。

befriend[biˈfrend] *v.* become friends with 帮助；以朋友相待；援助；

【例句】The film's about an elderly woman and a young nurse who **befriends** her. 电影讲述的是一位老太太和一个待她友善的年轻护士的故事。

nomadic[nəu'mædik] ***adj.*** (of groups of people) tending to travel and change settlements frequently 游牧的；游牧部落的

【例句】For generations the Arabian has shared the hardships of his **nomadic** master. 阿拉伯人一代又一代地分担着它的游牧主人的艰辛。

divinity[di'vinəti] ***n.*** the quality of being divine 神性；神圣性

【例句】Love is the light of **divinity**, it presents the Divine in Man. 爱是神圣之光，它代表著人们内心的神圣。

lordly['lɔːdli] ***adj.*** impressive and suitable for a lord. 贵族气派的；高贵的；威严的

【例句】I always dreams that I will live in a **lordly** mansion one day. 我总是梦想着某一天我将会住进豪华大厦里。

priest[priːst] ***n.*** a member of the Christian clergy in the Catholic, Anglican, or Orthodox church. 基督教教士；（天主教）神父；（英国圣公会）牧师；（东正教）司铎

【例句】He confessed to a **priest** that he had sinned. 他向神父忏悔他犯了罪。

prophecy['prɔfisi] ***n.*** knowledge of the future (usually said to be obtained from a divine source)

预言

【例句】If you expect to fail, you will fail. It's a self - fulfilling **prophecy**. 你如果预期失败，就会失败。这是一种自我应验的预测。

interior[in'tiəriə] ***n.*** The interior of a country or continent is the central area of it. 内地；腹地；内陆

【例句】Many areas in the country's **interior** are unable to report Aids cases immediately. 该国内地的很多地区无法即时报告艾滋病病例。

pilgrimage['pilgrimidʒ] ***n.*** a journey to a sacred place 朝圣；朝觐

【例句】His father took him on a sentimental **pilgrimage** to Ireland. 他爸爸带他踏上了去爱尔兰的情感之旅。

timber['timbə(r)] ***n.*** wood that is used for building houses and making furniture or trees that are grown for this purpose.

【例句】New timber should be **treated** with a preservative. 新采的圆木应进行防腐处理。

同义词：lumber, wood, log

均有“木材，木”之意。**lumber** 指伐下后未经削磨的木材，现多用于美国英语中。**timber** 指经过匠人初步加要的备用木材，多用于英国英语。**wood** 最普通用词，含义广，除表示“木材，木”外，还可用复数形式表示森林。**log** 指原木或圆木。

canyon['kænjən] ***n.*** a long, narrow valley with very steep sides. 峡谷

【例句】He felt wonder mingled with awe at the Grand **Canyon**. 面对着大峡谷,他又惊奇又敬畏。

confinement[kən'fainmənt] *n.* the state of being forced to stay in a prison or another place which you cannot leave. 监禁;关押;禁闭

【例句】Capital punishment is claimed to deter wrongdoing even better than lifelong **confinement**. 死刑之所以需要是因为它在制止犯罪方面甚至比终身监禁更有效。

skyline['skailain] *n.* the shape made by hills or buildings against the sky. 地平线;(以天空为背景的)轮廓线

【例句】The tall buildings of Hong Kong make a magnificent **skyline**. 香港的高大建筑群映在天空上,颇为壮观。

cleavage['kliːvidʒ] *n.* the state of being split or cleft

【例句】Increasingly deep **cleavages** separate one age group from another. 愈来愈深的分歧使不同的年龄群互相分离。

reckon['rekən] *v.* to think or believe

【例句】Don't **reckon** upon your relatives to help you out of trouble. 不要指望你的亲戚会帮助你摆脱困境。

stature['stætʃə(r)] *n.* high level of respect gained by impressive development or achievement 地位;声望

【例句】Who can deny his **stature** as the world's greatest cellist? 谁能否认他是世界上最伟大的大提琴演奏家呢?

descend[di'send] *v.* come from; be connected by a relationship of blood 起源(于),是...的后裔

【例句】She was **descended** from an old Italian noble family. 她是意大利贵族的后裔。

同义词:drop,sink

这些动词都表示"落下,下降"之意。**descend** 通常指沿斜线或斜坡下降。**drop** 指物体从一定高度落下。**sink** 指在空气或水中垂直下降、下沉。

stairway['stɛəwei] *n.* a staircase or a flight of steps, inside or outside a building. 楼梯;阶梯

【例句】Paintwork on the corner of a **stairway** tends to get nicked and scratched as people pass by. 随着人们的走动,楼梯转角上的油漆慢慢地有了缺损和擦伤。

slope[sləup] *n.* the side of a mountain, hill, or valley 斜坡;斜面;

【例句】Saint - Christo is perched on a mountain **slope**. 圣克里斯托教堂坐落在一个山坡上。

"the inland slope" 这里指的是落基山脉朝向北美大平原的那一面,而不是朝向太平洋的那一面。

同义词：tip, tilt

这些动词均含"倾斜"之意。**tip** 指向一边倾斜或向上翻转、失去平衡或完全翻转过来。**slope** 指向上或向下渐渐倾斜的表面，多用于山、屋顶等缓缓倾斜。**tilt** 指有意识地或长时间地使物体处于倾斜状态。

luxuriant[lʌgˈʒuəriənt] *adj.* growing strongly and thickly 茂盛的；郁郁葱葱的；

【例句】There were two very large oak trees in front of our house with wide spreading branches and **luxuriant** foliage. 我们家门口有两棵枝繁叶茂的大橡树。

flax[flæks] *n.* a plant with blue flowers. Its stem is used for making thread, rope, and cloth, and its seeds are used for making linseed oil. 亚麻；胡麻

【例句】The workers were teasing **flax**. 工人们正在梳理亚麻。

buckwheat[ˈbʌkwiːt] *n.* a type of small black grain used for feeding animals and making flour 荞麦；荞麦粉

【例句】**Buckwheat** Bean has a high nutritional and medicinal value. 苦荞凉粉具有较高的营养和药用价值。

larkspur[ˈlɑːkspəː] *n.* a tall garden plant with blue flowers 燕草属植物；飞燕草

【例句】Snapdragons, calceolaria and **larkspur** will drop their floret rapidly. 金鱼草，蒲包花和翠雀花的小花迅速脱落。

recede[rˈsiːd] *v.* . move back and away from; retreat 后退、减退

【例句】The mountain peaks **recede** into the distance as one leaves the shore. 人离岸时，山峰向后退去。

graze[greiz] *v.* feed as in a meadow or pasture. When animals graze or are grazed, they eat the grass or other plants that are growing in a particular place. You can also say that a field is grazed by animals. （动物）吃青草；放牛；放羊；放牧

【例句】Five cows **graze** serenely around a massive oak. 5 头奶牛在一棵大橡树旁悠闲自在地啃着青草。

同义词：nourish, feed

这些动词均含"提供所需食物，喂养"之意。**nourish** 指提供生长、健康或维持生存所必需的食物或养料，尤指用营养品促进生长。**feed** 是普通用词，含义广泛。既可指给人或动物提供食物，又可指给植物以养料或为机器等加燃料等。**graze** 侧重指用正在生长的青草喂养牲畜。

vision[ˈviʒn] *n.* everything that you can see from a particular place or position. 视野

【例句】I saw other indistinct shapes that stayed out of **vision**. 我看见另有一些模糊的影子晃了一下就不见了。

immense[iˈmens] *adj.* unusually great in size or amount or degree or especially extent or scope 极大的，巨大的

【例句】They plunged into their work with **immense** zeal. 他们以极大的热情投入工作。

同义词: huge, enormous, giant, gigantic, colossal, vast, massive, tremendous

这些形容词均有"巨大的,庞大的"之意。**huge** 含义广,强调体积或容积的庞大。也可用于引申意义。**enormous** 指体积、数量或程度远远超过一般标准。**immense** 是正式用词,侧重空间的广阔,也指面积或分量的巨大。**giant** 是非正式用词,多为褒义。指如巨人般的庞大体积。**gigantic** 指面积或体积的巨大,但多用于引申意义。**colossal** 侧重尺寸、规模和体积的无比巨大。**vast** 多指空间、面积、范围的巨大,不涉及重量。**massive** 指大的体积、数量和重量,侧重庞大而笨重。**tremendous** 指某物很大,大得惊人;也可用作引申意义。

billow[ˈbiləu] *v.* rise up as if in waves; 在波涛中翻滚;扬起,鼓起

【例句】Steam **billowed** out from under the bonnet. 引擎盖下喷出滚滚的蒸汽。

clover[ˈkləuvə(r)] *n.* a small plant with pink or white ball-shaped flowers. If you say that someone is in clover, you mean that they are living a luxurious and comfortable life. 车轴草;苜蓿;(非正)生活舒适而富裕;养尊处优;生活优裕

【例句】Since winning the lottery, they've been living in **clover**. 中奖之后,他们过着舒适优裕的生活。

seal[siːl] *v.* make tight; secure against leakage; close with or as if with a seal 密封;封;封印

【例句】Write your letter and **seal** it in a blank envelope. 信写好后把它装进空白信封里封好。

seal the soil: cover the soil tightly preventing it from being washed away. 是指"将土壤密封"。

lee[liː] *n.* the side of something that is sheltered from the wind 庇护所;背风处

【例句】The **lee** of the rock gave them protection against the storm. 岩石的遮掩使他们得以免受暴风雨袭击。

profusion[prəˈfjuːʒn] *n.* the property of being extremely abundant 大量;丰富

【例句】A **profusion** of leaves bursts out on trees in the springtime. 春天许许多多的叶子从树上冒出来。

deity[ˈdiːiti] *n.* a god or goddess 神;女神

【例句】Many animals were seen as the manifestation of a **deity**. 许多动物被看作神的化身。

the oldest deity: it refers to the sun.

solstices[ˈsɔlstisiz] *n.* The summer solstice is the day of the year with the most hours of daylight, and the winter solstice is the day of the year with the fewest hours of daylight. (夏或冬)至

【例句】The seasons are marked by **solstices** and equinoxes – astronomical terms that relate to Earth's tilt. 季节变化是以二至点和二分点来标记的－这些天文学词汇与地球倾斜的自转轴有关。

veer[viə(r)]　*v.* to change the direction, change the course.（突然）转向，改变方向

【例句】The plane **veered** off the runway and careered through the perimeter fence. 飞机突然偏离跑道，高速冲过了周围的护栏。

caldron['kɔːdrən]　*n.* a very large pot that is used for boiling 大锅（炉），大汽锅；

【例句】A jet of coffee steam from the burnished **caldron**. 咖啡的蒸气从打磨得铿亮的大壶里喷出来。

the caldron of the land：the land that is like a caldron 锅状盆地

wean[wiːn]　*v.* gradually deprive (infants) of mother's milk; If you wean someone off a habit or something they like, you gradually make them stop doing it or liking it, especially when you think is bad for them. 给（婴儿或幼崽）断奶；使放弃，使戒掉，使不再依赖（尤指恶习）

【例句】The baby would be **weaned** and she would bring it home. 婴儿断奶后，她会把婴儿带回家。

Children should be **weaned** off television. 孩子应该少看电视。

iron['aiən]　*n.* Iron is an element which usually takes the form of a hard, dark grey metal. It is used to make steel, and also forms part of many tools, buildings, and vehicles. 铁器，铁制品

【例句】Some would call these odd pieces of **iron** and wood 'antiques'. 有些人会把这些奇怪的铁片与木块称作"古董"。

upthrust['ʌpθrʌst]　*n.* (geology) a rise of land to a higher elevation (as in the process of mountain building) 向上推，向上冲，上冲断层

crust[krʌst]　*n.* the hard outer layer or the shell of the earth 地壳

【例句】Earthquakes leave scars in the earth's **crust**. 地震会在地壳上留下裂痕。

engender[in'dʒendə(r)]　*v.* to bring into being; bring about; produce 产生；造成；引起

【例句】Mr Bowles could **engender** delight in students and musicians alike. 鲍尔斯先生能够让学生和音乐家都感到快乐。

awful['ɔːful]　*adv.* You can use awful with adjectives that describe a quality in order to emphasize that particular quality.（与表示特征的形容词连用，用于强调）极度地，非常

【例句】You know, 10 years sounds like an **awful** long time. 你知道，10 年听起来遥遥无期。

otherwise['ʌðəwaiz]　*adv.* in other respects or ways; in another and different manner; 否则；另外；别的方式

【例句】 The studio could punish its players by keeping them out of work, and **otherwise** controlling their lives. 电影公司能通过让艺人坐冷板凳来惩罚他们,并采用其他方式控制他们的生活。

legend[ˈledʒənd] *n.* a story handed down for generations among a people and popularly believed to have a historical basis although not verifiable 传说;传奇人物

【例句】 The course is about fable and **legend** in modern literature. 这门课专讲现代文学中的神话和传奇作品。

bid[bid](bade, bidden) v. ask or invite somebody to do something. 要求;邀请

【例句】 They all smiled at him and **bade** him eat. 他们都朝他微笑,请他吃饭。

rear[riə] *v.* rise up 抬起

【例句】 The mountains **reared** up on each side, steep and white. 两边的山峦高耸入云,山势陡峭,覆盖着积雪。

score[skɔː(r)] *v.* make marks into the surface of 刻痕;划痕

【例句】 **score** the bark with its claws:用爪子在树皮上抓出痕迹。

bear[bεə](bore, borne) v. move while holding up or supporting

【例句】 He was suddenly jerked off his feet and **borne** aloft. 他突然被弹了起来,抛在空中。

Big Dipper:北斗七星

kinsman[ˈkinzmən](pl. kinsmen) n. relatives, espcially male ones. 亲属;亲戚;男性亲戚

【例句】 He avenged the bloodshed of his **kinsmen**. 他为自己被残杀的家族成员报了仇。

tenuous[ˈtenjuəs] *adj.* having little substance or significance;

【例句】 a **tenuous** hold on life 命若游丝

reverence[ˈrevərəns] *n.* a feeling of great respect for them 尊敬,敬畏;敬礼;受尊敬;尊严

【例句】 The poem conveys his deep **reverence** for nature. 这首诗表达了他对大自然的深深崇敬之情。

wariness[ˈwεərinis] *n.* the trait of being cautious and watchful 谨慎,注意,小心;戒心

【例句】 You always have **wariness** with others and always to avoid to be very close to them. 你往往对周围的人怀有戒心,总是想方设法避免与他们做过分亲密的来往。

rite[rait] *n.* a traditional ceremony that is carried out by a particular group or within a particular society 仪式,典礼,礼仪;习惯,惯例

【例句】 Most traditional societies have transition **rites** at puberty. 大多数传统社会都为青春期的孩子举行成人礼。

buffalo[ˈbʌfələu] *n.* a wild animal like a large cow with horns that curve upwards. Buffalo are usually found in southern and eastern Africa. 水牛(分非洲水牛和亚洲水牛两

种）；（南非或北美的）野牛

【例句】The **buffalo** not only supplied the Kiowa with food and clothing, but also was the animal representation of the sun. 牛不仅供给奥基瓦人衣食，同时也是太阳的动物化身。

consummate[ˈkɔnsəˌmeit] *v.* to make complete, perfect. 完成，达成（协议等）

【例句】There have been several close calls, but no one has been able to **consummate** a deal. 有好几次死里逃生，却没有人做成一笔交易。

sacrifice[ˈsækrifais] *n.* the act of offering somehthing to a god, especially in former times by killing an animal or a person in a religious ceremony. 牺牲；献祭，供奉；牺牲行为；[宗]基督的献身

【例句】Before the battle, the commanders ordered the **sacrifice** of two bullocks to the god of war. 打仗之前，指挥官下令给战神供奉两只小公牛

impale[imˈpeil] *v.* to push a sharp pointed object through something or someone. （以尖物）刺穿，刺入

【例句】The boy died after being **impaled** on railings when he slipped while playing. 小男孩玩耍时失足滑倒，被栏杆刺穿身体致死。

delegation[ˌdeliˈgeiʃn] *n.* a group of people who have been sent somewhere to have talks with other people on behalf of a larger group of people. 代表团

【例句】He was sent to New York as part of the Dutch **delegation** to the United Nations. 他作为出席联合国会议的荷兰代表团成员被派往纽约。

hide[haid] *v.* an animal's skin, especially when it has been removed to be used for leather. 兽皮；毛皮

【例句】The process of tanning animal **hides** is very complex. 鞣制兽皮的工序非常复杂。

disperse[diˈspəːs] *v.* distribute loosely or to cause to separate and go in different directions；（使）分散，（使）散开；散播，传布

【例句】The device emits unpleasant high - pitched wails that are intended to **disperse** crowds. 这种设备可以发射出令人不悦的高频悲叹声用来驱散人群。

slaughter[ˈslɔːtə(r)] *v.* to kill large numbers of people or animals in a cruel or violent way 屠宰（动物）；大屠杀

【例句】Whales and dolphins are still being **slaughtered** for commercial gain. 仍然有人为了商业利益大肆捕杀鲸鱼和海豚。

bend[bend] *n.* a bent or curving part of a river （尤指道路或河流的）拐弯；弯道

【例句】The crash occurred on a sharp **bend**. 撞车发生在一个急转弯处。

deicide[ˈdiːisaid] *n.* the killing of a god 杀神，杀神者，害死耶稣的人

-cide 是一个名词后缀，意思是“杀戮，杀死”或者“杀死……的人”。

posture[ˈpɔstʃə(r)] *n.* "the position in which you stand or sit" or "an attitude that you have towards something" 姿势；看法；态度；立场

【例句】The government adopted an uncompromising **posture** on the issue of independence. 政府在独立这一问题上采取了毫不妥协的态度。

skillet['skilit] *n.* a shallow iron pan which is used for frying 平底锅

【例句】Rub up the **skillet** please. 请把长柄锅擦亮。

beadwork['biːdwəːk] *n.* ornamentation with beads 珠饰品

【例句】Today the richness of **Beadwork** varies with fashion. 现今珠饰品工艺随着时尚潮流而千变万化。

vision['viʒn] *n.* the ability to see 视力,视觉

【例句】In spite of his otherwise excellent **vision**, he found he was colour - blind. 尽管他视力很好,他却发现自己是个色盲

fail[feil] *v.* to become weaker, get worse 衰退

【例句】He was 58, and his health was **failing** rapidly. 他 58 岁,身体正在迅速衰老。

rambling['ræmbliŋ] *adj.* (of e. g. speech and writing) tending to depart from the main point or cover a wide range of subjects 闲逛的,漫步的;闲聊的;(思想)散漫的;布局凌乱的,杂乱无章的

【例句】There's me **rambling** on, and you haven't told me your news yet. 我一个劲地说,你还没有把你的事告诉我呢。

exclusive[ik'skluːsiv] *adj.* not including or allowing for 专用的;排外的;单独的

【例句】Many of their cheeses are **exclusive** to our stores in Britain. 在英国,他们生产的奶酪很多只在我们商店出售。

kerosene['kerəsiːn] *n.* a clear, strong - smelling liquid which is used as a fuel, for example in heaters and lamps 煤油,火油

【例句】With a flash, the **kerosene** lamp went out. 煤油灯闪了闪就灭了

draw[drɔː] *v.* pull up 拖,拉

【例句】He put his arm around Caroline's shoulders and **drew** her close to him. 他一只手臂搂住卡罗琳的肩膀,将她拉近自己。

braid[breid] *v.* to weave or twist together three pieces of hair or cloth to form one length 动词。把(头发)编成辫子;把(丝线)编成辫状

【例句】He pictured her with long black **braided** hair. 他想象她梳着又黑又长的辫子。

shawl[ʃɔːl] *n.* a large piece of woollen cloth which a woman wears over her shoulders or head, or which is wrapped around a baby to keep it warm. (女用)围巾,披巾;襁褓

【例句】She draped a **shawl** over her shoulders. 她把一条披巾披在肩膀上。

inherently[in'herəntli] *adv.* existing in someone or somehing as a natural and inseparable quality. 天性地,固有地

【例句】War is **inherently** a dirty business. 战争与生俱来就是肮脏的。

pitch[pitʃ] *n.* the degree of highness or lowness of a tone. 音调

【例句】descending **pitch**:降调

sentinel['sentinl] ***n.*** a person sent to guard a group 岗哨,哨兵

【例句】We gave the watchword,and the **sentinel** let us pass. 我们说出口令,哨兵就把我们放过去了。

windowpane['windəupein] ***n.*** a piece of glass in the window of a building 窗玻璃

【例句】The rain drums on the **windowpane**. 雨象鼓一样敲打在窗玻璃上。

abide[ə'baid] ***v.*** put up with something or somebody unpleasant 容忍,忍受;

【例句】I can't **abide** people who can't make up their minds. 我受不了优柔寡断的人。

rub[rʌb] ***v.*** spread it over the surface or remove it from the surface using your hand or something such as a cloth 涂抹;搽;擦去

【例句】I pretended to **rub** a fleck of grit from one eye. 我假装拭去一只眼睛里的沙粒。

wind[wind] ***v.*** to wrap something around an object several times or twist it repeatedly around itself 缠绕;卷绕;扎紧

【例句】She **wound** a scarf around her neck. 她脖子上系了条围巾。

enmity['enməti] ***n.*** a feeling of hatred towards someone that lasts for a long time. 敌意;仇恨;愤恨

【例句】President Mitterrand arrived in Hanoi yesterday to bury old colonial and cold war **enmities**. 密特朗总统昨天到达河内,以期结束长久以来殖民战争和冷战造成的敌意。

council['kaunsl] ***n.*** a group of people called together for consultation,discussion,advice,etc. 委员会;理事会;

【例句】The **council** has given the go-ahead to start building. 委员会已批准破土动工。

warlord['wɔːlɔːd] ***n.*** supreme military leader exercising civil power in a region especially one accountable to nobody when the central government is weak 军阀

【例句】He had been a dictator and a **warlord** who had oppressed and degraded the people of the South. 他既独裁又好战,压迫侮辱南方人。

indulge[in'dʌldʒ] ***v.*** to let yourself do or have something that you enjoy,especially something that is considered bad for you 使(自己)沉溺于;使快乐

【例句】You can **indulge** yourself without spending a fortune. 你不必花大把钱就可以好好犒劳一下自己。

servitude['səːvitjuːd] ***n.*** the condition of being a slave or of being completely under the control of someone else. 奴役(状况)

【例句】The criminal was sentenced to five years' **servitude**. 这犯人被判处五年劳役。

jest[jest] ***n.*** jokes 玩笑

【例句】The men talk as cheerfully as ever; **jests** are bandied about freely. 男人们像往常一样高兴地聊着，彼此间随意开着玩笑。

nocturnal[nɔkˈtəːnəl] *adj.* occurring at night 夜的，夜间的

【例句】**nocturnal** feasts: feasts given in the night 晚餐

perch[pəːtʃ] *v.* if a bird perches on something, it flies down and sits on it(鸟)栖息，停留

【例句】A blackbird flew down and **perched** on the parapet outside his window. 一只乌鸫飞下来，停在他窗外的矮墙上。

handrail[ˈhændreil] *n.* a long piece of metal or wood which is fixed near stairs or places where people could slip and fall, and which people can hold on to for support. 栏杆，扶手

【例句】When travelling at bus or metro, please hold the **handrail**. 坐公交或地铁时，请抓紧扶手。

fossil[ˈfɔsəl] *n.* the hard remains of a prehistoric animal or plant that are found inside a rock. 化石

【例句】At this distance of time it is difficult to date the **fossil**. 时间隔得这么久了，很难确定这化石的年代。

purl[pəːl] *v.* to flow with a gentle movement and a murmuring sound 潺潺(流水)

scissortail[ˈsizəteil] *n.* gray flycatcher of the southwestern United States and Mexico and Central America having a long forked tail and white breast and salmon and scarlet markings 叉尾霸鹟

hie[hai] *v.* to hurry or hasten 快走

【例句】**hie** one's way 急行

短语表达

pop up: appear suddenly or unexpectedly 突然出现

【例句】Meanwhile familiar faces **pop up** among the reporters. 这时候，一张张熟悉的面孔在记者中出现

close at hand: very close. 近在咫尺

【例句】The sound seemed to come from some driftwood **close at hand**. 这声音好像来自近处漂来的木头上。

beyond all comparison: 无可比拟，无与伦比

【例句】the sky is immense **beyond all comparison**: 天空宽阔无比

本句与第六段中的"The skyline in all direction is close at hand."形成对比。

take hold of: to get control or possession of 握住；控制住；吸引；对…有影响力

【例句】Their writings **took** powerful **hold of** academic circles. 他们的著作在学术

界有巨大的影响力。

keep to oneself: to avoid contact with others or the outside world 把…限制在

【例句】The two brothers have exactly opposite temperaments: one likes to be active while the other tends to be quiet and **keep to himself**. 他们弟兄两个脾气正好相反，一个爱动，一个好静。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

Navarre Scott Momaday was born February 27, 1934, in Lawton, Oklahoma, to Alfred Momaday and Natachee Scott. The family lived on Navajo, Apache, and Pueblo reservations in New Mexico and Arizona where his parents taught school. Momaday earned a bachelor's degree in political science at the University of New Mexico. Then he was awarded a scholarship to graduate school at Stanford University as a result of winning a creative writing contest for his poetry. After earning his Ph. D. in English there, he published his first book The Complete Poems of Frederick Goddard Tuckerman. He followed that academic study with The Way to Rainy Mountain and his first novel, House Made of Dawn, which received the Pulitzer Prize in 1969. Momaday is currently emeritus professor of English at the University of Arizona.

纳瓦雷·斯科特·莫马迪(1934—)，美国作家、画家、学者，其父亲是基奥瓦印第安人，母亲有部分切罗基印第安血统。其代表作《日诞之地》(House Made of Dawn, 1968)获1969年普利策小说奖，为美国“印第安文艺复兴”拉开序幕，对莱斯利·西尔科、路易丝·厄德里克、谢尔曼·阿莱克西等美国当代印第安作家产生深远影响。他的主要作品还有小说《古时候的孩子》(The Ancient Child, 1989)、诗集《跳葫芦舞的人》(The Gourd Dancer, 1976)、故事集《通往雨山之路》(The Way to Rainy Mountain, 1969)、回忆录《姓名》(The Names: A Memoir, 1976)等。莫马迪曾先后获得美国诗人学会奖、普利策小说奖、意大利蒙德罗国际文学奖、美国西部文学联合会奖、美洲原住民作家协会终身成就奖、美国国家艺术奖章等。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

In The Way to Rainy Mountain, Momaday traces his ancestral roots back to the beginning of the Kiowa tribe. While Momaday seems to have always known about his ancestry, the death of his grandmother prompts a deeper and more personal exploration of his family background. In order to get as close as possible to his roots, Momaday returns to his Grandmother's house where the spirit of the Kiowa tribe is very strong.

The passage provides the reader with a series of oral stories from Kiowa tradition written down. The stories link together to narrate the entire life span of the Kiowa tribe from beginning to end. Momaday also provides explanatory information for the stories. Each story is followed by a short account of the factual event the story is based upon. Together the stories and the facts work to create a complete picture of the Kiowa way of life. The stories explain the world as the Kiowa saw it.

Kiowas were very tied to the earth. Their personal history maintains that the tribe came into being by entering the world through a hollow log. Additionally, the Kiowa were a tribe of hunters very dependent on the buffalo for their existence. Without the buffalo the Kiowa could not survive and when the buffalo herds died out, so too did the Kiowa. The Kiowa had other strong beliefs. They maintained a ritual Sun Dance that revolved around a buffalo sacrifice and prayers to Tai - me. Tai - me is said to be a sort of savior figure for the Kiowa. When the Kiowa were facing difficult times Tai - me came to the tribe and led them to a better life.

Most members of the Kiowa tribe who remembered the ancient ways have long since passed away. However, when the narrator returns to his Grandmother's house and Rainy Mountain, he is able to vividly recall the stories his Grandmother used to tell him. As the narrator works through these stories, he learns a great deal about the Kiowa and his own history. The narrator is able to step away from his everyday life and travel back to another time. The time the narrator spends exploring his ancestral roots through memories and physical expeditions to various locations around Rainy Mountain provide him with a newfound respect for his ancestors and for his present day existence.

《通往雨山之路》的历史背景框架正值克尔瓦部族从辉煌走向没落的时期，其时大致在1833年左右；及至1875的时候克尔瓦部族人口已经减至5000人左右。作者在描述那些活灵活现的部族历史、习俗与传统时，无一例外地采用“过去时”的叙事格调，以此表达对昔日时光的追忆，记录个人对于部族文化的反思。《通往雨山之路》这个题目本身蕴涵着一个叠加复现的隐喻式主题——“旅程”。斯科特·莫马迪自然谙熟克尔瓦先辈们的历史，然而祖母的去世进一步唤起他内心深处最深沉的情感，促使他开始了一场探究自己家族背景、血脉根源的寻根旅程。于是作者循着那些曾经把征战当作他们“神圣的职责”的基奥瓦先辈们的足迹，跨越1500英里的行程来到了“雨山”——这里有祖母以及那些基奥瓦先人的墓地。漫长艰辛的“雨山之路”曾经铸就了先辈们昔日的强大、辉煌与荣耀，也赋予他们以生存法则和技能，最终形成了这个部族特有的宗教信仰；而对于作者本人来说，“雨山之路”是一个亲历那段史诗般辉煌的历史、重温被老祖母一遍遍描述称道并引以自豪的那一系列故事的一次旅程；虽未亲历，却鲜活地留存在祖母记忆里，无数次演绎翻新，津津乐道，那眼神里充满神秘的敬畏与骄傲。

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

The Way to Rainy Mountain by N. Scott Momaday, a unique blend of history, folklore, and poetic memoir, was published in 1969. It takes the reader through author N. Scott Momaday's own journey of discovering his Kiowa background and identity. The journey is told in three separate voices: The first voice, the ancestral voice, tells about the Kiowa by using oral traditions and myths; the second voice is a historical commentary; and finally, the third voice is Momaday's poetic memoir of his experiences. All three voices together teach about the Kiowa's origin, beliefs, traditions, morals, and conflicts. Not only does the journey recounted in this book help Momaday better understand his ancestry, it also teaches about the Kiowa tribe's history. The uniqueness of this text, however, has been an issue for some readers; they claim it is confusing to follow and discombobulating. Others find it easier to understand by reading each individual voice consecutively instead of alternating from one voice to another as the book is written. The Way to Rainy Mountain continues to be an entry point to Kiowa history and a way to open discussions about what constitutes any history of a people.

斯科特.莫马迪是首位获得“普利策”桂冠的美国原住民作家。他拥有克尔瓦部族血统和正统的美国高等教育的背景。在《通往雨山之路》中，他运用饱蘸着对部族传统深沉的自豪感和归属感的笔墨，以“凭吊式”的怀乡情感，走进一个民族的集体记忆，开始了如同史诗般的文化寻根之旅。在这个故事里，所有的“旅程”的终点都止于“雨山”：作者拜谒祖母的墓地，那是他“朝圣”旅途的终点；老祖母出生于斯卒于斯，是为起点也是终点；而对于整个基奥瓦部族来说，这也是他们传奇般辉煌旅程的终点。这就是“雨山”——基奥瓦人心目中的“地标”，灵魂的归属地。“雨山”在作者笔下演化成了一种“情结”，一个在灵魂深处探询祖先历史、血缘记忆与文化身份属性的一块“圣地”。基于这样的认识，我们可以得出这样的启示：如果说每个人的心目中都有一座“雨山”的话，那么真正重要的应该是那“通往雨山的路途”。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Great green - and - yellow grasshoppers ... the plenty of time.

The grasshoppers on the plain are large and everywhere, when a grasshopper hopes, it pops up like the growing corn in the fields, making a sudden, explosive movement to sting the flesh. Tortoises crawl about the red earth aimlessly in no hurry for they have all the time to themselves. 草原上到处都是身形肥大、半黄不绿的蚂蚱。隐身于高高的野草从中，但时不时会像爆米花一样砰地一下从草丛中弹出来，碰到人的身上。便像蜂蜇似的疼痛不已。而在那些不长草的红土地上则有成群结队的乌龟漫无目的、悠然自得地爬行，既不知其要爬向何处，也不知其要爬到何时为止，也许就这么爬到地老天荒。

2. Loneliness is an aspect of the land.

Loneliness is a major quality of this landscape. 荒凉孤寂是大平原地区的特色写照。

3. To look upon that landscape … of proportion.

When you look upon the landscape in the early morning with the rising sun at your back, the objects you see may seem larger (or smaller) than they really are. And the scene of proportion is about life, creation, etc. and so it is a philosophical comment, not just about the physical. 若是在清晨时分，背对着太阳放眼观赏这片广袤平原的景色，你会失去分辨大小的能力，误以为天大地大不如这片平原大。

4. Your imagination comes to life, and this, you think, is where Creation was begun.

The landscape makes your imagination vivid and lifelike, and you believe that the creation of the whole universe was begun right here. Different cultures and religions have different myths about how the universe began. 你的想象力会活跃起来，带着你天马行空般胡思乱想：当初太古之神开天辟地应该就是从造这片荒原开始的吧。

5. I was told that in death her face was that of a child.

In death, she was peaceful and free from all earthly worries and miseries. Her face looked like that of a child. Only in death can one return to childhood innocence and peacefulness. 我还听说她临终的时候神态十分安详，她那张脸看起来就像一个天真快乐的孩子的脸。

6. But warfare for the Kiowas was preeminently a matter of disposition rather than of survival, and they never understood the grim, unrelenting advance of the U. S. Cavalry.

Warfare was important for the Kiowa more because of their militant tendency than because of their need for survival. The Kiowa often fought just because they felt that war was scared because it could demonstrate their courage and strength, because they were good warriors, because they fought out of habit, character, nature, not because they needed extra lands or material gains for the sake of surviving and thriving. 不过，对于基奥瓦人来说，征战主要是出于民族的本能天性，而非为了拓展民族的生存空间。所以，当面对着美国骑兵残酷无情的步步紧逼时，他们茫然不知所措。

7. My grandmother was spared the humiliation of those high gray walls by eight or ten years…

Luckily, my grandmother did not suffer the humiliation of being put into a closure for holding animals, for she was born eight or ten years after the event. But she must have heard what happened from her parents and grandparents. Therefore she must have known the great pain and distress brought by defeat, and she must have seen how they had kept thinking about their defeat in a gloomy and hopeless way. 我的祖母本人并没有遭受被囚高墙黑狱之辱，因为她出生已经是距那八到十年之后的事情了。但打从她出生后，她一定从别人口中听说过当年的失败带给族人的苦难，对于本部族那些老战士当时遭遇的悲苦也能感同身受。

8. It was a long journey toward dawn, and it led to a golden age.

They moved toward the east, where the sun rises, and also toward the beginning of a new culture, which led to the greatest moment in their history. 这次迁徙是迎接黎明的一

次远行，它引领这个部落走进了一个黄金时期。

9. "befriended by the Crows"受到克罗族的善待和帮助。克罗族是北美印第安人苏族的一支。

Along the way the Kiowas were befriended by the Crows...

Indian wars were frequent in history. Yet, in the process of their migration, the Crow helped the Kiowa by giving them horses and introducing them to the religion of the Great Plains, both of which were essential for the transformation of the Kiowa from a mountain people to plain people. 在他们迁徙途中，基奥瓦人得到了鸦雀族人的友善帮助，鸦雀族人把大平原的文化和宗教信仰传授给了他们。

10. They acquired horses, and their ancient nomadic spirit was suddenly free of the ground.

Now they got horses. Riding on the horse back, instead of walking on foot, gave them this new freedom of movement, thus completely liberating their ancient nomadic spirit. 他们还学会了养马骑马，于是他们从远古祖先那儿继承而来的游牧民族的天性便一下子挣脱束缚充分释放了出来。

11. They acquired Tai – me... the divinity of the sun.

They came into possession of Tai – me, the object and symbol of their worship —— the Sun Dance religion. This object was worshipped by all tribes that regarded the sun as deity. 他们得到了神圣的太阳舞圣物——泰密神像。从此，泰密神像就成了他们顶礼膜拜的偶像，同时也是所有信奉太阳神教的印第安部落共同崇拜的圣物。

12. No longer were they slaves to the simple necessity of survival; ...

This is an inverted structure, and the normal order of the sentence is " they were no longer slaves to the simple necessity of survival". Note the preposition used with it is " to" not " of" 。这是一个倒装的结构，正常的语序应该是"they were no longer slaves to the simple necessity of survival"。请注意这里 slave 后面的介词是 to 而不是 of。

他们不再是以前那样只求温饱生存的奴隶，……

13. they were a lordly and dangerous society of fighters and thieves, hunters and priests of the sun. In this sentence, the word " lordly" echoes the word " pride" in the previous sentence. And it is contrasted with word " slave". 这里的"lordly"与上一句中的"pride"是相互呼应的，同时也与前面的"slave"形成对比。"priest of the sun" 美洲的印第安人崇拜太阳，他们的重要宗教祭祀活动之一就是跳"拜日舞"（Sun Dance），或称"太阳舞"，所以这里作者将基奥瓦人称作"太阳的祭司"。

……如今的他们已经俨然形成一个高贵却又危险的社会，社会成员各有不同的身份：有的是战士，有的是飞贼，有的是猎人，还有的是太阳神教的祭司。

14. their origin myth: myth about the origin of their ancestors, where they originally came from, how they entered the world. 他们的起源神话

15. a hollow log: a log with an empty space in it. 印第安人神话中说到神创造天地。天和地是万物源头，当时天和地未分开，四下漆黑，神用力将天地推开，于是光明出

现。一向藏在黑暗中的人类便被发现,原来他们也是天地所生。然后神从地下带领人类从一根空的树干中来到光明世界,生活在大地上。

16. an old prophecy: it refers to their origin myth. "an old prophecy"在这里就是指的前面提到的印第安人关于起源的神话。

17. the sunless world: it refers to the mountains of Montana where they had lived before their migration to the Great Plains. Those mountains were so high and forest so dense that the sunlight could not penetrate them. "the sunless world"指的是印第安人迁徙到平原地区以前居住的蒙大纳山区。那里山高林密,太阳光线不容易穿过密密的丛林,因此像一个"没有阳光的世界"。

18. From one point of view … from a sunless world.

In a sense, their migration confirmed the ancient myth that they entered the world from a hollow log, for they did emerge from the sunless mountain forests. 从某种意义上说,他们的长途迁徙就印证了那个古老的神话传说,因为他们的确是来自于一个没有太阳的世界。

19. in the shadow of Rainy Mountain: at the foot of the Rainy Mountain 在雨山脚下

20. Although my grandmother … in her blood.

Although my grandmother never left Rainy Mountain in her long like, the immense landscape of the Great Plains existed clearly in her memory as if she had lived there herself. 我的祖母虽然在漫长的一生中寸步未离开过雨山的阴影覆盖的范围,但中原内陆地区那浩瀚无边的平原景色却犹如亲身经历的记忆般深深储存她的血液中。

21. "the continental interior"这里指的就是印第安人的的迁徙地北美大平原。

22. the Black Hills: are a small, isolated mountain range rising from the Great Plains of North America in western South Dakota and extending into Wyoming, USA. As the economy of the Black Hills has shifted from natural resources (mining and timber), the hospitality and tourism industry has grown to take its place. Locals tend to divide the Black Hills into two areas: "The Southern Hills" and "The Northern Hills". 在文中指的是北美印第安苏族的圣地,黑山区。

23. in the mind's eyes: in imagination: 在想象中的

Aho had never been to places like the Black Hills, but she had seen the place quite well in her imagination, for she had heard so much about it from the older generations. It is through the oral tradition that the Kiowa cultural heritage has been handed down from generation to generation. 因为作者的外婆 Aho 从来没有去过黑山区,但是因为她听到过许多关于她的先辈们在黑山区的经历,所以在她的脑海里有着关于黑山区的无限遐想。基奥瓦人的文化就是通过这样口耳相传的方式一代一代流传下来。

24. …and traveled fifteen hundred miles to begin my pilgrimage.

For the author, the journey is indeed aimed at a holy place, a place where his ancestors lived and thrived in their golden age. 对于作者来说,这个旅程的确非常重要,他是要去拜访他的先祖们曾经在辉煌时期生活和繁衍的地方。所以作者用了 pilgrimage 这

个词。

25. beautiful as it is:This is also an invented structure to show the relationship of concession. The natural order is "although it is beautiful". 这是一个表示让步关系的倒装结构。正常的句序是"although it is beautiful"。

26. There is a perfect freedom … the badger and the bear.

I admit there is a perfect freedom in the mountains, but only animals can enjoy this freedom thoroughly. The Kiowa people did not feel free at all. 山林之中当然也有一种天高任鸟飞的自由感,但这种自由感是只有那些老鹰、驼鹿、美洲獾和狗熊们才能够享受的专利。

27. bent and blind:Note the repetition of the initial sound[b]in the two words. Besides alliteration, here the author also employs the rhetorical devise of hyperbole to make the description more vivid and effective. Hyperbole is exaggeration for effect and not meant to be taken literally. Although they felt a sense of confinement, they were certainly not bent and blind. 注意这里两个词开头的辅音[b]。除了押头韵,这个句子里作者也采用了夸张的修辞手法让描述更加生动。夸张的修辞手法是为了效果,因此不能从字面意思来理解。

弯腰驼背的瞎子。

28. The Kiowas reckoned their stature by the distance … wilderness.

As hunters, it was very important for the Kiowa to be able to see long distances. So if a Kiowa could see a long way, he would be respected by his fellow Kiowa. In other words, their statures was measured by the distance they could see. Yet, because of the dense forests, they could not see very far, and they could hardly stand straight. Thus the author says "they were bent and blind in the wilderness." 狩猎为生的基奥瓦人是靠视距决定能力强弱的,视距越远能力越强,在这片荒山野岭中他们几乎就变成弯腰驼背的瞎子,生存能力大打折扣。

29. Descending eastward, the highland meadows are a stairway to the plain.

The word "stairway" is used metaphorically. The sloping meadows are like a stairway going down from a higher level to a lower level. "阶梯"一词在这里是修辞性的用法。倾斜的草原就像由高至低的楼梯一样。

高山区东面是一片高地草原,海拔高度向东渐次降低,构成一条通往平原区的坡状通道。

30. Clusters of trees … cause the vision to reach away and wonder to build upon the mind.

cause the vision to reach away:make one see far into the distance. 极目远眺

这个句子中的修饰成分比较的多,句子的主语是 trees and animals,谓语动词是 casue,宾语是 vision and wonder。不定式 to reach away 是补充说明 vision 的,而不定式 to build upon mind 是补充说明 wonder 的。

The earth unfolds and the limit of the land is far in the distance, where there are clus-

ters of trees and animals eating grass. This landscape makes one see a long way and broadens one's horizon. Remember that they could not see far into the distance in the forest-covered mountains. 看着天边远处的树木和低头吃草的马鹿牛羊不仅令人的视野顿时变得开阔,而且能唤起人心中的无限遐想。

31. The great billowing clouds that sail ... dividing light.

Clouds swell like large waves and move like sails upon the sky, casting shadows on the grain fields. As the clouds move, the shadows move too, making some patches of land brighter and some darker. 一团团的云彩如大海中乘风破浪的飞舟一般在天空中飘飞,其阴影投射到地面上,把整个山坡划成光影交错的不同区块。

32. The sun is at home on the plains. 太阳得以无拘无束地普照大地。

The sun is at ease / comfortable on the plains. 这个句子采用了拟人的修辞手法来描写太阳。

33. Precisely there does it have the certain character of a god.

This is also an inverted sentence, in which the word "there" is emphasized. "certain", in this sentence, means "unquestionable, not to be doubted". The whole sentence means: After their migration to the plains, the Kiowa began to worship the sun as their god. The Sun Dance was their religious ceremony, and Tai - me was the Sun Dance fetish, their object of religious worship. 正是在这片平原地区,太阳显露出了其无可置疑的神性。

34. grain shelves: terraced fields of the grain. 谷物梯田

35. ranging after the solstices: the sun plays the dominant role after summer and winter solstices. We notice the movement of the sun more after the solstices because the days lengthen or shorten. 夏至或冬至后太阳开始变化。人们会从夏至或者冬至的时候开始关注太阳的变化是因为白天的时间开始变长或者变短。

36. ..., they must wean their blood from the northern winter and hold the mountains a while longer in their view.

Here in this sentence, the word "wean" is used metaphorically. The Kiowa paused on their way, not in a hurry to go on toward the southeast because they wanted to give their bodies some time to get accustomed to the change of weather and other physical conditions. 本句中"wean"一词用的是比喻性意义。基奥瓦人在迁徙的途中放慢了脚步,没有急速赶往东南,因为他们想让身体有足够的时间,慢慢适应南方的天气气候和其他生存条件。

37. Not yet would they veer southward to the caldron ... in their view.

They would not yet change the direction southward to the land lying below which was like a large kettle, implying the idea of heat as well as the bowl shape. First, they must give their bodies some time to get used to the plains. Second, they didn't want to lose sight of the mountains so soon. 他们这时还不想马上折转方向,进入南边那块湿热低洼的盆地,一来他们必须让自己身体中的血液逐渐摆脱北方高山区寒冷气候的影响以适应南方平原地区的生存条件,二来他们也想留在这个回首可以望见高山的地方好多看一眼即

将离别的故乡。

38. They bore Tai – me in procession to the east.

They carried Tai – me in their migration to the east. 他们在迁徙的途中把 Tai – me 带到了东边。

经过短暂的停留休整之后，他们带着泰密神像继续东进。

39. …, and the land was like iron.

In this sentence, iron is used to describe the hard barren land. This sentence echoes the expression "the prairie is an anvil's edge" in paragraph 1. 句中用 iron 一词来形容坚硬贫乏的土壤。与第一段中的"the prairie is an anvil's edge"形成呼应。

……，是坚硬如铁的岩石。

40. the core of the earth: the central portion of the earth. 地核

41. the motion of the world was begun: Everything in the world was made to move. The use of the passive voice suggest that there was a force that began the motion of the world. 世界上的一切就开始运动。这里使用了被动语态暗示出是有一股力量推动一切开始运动。

42. There are things in nature that engender an awful quiet in the heart of man.

This sentence means that people are awe – stricken when they see spectacular things in nature. 这个句子的意思是人们在看到自然界中这样壮观的东西时都会觉得敬畏。

43. Two centuries ago, because they could not do otherwise … rock.

Two centuries ago, because the Kiowas could not explain how Devil Tower was formed in scientific terms, the only thing they could do was to make up or imagine a story at the base of the rock. 两个世纪以前，由于找不到别的办法解释魔鬼塔的成因，基奥瓦人便杜撰了一个神话故事来解释这块巨石的由来。

44. struck dumb: to be unable to speak usually because one is surprised. 吓得呆住了

45. Suddenly the boy was struck dumb, he trembled and he began to run upon his hands and feet.

Suddenly the boy became dumb, unable to speak and he trembled and began to run on his hands and feet. 这个男孩突然呆住了，说不出话来，然后全身开始颤抖，接着连滚带爬地跑了。

46. Directly there was a bear where the boy had been. 男孩刚才在的地方突然出现了一只熊。为什么是变成了熊而不是其他的动物呢？因为在基奥瓦文化中，熊被认为是最有力量的动物。

47. "It bade them climb upon it …"

The tree ordered them to climb upon it.（大树墩）吩咐她们爬上树墩。

48. It reared against the tree and scored the bark all around with its claws.

The bear rose upright on its back legs and scratched the bark of the tree around with its sharp claws. In this legend, Devil's Tower was that tree, and the marks on the rock formation were scratches left by the bear. 熊一生气，就用屁股去擂那树墩，擂不动树墩，便围

着树墩打转转,用熊爪子在树皮上乱抓。

49. From that moment, and so long as the legend lives ... night sky.

What is the symbolic meaning of this legend? In the legend the seven sisters are immortalized. With this legend, the Kiowa established a kinship with the stars. They were already allied with the sun through Tai – me. Now that they were related to the Big Dipper through the myth of Devil's Tower, they stood in good relation to the universe. The sun and the stars protected them day and night. This prepared them for the coming of their golden age. 从那时起,只要这个传说还在流传,基奥瓦人就跟夜晚的星空有着一种沾亲带故的亲密关系。

50. Whatever they were in the mountains, they could be no more. 不管以前他们生活在山里的时候是个多么卑贱的山野村妇,现在他们的身份与那时再不可同日而语了。

They had been a mountain people in Montana, and now they had been completely transformed into a plains people. 以前他们是山民,现在已经完全转变为平原的居民。

51. beg and barter: alliteration. To barter means to trade by exchanging goods or services without using money. 这两个词押头韵。barter 指不使用货币的以物易物的交换方式。

52. ...as a living sun Dance Culture.

After the Sun Dance culture was forbidden and destroyed, it ceased to exist. 当太阳舞文化被废除以后,它就不再存在了。

53. They could find no buffalo; they had to hang an old hide from the sacred tree.

As they were unable to find any buffalo, they had to substitute the head of a buffalo bull with an old animal's skin. This shows how the Kiowa culture was weakened by the disappearance of buffalo. 当时根本找不到野牛,他们只好弄一张牛皮挂在神树上。

54. Before the dance could begin, a company of soldiers rode out from Fort Sill under orders to disperse the tribe.

The orders came from the U. S. government. Judged by the values of Christianity and European civilization, the Native American cultures appeared to be inferior and backward. The U. S. government perceived the Sun Dance as idolatry and therefore abolished it by force. For the Kiowa people, the Sun Dance was their holiest religious ceremony. Forbidden to practice their own religion, they were cut off from the life – sustaining power of the sun. 可是没等到太阳舞开始,就有一连从希尔要塞出发的骑兵奉命前来驱散参会部落民众。

55. the medicine tree: the tree from which the Sun Dance medicine bundles was hung 神树。

56. Forbidden without cause the essential act ... from the medicine tree.

They were forbidden to perform the most important part of their religion and no reason was given for abolishing the Sun Dance religion. The white new comers and merchants killed buffalo in large numbers for commercial purposes, mainly for the hides. So after killing the

animals, they would leave the dead bodies rotting on the ground. 无缘无故被剥夺了基本的宗教信仰和活动的自由，眼睁睁地看着黑心的美国佬为了牛皮生意而肆意屠杀草原上的野生牛群，然后任由其尸体堆在地上腐烂，基奥瓦人实在无能为力，只得从此永远地告别神树太阳舞了。

57. when her vision had failed: when she could not see well 当她的视力渐渐衰退时。

58. She made long, rambling prayers out of suffering and hope, having seen many things.

She had seen many things, experienced a lot in her long life, and she talked about suffering and hope in her long and disconnected prayers. 由于经历了太多的苦难，要诉说痛苦并祈盼希望，她常常会念出冗长而又显得杂乱无章的祈祷词。

59. custom and company: alliteration. "Custom" means a usual practice, a habitual way of behaving; habit. "Company" means companionship, a group of people gather for a social purpose, etc. "Mere" indicates how much less important custom and company were than her prayers. 押头韵。custom 指一种习惯性的行为，习惯；而 company 是指陪伴、聚集。而 mere 暗示习惯和聚集都没有她的祷告那么重要。

60. I was never sure that I had the right … mere custom and company.

The grandmother was praying privately and her prayers did not follow any customary way of praying, and she did not want anyone else to hear them. So the author was not sure that he had the right to hear her prayers. 我从来都不敢确定自己有权利去听她的祷告内容，因为她做祈祷的方式十分独特，并不像一般的众人可以一起做的纯属于礼仪性的祷告。

61. naked to the waist: She didn't wear anything on the upper part of her body above the waist. 腰部以上都是裸着。

62. some merest hesitation: slight hesitation 一丝丝犹豫

63. syllable of sorrow: alliteration, syllables that express sorrow 押头韵。表达忧伤的音节

64. She began in a high and descending pitch … in the human voice.

She began in a high pitch but it became lower and lower as she uses up all her breath and finally she became silent. Then she would begin again and pray in the same manner, and then again —— always with great effort, with something that was, or was not, like urgency in the human voice. Since the author didn't speak Kiowa, he could not understand his grandmother's prays, and he sensed in her voice something that was urgency and at the same time not urgency. 她开始时起调甚高，简直是声嘶力竭，然后渐渐由高变低，直到声音完全止息；然后再吸一口气重新开始，就这样一次次周而复始——每次都是那样拼尽全身气力的声嘶力竭，就像，可又不大像，是人类遇到危难之时发出求救的声音。

65. beyond the reach of time: timeless. The implied meaning is that she would live forever. 永恒的，永久的。暗含的意思是她会永生。

66. Transported so in the dancing light among the shadows … time.

In this way she was completely and inexplicably moved to another state in the dancing light among the shadows of her room, and she seemed to be timeless; it seemed that she would live forever. 屋子里灯光摇曳,黑影婆娑,映照得祖母如影似幻,仿佛已转到了另一个世界,早已超出三界外,不在五行中。

67. But that was illusion; I think I knew then that I should not see her again.

That she was timeless was a false idea, not in accordance with the fact of life. The fact was that I realized that this was going to be my last time to see her. The implied meaning is that she would die soon. 不过,这终究只是种幻觉。可以说那时我就已经知道,今后我恐怕很难再见到她了。

68. keepers of weather watch: those who keep watch for the changes of weather 气象观察员

69. There, in a very little while, wood takes on the appearance of great age.

There, in a very short time, wood will look as if it were very old (because of the wind and rain). 那些房屋中用作建筑材料的木头,要不了多久就会呈现出一副年深月久的古貌。

70. The windowpanes are black and opaque; you imagine there is nothing within, and indeed there are many ghosts, bones given up to the land.

For an outsider, the old house looks empty; but for someone who knows and cherishes the history of the Kiowa, the house reflects the undying spirit of the Kiowa people, who gave their lives to the land. 窗户玻璃也变得黑糊糊的,根本不能透光。你可能以为房屋里面什么都没有,但其实里面有许多鬼魂,那些为保卫这片家园而命丧疆场、暴尸荒野的印第安人鬼魂。

71. a lot of coming and going: 人来人往

72. The Kiowas are a summer people: The Kiowa are active in summer; they feel at home in summer. 基奥瓦人在夏季会比较活跃。

73. lean and leather: "lean" when used as a noun refers to meat without too much fat. "leather" refers to animal skin that has been treated to preserve or to be used for making shoes, bags, etc. The two words used together to indicate that the aged visitors do not have too much flesh and skins became rough and hard as leather, due to the long - time work and over exposure to the sun and wind. 这两个词在这里是描述那些上了年纪的客人,由于常年的劳作和风吹日晒,身体精瘦,皮肤粗糙。

74. bore themselves upright: carried themselves upright 腰板挺得很直。

75. They rubbed fat upon their hair and would their braids with strips of colored cloth.

They used fat as hair lotion and use long narrowed colored cloth to tie their hair. 他们把油脂擦在头发上,用彩色的布条来扎头发。

76. old and cherished enmities: battles that took place in the past and were remembered and valued by those old warriors. 曾经爆发过的,并且为那些旧时的勇士们铭记的战争

77. They were an old council of warlords, come to remind and be reminded of who they were.

They held these reunions to remind themselves and other people of who they were, to remember the past. 他们都是从前的一个军事首领委员会的成员，来这里参加聚会是为了别人，同时也让自己永远不要忘记他们曾经的英雄事迹。

78. The women might indulge themselves; gossip was at once the mark and compensation of their servitude.

The women, who usually stayed and served their men, now could make good use of these gatherings with other women and do what they liked to do or what they normally couldn't do, such as gossiping, making loud and elaborate talk among themselves, joking, etc. Gossip revealed their position as servants of men and was also a reward for their servitude. Only on such occasions could they have a chance to gossip with other women. 在外面的聚会上，那些女人们也可以放纵一下自己，无事生非的八卦一下，这既是她们在家里当牛做马的生活状态的一种标记，同时也算是一种补偿。

79. jest and gesture 这两个词也是押头韵。形容女人们指手画脚地在一起互相打趣。

80. fright and false alarm: alliteration again. The women might be telling ghost stories so that they were frightened, but there was no real danger. 又是押头韵。女人们在一起讲一些让自己害怕的鬼故事，但是又没有真正的危险。

81. They went abroad in fringed and flowered shawls, bright beadwork and German silver. 她们出门披着有流苏的花披肩，带着漂亮的珠宝和银饰。

82. And afterwards, when the quiet returned, I lay down with my grandmother and could hear the frogs away by the river and feel the motion of the air.

It was so quiet after the guests left that the author and his grandmother could hear the frogs away in the river and even feel the motion of the air. 当欢宴活动结束，暗夜的寂静重新降临时，我和祖母回家睡觉，人躺在屋里都可以听见远处小溪中的蛙鸣，甚至可以感受到屋外空气流动的气息。

83. some final word: word 在这里是做不可数名词，表示"消息，信息"。The wake is not for his grandmother, who died and was already buried, but for something abstract, maybe the dying culture of the Kiowa.

84. My line of vision was such that the creature filled the moon like a fossil.

I happened to glance in that direction, and there the cricket was perfectly framed by the full moon as if it were a fossil in it. 映入我视线的是这样一幅奇异的景象：一轮圆月如画，而那只蟋蟀恰如一块化石标本嵌入画中。

85. It had gone there, I thought, to live and die, for there, of all places, was its small definition made whole and eternal.

The cricket is a small insect with nothing special about it. But if it could go to live and die on the moon, the small meaning of its existence would become larger and eternal. 我心

里在想，这小生命是想将自己的生死命运托付给月亮，因为天地虽大，却只有在那儿它小小的存在的价值方能得到永恒而又完全的实现。

86. the dirt road: road made of dirt, earth, not a dirty road 泥土地，不是指很脏的地

87. Looking back once, I saw the mountain and came away.

The last two actions of the narrator are significant. "Looking back" means "remembering the past". Out of his exploration into the past grows an attitude of acceptance and a desire to hold on to cherished memories. Coming away indicates a determination to start afresh from Rainy Mountain with a rich heritage that will continue to have a powerful influence on the life of modern Kiowa people. 我回望了一眼雨山，便默默地离开了。

Ⅳ. 参考译文

通往雨山之路

纳瓦雷·斯科特·莫马迪

在俄克拉荷马州的莽莽平原上，威奇塔山脉的西北面，耸立着一座孤山。我们基奥瓦族人把这座山看作一个历尽沧桑的地标，给它取了个名字叫雨山。当地气候之恶劣堪称世界之最：冬天会伴随带来严寒的暴风雪，春天又往往出现炎热的龙卷风，一入夏季，莽莽草原上更是到处热浪滚滚，宛若铁砧。地上的青草很快就变得枯黄焦脆，一脚踩上去便会噼里啪啦地碎裂。沿着一条条河流和小溪的岸边，本来也有一道道景观绿化带，种有一片片的山核桃树、胡桃树、金缕梅和杨柳树。但在骄阳似火的七八月份，干得冒烟的树叶早已由绿转成金黄，远远望去，犹如一团团翻腾燃烧的火焰。草原上到处都是身形肥大、半黄不绿的蚂蚱。隐身于高高的野草从中，但时不时的会像爆米花一样砰地一下从草丛中弹出来，碰到人的身上。便像蜂蜇似的疼痛不已。而在那些不长草的红土地上则有成群结队的乌龟漫无目的、悠然自得地爬行，既不知其要爬向何处，也不知其要爬到何时为止，也许就这么爬到地老天荒。荒凉孤寂是大平原地区的特色写照。极目四望，这片大平原上的一切的一切，无论是山、是树、还是人，都是形单影只的，绝没有多种不同物体混杂于一堆的情形。若是在清晨时分，背对着太阳放眼观赏这片广袤平原的景色，你会失去分辨大小的能力，误以为天大地大不如这片平原大。你的想象力会活跃起来，带着你天马行空般胡思乱想：当初太古之神开天辟地应该就是从造这片荒原开始的吧。

我是七月份回雨山的。祖母已于春天去世，我回雨山就是想给她老人家上坟。祖母是活到耄耋之年才寿终正寝的，儿女们早已先她而去，只有一个依然在世的女儿为她送终。我还听说她临终的时候神态十分安详，她那张脸看起来就像一个天真快乐的孩子的脸。

我真愿意把她想象成一个孩子。她刚出生的时候，基奥瓦人正处于其光辉历史行将结束的末期。在此前长达一百多年的时间里，他们统治着南至斯莫基希尔河、北抵红河、西起加拿大河的发源地、东至阿肯色河和西马隆河交汇处的辽阔地域。他们

与另一个印第安人部族科曼其人结成联盟，共同统治着整个美洲南部大平原地区。他们是世界上最擅长于骑马养马的民族，征战疆场是他们神圣的使命。不过，对于基奥瓦人来说，征战主要是出于民族的本能天性，而非为了拓展民族的生存空间。所以，当面对着美国骑兵残酷无情的步步紧逼时，他们茫然不知所措。最后，整个部族被敌人分割包围，陷入弹尽粮绝的境地，残余人马被逼得无处容身，只好冒着深秋季节的凄风苦雨逃往埃斯塔卡多高地平原，一路上他们惊慌失措，在帕罗杜洛峡谷地带，被敌人追上，众人只顾逃命，连攸关部族存亡的辎重粮草也没能守住，被敌人洗劫一空。最后，逃得性命的族人为了自己能继续活下去，不得不向西尔要塞的美军投降，投降后被美军囚禁在一座年代久远的用石头砌成的牲口棚里。如今该处已经变成一座军事博物馆了。我的祖母本人并没有遭受被囚高墙黑狱之辱，因为她出生已经是距那八到十年之后的事情了。但打从她出生后，她一定从别人口中听说过当年的失败带给族人的苦难，对于本部族那些老战士当时遭遇的悲苦也能感同身受。

她的名字叫阿禾，属于北美本土文明中最后的一支。将近三个世纪前，她的祖先从蒙大拿西部高原地区来到这里。他们原是一个神秘的以狩猎为生的山民部落. 其语言从未被语言学家明确地划归任何一个主要语族。17 世纪晚期，他们开始长途跋涉向东南方向迁徙。这次迁徙是迎接黎明的一次远行，它引领这个部落走进了一个黄金时期。在他们迁徙途中，基奥瓦人得到了鸦雀族人的友善帮助，鸦雀族人把大平原的文化和宗教信仰传授给了给了他们。他们还学会了养马骑马，于是他们从远古祖先那儿继承而来的的游牧民族的天性便一下子挣脱束缚充分释放了出来。他们得到了神圣的太阳舞圣物——泰密神像。从此，泰密神像就成了他们顶礼膜拜的偶像，同时也是所有信奉太阳神教的印第安部落共同崇拜的圣物。此外，他们还开始对命运，勇气和自尊等概念有了自己的认识。当他们进入北美大平原南部时，基奥瓦人已完全脱胎换骨了。他们不再是以前那样只求温饱生存的奴隶，如今的他们已经俨然形成一个高贵却又危险的社会，社会成员各有不同的身份：有的是战士，有的是飞贼，有的是猎人，还有的是太阳神教的祭司。按照他们民族起源的神话传说中的说法，他们的祖先是穿过一根空心圆木来到这个世界上的。从某种意义上说，他们的长途迁徙就印证了那个古老的神话传说，因为他们的确是来自于一个没有太阳的世界。

我的祖母虽然是漫长的一生中寸步未离开过雨山的阴影覆盖的范围，但中原内陆地区那浩瀚无边的平原景色却犹如亲身经历的记忆般深深储存她的血液中。她未曾见过一个鸦雀族人，但却能将一些关于鸦雀族人的故事娓娓道来；她从未到过黑山地区，但却能历历在目地描述那儿的景色。我就是为了要亲眼实地见证一下祖母用心灵的眼睛所看见并描述的那么完美的世界，所以才长途跋涉一千五百英里，开始我的朝圣之旅。

以前，在我的印象中，黄石似乎就是世界之巅，是一个景色十分壮丽的地方，到处可见深湖密林、峡谷和瀑布。然而，景色虽然壮丽。置身其间却不免令人生出一种束缚感。无论朝哪个方向抬眼望去，天际线总是近在咫尺，视线所及的尽头不是一排排参天林木组成的高墙便是一道道深不见底的黑幽幽的地缝。山林之中当然也有一种天高任鸟飞的自由感，但这种自由感是只有那些老鹰、驼鹿、美洲獾和狗熊们才能够

享受的专利。狩猎为生的基奥瓦人是靠视距决定能力强弱的，视距越远能力越强，在这片荒山野岭中他们几乎就变成弯腰驼背的瞎子，生存能力大打折扣。

高山区东面是一片高地草原，海波高度向东渐次降低，构成一条通往平原区的坡状通道。时值七月，位于落基山脉内陆一侧的这面山坡上长满了亚麻、荞麦，以及景天和飞燕等各种野草，一簇簇、一丛丛，一派葳蕤葱茏。大地开始绽放笑脸，四周的地平线渐渐开阔起来，变得越来越远。看着天边远处的树木和低头吃草的马鹿牛羊不仅令人的视野顿时变得开阔，而且能唤起人心中的无限遐想。与高山区相比，这里白昼的太阳在天上飞行的时间更长，天空也显得广阔无边。一团团的云彩如大海中乘风破浪的飞舟一般在天空中飘飞，其阴影投射到地面上，把整个山坡划成光影交错的不同区块。沿着山坡继续往下，就是鸦雀族和黑足族的地盘，这片平原地带呈现出一片金黄色，因为漫山遍野到处都是开着黄花的野苜蓿，形成一层覆盖地表并密封土壤的保护性植被。基奥瓦人在这儿暂时歇下了他们的迁徙的征途，他们已经来到了一个促使他们改变生活方式的地方。这一带平原十分平坦开阔，太阳得以无拘无束地普照大地，正是在这片平原地区，太阳显露出了其无可置疑的神性。当基奥瓦人来到鸦雀族人聚居的地区之后，每当旭日东升时分，他们隔着大角羊河可以望见对岸的一些小山坡的阴面漆黑一片，而阳面种满庄稼的梯田却阳光灿烂，太阳这尊远古之神在经过轨道至点之后的运行对大地的影响令他们惊异。他们这时还不想马上折转方向，进入南边那块湿热低洼的盆地，一来他们必须让自己身体中的血液逐渐摆脱北方高山区寒冷气候的影响以适应南方平原地区的生存条件，二来他们也想留在这个回首可以望见高山的地方好多看一眼即将离别的故乡。经过短暂的停留休整之后，他们带着泰密神像继续东进。

黑丘陵是一个荒凉贫瘠的山丘地区，地表上覆盖的不是肥沃的土壤，而多是坚硬如铁的岩石，因其上空经常黑雾笼罩，故名黑丘陵。登顶其中一座山脊，便能看到远处的魔鬼塔高高耸立直插灰霾笼罩的天空，似乎是当初宇宙诞生之时，地核裂变，冲破地壳，冒出地面，形成此奇形之塔，世间万物的运动也就由此开始。大自然中不乏一些令人惊异莫名，不得不叹为鬼斧神工的事物，魔鬼塔即是其中之一。两个世纪以前，由于找不到别的办法解释魔鬼塔的成因，基奥瓦人便杜撰了一个神话故事来解释这块巨石的由来。我的祖母是这样讲述这个故事的："很久很久以前，有一男七女共八个孩子在一起玩耍。突然间男孩子不知中了什么魔法，口不能言，全身颤抖，而且开始用手和脚一起走路。很快他的手指变成了爪子，浑身上下长满了毛。好端端一个男孩子眨眼间就变成了一只熊。一起玩耍的那七个姐妹们吓坏了，撒腿就跑，那头熊就跟着她们屁股追。七姐妹终于跑到了一棵大树墩旁边，大树墩开口跟她们说话，吩咐她们爬上树墩。等她们一爬上树墩之后，那树墩的高度便开始上升。熊追过来要吃她们. 可树墩的高度让熊孩子怎么也够不着。熊一生气，就用屁股去擂那树墩，擂不动树墩，便围着树墩打转转，用熊爪子在树皮上乱抓。后来，七姐妹飞升上天，成了大熊星座的北斗七星。"

从那时起，只要这个传说还在流传，基奥瓦人就跟夜晚的星空有者一种沾亲带故的亲密关系。不管以前他们生活在山里的时候是个多么卑贱的山野村妇，现在他们

的身份与那时在不可同日而语了。不管他们的生活有多艰难，不管他们曾经遭受过多少苦难，也不管他们将来还可能遭受多少苦难，反正他们已经走出荒山，寻出一条通向平原的新生活之路。

我的祖母对太阳满怀崇敬之情，这种圣洁的情感在今天的人世间几乎已经无影无踪了。她身上保有一种古人特有的虔诚敬畏之心。虽说到晚年时被转化成了基督教徒，但在此之前她老人家已经在本民族文化里浸润了大半辈子，从来都不曾忘记自己与生俱来的权利。孩提时代，她看过族人们跳太阳舞，也亲身参加过那种一年一度的宗教活动仪式，因此她才得以了解自己的族人是如何在泰密神像前求医治病的。当基奥瓦人的最后一次太阳舞仪式于1887年在雨山溪流上游的沃希托河河畔举行之时，她大约有七岁。由于野牛被美国殖民者灭绝了，为了要圆满完成古老的祭祀仪式——把一只公野牛的牛头挂在治病神树上——族中专门选派一群老者组成一个代表团远赴德克萨斯，去找大名鼎鼎的牧场老板古德奈，恳求对方以货物交换的方式换给他们一头野牛。她十岁那年，基奥瓦人举行了最后一次旨在宣传太阳舞文化的聚会。当时根本找不到野牛，他们只好弄一张牛皮挂在神树上。可是没等到太阳舞开始，就有一连从希尔要塞出发的骑兵奉命前来驱散参会部落民众。无缘无故被剥夺了基本的宗教信仰和活动的自由，眼睁睁地看着黑心的美国佬为了牛皮生意而肆意屠杀草原上的野生牛群，然后任由其尸体堆在地上腐烂，基奥瓦人实在无能为力，只得从此永远地告别神树太阳舞了。这是发生于1890年7月20日的事情，发生地点就在沃希托河大河湾畔。当时我祖母就在那现场目击了全过程。经此打击，不幼小的心灵感受到什么叫痛苦，在她有生之年，她一直忍受着难言的煎熬，因为那场毁教灭神的惨剧总是时时闪现于眼前。

因为现在只能从记忆中回想祖母的影像。我脑海中浮现的祖母形象以几个她所特有的姿势出现：冬日的上午站在木柴炉子边手持一柄平底大铁锅翻炒着锅里的烧肉；坐在房屋南面的窗前，低头串着珠子，待到时间一长视力模糊看不见珠子了，她便双手合十，低头静坐半晌；上了年纪之后拄着拐杖外出，行动迟缓，步履蹒跚；向神灵祈祷。我记忆做出现得最多的还是她向神灵祈祷的场景。由于经历了太多的苦难，要诉说痛苦并祈盼希望，她常常会念出冗长而又显得杂乱无章的祈祷词。我从来都不敢确定自己有权利去听她的祷告内容，因为她做祈祷的方式十分独特，并不像一般的众人可以一起做的纯属于礼仪性的祷告。我至今依然能清楚地记得最后一次看到她做祈祷时的情景，漆黑的夜晚，她赤裸着上身站立在床边，口中不停地念念有词。昏暗的煤油灯光摇摇曳曳地照到她黝黑的皮肤上，她那白日里总是盘成辫子的一头长长的乌发，此时一半披散在肩膀上，一半垂至胸前，恰似围着一条黑色丝巾披肩。我不会基奥瓦语，自然是根本听不懂她念的祈祷词究竟是什么意思，但那音调是那样的悲伤凄凉，凄婉的子句音节之间还隐隐约约能听出断断续续的哽咽呜咽。她开始时起调甚高，简直是声嘶力竭，然后渐渐由高变低，直到声音完全止息；然后再吸一口气重新开始，就这样一次次周而复始——每次都是那样拼尽全身气力的声嘶力竭，就像，可又不大像，是人类遇到危难之时发出求救的声音。屋子里灯光摇曳，黑影婆娑，映照得祖母如影似幻，仿佛已转到了另一个世界，早已超出三界外，不在五行中。不

过，这终究只是种幻觉。可以说那时我就已经知道，今后我恐怕很难再见到她了。

在一望无际的美洲中央大平原上，一栋栋的房屋看起来有点像是野外站岗的哨兵。也有点像是古时候的气象观察员。那些房屋中用作建筑材料的木头，要不了多久就会呈现出一副年深月久的古貌。无论涂上什么颜色都禁不住风吹雨打。很快就会褪色，然后经太阳暴晒木头就成灰色，表层慢慢会粉化，钉进木头的钉子会生锈变红，窗户玻璃也变得黑糊糊的，根本不能透光。你可能以为房屋里面什么都没有，但其实里面有许多鬼魂，那些为保卫这片家园而命丧疆场、暴尸荒野的印第安人鬼魂。他们密密麻麻挤满了天空，你感觉他们离得不远，似乎仅几步之遥，可是真想走近他们却比你想像的要难。它们属于远方，那儿是它们的领地。

想当年，我祖母家曾经是一个充满欢声笑语的地方，经常人来人往，高朋满座。尤其是夏季里族人们总是兴高采烈地欢聚在一起。基奥瓦人是个热爱夏季的民族，冬季他们怕冷，闭门不出；但一入春季，大地回暖，万物复苏之时，他们便再也憋不住了；古老民族那种爱动的天性会重新回到他们身上。我小时候看到的常来我祖母家做客的那些老年人多半长的精瘦，皮肤粗黑如皮革，走路时腰板挺得很直，一点不像寻常老人弯腰驼背的模样。他们头戴黑色大沿帽，身穿白色宽大得迎风飘摆的肥套衫。他们头发上搽了油，辫子上扎着彩色布条。有些人还画着花脸，身上光荣地带着从前英勇杀敌时落下的伤疤。他们都是从前的一个军事首领委员会的成员，来这里参加聚会是为了别人，同时也让自己永远不要忘记他们曾经的英雄事迹。他们的妻子和女儿们平日在家里把他们伺候得十分妥帖。

在外面的聚会上，那些女人们也可以放纵一下自己，无事生非的八卦一下、这既是她们在家里当牛做马的生活状态的一种标记，同时也算是一种补偿。所以每当在外面参加聚会时，那些女人们喜欢叽叽喳喳，甚至手舞足蹈地高谈阔论，打打闹闹互相开玩笑、恶作剧作弄人，还有的有事无事喜欢大惊小怪地发出高声尖叫。出门在外时，她们披着滚着流苏边的绣花披肩，戴着亮丽的彩色串珠和德银合金首饰。可是一回到家里，下厨房就成了她们的拿手好戏，她们能把一日三餐都做成着丰盛的宴席。

以前还经常有一些祈神大会和大型夜宴之类的活动。那时候我还是个小孩，就喜欢在举办那些活动的时候和族中的一帮兄弟姊妹们在户外玩耍，因为那时候户外总是灯火通明，把大地照耀的如同白昼，周围的老人们欢乐地放声歌唱，嘹亮的歌声响彻夜空。品着无比丰盛的美味佳肴，听着不绝于耳的欢声笑语，对于一个小孩而言，实在是惊喜无限。当欢宴活动结束，暗夜的寂静重新降临时，我和祖母回家睡觉，人躺在屋里都可以听见远处小溪中的蛙鸣，甚至可以感受到屋外空气流动的气息。

现在，祖母家的房屋里有一种葬礼般的寂静，像是在为某种已经逝去的文明举办的一个无尽的的守灵夜。祖母家的墙封了。当我服丧期间回到祖母家时，我平生第一次感觉到原来祖母的房屋竟是如此的窄小，似有一种四面的墙壁包围过来的感觉。时间已经是深夜，天上挂着一轮明月，几乎是正圆之月。我独自一人在厨房门前的石阶上坐了很久很久. 从那儿我能看见对面辽阔的大地；我能看见小溪边那长长的一排大树，能看见淡淡的月光映照下的那一个接一个的小山坡连绵起伏的草原，还能看见天上的明亮的北斗七星。又一次我抬头望月，看到一幅奇异的景象。就在我眼前咫尺之

遥的台阶边栏杆上，静静地栖息着一只蟋蟀。映入我的视线的是这样一幅奇异的景象：一轮圆月如画，而那只蟋蟀恰如一块化石标本嵌入画中。我心里在想，这小生命是想将自己的生死命运托付给月亮，因为天地虽大，却只有在那儿它小小的存在的价值方能得到永恒而又完全的实现。恰在这时，一阵暖风乍起，溪水荡起阵阵涟漪，我心中的一种渴望与憧憬也随之泛起。

翌日清晨，天刚蒙蒙亮我便早早起床，踏上通往雨山的那条土路。天气已经燥热难当，耐不住燥热的草蜢开始漫天飞舞。毕竟还是清晨时分，树林中传出鸟儿欢快的歌声。山坡上长的高高的黄草在迎着朝霞闪闪发亮，一只铗尾鸟闪电般划空掠过。我终于看见在那儿——当然也应该是在那儿，一条长长的充满传奇色彩的甬道的尽头，立着我祖母的坟墓。周围到处可见一块块黑色石碑，上面都镌刻着祖先们的名字。我回望了一眼雨山，便默默地离开了。

习题解析

Ⅰ. 口语展示

参见：

tp://digital. library. okstate. edu/encyclopedia/entries/m/mo007. html

http://en. wikipedia. org/wiki/N. _Scott_Momaday

http://en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Kiowa_people

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. The rainy mountain is a rounded hill sanding northwest apart from the main Wichita Mountains in Kiowa County, Oklahoma. It is a prominent landmark for the Plains Indians on the southern plains. It has four distinct seasons, and it is extreme hot in summer and cold in winter. Loneliness is a major quality of the landscape.

2. His grandmother was born (around 1880) at a time when the Kiowa were still living in their golden time or to be more exact, the last moment of their golden time.

3. They are all good at fighting. They were driven onto the Staked Plains because of autumn rain. In order to save themselves, they surrendered to the soldiers at Fort Sill and were imprisoned in the old stone corral. The author's grandmother was spared the humiliation of those gray walls by eight or ten years.

4. The Kiowa forebears came down from the high country in western Montana nearly three centuries ago. In the late seventeenth century they began a long migration to the south and east. In process of migration, the Kiowas were befriended by the Crows. They acquired horses, and their ancient nomadic spirit was suddenly free of the ground. They also acquired

Tai – me, the sacred Sun Dance doll. What's more, they acquired the sense of destiny therefore courage and pride.

5. According to the origin myth, the Kiowa people entered the world through a hollow log. The Kiowas came from the mountains of Montana where they had lived before their migration to the Great Plains. Those mountains were so high and forest so dense that the sunlight could not penetrate them, thus they came from a sunless world to a great plain.

6. The author thought Yellowstone was the top of the world, a region of deep lakes and dark timber, canyons and waterfalls. The author said that people might have a sense of confinement there because the mountains were too high. It's free there, but the Kiowas felt they were bend and blind in the wilderness.

7. Devil's Tower is one of the things in nature that engender an awful quiet in the heart of man. Refer to Paragraph 8 for the details of the legend.

8. The author's grandmother had a reverence for the sun. The author here is criticizing modern humans who, almost without exception, have no holy regard for nature.

9. The last Kiowa Sun Dance was held in 1887. In the religious ceremony, they would dance. Tai – me is said to be a sort of savior figure for the Kiowa. In order to consummate the ancient sacrifice – to impale the head of a buffalo bull upon the medicine tree – a delegation of old men journeyed into Texas, there to beg and barter for an animal from the Goodnight herd.

10. When the author's grandmother was ten when the Kiowas came together for the last time as a living Sun Dance culture. They could find no buffalo, they had to hang an old hide from the sacred tree. But just before the dance, a company of soldiers rode out to disperse the tribe. Judged by the values of Christianity and European civilization, the Native American cultures appeared to be inferior and backward. So the U. S. government perceived the Sun Dance as idolatry and therefore abolished it by force.

11. The houses were like sentinels in the plains at that time. Now, there was a funeral silence in the rooms and the author felt how small the houses were. When the author sat on the stone steps, he saw a cricket had perched upon the handrail, only a few inches away from me and the creature filled the moon like a fossil.

B. 课文欣赏问题:

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

参见“核心内容解析”中的4,6,7,8,10,30,60,63,79。

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

参见“词汇注释”和“短语表达”部分。

B.

In language, alliteration refers to repetition of a particular sound in the first syllables of a series of words and/or phrases. Alliteration has historically developed largely through poetry and is still used often in poetry. In this essay, the author uses alliteration a lot.

Here are some examples from the essay: brittle and brown (Para. 1), willow and witch hazel (Para. 1), great green - and-yellow grasshoppers (Para. 1), the eagle and the elk (Para. 6), the badger and the bear (Para. 6), bent and blind (Para. 6), sad in the sound (Para. 11), lean and leather (Para 13), jest and gesture (Para. 13), fright and false alarm (Para. 13).

The frequent use of alliteration shows the author's special interest in the sound of language, the rhythm of language, and how words sound to him and the reader. Alliteration helps to achieve a poetic effect of description.

C.

1. The weather here is extremely harsh.

2. In summer the prairie is very hot.

3. They were no longer dominated by the simple necessity of survival; they were a proud and dangerous group of fighters and thieves, hunters and pious believers in the sun as their god.

4. In a sense, their migration confirmed the ancient myth that they entered the world from a hollow log, for they did emerge from the sunless mountain forests.

5. Although my grandmother never left Rainy Mountain in her long life, the immense landscape of the Great Plains existed clearly in her memory as if she had lived there herself.

6. As hunters, it was very important for the Kiowa to be able to see a long way. So if a Kiowa could see very far, he would be respected by his fellow Kiowa.

7. They would not yet change the direction southward to the land lying below which was like a large kettle. First, they must give their bodies some time to get used to the plains. Second, they didn't want to lose sight of the mountains so soon.

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英：

1. Changes in the political situation brought the two small parties into alliance.

2. His failure was due to his disposition rather than his ability.

3. I have something important to discuss with you. Could you spare half an hour?

4. Many people prefer to chat online as this can spare them any awkwardness that may occur when talking face to face.

5. No longer are the rivers clean and clear, and the water quality has reduced to worse than Level V, unfit even for agricultural irrigation.

6. Short as it is, the article is very rich in symbolic implications which deserve a thorough analysis.

7. The snow mountain reached into sky, its beauty beyond all comparison.

8. He left home as a child and has seen little of his father since then. So he never feels at home in his father's presence.

9. As this meeting is vey important, nobody should be absent without cause.

10. In her memory, her mother was at once severe and kind.

B. 英译汉:

1. 虽然那里很美丽,但人们可能有受束缚、被禁锢的感觉。

2. 放眼望去,四周天际近在咫尺,触手可及。这天际是树木围成的高墙和一条条幽深的裂缝。

3. 七月,落基山脉面向平原的山坡上长满了亚麻、荞麦、景天和翠雀等各种植物。

4. 草木樨长满了山丘,它低垂的枝叶盖到地上,密密地封住土壤。

5. 基奥瓦人来到克劳人的土地上,他们在黎明时,隔着巨角河可以看到山的背阴处,充足的阳光照在层层的庄稼地上。

6. 在一座山顶上,我看到魔鬼塔高高插入灰蒙蒙的天空,似乎在时间诞生之时,地核开裂,地壳破裂,宇宙的运动从此开始。

7. 我的祖母对太阳怀有一种敬畏,而这种神圣的敬意现在在人类身上几乎不存在了。

8. 在当时的视线下,那只蟋蟀就像化石一样镶嵌在月亮中。

9. 我猜想,那蟋蟀到那里去生活和死亡,因为只有在那里它的渺小价值才能变得完整和永恒。

C. 段落翻译:

参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读,思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Twelve

Ships in the Desert (Edited)

词汇注释

<u>lap</u>[læp] *v.* (of water) make gentle splashing sounds(指水)发出轻轻的拍打声

【例句】waves **lapping** on a beach 轻轻拍打海滩的浪

dune[djuːn] *n.* mound of loose dry sand formed by the wind 沙丘

<u>divert</u>[di'vəːt] *v.* turn (a person or thing) aside (from a course, direction, etc.) ; deflect 转移,使(人,物)转向,使偏斜

【例句】**divert** a ship from its course 使船只转变航向

trans-Antarctic *adj.* crossing or spanning the Antarctic 横贯南极的

parka['pɑːkə] *n.* a jacket made from skin and with a hood, worn in arctic regions 风雪外套,皮猴儿

glacier['glæsjə, gleiʃə] *n.* mass of ice, formed by snow or mountains, moving slowly down a valley 冰河,冰川

<u>accessible</u>[ək'sesəbl] *adj.* that can be reached, used, etc. 可接近的,可进入的

【例句】books not **accessible** to the public 公众无法接触到的书

upwind['ʌpwind] *adj. adv.* in the direction from which the wind is blowing 逆风的

【例句】If we are **upwind** of the animal, it may smell our scent. 如果我们处于那动物的上风位置,它就能闻到我们的气味。

<u>inexorable</u>[in'eksərəbl] *adj.* continuing unstoppably;relentless 不可阻挡的;坚持不懈的;无情的

【例句】the **inexorable** march of progress 势不可挡的进展

同义词：merciless, pitiless, relentless

merciless 常用于形容非人的力量，如：the merciless glare of the noonday sun（正午阳光射出无情的光），当它涉及人的行动时，重点在说明物而不是人，如：the merciless eye of the camera（毫不留情的照相机镜头）；**pitiless** 一般用来说明人的情况，有冷酷，坚决的味道，如：a pitiless tyrant（一位冷酷的暴君）；**relentless** 语气一般不那么重，通常在使用时，它适用于毫无同情心或不为恳求所动的人或事，如：a relentless public prosecutor（一位铁面无私的公诉人）；**inexorable** 是最正式的词，它可用来指不气馁，不退让的人，如：an inexorable foe（一个凶顽的敌人），但它多指客观力量的不可抗拒，不能阻止，不可改变，如：The terrorist could not escape his inexorable fate.（恐怖分子逃脱不了注定的命运。）

反义词：alterable, changeable, yielding

pitch [pitʃ] *v.* erect and fix in a place, esp. for a short time（尤指临时）搭（帐篷）

【例句】They **pitched** a camp on the moor for the night. 他们在沼泽地搭帐篷过夜。

slab [slæb] *n.* a piece that is flat, broad and fairly thick 厚平板

frigid [ˈfridʒid] *adj.* extremely cold, without heat or warmth 极冷的，严寒的

同义词：cold, freezing

指温度时，**cold** 可指某处于所期望的低温，更常指令人不愉快的低温度，如：cold weather（冷天气）；**freezing** 比 cold 的程度更强，尤指低于冰点的温度，如：a week of freezing weather（冰天冻地的一周）。

反义词：hot, warm.

rendezvous [ˈrɔndivuː] *n.* place designated for meeting or assembling 指定集合地，会合点

【例句】make a **rendezvous** with Bill at the pub at two o' clock. 约定两点钟与比尔在酒馆见面。

polar [ˈpəulə] *adj.* of or near the North or South Pole（南北）极的，地极的

【例句】**polar** ice 地极的冰

eerie 或 **eery** [ˈiəri] *adj.* causing a feeling of mystery and fear 引起神秘和恐怖感觉的，可怕的

【例句】an **eerie** silence 可怕的沉寂

define [diˈfain] *v.* show (a line, shape, feature, etc) clearly 清楚地显示出（线条，形状，特征等）

【例句】The mountain was sharply **defined** against the eastern sky. 那座山在东方天空的衬托下显得轮廓分明。

hummock [ˈhʌmək] *n.* a ridge or rise in the ice field 冰群，（冰原上的）冰丘

collide [kəˈlaid] *v.* come into violent contact, strike violently against each other 碰撞，

猛撞

【例句】The bus **collided** with a van. 公共汽车与客货车相撞。

scenario[si'nɑːriəu] *n.* a sequence of events esp. when imagined; an account or synopsis（设想中的）未来事态；方案

【例句】a possible **scenario** for war 战争中可能出现的情况。

controversial[ˌkɔntrə'vəːʃər] *adj.* causing or likely to cause controversy 引起或可能引起争论的

【例句】a **controversial** person 有争议的人

Arctic['ɑːktik] *adj.* of the regions around the North Pole 北极的

tundra ['tʌndrə] *n.* any of the vast, nearly level treeless plains of the arctic regions 冻原，冻土带

billow['biləu] *v.* rise or roll like waves 如波涛般起伏或翻滚

【例句】Smoke **billowed** from the burning house. 浓烟从着火的房中滚滚地冒出来。

pasture['pɑːstʃə] *n.* ground suitable for grazing animals 牧场

blot[blɔt] *v.* make blots on; stain(with ink), darken or hide entirely 涂污，玷污，把……遮蔽

【例句】Thick clouds **blotted** out the view. 厚厚的云层把风景遮住了。

noctilucent[nɔkti'ljuːsnt] *adj.* designating or of a luminous cloud of unknown composition, visible at night in the polar regions at an altitude of 50C° miles 夜光云的，夜间发光的

cloak[kləuk] *v.* cover or hide (as if) with a cloak（好像）用斗篷掩盖或隐蔽

【例句】The negotiation was **cloaked** in secrecy. 谈判是秘密进行的。

shimmer['simə] *v.* shine with an unsteady and soft light 闪烁微光

【例句】moonlight **shimmering** on the lake 湖面上闪烁的月光

同义词：sparkling, flashing, glimmering, flicking

这些词指光耀眼地闪烁，其或者反射自一个移动的表面，或由一个不稳定的光源本身发射出来。**sparkling** 指由吸光物体反射出来的不稳定但明亮的光，如：sparkling diamond（闪光的钻石）；**flashing** 意为光亮和黑暗有规律的交替明灭，如：the flashing car indicator light（汽车指示灯一闪一灭）；**glimmering** 即可指光源又可指反光呈不固定和模糊状态，如：the last coals of the glimmering（微火中的最后几块煤）；**flicking** 大多数时候指光源而不指反光，表示分散的或不规则的闪动，如：flicking logs in the grate（壁炉中忽闪着火苗的木柴）。

反义词：dull, gloomy

translucent[trænz'ljuːsnt] *adj.* allowing light to pass through but not transparent 半透明的

methane['meθein] *n.* odourless, colorless, inflammable gas that occurs in coalmines and in marshes 甲烷；沼气

landfill[ˈlændfil] *n.* the disposal of garbage or rubbish by burying it under a shallow layer of ground 埋入地下的垃圾

paddy[ˈpædi] *n.* field where rice is growing 稻田

termite[ˈtəːmait] *n.* small insect, found chiefly in tropical areas, that is very destructive to timber 白蚁

biomass[ˈbaiəumæs] *n.* the total mass or amount of living organisms in a particular area or volume 生物量

condense[kənˈdens] *v.* (cause sth. to) change from gas or vapour to a liquid (使某物)由气体或蒸气变成液体,浓缩

【例句】Steam **condenses** into water when it touches a cold surface. 蒸气接触冷的表面而凝结成水珠。

altitude[ˈæltitjuːd] *n.* height above sea-level 海拔,高度

【例句】We are flying at an **altitude** of 20,000 feet. 我们在两万英尺高空飞行。

extinction[iksˈtiŋkʃən] *n.* the fact or state of being or becoming extinct, dying out, as of a race, species of animal, etc. 灭绝,绝种

【例句】Thousands of species of birds are facing **extinction**. 数千种鸟类正面临灭绝的危险。

rip[rip] *v.* divide or make a hole in (sth.) by pulling sharply 撕裂或拉破(某物)

【例句】I' ve **ripped** my trousers. 我把裤子撕破了。

同义词:tear

tear 用途比 rip 广泛,它表示把像布或像纸那样没有接缝的材料撕开,它也可以指扯裂的破坏行为;**rip** 指沿着布料最脆弱的地方撕开,它也可以指用粗鲁的方法或强暴的手段撕裂或切开。

反义词:connect, repair

spectral[ˈspektrəl] *adj.* of or like a specter, ghostly 鬼怪似的,幽灵的

paralysis[pəˈrælisis] *n.* loss of feeling in or control of a part of the body, caused by a disease of or an injury to the nerves; total inability to move, act, etc. 麻痹,瘫痪

【例句】complete **paralysis** of industry caused by the strike 罢工造成工业的完全瘫痪

skirmish[ˈskəːmiʃ] *n.* a brief fight or encounter between small groups, usually an incident of a battle 小规模战斗,前哨站

strategic[strəˈtiːdʒik] *adj.* of strategy, forming part of a plan or scheme 战略上的

【例句】**strategic** decisions 战略决策

aquifer[ˈækwifə] *n.* an underground layer of porous rock, sand, etc., containing water, into which wells can be sunk 含水层

chlorine[ˈklɔːriːn] *n.* chemical element, a poisonous, greenish-yellow gas with a pungent smell, used to sterilize water and in industry 氯

chlorofluorocarbon[ˈklɔːrəuˌfluərəuˈkaːbən] *n.* any of a series of gaseous or low-

boiling, inert, nonflammable derivatives of methane or ethane, used as refrigerants and solvents and as propellant in aerosol products 氟利昂

disrupt[dis'rʌpt] *v.* cause disorder in sth 将(某事物)弄乱,扰乱

【例句】Demonstrators succeeded in **disrupting** the meeting. 示威者搅乱了会议。

regulate['regjuleit] *v.* control or direct (sth.) by means of rules and restrictions; adjust so that it functions as desired 控制和管理;调节

同义词:control, supervise, govern

control 就是对人或事物施加一种约束或支配的影响;**supervise** 指监督、管理一项工作或雇员,分派任务,指导和检查完成任务的情况,如:A housewife may supervise the work done by her maid. (家庭主妇可以检查她女佣人干的活。) **govern** 指运用权利专横地,或是通过宪法来控制,它还暗示知识、判断力和能力的运用,通常是有系统的管理;**regulate** 是指用章程和制度或已定的模式来命令和控制。

ultraviolet['ʌltrə'vaiəlit] *adj.* lying just beyond the violent end of the visible spectrum and having wavelengths shorter than approximately 4,000 angstroms 紫外(线)的

equilibrium[i:kwi'libriəm] *n.* state of being balanced 平衡,均势

【例句】He can't maintain enough **equilibrium** to ride a bike. 他骑自行车不能保持平衡。

pervasive[pə:'veisiv] *adj.* present and perceived everywhere 无处不在的,遍布的

【例句】the **pervasive** mood of pessimism 普遍存在的悲观情绪

magnification[ˌmægnifi'keiʃən] *n.* making sth. appear larger; power of magnifying 放大

【例句】a lens with excellent **magnification** 放大能力极佳的透镜

exponential[ˌekspəu'nenʃəl] *adj.* of or indicated by an exponent 指数的

axiom['æksiəm] *n.* a statement universally accepted as true 格言,箴言

cumulative['kju:mjulətiv] *adj.* gradually increasing in amount, force, etc. by one addition after another 渐增的,积累的

【例句】the **cumulative** effect of several illness 几种疾病日积月累造成的影响

sustenance['sʌstinəns] *n.* one's means of livelihood; maintenance 生计,支撑

ozone['əuzəun, əu'z -] *n.* form of oxygen with a sharp and refreshing smell 臭氧

depletion[di'pli:ʃən] *n.* the gradual using up or destruction of capital assets, esp. of natural resources 资产(尤指自认资源)的耗减

deforestation[diˌfɔris'teiʃən] *n.* the removing of forests from(a place) 毁林,滥伐森林

【例句】Those who committed **deforestation** will be punished. 砍伐森林者终将受到惩罚。

precedent[pri'si:dənt; 'presi -] *n.* earlier decision, case, event, etc. that is regarded as an example or rule for what comes later 先例,前例

【例句】create/establish/set a **precedent** for sth 开创先例

weaponry['wepənri] *n.* the design and production of weapons 武器的设计与生产

rogue[rəug] *n.* dishonest or unprincipled man 无耻之徒;mischievous person 调皮捣蛋的人

deploy[di'plɔi] *v.* use (sth.) effectively 有效地使用

【例句】**deploy** one's arguments 有效地利用证据

leapfrog['liːpˌfrɔg] *v.* jump or leap over (sb.)跃过

obsolete['ɔbsəliːt] *adj.* no longer in use or practice;out-of-date 已废弃的;过期的

同义词:obsolescent, old-fashioned

obsolete 指已经完全不再使用,不再坚持或完全被废弃的事物,而 **obsolescent** 指的是正处于被废弃的过程中,如:The death penalty for theft has long been obsolete, but for graver crimes it is now becoming obsolescent in most western countries.(对偷窃的死刑惩罚早已废弃,但对较严肃的犯罪处以死刑在大多数西方国家才开始逐渐被废弃。),另外,**obsolescent** 还指对某产品因原有式样显得陈旧而需进行更新;**old-fashioned** 表示某物因时尚变化而不再适用。

反义词:modern

drastic['dræstik] *adj.* having a strong or violent effect. 激烈的,猛烈的

【例句】**Drastic** measures will have to be taken to prevent pollution. 为防止污染必须采取严厉措施。

短语表达

at stake: to be won or lost; being risked 在胜败关头,冒风险

【例句】This decision put out lives **at stake**. 这一决定,我们的生命就凶吉难保了。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. **The author**: Al Gore was born in 1948 in Washington D. C. He was U. S. Senator from the state of Tennessee. In 1992 he became Vice-President under President Bill Clin-

ton. He wrote a book ***Earth in the Balance*, *from which our text was taken*, *researching on the underlying causes of the environmental crisis.***

作者:艾尔·戈尔,1948 年生于美国首都华盛顿,1984—1992 年任美国田纳西州议员,1992 年成为克林顿的副总统。本文选自他所撰写的著作《地球的生态平衡》,研究地球上环境危机的内在原因。

2. **strategic conflict**: Only struggle that will endanger a nation's existence and must be viewed against the background of the world will be considered as "strategic" conflict.

战略性对抗:凡是威胁到一个国家的生存并且必须站在全世界的角度来考虑的问题属于战略性对抗。

3. **acid rain**: Rain with a high concentration of acids produced by sulfur dioxide (二氧化硫), nitrogen oxide (二氧化氮), etc. emitted during the combustion of fossil fuels; it has a destructive effect on plant and aquatic life, buildings, etc.

酸雨:在燃烧化石燃料过程中释放的二氧化硫、二氧化氮等物质造成酸的高度集中;它会对植物、水生物、建筑物等造成破坏。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

In the essay, the author presents to readers plenty of images of environmental crisis which are commonly seen in all parts of the globe. These crises, some of which might threaten a nation's survival, such as the increase of chlorine, global warming, etc., can demonstrate a violent collision between nature and human beings. Therefore, a change in man's thinking, in man's concept on the relationship between nature and human beings, is the most important thing.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

By talking about ships in the desert which used to be the inland sea, and where there should have been gentle blue-green waves lapping against the side of the ship but which now is a desert, the writer naturally introduces a subject of the environmental crisis. The organizational pattern of the piece is the presentation, analysis and solution of the problems. In this writing about a scientific research on the environment, the writer makes use of very few technical terms(专业技术词汇)and very few figuratively used words. The words chosen are common, concise and formal. But what seems to make the piece a bit difficult to understand is the use of so many long sentences.

作者在文章开头运用对比的手法描写过去与现在的环境的巨大反差的实例,自然地引出本文的话题——环境危机。本文是按照提出问题,分析问题,解决问题的结构写的。文中专业技术词汇和含修辞含义的词用得极少。作者措辞平实、准确、正式,表达明晰。但大量的长句的使用无疑增加了理解课文的难度。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. I was standing in the sun ... on a good day: I was standing on the hot steel deck of a fishing ship which has the ability of cleanimg and preparing for marketing or canning 50 tons of fish caught on a productive day. (我站在一艘渔船的滚烫的甲板上,头顶上骄阳似火。这艘船在丰收的日子里一天处理加工的鱼可达50吨。) in the sun: in the sunlight 在太阳下,与之相对的是 in the shade (在荫处)。to process: to prepare by a special method 用特殊方法处理。catch: the amount caught 捕获的鱼的总量。on a good day:这里的 good 意为 satisfying 或 productive 令人满足的或收获多的。

2. With the sun glaring at midnight through a hole in the sky:太阳穿过午夜的天空中的一个臭氧空洞照射着地面。这句中的 a hole 指的是 ozone depletion (臭氧空洞)。

3. Acre by acre, the rain forest is being burned to create fast pasture for fast-food beef: Bit by bit trees in the rain forest are felled and the land is cleared and turned into pasture where cattle can be raised quickly and slaughtered and the beef can be used in hamburgers. (亚马逊雨林正在被人们大片地烧毁,以便腾出地来用作饲养速食肉牛的牧场)。注意这一句中两次使用的 fast 一词的"弦外之音",它暗示的是雨林的迅速消失。

4. Just as man tear tusks ... between daylight and darkness: Men are killing such large number of elephants for their tusks that the species will soon extinguish. Likewise, we are using and destroying resources in such volume that we are disturbing the balance between daylight and darkness. (如同人类由于大量猎取象牙致使大象面临种群灭绝威胁一样,我们今天也由于大量破坏地球上的自然资源,致使白天和黑夜的平衡遭到破坏。) just as 句型意为"正如……一样",引导方式状语从句。ripping matter from its place 具有修辞含义,原意是指把某物从某处撕裂开,在课文中指"破坏自然资源"。such ... as to ... (如此……以致……)。

5. Whether it's the new frequency ... growing mountains of waste: Whether it is the fact that recently there are more hot days when the temperature is over 100 degrees F, or the fact that the sun burns our skin more quickly in recent times, or the fact that the debate over the way of disposing of the growing amount of waste matter comes up more frequently. (或是气温超过华氏一百度的高温天气频繁出现,或是太阳灼伤人的皮肤的速度的加快,或是公众对越积越多的废物该如何处理这一问题进行持续辩论的增多。) 抓住本句中的三个关键词: frequency, speed, constancy,这三个词分别代表了三个惊人现象。frequency 在这里指 frequent occurrence(出现频率),speed 在这里指 quickness(速度), constancy 在这里指 constant debates(无休止的辩论)

6. Yet we resist this truth ... against the mountains: Yet we resist this truth and find it difficult to think that we should treat our effect on the earth the same as the moon's gravitational pull on the oceans or the wind's effect on the mountains and measure our effect in the same way as we measure the effect of our natural forces. (然而,我们却拒不承认这一

事实，并且觉得难以想象，人类对地球的影响，现在也得用测量月球对海水的吸引力或暴风对高山的侵蚀作用的标准来测量。）used to calculate ... against the mountains 是过去分词短语，修饰 yardstick（尺度，标准），意思是"用测量月球对海水的吸引力或暴风对高山的侵蚀作用"。在这一句中 strength 和 force 都表示"力量"的意思，但作者用这两个词分别与 the moon's pull 和 the wind 搭配，显得十分贴切，恰到好处，使这个过去分词短语在结构上十分对仗。

7. The problem ... with the environment：What is involved is a matter of human relations with nature, rather than how mankind will affect nature.（我们所要解决的不是人类对环境如何产生影响的问题，而是人类如何协调处理同环境的关系的问题。）句中的介词 on 和 with 在课本中是斜体字，说明这是两个关键的词，on 在此句中含有 using pressure（施压）之意，而 with 则含有 coexisting（共存）之意，说明人类与自然界的关系必须是一种和谐的新型关系。not ... so much as：不是……而是……。

8. As a result ... the earth ecological system：As a result, if we want to solve the problem, we will have to carefully weigh and determine how important that relationship is and how important is the complicated interconnection among factors inside human society and between these factors and the main natural parts of global ecological system. 这个句子之所以有些复杂难度是因为英文介词短语较多，弄清楚这些介词短语所表达的含义，问题也就迎刃而解了。要弄懂这句话的含义，首先要看上下文所讲的内容，其次应弄清楚句中介词短语所表达的含义。the problem 指的是前一句中谈到的我们所面临的问题。介词短语 among factors within civilization 是定语，修辞 interrelationship，意思是人类文明中各种要素间的相互关系。them 指的是人类文明中的各种要素。

9. But each such deployment ... deployment of its own：Each advance in weaponry led to a new round of arms race, a race of much more destructive one.（但每次新武器的部署结果却只是促使对方加倍努力地研制更先进的武器。）leapfrog 一词是隐喻用法：原指一种跳背游戏，在本句中意思相当于 surpass，即"超越"的含义。

V. 参考译文

沙漠中的船只

（校订稿）

艾尔·戈尔

我当时正顶着炎炎烈日站在一艘渔船的滚烫的钢铁甲板上，该渔船在丰收的日子里一天就能捕鱼 50 吨并将其加工成鱼产品。但当日并非丰收的日子。我们当时停泊于曾是全中亚最丰产的渔场的地方，但当我从船头放眼远望时，只觉得渔业丰产的前景甚为暗淡。放眼向四面八方望去，本该有碧波拍打船舷的地方，如今只剩下一片干热的沙子。船队的其他船只也都搁浅在沙漠上，散布于绵延至天边的沙丘间。十年前，咸海还是世界上第四大内陆海，可以与北美五大湖中最大的湖泊相伯仲。而

今它的水面渐渐消失，这是因为一项欠考虑的水利工程将原应注入其中的水引入沙漠种植棉花所致。从如今的新湖岸穿越沙漠到这支渔船队现在永远停泊的位置差不多有40公里远。此时，在离这儿不远的莫伊纳克镇上，人们仍在生产、加工鱼罐头，但所用的鱼不是来自咸海，而是从1 000多英里以外的太平洋穿越西伯利亚用火车运过来的。

由于要对造成环境危机的深层原因进行调查，我周游世界各地，考察研究了许多这类环境破坏的典型事例。1988年深秋时节，在地球的最南端的横贯南极的高山上，头顶着午夜透过天空中的一个空洞照射下来的太阳光，我站在令人难以置信的严寒空气中，和一位科学家谈论他正在挖掘的时间隧道。这位科学家撩开身上的风雪皮大衣，露出了一张因日晒风吹而皲裂脱皮的脸。他指引我看从我们踩在脚下的冰川中挖出的一块钻心圆柱形标本上的年轮层。他将手指回移到二十年前的冰层上。“这就是美国国会通过洁净空气法案的地方。”在这与华盛顿远隔两大洲的地球之底，一个国家废气排放量的每一点减少，都能引起这个地球上最偏远而且最难到达的地方环境污染程度的变化。

但是，迄今为止地球大气层所发生的最重要的变化还是随着19世纪初期的工业革命一同开始的那一次变化，从那以后，变化的速度逐年加快。工业意味着烧煤、后来又是石油。我们开始燃烧大量的煤和石油——这就导致了大气层中二氧化碳含量的升高，因此将更多的热量阻隔在了大气层中，从而使地球逐渐变暖。离南极不到一百码处，有一条供滑雪飞机降落并保持引擎运转以防其金属部件冻凝住的冰跑道，科学家们顶着寒风在那儿一日数次地测空气，以便绘制图表来反映这种无情的变化发生的轨迹。访问期间，我观看到一位科学家绘出那天的监测结果，他把图表上一条大幅度向上倾斜的标记线的末端继续向着更高处推进。他告诉我——在这位于地球底部的地方——是多么容易看出地球大气层的惊人变化仍在加快其发生速度。

两年半以后，我又在地球的另一端，体验了晒着午夜的阳光，在寒冷的北冰洋上漂浮着的一块12英尺厚的冰板上搭的一个小帐篷里睡觉的滋味。饱享了一顿早餐后，我和同伴们一起乘坐雪地汽车继续向北行进数英里到了约定地点，那儿的冰层较薄——只有3英尺半厚——水下游弋着一艘核潜艇。潜艇破冰上浮，搭上我们这批新乘客后又潜下去，我得以与那些试图更精确地测量极地冰帽厚度的科学家们进行交谈。许多人认为极地冰帽由于地球变暖而正在变薄。此前我刚刚通过谈判帮助研究北极冰的科学家与美国海军达成协议，让他们得到海军方面由水下声呐系统探测到的本属于最高机密的有关资料，这些资料帮助他们了解北极冰帽所发生的变化。现在我想现场察看一下北极冰帽。登上潜艇大约八小时后，我们冲破了北极冰帽的冰层，浮上冰面后，我便发现自己置身于一片神奇瑰丽的冰雪世界，到处银装素裹，寒风呼啸，白光闪耀，勾画出天边地平线轮廓的是连绵起伏的小冰丘和冰块之间互相撞击挤压而形成的称作“压脊”的小山脉。但是，在这里，的空气中二氧化碳的含量也在迅猛上升，最终必然导致气温也随之上升——毫无疑问，地球变暖会使北极地区气温上升的速度远高于世界其他地区。随着极地空气的变暖，这里的冰层会融化变薄。

由于北极冰帽对全球气候系统的运转起着至关重要的作用，冰帽变薄带来的后果可能是灾难性的。

思考这些问题并不单纯是一种主观臆测性质的练习。我从北极回来后才过了六个月，就有一队科学家报告北极冰层的分布结构已发生显著变化，第二队科学家则在报告中提出了一个更有争议的看法（现在有大量资料可以间接证明）：总的说来，仅在过去十年当中，北极冰层已经变薄了百分之二。另外，科学家们几年前就已证明，在北极圈以北的许多地方，春雪融化的时间逐年提早，而且冰雪下面的冻土带深处的地温也在稳步上升。

凑巧的是，表明环境遭到破坏的一些最令人担忧的事例正好见于南北极中间的地方——准确地说是巴西境内的赤道附近地区——在那里，翻滚的烟雾云团经常弥漫在十分辽阔而如今却面临着消失威胁的亚马逊热带雨林的上空。这片雨林正被人们大片大片地烧毁，以便兴建饲养速食肉牛的速生牧场。我 1989 年初去那儿时得知，现在那儿旱季放火焚烧森林的时间也一年比一年早，每年都有面积超过田纳西州的大片森林遭到砍伐焚烧。据我们向导，生物学家汤姆·洛夫乔伊介绍，亚马逊雨林每平方英里的区域内栖息的鸟类就超过整个北美洲现存的鸟类——这意味着我们正在消灭成千上万种我们从来没有听到过的鸟鸣声。

不过，要见证人类对地球的破坏，不一定非要像我这样周游世界。如今，能反映地球环境危机的景象几乎是随处可见。有些夜晚，在北方高纬度地区，天空本身会呈现出另一种反映目前日益严重的生态失衡的可怕景象。假如日落后天空晴朗无云——而你又是在一个空气污染还没有完全遮蔽夜空的地方进行观察的话——你会看见一种奇异的云有时会出现在高空中。这种夜光云偶尔出现于夜幕开始笼罩大地的时候，在空中发出微微的半透明的白色亮光，看起来是那么怪异不自然。事实上它们本来就不自然：由于大气层中积聚了大量甲烷，夜光云的出现频率也开始不断提高（甲烷又称天然气，是由埋填垃圾、煤矿、稻田、新砍伐的林地里大群的白蚁、燃烧植物材料以及许多其他人类活动的过程中释放出来的）。即便过去天空偶尔也出现过夜光云，如今的情形却严重得多，所有这些超量的甲烷会将更多的水蒸气带到上层大气层中，到了更高的大气层就会凝结，又会形成更多的云。于是，当日落使云下的地球表面开始入夜以后很久，太阳光还会照射到这些高空的云层。

对天空中出现的这些怪现象我们应当持何种态度呢？是仅止于惊叹还是像我们在动物园中观看笼中动物时感受到的那种喜忧参半的感情？或许我们应当敬畏自己的破坏力量：正如人类为猎取象牙而大量捕杀大象，因数量太大而致使大象面临灭种威胁一样，我们现在如此肆意地糟践地球的资源以致白天黑夜之间的平衡都遭到破坏。在进行这种破坏行为的过程中，我们又在增加地球变暖的危险，因为甲烷是生成速度最快的温室气体之一，而其总量仅次于二氧化碳和水蒸气位居第三，因此它使得高空大气层的化学性质发生了变化。然而，即使完全不考虑这种威胁，单凭我们让这些闪着幽灵般亮光的阴云笼罩在夜空上这一点难道就不足以令我们警醒吗？莫非是我们的眼睛完全适应了人类文明的灿烂光辉因而根本看不清这些夜光云的本质——

实乃人类文明同地球之间的激烈冲突的物质化表现形式吗?

即使有时难以看出其深远意义,我们大家现在也都有过一些表明人类对环境造成破坏的令人惊奇的体验——不管气温超过100度的高温天气出现频率的新变化,还是太阳灼伤我们的皮肤的速度的新变化,或是公众对越积越高的废物堆该如何处理这一问题展开辩论的次数的新变化。但我们对这些预警信号做出的反应却有些令人不解。我们为何不发起大规模的行动来拯救我们的环境呢?换一种问法来问这个问题:为什么有些现象能惊醒我们,促使我们立即采取行动,积极寻求有效应对措施?而另外一些现象,虽然有时也同样引人注目,相反却为何只能引发我们的麻痹症,让我们不是积极寻求应对之策而是千方百计采取某种方便而不那么痛苦的转移注意力的策略呢?

不过,令人忧伤的破坏环境的现象有那么多,有时似乎还真叫人不知道该如何理解它们所预示的意义。在分析这些威胁本身的实质意义之前,我们不妨先对这些现象进行分类,这有助于我们对自己的思想与感情进行组织整理,以便作出适当的反映。

军队中有一套行之有效的分类方法。军方常常将冲突根据其发生的区域分为三个不同类别,即局部小冲突、地区性战斗和战略性大战。这第三类只用来专指威胁到一个国家的生死存亡,必须以全球为背景来认识的军事斗争。

对环境的威胁也可以用同样的方法来划分类别。比如,水污染、空气污染和非法倾倒废弃物等现象多数在性质上基本是属于局部性的,而像酸雨、地下蓄水层的污染以及大面积的溢油这一类问题则基本上是地区性的。在这两个类别中,可能因为有如此之多的局部性和地区性问题在世界各地同时出现而使这些问题貌似具有全球性特点,然而这些问题本身并不真正具有战略性意义,因为全球生态环境并没有因之而受到影响,文明的生存也没有因之而受到威胁。

然而,有一类新的环境问题确实会影响全球生态系统,而这种威胁本质上是战略性的。过去40年中大气层氯的含量增加了600%,这不仅发生在那些生产氟利昂这种罪魁祸首从而造成这一变化的国家,而且也发生在每一个国家的上空,还有南极上空、北极上空和太平洋上空的空气中——从地球表面一直延伸到天空的最高处。氯含量的增加破坏了地球调节太阳紫外线穿过大气层照射到地面的辐射量的自我调节功能。如果我们让氯含量继续增加,那么紫外线辐射量也将随之增加——到一定程度后所有动植物的生存就会受到威胁。

全球气候变暖也是一种战略性威胁。自第二次世界大战以来,大气层中二氧化碳和其他吸热分子含量已增加了将近25%,从而在世界范围内对地球调节大气层中保留的太阳热量的能力形成威胁。热量的增高会严重威胁到地球的气候平衡,这种平衡对于风型、降雨量、地表温度、洋流和海平面高度等有着决定性影响,而这些因素又决定着陆地和海上动植物的生态分布,而且对于人类社会的居住位置和生存方式也会产生重大影响。

换句话说,人类与地球之间的整个关系已经发生了变化,因为我们的人类文明突

然具备了影响全球环境而不只是某一特定地区环境的能力。我们都知道，人类文明通常都会对环境造成极大的影响。只说一个例子：现有证据表明，甚至在史前时期，人们为了寻觅食物，有时会故意纵火焚烧大片森林。而在当今时代，我们已经把地球表面的很大一部分重新整形了，城市铺上了混凝土，农村变成了精心培育的稻田、牧场、麦田和其他农作物种植地。然而，这些变化虽则有时看起来好像无孔不入，但直到近期，它们在地球生态系统中还只是微不足道的影响因素。的确，在我们的生存期以前，人们完全可以很有把握地认为我们所做的和所能做的任何事情都不可能对地球上的环境产生什么永久性的影响。但是今天我们应该抛弃的正是这种想法，只有抛弃了这种想法，我们才能够以战略性眼光来考虑我们同环境之间的新关系。

人类文明现在已成为造成地球环境变化的主要原因。可我们不愿意承认这一事实，并且觉得难以想象，我们对地球所带来的影响，现在也居然得用与测量月球对海洋的吸引力或风对高山的作用力一样的方法来测量。如果我们现在连像地球与太阳之间的关系这样至关重要的东西都有能力改变的话，我们当然就得承认自己有了一种新的责任，就是要明智而适当有节制地使用这种能力。然而，迄今为止，我们对地球自然系统的脆弱性似乎认识不足。

在 20 世纪，有两个决定我们人类与地球之间的关系的客观现实的关键因素发生了急剧变化：一是人口的急速惊人的增长，使得世界人口每十年的增长数字就相当于全中国的人口总数。二是科技革命的日新月异的加速进步，使我们影响周围世界的能力得到难以想象地提高，可以对构成地球的物质肆意地进行焚烧、砍伐、挖掘、搬运和改造。

人口的急剧增长既是我们与地球之间的关系发生变化的一个原因，也是表明这一变化有多么令人心惊的显著标志之一，将其置于历史的背景中来考察时更是如此。从 20 万年前现代人类出现之时起直到朱利叶斯·恺撒的时代，在地球表面上活动的人类还不到二亿五千万。1 500 年后，当克里斯托弗·哥伦布扬帆出海去寻找新大陆时，地球上大约有五亿人。到 1776 年托马斯·杰弗逊起草《独立宣言》时，人口数字又翻了一番，达到 10 亿。到 20 世纪中期，第二次世界大战结束之时，人口数字已增至 20 亿多一点。

换句话说，从人类在地球上出现时起到 1945 年，经历了不止 1 万代人的时间才使世界人口达到 20 亿。而如今，在一个人——比如我本人——的有生之年，世界人口便会从 20 亿猛增至 90 亿，这个增长目标现已完成过半。

像人口爆炸的情形一样，科技革命在 18 世纪已开始慢慢加速。这场正在进行的革命也突然以指数形式加速。比如，在许多科学领域中现在都有这样一个一致公认的事实：最近十年科学领域发生的重大新发现比之前的整个科学史上发生的总和还要多。尽管任何一项科学发现对我们与地球的关系所造成的影响都不可与核武器对我们与战争的关系所造成的影响同日而语，但若将这些发现加在一起，它们的确是彻底改变了我们累积的开发地球以求生存的能力——对地球无限制的过度开发，其结果就会完完全全同无限制的核战争一样不堪设想。

既然我们与地球间的关系发生了如此彻底的变化，我们就有必要认识这一变化并理解其深远意义。我们面临的考验是认清这样的事实：现在世界各地不断发生的破坏环境的各种令人触目惊心的事例，除了能对我们产生震撼和警醒作用外，它们之间还有许多其他的共同点。它们都是一个更重要的问题的外在表相，而这个问题在涉及面和严重性方面都超过我们所曾面对过的任何问题。全球变暖、臭氧耗损、物种消亡、砍伐森林——她们都有一个共同的原因：人类文明与地球的自然平衡之间的新关系。

这项挑战性任务其实有两个方面：一是要认识到我们伤害地球的能力具有全球性、甚至是永久性的影响；二是要认识到，我们人类是扮演着大自然的合作建造者的角色，理解这一新角色的唯一方法，就是将自己视为一套并不按我们习以为常的简单的因果定律来运作的复杂体系的一个组成部分。关键的问题不是我们对环境有何影响，而是我们同环境之间究竟是何关系。因此，寻求任何一种解决问题的办法都要有一个先决条件，就是认真考查评估我们人类与自然环境之间的这种关系，以及人类文明内部各种要素之间以及这些要素与地球生态系统的各个主要天然组成部分之间极其复杂的相互关系。

对我们的思维提出这种考验的先例只有一个，而这一先例又是涉及军方的。核武器的发明及后来美国和前苏联成千上万的战略性核武器的研制成功，迫使人们逐渐带着痛苦地认识到，由此获得的新能力不仅永远改变了两个超级大国之间的关系，而且也永远改变了人类与战争规则本身之间的关系。拥有核武器的国家之间爆发全面大战的后果突然有了一种新的可能性，就是双方同时彻底地毁灭。这种清醒的认识让我们开始认真地对这种战争可能发生的情况下双方关系的方方面面进行重新评估。早在1946年，一位战略家就曾断言使用导弹进行的战略轰炸，完全有可能撕开长期掩盖着战争性质变化的现实的那一层薄纱——让我们看清战争的性质已由一种伤害行为变成一种毁灭行为。

然而，在核军备竞赛的初期，两个超级大国都想当然地认为己方的行动能给对方的思维施加一种简单而直接的影响。数十年来，在发展武器方面取得的每一项进展都被某一方用来恫吓对方。但每次这样恫吓的结果却是促使另一方努力研制更先进的武器以超越对方。慢慢地，人们都已经看清楚，核军备竞赛问题的主要成因并不是科技。它因科技因素而变得更加复杂，这是事实。但其真正起因却在于超级大国之间的关系，而其产生的基础则是人们对战争的目的和本质意义的陈旧认识。

要寻找军备竞赛问题的最终解决办法，不能寄望于任何一方装备某种新的终极武器，或是任何一方单方面作出裁军的决定，而只能依靠双方重新认识并调整彼此间的关系。这种关系的调整所需的条件包括武器制造技术的变化和不让凶悍的国家掌握核技术，但最关键的还是我们自己在战争规则和国与国之间的关系等问题的认识上发生变化。

人类文明对全球环境造成的威胁的战略性质以及全球环境的变化对人类文明造成的威胁的战略性质给我们提出了一系列类似的考验和虚妄不实的希望。有些人提

出一种论点说，只要有了某种新的终极技术——不管是核能还是基因工程——就能够解决这个问题。而另外有些人则认为，只有大大减少我们对技术的依赖才能改善生存环境——这顶多也只是一种简单化的想法。而真正解决问题的办法只能通过重新确立并最终弥合文明与地球间的关系的行动来寻找。要完成这一行动任务，只有认认真真地对导致这种关系在较近时期内发生剧变的各种因素重新评估一番。要改变我们与地球的关系，当然会不可避免地牵涉新技术因素，但关键的变化还是要有思考这种关系本身的新思路。

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示：**参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. The writer went to the Aral Sea to search for the underlying causes of the environmental crisis. What he saw there was hot dry sand.

2. Scientists were monitoring the air several times a day to chart the course of climate change. Their work can provide explicit statistics for researches on the causes of environmental problems.

3. An agreement to secure the release of previously top secret data from submarine sonar tracks. Because of the establishment of the agreement, the ice scientists could be accessible to the data that could help them learn what is happening to the north polar cap.

4. The Amazon rainforest is being burned acre by acre to create fast pasture for fast-food beef. There are more different species of birds in each square mile of the Amazon rainforest than exist in all of North America. The destruction of the Amazon rainforest will mean the silence of thousands of songs we have never even heard.

5. The author calls noctilucent clouds “ghost in the sky”. As a result of pollution, the clouds occasionally appear when the earth is first cloaked in the evening darkness. And they are formed because of a huge buildup of methane gas in the atmosphere. This unnatural phenomenon shows the loss of ecological balance now in progress.

6. The author classifies environmental threats into the following three categories: local, regional and strategic. No. Problems like acid rain and oil spill are not truly strategic because the operation of the global environment is not affected and the survival of civilization is not at stake.

7. Methane and the concentration of carbon dioxide and other heat - absorbing molecules in the atmosphere cause global warming. Because global warming seriously threatens

the global climate equilibrium that determines the pattern of winds, rainfall, surface temperatures, ocean currents, and sea level. These in turn determine the distribution of vegetative and animal life on land and sea and have a great effect on the locations and pattern of human societies.

8. According to the author, human civilization is the dominant cause of change in the global environment.

9. The two key factors are human population and the scientific and technological development. Population explosion is related to environmental problems as more people means more consuming of energy, and more human activities causing more damage to the whole environment.

10. False hopes are as the following: some argue that a new ultimate technology, whether nuclear power or genetic engineering, will solve the problem; others hold that only a drastic reduction of our reliance on technology can improve the conditions of life-a simplistic notion at best. And the writer's solution is to reinvent and finally heal the relationship between human beings and the earth by carrying out a careful reassessment of all the factors that have led to the relatively recent dramatic change in the relationship.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. …but as I looked out over the bow, I could see there was no chance for catching any fish.

2. …about the ice core sample marked by annual layers, which can show the different degrees of pollution from year to year.

3. The development of industry meant the use of large amounts of coal and later petroleum as fuels to generate power. When coal and oil are burned they emit carbon dioxide (CO_2) into the air which keeps more heat near the earth. When the level of carbon dioxide emissions in the air becomes high, heat will find it difficult to get through it to go into higher altitudes. Thus the temperature of the earth gets warmer.

4. Thinking about how a series of events might happen as a consequence of the thinning of the polar cap is not just a kind of practice in speculation: It has practical significance.

5. Bit by bit trees in the rainforest are burnt and forest land is turned into pasture where cattle can be raised quickly and slaughtered so that the beef can be used in fast-food like hamburgers.

6. Therefore, the destruction of the rainforest and the habitat of the birds means thou-

sands of birds will become extinct before we can have a chance to watch them and hear them sing.

7. And why do other symbols, though sometimes no less surprising, only cause a kind of loss and inactivity and we concentrate our attention not on the ways to deal with them but, instead, on some other distractions which are easy and less painful to handle?

8. The global climate balance determines the pattern of winds, rainfall, surface temperature, ocean currents and sea level. Once this state of balance is upset, winds, rainfall and ocean currents will become abnormal; surface temperature and sea level will rise.

9. Up till now, we seem to be unaware of the fact that the earth's natural systems are vulnerable and can easily be damaged.

10. They are signs and indications showing that there exists a much greater and more serious problem than we have ever encountered.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. catch: the amount caught
2. bleak: not promising or hopeful
3. ill-considered: not properly considered; not suitable or wise
4. picked up speed: to develop at an increased speed; to become faster
5. frigid: extremely cold
6. snowmobile: a kind of motor vehicle for traveling over snow, usually with steerable runners at the front and tractor treads at the rear
7. hover: to wait close by, especially in an overprotective, insistent or anxious way
8. eerily: mysteriously or uncannily, especially in such a way as to frighten or disturbed
9. scenario: an outline for any proposed or planned series of events, real or imagined
10. landfill: the disposal of garbage or rubbish by burying it under a shallow layer of earth
11. oil spill: a release of a liquid petroleum hydrocarbon into the environment due to human activity
12. pull: a strong force such as gravity, that makes things move in a particular direction; gravitational pull of the moon

B.

1. carbon dioxide(CO_2): 二氧化碳
2. the South Pole: 南极
3. the Arctic Ocean: 北冰洋

4. a nuclear submarine：核潜艇

5. an ice cap：冰冠，冰盖

6. global warming：全球变暖

7. the North Pole：北极

8. the Arctic：北极地区

9. the Arctic Circle：北极圈

10. the Amazon rainforest：亚马逊雨林

11. methane：甲烷，沼气

12. termite：白蚁

13. biomass：生物量

14. greenhouse gases：温室气体

15. acid rain：酸雨

16. chlorine：氯

17. chlorofluorocarbon：氟利昂

18. ultraviolet：紫外线

19. zone depletion：臭氧损耗

20. genetic engineering：基因工程

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英

1. The enemy troops ran away in all directions.

2. The appeal for biking in cities got a warm response.

3. This academic book reflects his research results in the past ten years.

4. You must carefully consider the consequences before acting.

5. If we want to wipe out wars, we must first eliminate the causes of wars.

6. He didn't have a reason good enough to decline our offer.

7. This program is very simple and easy to operate.

8. He gave a simplistic answer which was unable to solve this complicated problem effectively.

B. 英译汉：参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译：参见"参考译文"。

VI. 阅读，思考与评论

（略）

Lesson Thirteen

No Signposts in the Sea (Excerpts)

词汇注释

signpost[ˈsainpaust] ***n.*** post at a road junction, etc. with arms pointing to places along the roads, and often showing the distance to them 路标

olive [ˈɔliv] ***adj.*** yellowish-green or yellowish-brown 橄榄色的，黄褐色的

【例句】olive paint 橄榄色颜料/an **olive** skin 黄褐色的皮肤

supple[ˈsʌpl] ***adj.*** bent or bending easily; not stiff; flexible 易弯曲的，柔软的，灵活的

【例句】the **supple** limbs of a child 儿童的柔软的四肢

She has a **supple** mind 她头脑灵活

beguile[biˈgail] ***v.*** cause (time) to pass without being noticed 消磨(时间)

【例句】Our journey was **beguiled** with spirited talk. 我们旅行中谈笑风生，过得很愉快。

deferential[ˌdifəˈrenʃəl] ***adj.*** showing deference 顺从的，恭敬的

opinionated[əˈpinjəneitid] ***adj.*** holding very strong views which one is not willing to change 固执己见的，武断的

【例句】He is the most **opinionated** man I know. 他是我认识的最固执己见的人。

gluttonous [ˈglʌtənəs] ***adj.*** very greedy for food 贪吃的，贪嘴的

同义词：greedy，acquisitive

这些词指各种无法满足的对食欲，钱财，权力和各种物质财富的欲望。**greedy** 贪心的，是最普遍的词，也比其他词更随便，尽管也指对金钱，权力或财富的欲求，但主

要还是指对食物的不同寻常的欲求,如:She stuffed one chocolate after another into that greedy mouth of hers.(她一块接一块地朝她那贪婪的嘴里塞巧克力。)**acquisitive** 在语气上更接近中性,指通过正当的或欺骗的手段获取财富,而且强调的是获取财富的行为,如:Thoreau argues that our acquisitive tendencies prevent us from living unburdened, joyous lives.(索罗指出,我们渴望获得的天性使我们无法过无忧无虑的快乐生活。)**gluttonous** 通常指食物的消费,如:His gluttonous appetite made short work of all the leftovers in the refrigerator.(他贪婪的胃口吞下了冰箱里所剩下的东西。)

latent[ˈleitənt] *adj.* existing but not yet active, developed or visible 潜在的,不明显的

【例句】**latent** abilities 潜在的才能/a **latent** infection 潜伏性传染病

unwitting[ˈʌnˈwitiŋ] *adj.* not knowing or aware; not intentional 未察觉的,无意的

【例句】my **unwitting** interruption of their private conversation 我无意中打断了他们的私下谈话

dismissive[disˈmisiv] *adj.* haughty or contemptuous 傲慢的,目中无人的

【例句】a **dismissive** gesture 轻蔑的手势

Don't be so **dismissive** of her talent. 可别小看了她的才能

moonling [muːnliŋ] *n.* impractical inhabitants on the moon 不现实的月球居民

hydraulic[haiˈdrɔːlik] *adj.* operated by the movement of liquid 用水力驱动的

【例句】**hydraulic** brakes 液压制动器/a **hydraulic** engineer 水利工程师

ascription[asˈkripʃən] *n.* (act) of ascribing sth. (to sb./sth.); regarding as belonging to or coming from someone 归属,归因,归咎

calf-love[ˈkɑːflʌv] *n.* immature love that adolescent boys and girls may feel for each other 雏恋,未成年男女不成熟的爱情

【例句】He's mad about his biology teacher, but it's only **calf-love**. 他迷恋着生物老师,但那只不过是孩子的一片痴情罢了。

seemly[ˈsiːmli] *adj.* proper and suitable by the standards of polite society 恰当的,得体的,适宜的

【例句】Young people should behave in a **seemly** manner. 年轻人举止应合乎礼仪。

disperse[disˈpəːs] *v.* (cause sb./sth. to) go in different directions; scatter 散开,驱散

【例句】The wind **dispersed** the clouds. 风把云吹散了。

同义词:scatter

scatter 比 **disperse** 常用,指向各个不同方向扔或抛的动作,如:The wind scatters seeds everywhere(风把种子撒向四面八方);**disperse** 则指广泛的,有时是有力地把组成部分或单个物体向四方散开去,如:The mounted police quickly dispersed the unruly crowd. 骑警队很快驱散了人群。**disperse** 常用作比喻,如:to disperse doubts and fears 驱散疑虑和恐惧。

反义词：gather, unite

pantheism[ˈpænθi(ː)izəm] *n.* belief that God is everything and everything is God 泛神论

malice[ˈmælis] *n.* desire to harm others 敌意，恶意，怨恨

【例句】She certainly bears you no **malice**. 她对你肯定没有恶意。

voluptuous[vəˈlʌptuəs] *adj.* giving a feeling of luxury or sensual pleasure 给人奢华或感官享受的

【例句】the **voluptuous** enjoyment of a hot bath 热水浴的舒适享受

pious[ˈpaiəs] *adj.* having or showing a deep devotion to religion（对宗教）虔诚的

同义词：religious

religious 是个普通词，可指宗教的或与宗教有关的事物，如：religious literature（宗教文学），它可以形容那些只遵守教规和那些奉行一种生活方式并倾注其对上帝深深的爱的任何人，他们始终坚持某种宗教所规定的崇拜上帝的信条；**pious** 则指表面虔诚而实际虚伪的人，如：a pious fraud whose mind is more devoted to gossip than to gospel（一个道貌岸然的骗子不信奉福音书的教导，却热衷于制造流言蜚语）。

反义词：impious, irreligious

confessional[kənˈfeʃən(ə)l] *n.* a small, enclosed place in a church, where a priest hears confessions（教堂中神父听取忏悔的）忏悔室

absolution[ˌæbsəˈluːʃən] *n.* (esp. in the Christian church) formal declaration by a priest that a person's sins have been forgiven（尤指在基督教中教士对某人）宣布赦罪，释罪

【例句】grant sb. **absolution** 赦免某人的罪/pronounce **absolution** 宣读赦罪文

taffrail[ˈtæfreil] *n.* the rail around the stern of a ship or boat 船尾栏杆

ripple[ˈripl] *v.* (cause sth to) move in small waves（使某物）起伏

【例句】Corn **ripple** in the breeze. 庄稼在微风中起伏。

rippling muscles 一条条凸起的肌肉

satin[ˈsætin] *n.* silk material that is shiny and smooth on one side 缎子

【例句】a **satin** ribbon 缎带

marble[ˈmɑːbl] *v.* stain or color to look like marble 把某物弄上大理石花纹

【例句】a book with **marbled** edges 云纹状边的书

scribbler[ˈskrib(ə)lə(r)] *n.* a person who scribbles; untalented author, journalist, etc. 字迹潦草之人，无天分的作家、新闻工作者等

【例句】the **scribblers** of some small towns 一些小镇上庸碌无为的记者

precipitous[priˈsipitəs] *adj.* dangerously high or steep 险峻的，陡峭的

【例句】a **precipitous** path down the mountain-side 沿山腰而下的一条陡峭的小路

同义词：steep

steep 即指倾斜度较大或急剧地从地平线升起的地形，它还有一个不太常使用的微妙含义，即特指从下面的角度观看升高的地形；**precipitous** 特指从上面的角度看的倾斜度。当 **precipitous** 指像悬崖那样倾斜的几乎呈垂直状态时，还给人一种突然或出乎意料的感觉，如：looking up at the precipitous rise of tall office blocks along both sides of the street(抬头仰望耸立在大街两旁的高大的办公楼)。

反义词：flat, level, low

bluff[blʌʃ] *n.* cliff or headland with a broad and very steep face(伸向大海的)悬崖峭壁

arid[ˈærid] *adj.* (of land or climate) having little or no rainfall; dry(指土壤和气候)干旱的，干燥的

【例句】the **arid** deserts of Africa. 非洲的干旱沙漠

bleach[bliːtʃ] *v.* (cause sth. to) become white or pale (by chemical action or sunlight)(使某物)变白，漂白

【例句】bones of animals **bleaching** in the desert. 沙漠里变白的兽骨

barren[ˈbærən] *adj.* (of land) not good enough to produce crops(指土地)贫瘠的

同义词：arid, infertile, unproductive

这些词指没有收获或价值。**arid** 具体指由于气候过干或过热而没有收获，如：miles of arid sand dunes(数千里干燥的沙丘)，在指价值方面，这个词指枯燥无味或没有结果，如：an arid play(一个乏味的戏剧)；**infertile** 可以用来指由于某种原因不能生育，但不表明是男子或女子没有生育的生理机能，这个词还可用来指农业方面，如：top soil rendered infertile by excess alkalinity(土壤中含有过多的碱，使地表土壤变得寸草不生)；**unproductive** 即可指没有收获也可指没有价值，但似乎多指后者，如：a mediation that was unproductive of changes on either side(调解未使任何一方的态度发生变化)；**barren** 具有所有这些词所具有的含义，也有色彩，如：cross the barren desert(穿越不毛的沙漠)/a barren woman(不能受孕的妇女)/a debate that was barren of results(毫无结果的争论)。

反义词：bearing, productive

ravish[ˈræviʃ] *v.* take or carry away by force; rape 强夺，强奸

recess[riˈses] *n.* (often pl.) a secluded, withdrawn, or inner place 深处，幽深之处

【例句】the dark **recess** of a cave 洞中最隐秘的暗处

in the innermost **recesses** of the heart 在内心最深处

austere[əsˈtiə] *adj.* (of a person or his behavior) severely or strictly moral; having

no pleasures or comforts（指人或他的行为）严峻的，严厉的操作上一丝不苟的，简朴的

intermittent[ˌintə(ː)ˈmitənt] *adj.* continually stopping and then starting again; not constant 断断续续的，间歇的

【例句】**intermittent** flashes of light from a lighthouse 灯塔发出的一闪一灭的光

promontory[ˈprɔməntəri] *n.* area of high land jutting out into the sea or a lake; headland（深入海中或湖中的）悬崖；海角

lavender[ˈlærində] *n.* a pale purple color；淡紫色；plant with sweet-smelling pale purple flowers 熏衣草

albatross[ˈælbətrɔs] *n.* large white sea-bird with long wings, common in the Pacific and Southern Oceans 信天翁

lore[lɔː, lɔə] *n.* knowledge and tradition about a subject or possessed by a particular group of people(某学科或某部分人的)学问和传统

【例句】bird **lore** 对鸟类的知识/gypsy **lore** 吉卜赛人的学问和传统

lounge[laundʒ] *v.* stand, move, sit, lie, etc in a relaxed or lazy way（懒散地）站，走，坐，躺等

【例句】**lounge** at street corners 在街头闲荡

serenity[siˈreniti] *n.* the quality or state of being serene; calmness; tranquility 宁静

同义词：tranquility, calmness

这两个词形容没有骚乱，没有激动的状态，但 **tranquility** 指一个持久的状态，而 **calmness** 则指较短时间的状况，如：a tranquility of life(长期宁静的生活)，a calmness during a hurricane 飓风期间一段平静的时间；**serenity** 指超越于尘世的宁静，如：the serenity of the blue sky(晴朗宁静的蓝天)。

反义词：agitated, disturbed

espy[isˈpai] *v.* catch sight of (sb./sth.) 看到某人某物

【例句】Was it you I **espied** running along the street this morning? 我今早看到有个人在沿马路跑，是你吗?

同义词：perceive

perceive(察觉，领悟)，由于它适用于各种器官，因而最为普遍，如：A conductor could perceive even the slightest variation from true pitch in each instrument.（指挥能听出哪怕是与标准音有最细微差别音高。）；**espy** 可指偶然看见部分被掩盖的，远处的，或难以看见的东西，它指偶然性，或突然的意想不到的发展，如：She turned around just in time to espy that man disappear in the crowd.（她转过身来正好发现那个男人消失在人群里。）

反义词: miss, overlook

blemish[ˈblemiʃ] *v.* spoil the beauty or perfection of sb./sth.; flaw 有损于某人(某物)美观或完美,玷污

【例句】The pianist's performance was **blemished** by several wrong notes. 钢琴家的演奏由于弹错了几个音符而使人感到美中不足。

boulder[ˈbəuldə] *n.* large rock worn or shaped by water or the weather(经风雨或水侵蚀而成的)巨石

quirk [kwəːk] *n.* habit or action that is peculiar to sb./sth.(某人/某物特有的)习惯,举动

【例句】He had a strange **quirk** of talking to himself. 他很怪,喜欢自言自语。

同义词: eccentricity

eccentricity 指一个人的品质,行为,习惯或习性在某种程度上与平常的或者预料之中的不一样,它所表示的奇怪与无常有可能是无害的,但它是人的个性中根深蒂固的一部分,如:One of his eccentricities was a stubborn reluctance to entrust his savings to a band.(他的怪癖之一是执拗的不愿将钱存入银行。);**quirk** 比 **eccentricity** 普遍,很少能表示出有关的性格或品质,**quirk** 可以是令人愉快的或是令人讨厌的,有趣的或使人恼怒的,如:Knuckle-cracking was his most annoying quirk.(把指关节弄得噼啪响是他最恼人的怪癖。)

反义词: commonness, conventionality

skiff [skif] *n.* any light rowboat 轻舟,小舟

leper[ˈlepə] *n.* a person having leprosy 疯病患者

aquamarine[ˌækwəməˈriːn] *n.* the colour of bluish-green 蓝绿色

crème de mente *n.* (French.) a sweet liqueur (法语)薄荷酒

emerald[ˈemərəld] *n.* bright green 翠绿色

opaque[əuˈpeik] *adj.* not allowing light to pass through; not transparent 不透明的,不透光的

【例句】**opaque** glass 不透明的玻璃

vicious viridian[ˈviʃəs] *n.* very intense bluish-green colour 墨绿色

indolence[ˈindələns] *n.* the state of being lazy or inactive 懒惰,无所事事

同义词: sloth

sloth 强调由于懒惰而产生的特别迟钝——一种可归咎于意志薄弱的状态,该词否定意味极强,同时含有邋遢,不整洁不干净的意思,如:A dirty room gave eloquent testimony to his life of sloth.(肮脏的房间有力地说明了他的懒惰);**indolence** 严格意义上讲指对劳动和工作的反感,它含有社会学用法,同时它更经常做懒惰的正式替代词,强调有意选择的静止状态,如:a glorious week of indolence on the beach(在海滩上

慵懒愉快的一天）。

反义词：diligence，activity

torrid[ˈtɔrid] *adj.* so hot as to be oppressive; very hot and dry 灼热的，酷热的，炎热而干燥的

【例句】**torrid** sands 晒得滚烫的沙地

bliss[blis] *n.* perfect happiness; great joy 洪福，极乐

【例句】a life of **bliss** 幸福的一生

同义词：happiness，gladness

happiness 是最普遍的一个词，可以指从简单的满足或没有悲哀到最强烈的快乐和实现某一心愿时的快感等各种程度的幸福；**gladness** 充满了 happiness，表示一种对幸福事件的反应，而不是一种持久的精神状态，如：Her gladness at seeing us again was most touching.（她再次见到我们时，那种快乐的样子真是动人。）；**bliss** 最普通的意思是指完全的，欣喜若狂的幸福或是巨大的满足，如：the bliss of young couple in love（一双相爱的年轻人的幸福）。

反义词：grief，misery，sadness

exhilarate[igˈziləreit] *v.* make (sb.) feel very happy or lively 使人愉快或活跃

【例句】We felt **exhilarated** by our walk along the beach. 沿着海滩散步我们心旷神怡。

短语表达

take to sth./doing sth：begin to do sth. as a habit 逐渐惯于做某事

【例句】He **took to gardening** in his retirement. 他退休后就搞起了园艺。

lose oneself in sth：be totally absorbed in sth. 专心致志于某事物

【例句】I soon **lost myself in the excitement** of the film. 影片中的刺激情节很快就把我吸引住了。

with a vengeance：to a greater degree than is normal, expected or desired 比正常的，预期的或想要的程度更深或更甚

【例句】set to work **with a vengeance** 加倍努力的工作

The rain came down **with a vengeance**. 雨下得大极了。

to the exclusion of：so as to keep out, leave out, exclude 排除（其他的一切）

【例句】He spent his spare time gardening **to the exclusion of** all other interests. 他把空余时间都用在园艺上了，没有任何其他爱好。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. About the author: Victoria Mary Sackville-West (1892—1962) was an English poet and novelist. She was educated at home. In 1913 she married diplomat Harold Nicolson (1886—1968) and they traveled extensively during his years in the Foreign Office. She first gained literary recognition for her long poem The Land. Her famous works include ***The Edwardians*** (1930), ***All Passion Spent*** (1931) ***and some other published works.***

作者维多利亚·玛丽·萨克维尔-韦斯特(1892—1962)是英国诗人和小说家,接受的是家庭教育。1913 年她与外交家 ***H***·尼科尔森(1886—1968)结婚,并在其丈夫任职期间和他一起游历了许多地方。长诗《土地》的发表首次为她赢得文学界的关注。其著名作品有小说《爱德华时代的人们》(1930)、《激情耗尽》(1931)以及其他一些发表的作品。

2. ***No Signposts in the Sea***: The 144-page novel, from which the present text is taken, is written in the form of a journal kept by a man called Edmund Carr, 50, an influential political columnist and a bachelor.

《海上无路标》是一部 144 页的小说,以日志的形式由一位叫爱德蒙·卡尔的人写成。爱德蒙·卡尔是小说中的人物,50 岁,是一位有一定地位的政治专栏作家和单身汉。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

The text describes the peaceful and romantic life at sea of a bachelor, Edmund Carr before his death, with Laura. The weeks at sea, while inevitably tinged with an undercurrent of sadness, are nonetheless idyllic. The release from pressure, the lackadaisical rhythms of ship life, the shifting panorama of magnificent skies and sea, of enticing, passing shores and the infrequent parts of call, his growing knowledge of Laura -- all these combine to give Carr an unfamiliar peace and a profound change in perspective. Carr's growing love for Laura, despite his self-acknowledgement that she must be unattainable for him, shatters this expanding facility. A handsome, pompous yet unpredictably engaging Colonel forms a three-some with them, and Carr is catapulted willy-nilly into the all-too-human ignominy of jealousy, despair, meanness, and outbursts of disappointment against his "rival". Anyway he enjoys this life and hopes it will be prolonged.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This text is excerpted from the novel *No Signposts in the Sea*, written in the form of a journal. One can hardly find stirring events or climax in the traditional sense in this piece. Yet the narrations of the man's recess and the descriptions of the shifting panorama of the skies and the sea mingle well. The narrator sometimes uses the seascape（海景）to express his tender and affectionate feelings toward Laura. For instance, when they sail along a coastline and see the stern cliffs, he would make a comparison between them and Laura, who looks serious but nurturing profound tender feelings in her heart; the albatross' awareness of the latitude would remind him of his self-acknowledgement that she is unattainable for him.

The exquisite and effective choice of words in the writing is especially impressive. In a paragraph describing the scenery of a cape, the writer uses "purple" to describe the colour of mountains and cloud, and "lavender" to describe that of the sea. Those colours are indeed harmonious, not only suitable for the peaceful evening, but also revealing the sentimentality of the middle-aged man who is suffering from "calf-love" and torn between love and self-acknowledgement.

No doubt the use of analogy and allusion, such as "Endymion", "Clovis" etc. as well as other figures of speech makes the piece far from being pedestrian. Like Sac kville-West's other works, this one contains depth of feeling and perception in life.

本课节选自小说《海上无路标》，以日志的形式写成。它几乎没有令人激动的事件，也没有传统意义上的高潮，然而人物内心的独白与天空海洋景色的动态描写和谐地交融在一起。陈述者有时借景抒情，比如，当他们沿着海岸航行，看到峻峭的山崖时，他就会将它与劳拉相比——外表严肃与内心充满柔情；信天翁对地球纬度的本能意识会使他意识到自己与劳拉之间的无可逾越的阻隔。

本课对于具有准确性与表现力的词语的运用令人印象深刻。在描写一个海角的景色时，作者用"紫色"来形容山和云的颜色，用"淡紫色"来形容海水的颜色。色彩非常协调，不仅符合傍晚的平静的氛围，也表现了这位中年人柔情伤怀的心境——在爱与不能爱之间受煎熬。

毫无疑问，类比和引喻，如："恩底弥翁"，"克拉维"等，以及其他一些修辞手法的运用，使课文没有平淡之感。像萨克维尔-韦斯特的其他作品一样，本文在情感与对生活的领悟上颇具深度。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. I have never had much of an eye for noticing the clothes of women: I have never paid much attention to nor have ever had a keen appreciation of the clothes of women.（在观察女人衣着方面我从来没有太多的鉴赏眼光。）have an eye for：很能看出，很能欣

赏。注意与 have an eye to（照看，照料）的区别。

2. She wears soft rich colours: She wears clothes of soft rich colours.（她身着颜色富丽的衣服。）colours：借代修辞手法，指这些颜色的衣服；rich colours 指深红、橄榄绿、深蓝色。

3. who is not too offensively an Empire-builder: who is not too offensive and disgusting.（这位上校是一名不算太令人反感的帝国的开拓者。）Empire-builder 在卡尔眼里是那种令人厌恶的好斗分子，但眼前这个人（被派往殖民地的军事官员）还不算很坏。

4. He says he used to read me: He says he used to read my works.（他说他过去常读我的作品。）me：借代修辞手法，表示我写的书或文章。

5. Some instinct impels me gluttonously to cram these the last weeks of my life with the gentler things I never had time for: Perhaps because I know my days are numbered, I am impelled by my instinct to enjoy myself to the full with some refined, pleasant and softer things which I never had time to enjoy in the past.（毫无疑问是有某种本能驱使着我贪婪地要往自己生命的最后几个星期的时间里填进一些自己过去从来没有时间去关注的更令人舒心的事情。）the last weeks of my life 暗示了叙述者只有几周的生存时间，也许因为患了不治之症。此处名词 weeks 是前面的代词 these 的同位语。句中的 cram sth. with sth. 的意思是"将某物塞得满满的"，用来指"充实自己剩余不多的时间"，非常生动形象。gentler things I never had time for 是相对于他以前只关注政治人物等而言。

6. Dismissive as Pharisee, I regarded as moonlings all those whose life was lived on a less practical plane: I was as puritanical as a Pharisee and I viewed with contempt all those who lived a less practical life than my own and regard them as impractical inhabitant on the moon.（我曾经像个法利塞人一样是个自以为是、目中无人的人。）Pharisee：现在用来指虚伪、假正经的人。plane: a level of existence 生活水准。

7. Protests about damage to "natural beauty" froze me with contempt: I was not moved by the protests about damage to "natural beauty" and I viewed them with contempt.（有关破坏"自然美景"的抗议让我反感和不屑一顾。）freeze：指"使……呆住，僵住"之意，在本句中意为"不为之动容"。由于卡尔曾经是个讲求实际的人，因此他不赞成工业破坏了自然之美的说法。

8. And now see how I stand, as sentimental and sensitive, as any old maid doing water colors of sunsets: Just imagine how I have changed now. Here I stand, sentimental and sensitive, like an old unmarried woman painting a water-colour picture of sunset.（而今再看看我是个什么样子吧，就像一个正作着夕阳水彩画的老处女一样多愁善感。）注意此句中修辞手法的运用：as sentimental and sensitive, as any old maid... 是明喻，senti-

mental and sensitive 又同时是头韵法。water-colour：水彩画，即用颜料和水画成的画。

9. A new Clovis, ... I want my fill of beauty before I go：Clovis：克洛维，法兰克王国(481—511)创立者，一个残暴的异教徒，后信奉基督教并成为基督教徒首领。calf-love：少年男女的不成熟的爱情；初恋。这里暗示卡尔在遇到劳拉之前未真正恋爱过。into the bargain：in addition；moreover(加之，此外)。fill 一词是名词，相当于 satisfaction(满足)。before I go 是委婉语(euphemism)，指 before I die(我死之前)。

10. A liberated being, ... the world inspired from Olympus：I have become a liberated person, bathed in magic waters, and I feel I am like Endymion, a young and strong youth who has a god for his father and gifted with the power to see the world given by gods at Olympus.(而是一个在神水中沐浴的身心解放，自由自在的小精灵，一个年轻力壮的恩底弥翁，不但有着一位身为神仙的父亲，还拥有来自天庭所赐的洞察世事的一双慧眼。)Endymion：据希腊神话，他是一个俊美的青年牧羊人或猎人。每当他夜里睡在卡里亚的拉特摩斯山(Mount Latmus)的山洞时，月亮女神塞勒涅(Selene)都会前往相会。Olympus：即 Olympus Mount (奥林匹斯山)。mythological waters：指希腊神话中的忘川，又译作勒沁河，冥府的河流之一。亡灵喝了这条河的水以后就会忘掉过去的一切。这是引喻的用法。当他的身体漂浮在游泳池的水中时，他觉得自己已变得没有嫉妒，没有野心，也没有恶意，池水就好像忘川之水一样神奇地使他完全改变了。

11. rippled with little white ponies：moved with the spray of breaking waves(海面上翻腾跳跃着像一匹匹小白马的浪花)。white ponies：small horses(小马驹)，在此用作隐喻，指激起的白色浪花。

12. the lazy satin of blue：the slow, smooth blue waters like a piece of satin(那海面平滑得如同蓝色的锦缎)。作者在此用了生动的比喻，把平静的海面比作蓝色的缎面，是一个隐喻。

13. These coasts remind me of people, either they are forbidding or ... all they have to give at a glance：(这些海岸景色使我不由得联想到世界上的有些人，他们要么是一副拒人于千里之外的姿态让人无法接近，要么就是没有丝毫神秘感，叫人一眼就将其底细全部看穿。)这一句中运用了类比的修辞手法，作者将突拔而起的石灰岩峭壁比作令人望而生畏难以接近的人；而将连绵数英里，渺无人迹的茫茫沙滩比作浅白直露，让人一眼看透的人。

14. So do I let my imagination play over the recesses of Laura's character：In the same way I let myself freely imagine what the inner part of Laura's character presents.(我也这样地放任自己的想像力尽情地想象劳拉性格深处。)so：in this way(用这样的方法)。do 是助动词，由于 so 用在句首，故将助动词 do 放在主语前面。

15. so austere in the foreground ... for the discovery of the venturesome：(she looks) so severe outwardly, but inwardly she is full of tenderness like delicate flowers waiting for

the daring to discover. (她表面上严肃冷艳,但她内心深处却滋生着丰富温柔的情感,好像娇嫩的花儿,等待着勇者去寻芳。)这也是一个运用了类比手法的句子。作者将峭壁与劳拉相比,二者都具有冷峻的外表,而实际上内藏不为人知的秘密。劳拉严峻的外表下有着一颗情感丰富的心,神秘的山峰要靠勇敢者去攀登,同样劳拉的内心的秘密要靠勇者去探索。

16. I find it refreshing to think there are still a few odd fish left in the world: I feel comfortable when I think that there are still a few strange and stupid people left in the world. (这世上竟然还留存着几个与众不同怪胎异种,我觉得这是令人欣慰的事情。) fish 在口语中可用来指容易上钩的人或愚昧冷漠的人。

17. knowing the latitude we can permit ourselves: knowing how far we can allow ourselves to go; knowing how much freedom of conduct we can allow ourselves to have(明确自己所能容许的自由限度。)在此句中,latitude 不应理解为"纬度",而是修辞用语,指观点、言行的自由程度。

18. "the flying fish, who has a part with the birds" . . . which bears us into and out of sight: The flying fish that can fly just a bit like birds are certainly glad to see no more the great, strange-looking ship which carries us into and out of the range of their sight. (当它们再也看不到那载着我们驶入它们视线又很快消失的怪物时,"这些与鸟儿有点相似的小飞鱼"无疑是很高兴的。) have a part with: be similar to 与……相似。monster 在此指他们乘坐的船,是一个隐喻。

19. the peak of a submarine mountain range, lonely, unblemished, remote: the peak of a submarine mountain range, which is unvisited, unspoiled and for away from civilization (那是海底峰峦的顶部,孤独、凄凉、无瑕、偏僻)。lonely 指无人涉足;unblemished 指未受到玷污; remote 指远离文明;这三个形容词是后置定语修饰 peak,而这个名词短语是句中 island 的同位语。

20. A small manageable domain in a large unmanageable world:(在难以驾驭的广袤世界之中有这么一小块易于治理的领地。)此短语中运用了对照修辞格:small 对 large, manageable 对 unmanageable, domain 对 world,使得句子工整对称,意义鲜明。

21. the winepink width of water merging into lawns of aquamarine: the wide expanse of winepink water mixing with strips of bluish-green water(葡萄酒红色的海面渐渐变成了草坪般的蓝绿色。)整个短语是独立主格结构。lawns 是隐喻修辞手法,指海面的颜色给人的感觉就像一个蓝绿色的大草坪。

22. the sky a tender palette of pink and blue: The sky is just like a palette of soft pink and blue colours. (天空则变成了柔和的粉红色与绿色的混合色彩。)这一短语仍然是独立主格结构,和前一短语一样运用了一个隐喻,把天空比作调色板。tender(柔和的)本应修辞 pink and blue(粉红与蓝色),但转而修饰 palette(调色板),这是移就修辞

手法。

23. Say green as jealousy and be done with it: I suggest you say the light is green as jealousy and then we will finish this game on words.(干脆就说绿得叫人嫉妒好了,然后就此打住吧。) green as jealousy: 意为绿得叫人嫉妒,劳拉在此是在对卡尔的咬文嚼字打趣。

V. 参考译文

海上无路标

(节选)

V·萨克维尔 ·韦斯特

在轮船餐厅里,我同另外三个男人同坐一桌,劳拉则在不远处与一对已婚夫妇及其千金坐在一起。我可以在她察觉不到的情况下观察她的一举一动,这令我感觉很开心,因为我可以像看电影中的画面一样仔细地端详她那优雅的一举一动,无论是她举起酒杯到唇边,还是转身与同桌的某一个人搭话,或是用纤指从盒中拈取一支香烟。在观察女人衣着方面我从来没有太多的鉴赏眼光,但我得到这样的印象:劳拉白天里总是穿着灰白搭配的衣服,这样在其他人因处于热带的高温作用下而显得面红耳赤之时唯有她的模样却能让人感觉清凉。夜间,她的衣着又换成深红、橄榄绿、宝蓝一类柔和富丽的颜色,而且一律都是质地极为柔滑的面料。我曾冒昧地将类似这样的话对她讲过,她当时就被我这种笨拙的恭维方式给逗得哈哈大笑,并且说我应该改写时装评论而不是写什么政治评论文章。

※

那个名叫达里蒙波的高个子上校看样子是个好人。他同我和劳拉,还有一个不寻常地被人称呼为美尔维尔夫人的中国女人凑起一桌四人牌局,晚餐后别人都去甲板上跳舞的时候,我们便这样以打牌来打发了个把小时的时光。这位上校是一名不算太令人反感的帝国的开拓者,时不时地总想跟我谈一些国家大事。他说他过去常读我的作品,说话时态度极其恭敬而儒雅,总是在要说的话前先插一句开场白"当然,我不该对您这么说……"接着他便会毫不含糊地对我说起他认为我们国家内政或外交上某个问题该当如何处理。他头脑绝对不笨,也绝不孤陋寡闻;或许只是有点固执,思想右倾到极点,但我还是喜欢他,也就尽量不去提出一些只会令他面露困惑神色的观点来捉弄他。另外,我实在也不愿意卷入这些问题的讨论之中。我饶有兴味地注意到自己思想上所发生的变化:过去,除偶尔以诗歌或音乐来消遣自娱一下之外,我对于其他的一切都不闻不问,一心一意埋头关注世界大事,而如今我对那些过去痴迷的事情完全失去了兴趣,甚至到了厌恶的程度。毫无疑问是有某种本能驱使着我贪婪地要往自己生命的最后几个星期的时间里填进一些自己过去从来没有时间去关注的更令人舒心的事情,将一些实际上一直潜藏在心底却又受到压抑的本能的渴望释放出来。也或许是劳拉无意中给我施加的影响唤醒了我心中的渴望。

※

我曾经像个法利塞人一样是个自以为是、目中无人的人。凡是生活得不像我自

己这么现实的人,我都会将其视为不食人间烟火的月球生物。有关破坏"自然美景"的抗议让我反感和不屑一顾,因为我相信社会进步。不会无事生非地去对为顾及中原地区某个工业化城市的水利需要而在某个湖上修堤建坝表示遗憾。对待一切事物都是这样。极端的实利主义是我奉为社会文明进步之道的信仰。任何所谓毫不利己的动机的说法都不仅会引起我的怀疑,而且会激起我的轻蔑。

而今再看看我是个什么样子吧,就像一个正作着夕阳水彩画的老处女一样多愁善感。我曾自认为已是一个成熟的男子汉,现在才发现自己原来竟像个洋洋自得的少年一般傻里傻气。我成了一个脱胎换骨的克洛维斯,开始对自己过去曾经鄙弃的东西产生热爱之情,更要命的是还要忍受少年雏恋的折磨。我想在临走之前饱享人间美好的一切。从地理意义上说,我不怎么关心,也的确不知道自己究竟身在何处,茫茫大海上根本没有路标。

※

今晚的新月以其在热带地区惯有的姿态仰面躺卧着,依我看,这种习惯姿态对于一个纯情少女来说是很相宜的,尽管可能有些不合礼仪。见了这种姿态,没有任何一颗星星不愿飞箭一般从高空射下来接受邀请当她的情人。当所有与我同船的那些乘客都分头回舱就寝后,我又偷偷爬起来,再次登上空无一人的甲板,溜进游泳池,任自己的身体在水面上飘浮着。此时的我已不再是人们心目中的既定形象,一个在远洋游轮上度假的中年记者,而是一个在神水中沐浴的身心解放、自由自在的小精灵,一个年轻力壮的恩底弥翁,不但有着一位身为神仙的父亲,还拥有来自天庭所赐予的洞察世事的一双慧眼。我的肢体有一种如释重负的轻松感觉,整个人与夜色中的天地宇宙融为一体。我终于领悟出泛神论的真谛。假如我的朋友们知道我已达到这样的境界,他们该会笑得多么开心呀!当我享受着和风吹拂肌肤、凉水托护身体的纯洁快感时,我相信自己已经扬弃了所有普通人身上都存在的种种弱点,变得不会嫉妒,不想害人,也没有野心,不想与人争强斗狠,只想尽情享受这种灵魂净化之乐。我想,当一个虔诚的教徒经历了神圣的赦罪仪式后离开忏悔室时,一定就像我这样生出这种灵魂得到净化升华的感觉。

※

有时候,我和劳拉斜倚在船尾栏杆上观风景,这真是幸福无比的事情。也许是在白天,我们望着大海,欣赏着海面上翻腾跳跃着像一匹匹小白马的浪花,或者有时候完全没有波浪,只见那海面平滑得如同蓝色的锦缎,懒洋洋地起伏波动,只有在我们轮船驶过的地方被搅动了的海面边缘才出现了一些大理石般的波纹。也或许是在夜晚,当我们凭栏仰望时,发现天空比在家乡所看到的更黑,而星光则更加灿烂。我忆起一个半文盲士兵的日记中写下的一句话,"星星看起来就像是黑色盖子上切割出的小洞洞,透过它们可以看见盖子外面的光亮世界。"有时候那些没念过书的涂鸦者描述起事物来还真有一套。

今天的无线电广播说,英格兰全境有雾。

※

有的时候我们顺着海岸线航行,这时出现在眼前的要么是拔海而起的灰白色石灰岩奇峰峭壁,要么就是绵延几英里的一大片低浅干枯的沙滩,沙滩表面经常年的水

漂日晒变得白惨惨的，看不到一丝人迹，景色十分荒凉。这些海岸景色使我不由得联想到世界上的有些人，他们要么是一副拒人于千里之外的姿态让人无法接近，要么就是没有丝毫神秘感，叫人一眼就将其底细全部看穿。你会觉得：无论你向内陆方向深入多远，那片土地都会是这么平淡无奇。

我最喜欢的是那些悬崖峭壁及其后面的那些高耸入云、神秘莫测的峰峦叠嶂，只有最英勇无畏的人才能够攀登上去的山峰。在那崇山峻岭之间人迹未至的石隙和幽谷中生长着的是一些什么样的高原植物呢？我也这样地放任自己的想像力尽情地想象劳拉性格深处。她表面上严肃冷艳，但她内心深处却滋生着丰富温柔的情感，好像娇嫩的花儿，等待着勇者去寻芳。

同船的那些其他乘客显然没有我这样的欣赏眼光。

"多么荒凉的海岸，"一位澳大利亚人说，"让人希望能有一点绿色。"

※

夜幕降临，除了一个荒僻的海岬上有一座灯塔间歇性闪亮，再也见不到任何景色了。

※

太阳快要落山的时候，我们刚好就绕过了这么一个海角，它是耸立于大陆最东端的一座高大的紫色孤峰，峰顶笼罩着一个巨大的紫色云团，附近的海面也相应被染成了一片淡淡的紫色。峰顶高处那黄色的航标灯有规律地旋转着发出警示信号。我心里好想知道，在这堪称地球上最荒僻最不宜人居的地方之一的孤峰顶上，是什么人在那儿控制着信号灯呢？还有鬼魂经常出没，因为在以往没有灯塔为航船指引航向的年月里，不知有多少船只一个接一个地撞毁于礁石上。

上校走过来加入了我们的谈话。

"你们看那人的工作如何？"他问。

"我猜想应该经常有人来换班顶替他吧？"

"完全相反，他从来都不肯离开。他是个意大利人，一直坚守在那儿好多好多年了，只有一个当地女子与他为伴。大多数人会觉得他这人脑子有病，但我要说，这世上竟然还留存着几个与众不同的怪胎异种，我觉得这是令人欣慰的事情。"

就是这类出人意料的言论让我喜欢上了这位上校，他身上有一些质朴的诗人气质。我也喜欢他时不时漫不经意地讲出的一些稀奇古怪的事情。他游历过许多地方，耳闻目睹过不少事情。我还发现有关海鸟的知识他也掌握了很多。当我认错不同种类的海鸥时他便帮我纠正，并且以十分委婉的方式告诉我那不可能是信天翁，信天翁不可能出现于这片海域。信天翁这种鸟似乎只追着轮船飞到一定的纬度便回头，它知道自己该走多远，决不会越过界限。这鸟儿是多么聪明啊！我们大家都应该向信天翁学习，明确自己所能容许的自由限度。因此，我追劳拉也只能到此为止，不能超越界限了。我还觉得，上校头脑里装的学问一定不少，尽管其在除此以外的其他方面并不怎么风趣。劳拉也喜欢他，尽管我更愿意自己占有劳拉，可当他懒洋洋地走过来成为第三者时，我并没有真正生出厌恶之情。

※

在这一片十分宁静的大海上，我们难得见到任何一艘其他船只。欢乐的海豚和

那些发出刺耳响声的小飞鱼是这片广阔天地的主人,当它们再也看不到那载着我们驶入它们视线又很快消失的怪物时,"这些与鸟儿有点相似的小飞鱼"无疑是很高兴的。我们船的尾波合拢了,消失了,似乎我们从未在那儿行驶过。偶然地也会有一座小岛出现在地平线上,我们不知其名,但它却充满着神秘感,那是海底峰峦的顶部,孤独、凄凉、无瑕、偏僻地矗立在海上。人们喜爱岛屿,是不是因为在难以驾驭的广袤世界之中有这么一小块易于治理的领地,就不知不觉地要占为己有呢?我想到那座岛屿一直屹立在那里(除非它确实只是有耐心的珊瑚虫的杰作),而且仍将继续屹立在原地不动,假若我们能返回原地,将会发现它还在那里等待着我们,当我想到这些时,我就会有一种奇特的感觉。为什么会这样,我也说不清。这种感觉与当我看到一幅比如说最遥远的中国内地某河谷的照片并看到其中一块大漂石时所产生的感觉是一样的。我想,如果能把我送到那个地方,我就能触摸一下那块实实在在的大漂石……它屹立在那儿,等着我去,我可以坐在那块漂石上。这种感觉我也说不好,那是一种除劳拉外我不期望其他任何人能理解的感觉。但就是这样一些不可言传的东西塞满了人的脑海深处。

噢,再说那些海岛!为解旅途烦闷,我就想象岛上的生活会是什么样子,我高兴地发现我的想象总是转向田园诗般的美好生活。这是一个全新的爱德蒙·卡尔。假如我们看见一条小渔船划向海岸,我便随着那渔夫驰骋自己的想象,想象着他把小船拖到小海湾的滩边,发出一声类似海鸟鸣叫的胡哨来通报自己的到来,他的老婆便前来迎接他。他们夫妻两人都很年轻,皮肤是金褐色的。她从他手中接过他打回的鱼,他们那简陋的草屋里什么家当也没有,但却充满着健康和爱。

一天夜里,我们驶过了两座岛屿,在反射的朦胧月光的映照下,那两座岛屿呈现出陡峭的驼峰形轮廓,每个峰顶的高处都隐隐约约地闪射出一抹黄色的亮光。

"并非灯塔,"我对劳拉说。"像是村落。"

我们凝目观望时,轮船很快驶过了岛屿,驼峰形轮廓在一片黑暗中渐渐消失,峰顶上的灯光也因被一个山肩遮挡而变得越来越朦胧,并永远地从我们的视线中消失了。一切显得如此平静而又神秘。

船上的一名下了班的高级船员来到了我们身边。

"说的没错,"他随着我们的目光望去,说,"其中的一个是麻风病患者聚居点,另一个是犯人劳改营。"

上帝啊,难道就没有一片远离苦难和罪恶的清静之地吗?

※

劳拉和我有一种自娱的方法,就是守望太阳从地平线上消失的那一刹那产生的绿色闪光。这种闪光不是每天都会发生的,其产生条件必须是天空完全无云,而云彩似乎又特喜欢追着日落的轨道聚集。但当我们守望成功时,我们就会高兴得像孩子一样,劳拉会兴奋得拍手喝彩。那道绿光仅能持续一瞬间。我们守望那绿光的时候,先看到宛如被刀子切成两半的红球,沉没海中回到其每日归宿的终点,接着便看见海天相接处出现一片红绿相映的暮色霞光(有一种说法,认为在这种纬度地区的海面上,夜幕会突然降临,我们发现了这种说法的谬误),有一片染成粉红色的海面与那没被染红看起来就像一块块碧绿色的草坪的海面交融到一起,天空的颜色则宛如一块

混合着红蓝两种颜色的调色板，但令我们无比喜悦的主要还是那种绿色闪光。

“薄荷酒色，”劳拉说。

“翡翠色，”我说。

“绿宝石色，”劳拉说，“翡翠色没这么亮。”

“铬绿色，”我说出这个生僻词，是因为不想服输。

“你总是那么着迷地寻求咬文嚼字的乐趣，爱德蒙，干脆就说嫉妒绿好了，我们也就不用再争下去了。”

“我可从来不懂嫉妒是什么意思。”

※

我并不乐意看到太阳离去，因为我所发现的赏心乐事之一就是温暖的阳光抚摸皮肤的感觉。在伦敦家乡的时候，我从来没有注意天气情况，除非是雨或雾实在给我带来了麻烦。我以前从没想过要飞到南边作一次度假旅游，不管别人谈论还是描写阳光照到白墙的情景，我一点也不理解，而现在南纬地带这种慵懒的气氛却已开始让我着迷。我喜欢看晒得黑黝黝的男人悠闲地坐着的样子，我喜欢听赤脚踏在尘土上所发出的像猫儿走过一样轻细的脚步声，我喜欢绕过墙角从房屋的阴影中突然进入赤日炎炎的空旷地带时的感觉。我把手一放到金属栏杆上马上拿开，还是烫伤了。不过我很少上岸。

要是没有这一次的亲身体验，我可能永远都不会相信日复一日地航行于茫茫大海上竟然能体验到如此纯朴的幸福快乐。我们停靠的港口很少，而真到停靠港口时，我总是很反感。我倒希望这种漂泊在大海上的无忧无虑的生活永无休止地持续下去。船上的图书室里立着一台很大的地球仪，在我看来，它的作用就是展示海洋与纷乱的世界上的陆地的比例，光一个太平洋就比所有的大陆加在一起还要大。蓝色，那是代表平静安宁的颜色。除此之外，我还喜欢船上所能听到的一切细微的声响：那宛如草原上纵马奔驰的骑手听到的马鞍皮革发出的响声的窸窣声，绳索舞动拍打的声音以及浪花飞溅的声音。两天的暴风雨使我欣喜万分，但最让我喜欢的还是这段漫长的无忧无虑的日子。在这段日子里，我已经和自己过去的一切彻底告别。

（摘自《海上无路标》，1961 年）

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**：参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. He can appreciate the grace of her gestures and the beauty of her clothes, for the good taste of which he praises her. She laughed at his clumsy compliment.

2. Doubtless some instinct impels Carr gluttonously to do this, or maybe Laura's un-

witting influence has called it out.

3. He believed in progress. A hard materialism was my creed, accepted as a law of progress; any ascription of disinterested motives aroused not only my suspicion but my scorn.

4. He is totally lost in the joy of watching the flashing green streak right after sunset, the young moon lying on her back and stars like little cuts in a black cover. He was not always like that before his voyage.

5. He wants his fill of beauty before he goes. Geographically he does not care and scarcely know where he is.

6. The moon and the cool water of the swimming pool provided him with relaxation, and a feeling of serenity of mind and sublimation of emotion.

7. Because one unconsciously appropriates them, a small manageable domain in a large unmanageable world. He couldn't tell why it should give such a queer sensation to reflect that that island has always been there (unless indeed it be no more than the work of the patient coral) and will be there still, should he return to find it waiting for him.

8. The sea is in contrast to the landmasses of the troubled world.

B. 课文欣赏问答：

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. I was once so completely absorbed in the important affairs of the world that I devoted all my attention, time and energy to them and only occasionally did I allow myself a little rest by reading poetry or listening to music.

2. Or maybe my suppressed inclination has been brought out under Laura's unintentional influences.

3. I was as puritanical as Pharisee and I viewed with contempt all those who lived a less practical life than my own and regarded them as creatures on the moon.

4. I firmly believed in uncompromising materialism which in my opinion represented the law of human progress. When people claimed that they protested against damaging natural beauty of unselfish motives, I suspected them and viewed them with contempt. I not only disbelieved people when they said they did things out of unselfish motives, I also held them in contempt.

5. Just imagine how I have changed now. Here I stand, sentimental and sensitive, like an old unmarried woman painting a water-colour picture of the sunset.

6. I want to enjoy beauty to my heart's content before I die.

7. At this moment I am not the middle-aged journalist that people believe me to be, spending a holiday on an ocean-going liner. I have now become a liberated person, bathed in magic waters, and I feel I am like Endymion, a young and strong youth who has a god for his father and gifted with the power to see the world inspired by the gods at Olympus.

8. I feel that I am weightless and totally absorbed by the night and feel at peace with the night.

9. I imagine devoted religious people must feel as clean and pure as I do now when they leave the solemn confession after gaining pardon for their sins.

10. In the same way I let myself freely imagine what the innermost part of Laura' s character presents. She looks so severe outwardly, but inwardly she is full of tenderness like delicate flowers waiting for the daring to discover them.

11. We human beings ought to learn from the wise bird, knowing how far we can allow ourselves to go; knowing how much freedom of conduct we can allow ourselves to have.

12. Here I' m born anew, completely different from the past, changed excessively or to an unusual extent.

13. The Pacific Ocean alone is much larger than all the continents combined.

14. A storm that lasted two day s has made me extremely excited and happy, but above all, I love these idle days in which I throw off all the qualities, perspectives, values and everything else that made me as what I was: I was born anew.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. political leader: leading article, political editorial

2. ill-formed: inadequately-informed

opinionated: conceitedly assertive, dogmatic in one' s opinions

3. call it out: to bring out

4. plane: level of existence

5. hard: firm and definite; uncompromising

6. water colours: a picture painted with watercolors

7. score off: to defeat in competition; to gain some advantage over

8. confessional: a small, enclosed place in a church, where a priest hears confessions

9. wireless: (Britain) radio

10. forbidding: looking dangerous, threatening or disagreeable; repellent

11. dramatically: strikingly, impressively

12. get relieved: to have the job taken away, especially when the job is something one does not want to do or is too heavy

13. odd fish: weird, strange people
14. latitude: (formal) some freedom to choose what you say or do
15. save: except
16. with a vengeance: to a high degree, excessively
17. shoulder: a rounded part of a mountain just below the top
18. colony: a particular group of people or the place where they live
19. ports of call: a port that is a regular stop over for ships
20. dwarf: to make small

B.

1. pass our time pleasantly
2. beginning
3. moral weakness usually found in a person/sensuous or sensual pleasure
4. dangerously steep
5. dry and barren
6. untouched
7. a secluded withdraw place/strict and serious
8. tells
9. prevented from being seen; blocked
10. intense bluish-green
11. idleness
12. perfect happiness and enjoyment

C.

1. metonymy
2. metonymy
3. euphemism
4. personification
5. personification
6. transferred epithet
7. alliteration
8. metaphors
9. transferred epithet
10. onomatopoeia

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英

1. He has a good eye for water-colours.
2. The daughter ventured to object to her parents' arrangement of her marriage.
3. Pressed by poverty, he took to stealing.
4. My long journey was beguiled with novels.
5. I suppose you have read Mark Twain.
6. He concentrated all his attention on this problem to the exclusion of all others.
7. Our problems are piling up. We must solve them as quickly as you can.
8. The sentries are relieved every four hours.
9. There was a touch of irony in his remark.
10. My memories of childhood are gradually receding.

B. 英译汉:参见“参考译文”。

C. 段落翻译:参见“参考译文”。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

（略）

Lesson Fourteen

Speech on Hitler's Invasion of the U.S.S.R.

词汇注释

conviction[kən'vikʃən] *n.* a fixed or strong belief 坚定的看法或信念

同义词:belief

这两个词都表示"信念,信仰",两者相比 **conviction** 强调一种"毋庸置疑的信念",我们可以将其理解为 a belief that excludes doubt,如:It's my conviction that complacency is at the root of our troubles.(我深信自满情绪是我们各种问题的根源。);**belief** 仅仅是一种观念,不一定是人们极力相信的,如:There is nothing more natural than a child's belief in his parents.(没有任何事情比孩子对他父母的信赖更为自然。)

horde[hɔːd] *n.* (sometimes *derogative*) a large group or crowd of people(有时作贬义)一群,一伙

【例句】A **horde** of children ran over the office building. 一大群孩子在办公大楼里到处奔跑。

enlist[in'list] *v.* to engage the support or cooperation of 赢得……的支持或合作

【例句】I have **enlisted** the co-operation of most of my colleagues in my campaign. 我在这一活动中得到了大多数同事的支持。

croquet['krəukei, – ki] *n.* an outdoor game in which the players drive wooden balls through a series of wickets using long-handled mallets 槌球游戏(一种用长柄木槌击打木球并使其穿过一系列球门的户外游戏)

revert[ri'vəːt] *v.* to return to (a topic in talk or thought) 回到(原话题或思路)

【例句】The conversation kept **reverting** to the subject of money. 谈话的内容总是离不开钱。

arch[aːtʃ] ***adj.*** chief; principal 主要的，首要的

【例句】Their **arch** foe is the Chicago Bull. 他们的主要对手是芝加哥公牛队。

regime[re'ʒiːm] ***n.*** method or system of government 政体，政权制度

devoid[di'vɔid] ***adj.*** completely lacking; destitute or empty 完全缺乏的

【例句】This novel is **devoid** of wit and inventiveness. 这是一部缺乏创意和情趣的小说。

ferocious[fə'rəuʃəs] ***adj.*** extremely savage or fierce 极为野蛮的，残忍的

folly['fɔli] ***n.*** an act or instance of foolishness 荒唐事，愚蠢的行为或事例

【例句】The old man regretted the **follies** of his youth. 那个老人为他年轻时所干的蠢事而后悔。

till[til] ***v.*** to prepare (land) for the raising of crops; cultivate 耕种，耕作

immemorial[ˌimi'mɔːriəl] ***adj.*** reaching beyond the limits of memory, tradition, or recorded history 古老的，久远的，无法追忆的

【例句】The Chinese have been worshipping their ancestors since time **immemorial**. 中国人自古以来就祭拜祖先。

wring[riŋ] ***v.*** to obtain or extract by applying force or pressure 榨取，勒索，压榨

【例句】They **wrung** the truth out of her. 他们强逼她说出了(事情的)真相。

primordial[prai'mɔːdjəl] ***adj.*** original; primary or fundamental 原始的，基本的，主要的

【例句】The universe was created out of a **primordial** ball of matter. 宇宙是从一个本来就存在着的球体中产生出来的。

clank[klæŋk] ***v.*** to make a sharp, hard, metallic sound 发出当啷声，使发出铿锵声

【例句】The prisoner's ankle chains **clanked** as they walked. 犯人走路时脚镣叮当作响。

click[klik] ***v.*** to produce a brief, sharp, non-resonant sound(使)发出咔嗒声，发出轻而短的声音

【例句】The door **clicked** shut behind him. 他进屋后，门咔嗒一声关上了。

dandify['dændifai] ***v.*** to dress as like a playboy; dress up (使)打扮得像纨绔子弟，盛装

cow[kau] ***v.*** to frighten with threats or a show of force 恐吓，威胁

【例句】He **cowed** them with his hard eyes like a tamer among beasts. 他以严厉的眼光吓他们，活像兽群中间的驯兽师。

docile['dəusail] ***adj.*** ready and willing to be taught; easy to manage or discipline 听话的，容易教的，易驾驭的，易控制的

同义词：obedient, tractable, compliant

这几个词都含有"顺从的"意思。**obedient** 指"对权威或控制自己的人的命令、指示顺

从的”，如：an obedient child（听话的孩子）；**docile** 则表示“性格温顺而无意反抗的”，如：a docile wife（温顺的妻子）；**tractable** 表示“易管理或控制的”，如：a tractable horse（驯服的马）；**compliant** 表示“愿意顺从别人的”，如：A compliant person gives in easily to other people's views.（一个性格温顺的人很容易顺从别人的意见。）

Hun[hʌn] *n.* used as a disparaging term for a German, especially a German soldier in World War I 用于对德国人的蔑称，尤指第一次世界大战中的德国士兵

plod[plɔd] *v.* to move or walk heavily or laboriously 步履艰难地走，沉重缓慢地走

【例句】We **plodded** on through the rain for several hours. 我们在雨中跋涉了几个小时。

smart[smɑːt] *v.* to feel a sharp, stinging pain 感到剧痛，感到伤心

【例句】No creature **smarts** so little as a fool.（*Alexander Pope*）傻瓜是受到精神上折磨最少的人。（亚历山大·波普）

villainous[ˈvilənəs] *adj.* being or manifesting the nature of a villain, as in wickedness or depravity 恶劣的，邪恶的

【例句】Such a **villainous** band of thieves broke into the store. 这群恶棍一样的小偷闯进了商店。

cataract[ˈkætərækt] *n.* a large or high waterfall; a deluge 大瀑布，洪流

declare[diˈklɛə] *v.* to make known formally or officially 宣布，宣告，声明

【例句】The United States **declared** war against Iraq. 美国对伊宣战。

同义词：announce, publish, proclaim

这一组词都含有“明确地声明或宣布的意思”，其区别在于 **declare** 常用于正式场合，指“正式而公开地让人知道，或通过官方使……为人所知清楚”，如：He declared his intention to run for office.（他公开宣布了自己参加竞选的想法。）**announce** 侧重“把人们关心或感兴趣的事正式公布于众”，如：It has been announced that Mr. Smith and Miss Jones will be married next week.（已经正式宣布史密斯先生与琼斯小姐将于下周举行婚礼。）**publish** 主要是指“通过书面的方式让公众都知道”，如：News of the general's sudden death was not published for several days.（那个将军突然死亡的消息有好几天没有公布。）**proclaim** 一般用于公共或正式场合，着重指“庄严地或者严肃认真地向广大群众宣布某一重大的事件”，如：The government proclaimed a law.（政府公布了一项法令。）

concur[kənˈkəː] *v.* to be of the same opinion; agree 同意，赞成

【例句】She has expressed her opposition to the plan, and I fully **concur** with her in this matter. 她对计划表示反对，在这一问题上，我完全赞同她的看法。

vestige[ˈvestidʒ] *n.* a visible trace or sign of something that once existed but appears no more 遗迹，痕迹，（某物的）残余

同义词：trace，track

虽然这三个词都含有“留下的痕迹或记号”的意思，但是 **trace** 指“某些已出现或发生的事所留下的记号、痕迹等”，如：Age has left its traces on her face.（岁月在她脸上留下了痕迹。）**vestige** 指“过去存在的事物所留下的遗迹或残余”，如：Not a vestige of the abbey remains.（那修道院的遗迹已经荡然无存。）**track** 表示“车辆、行人、动物等经过后留下的痕迹、踪迹或足迹”，如：The hunter followed the animal's tracks.（猎人追踪动物的足迹。）

parley['pɑːli] *v.* to have a discussion, especially with an enemy 与……会谈，与……谈判（尤其指和对立一方进行商讨）

【例句】The opposing sides come to realize that a pointless quarrel doesn't help the situation; therefore, they plan to **parley** with each other. 敌对双方逐渐意识到无谓的争吵不能解决任何问题，因此，双方打算举行一次会谈。

creed[kriːd] *n.* a formal statement of religious belief; a confession of faith 信条，信念

divergence[dai'rːdʒəns，di –] *n.* the state of being different from one another 分歧

【例句】There is a great **divergence** of opinions among the board of directors. 董事会内部的意见存在着巨大的分歧。

反义词：convergence

woefully['wəufuli] *adv.* deplorably or regrettably 可悲地，不幸地

【例句】The preparations were **woefully** inadequate. 准备工作做得未免太不够了。

fortify['fɔːtifai] *v.* to make strong; to strengthen and secure (a position) with fortifications 巩固，强化，设防，设要塞

【例句】After praying he faced his difficulties with a **fortified** spirit. 祈祷之后他面对困难的勇气增强了。

tyranny['tirəni] *n.* absolute power, especially when exercised unjustly or cruelly 专制

【例句】I have sworn ... eternal hostility against every form of **tyranny** over the mind of man. (Thomas Jefferson) 我已经发过誓……永远反抗以任何形式对人类思想施行的暴政。（托马斯·杰弗逊）

moralise['mɔrəlaiz] *v.* (= moralize) (esp. derogative 常用作贬义) to talk or write critically about right and wrong behavior, esp. in a self-righteous way 训导，说教（尤其指自以为是的说教）

【例句】He is always **moralizing** about the behavior of young people. 他总是就年轻人的行为进行说教。

catastrophe[kə'tæstrəfi] *n.* a great, often sudden calamity 大灾难，异常的灾祸

同义词：见第二课“词汇注释”的 cataclysm

blood-lust *n.* strong desire to kill 杀戮欲

lure[ljuə] *v.* to attract or entice by wiles or temptation 诱惑,引诱

【例句】Many young engineers have been **lured** to go abroad by the promise of high wages. 在给予高薪的允诺的诱惑下,许多年轻的工程师去了国外。

outrage['autreidʒ] *n.* (esp. derogative) (act of) great violence or cruelty(常用作贬义)暴虐,残忍

【例句】Those who had been under colonial rule for more than a century would never forget the **outrages** committed by the aggressor troops. 那些一个多世纪以来受到殖民统治的人们不会忘记侵略军所犯下的暴行。

hurl[hə:l] *v.* to throw with great force; thrust 用力投掷,猛地推进

【例句】The soldier **hurled** himself upon the enemy. 那个士兵向敌人猛扑过去。

prelude['prelju:d] *n.* an introductory performance, event, or action preceding a more important one 前奏,序幕

【例句】The bankruptcy of several small firms was the **prelude** to general economic collapse. 几家小商行倒闭了,随之而来的是经济大萧条。

subjugation[ˌsʌbdʒu'geiʃən] *n.* conquest or enslavement 征服,制服

hearth[ha:θ] *n.* the floor of a fireplace; family life or home 炉边,家庭生活,家

短语表达

round up:cause sb. or sth. to gather in one place 驱集,使集拢

【例句】The guide **rounded up** the tourists and led them back to the coach. 导游把游客集合在一起,领他们回到车上。

count on:rely on sb. or sth. with confidence 依靠,信赖,指望

【例句】Don't **count on** a salary increase this year. 别指望今年会加薪水。

go all out:do one's utmost, spare no efforts 全力以赴

【例句】The team is **going all out** to win the championship. 这个队为了争取冠军而全力以赴。

make a reference to:speaking of or mentioning sb. or sth. 提到,提及

【例句】The commentator **made a pointed reference to** the recent scandal. 这个评论员有针对性地提到了最近的丑闻。

to the effect that:with the meaning that ..., giving the information that ... 大意为

【例句】He left a note **to the effect that** he would not be returning. 他留下一张字条,大意是说他不回来了。

on the threshold of:at the point of entering or beginning of 在……门口,在……的开端

【例句】The politician was **on the threshold of** his career. 那位政治家的事业刚刚起步。

tie down: reduce to bondage; enslave 束缚，限制，奴役

【例句】The veteran worker refuses to be **tied down** by petty restriction. 那个老工人不理会琐细的规章制度的限制。

in due course: at the appropriate time; eventually 在适当的时机，最终

【例句】Your request will be dealt with **in due course**. 你的要求将在适当的时候予以处理。

it follows that: it shows that ; from this we can see that 由此可见，由此断定

【例句】He doesn't come to work today, but **it doesn't necessarily follow that** he is ill. 他今天没来上班，但并不见得他就是病了。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. Winston Churchill: (1874—1965)

Winston Leonard Spencer Churchill grew up as the son of a British noble. He attended private school from age of seven, and entered Harrow in 1888. He was not impressed with his education. Later he entered Sandhurst Royal Military College in 1893 after three attempts to pass the entrance test. He joined the army in 1895.

温斯顿·伦纳德·斯宾塞·丘吉尔，出生于一个英国贵族家庭。从7岁起，他便进入私立学校接受教育。1888年，他进入哈罗公学学习，但是他不大满意自己在学校受的教育。在参加了三次入学考试之后，终于在1893年被桑赫斯特军事学院录取。两年之后，他入伍当了一名军人。

He was elected to the House of Commons as a Conservative in 1900. Then he joined the Liberal Party and became the President of the Board of Trade in 1904. He served as Under Secretary of State for the Colonies from 1906 to 1908. He served in the military in France during World War I. He was Secretary of State for War from 1918 to 1921 and Chancellor of the Exchequer from 1924 to 1929. When World War II broke out, he was nominated as First Lord of Admiralty.

1900年他当选为保守党下议院议员，随后，他转而加入自由党，并于1904年出任贸易大臣。从1906年到1908年，他当选殖民部次官。第一次世界大战期间，他随部队到法国作战。1918—1921，他担任陆军大臣；1924—1929，任财政大臣。第二次世界大战爆发后，他被任命为海军大臣。

He was Prime Minister from 1940 to 1945 and from 1951 to 1955, and is widely regarded as Britain's greatest 20th-century statesman. Besides this, he is also a prolific historical writer, and his most famous works are *The World Crisis* (4 vols., 1923—1929), *My*

Early Life (1930), *Marlborough* (4 vols., 1933—1938), *The Second World War* (6 vols., 1948—1953), and *A History of the English-Speaking Peoples* (4 vols., 1956—1958). He was knighted for his great contribution to Britain and was awarded Nobel Prize for Literature in 1953 for his *The Second World War* (6 vols, 1948—1953).

丘吉尔曾于1940—1945、1951—1955两度出任英国首相,被公认为20世纪英国最伟大的政治家。除此以外,他还是一位以写历史题材为主的作家,其主要作品有《世界危机》(共4卷,1923—1929)、《我的早年生活》(1930)、《马尔巴罗传:他的生平和时代》(共4卷,1933—1938)、《第二次世界大战回忆录》(共6卷,1948—1953)以及《英语国家史略》(共4卷,1956—1958)。1953年,他受到册封以表彰其对英国所作出的巨大贡献,同年,他也因《第二次世界大战回忆录》一书荣获诺贝尔文学奖。

2. 该演讲发表时的历史背景:第二次世界大战(1939—1945)爆发后,德国于1940年7月10日对英国发动空袭"空中闪电战",历史上称为"不列颠之战"。这是第二次世界大战中时间最长规模最大的一次空战,德军平均每天出动1 000多架飞机。正当不列颠之战胜负未分之时,德国法西斯却把矛头突然地转向了苏联,一方面是由于英国人民的坚决抵抗,如果再拖延下去,德国的侵略计划就要被打乱了;另一方面,当时苏联的战备在不断加强,希特勒既怕苏联强大,更怕英、苏走上联合,所以决定先征服苏联后,再麾师西进。所以,希特勒于1941年6月22日发起进攻,苏德战争爆发,第二次世界大战进入了新阶段。丘吉尔的这篇演说就是在这样的情况下发表的。

3. General Dill:即Sir John Green Dill(1881—1944),英国陆军元帅,第二次世界大战初期任英国参谋长,1941—1944年任英国驻美国联合参谋使团团长。被公认为英国首屈一指的战略家。第二次世界大战爆发后任驻法英军军长,1940年5月任帝国总参谋长。他对盟国做出的最大贡献是在他驻华盛顿期间(1941—1944)协调西方两个主要盟国的军事方针。他和马歇尔的友谊大大促进了英美两国的团结一致。

4. the War Cabinet:战时内阁,1939年3月德国占领捷克以后,英国国内要求成立联合政府的呼声日益高涨,就连最正统的保守党人中间也有许多人持这种看法。张伯伦对于此种意见却不置可否,实际上就是不愿采纳,因为这意味着丘吉尔也将进入政府。但是,德国对波兰的入侵,迫使张伯伦改变了态度。1940年5月,丘吉尔组建联合政府内阁,丘吉尔任首相,阿特利任副首相。

5. Mr. Eden:即Robert Anthony Eden罗伯特·安东尼·艾登(1897—1977),英国前首相、保守党前领袖。他出生于贵族家庭,曾就读于伊顿公学和牛津大学。第一次世界大战期间,曾在法国作战。1922年当选为保守党议员,1934—1935年任掌玺大臣,1935—1938年任外交大臣,后因反对张伯伦的绥靖政策而辞职。1939—1940年重入张伯伦内阁,任自治领大臣,随后在丘吉尔内阁中任陆军大臣。1955—1957年出任英国首相兼第一财政大臣。1957年因英法发动侵埃战争失败,辞去首相职务。

6. Lord Beaverbrook:即比弗布鲁克男爵(1879—1964),原名William Maxwell Aitken,他是一位加拿大裔英籍出版商、金融家和政治家。他在《每日快讯》(1916年)和

《晚间旗报》(1923 年)上创立了他的报业帝国;他是两次世界大战期间在英国内阁任职的三人之一(另外两人分别是温斯顿·丘吉尔和约翰·西蒙);在第二次世界大战期间,他是丘吉尔的战时内阁成员,任飞机生产大臣(1940—1941)和供应大臣(1941—1942),还担任英国驻美租借法案主管人员(1942)和掌玺大臣(1943—1945)。

7. Sir Stafford Cripps：即 Richard Stafford Cripps 理查德·斯塔福德·克里普斯爵士(1889—1952),英国政治家。他曾在温切斯特和伦敦大学攻读化学,倡导与共产党组成联合阵线以抵制纳粹的威胁。在第二次世界大战期间,他任英国驻莫斯科大使(1940—1942),1942 年参加战时内阁,任掌玺大臣,后来担任财政大臣(1947—1950),成为下院领袖。

8. Chequers：契克斯,英国首相乡间别墅。在英格兰白金汉郡,位于伦敦西北 50 公里处,占地约 600 公顷。当地的契克斯宫于 1565 年重建,1917 年捐赠给国家,被国会批准为首相周末招待客人的场所。

9. B. B. C. ：British Broadcasting Corporation(英国广播公司),成立于 1922 年,是一个凭皇家特许状经营的公立广播组织,是英国最大的新闻广播机构,也是世界最大的新闻广播机构之一。BBC 虽然是接受英国政府资助的公营媒体,但其管理却是由一个独立于政府以外的 12 人监管委员会负责,并且通过皇家宪章保障其独立性。监管委员以公众利益的信托人的身份管理 BBC,他们都是社会上有名望的人士,包括苏格兰、威尔士、北爱尔兰和英格兰的首长,由英国首相提名,英女皇委任。BBC 目前经营 8 条电视频道,10 条广播频道,同时也以 43 种语言向全球进行广播。BBC 在新闻界最为人乐道的是其严格的要求:不能做广告或广播有人资助的节目,不得对时事和公共政策发表自己的任何意见,对待有争议的问题必须持不偏不倚的态度。

10. Dominions(自治领)指 1939 年以前的英联邦国家加拿大、澳大利亚、新西兰、南非联邦、爱尔兰和纽芬兰。国际上,自治领(纽芬兰除外)被认为是单独的国家,在国际联盟和其他国际组织中有其自己的代表,有权自行任命大使和自行缔结条约。同时,自治领国家与联合王国以及自治领国家之间的关系不是对外关系。1947 年以后,“自治领”一词不再使用,原来这些与联合王国有关联的国家被称为“英联邦成员国”。

11. the British Empire:大英帝国,包括自治领、殖民地、附属国、托管地和受保护国。19 世纪末和 20 世纪早期其国力达到巅峰,领土遍及各大洲,约占世界陆地面积和人口的四分之一。

12. Commonwealth of Nations:英联邦,也称 British Commonwealth,英联邦是一个由英国及其自治领和其他已经取得独立的英国前殖民地、附属国组成的组织,现有 54 个成员,其中非洲最多,共有 19 个。英联邦人口 18 亿,占世界总人口的 1/3,除英国、澳大利亚、加拿大、新西兰为发达国家外,其余都是发展中国家,其中有些国家还被联合国列为世界上最不发达国家,成员之间贫富差距巨大。英国如今已逐渐失去了对英联邦的控制,而有着 70 多年历史的英联邦本身也逐渐成为了一个组织越来越松

散,内部联系越来越不稳定,相互间只进行政治、经济磋商与合作的组织。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

On June 22, 1941, as Hitler started an undeclared war against Russia, Churchill worked on a speech to be broadcast to the whole world. In the speech, he denounced the Nazi regime as most wicked, causing unprecedented (史无前例的) death and destruction in the human history. Now it invaded Russia, and the Russian soldiers were making a life-or-death attempt to fight against the Germans. This was a crucial point. And he declared the British government's policy, that is, to destroy Hitler and every vestige of the Nazi regime. Therefore, he called on all their friends and allies to unite and fight together. Churchill pointed out that this, however, was only "a prelude" to an invasion of Britain. Thus, the danger of Russia was that of Britain. United, the anti-fascist countries would survive; separated, they would be struck down one by one.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

Churchill came straight to the point in his speech, using brief and concise language to make clear the intention and theme of his speech. This kind of opening is usually employed on formal occasions. He employed many rhetorical devices in the main argumentative part, such as parallel structure, repetition, inversion etc. which make his speech vivid and forceful. The speech ends up with some agitative remarks calling on all the people to fight against the Nazi regime. The following are some of the rhetorical devices that Churchill employed in his speech:

丘吉尔在演讲开始就用简明扼要的语言交代清楚其演讲的意图和主题,这种开门见山的方式常被用于较为正规、严肃和庄重的场合。在其演讲主体的结构模式中,丘吉尔使用了排比、反复、倒序等多种修辞手法,加强了语言的力度及感染力。在最后演讲结束时,他以极富鼓动性的言辞号召人们为了粉碎纳粹德国而行动起来。他在整篇演讲稿中运用了以下一些修辞手法:

1. Parallel structure: If refers to the repeating of phrases and sentences which are syntactically similar. It does not only make the passage more rhythmic, but more emphatic as well. As a figure of speech, parallelism is also blended readily with other strategies, to produce a variety of effects. Examples from the text: I see the Russian soldiers standing ..., I see them guarding ..., I see the ten thousand villages ..., I see advancing upon ..., I see also the dull ..., I see the German bombers 和 We shall fight him by land, we shall fight him by sea, we shall fight him in the air ...

排比,也是平行结构,把结构相同或相似、意义相关、语气一致的几个词或句子并列使用。它不仅能增强语言的韵律美,也能够增强语言的气势。作为一种修辞手段,排比常常

与其他一些修辞方法搭配使用,以取得多样化的效果。

2. Repetition: It refers to the repeated use of the same synonymous words in a sentence. The repeated words are often used to add force, which is similar to parallel structure. However, compared with the latter, it is a repetition of words rather than structural patterns. We sometimes combine these two figures of speech to achieve better effect. Examples from the text: the return of the bread-winner, of their champion, of their protector 和 We will never parley, we will never negotiate ...

反复与排比相比,两者都具有突出重点的强调作用,但是重复侧重于词语,而排比侧重于结构。两者结合使用,效果更佳。

3. Rhetorical question: It is one that requires no answer because the answer is obvious, but for the purpose of making an assertion in a striking and lively way. It is often used to involve the audience and to arouse interest. Examples from the text: ... but can you doubt what our policy will be?

反问句:是一种用疑问形式表示肯定或否定意义的句式,而无需做出回答的修辞方式,具有强烈的反诘语气。反问句的使用能够吸引观众的兴趣和注意。

4. Periodic sentence: Long and frequently involved sentence in which the main idea of sentence is not expressed at the outset, but is reserved to the end of the sentence. Thus the meaning of the sentence is not completed until the final word-usually with an emphatic climax. Examples from the text: The past, with its crimes, its follies, and its tragedies, flashes away. 和 If Hitler imagines that ..., he is woefully wrong.

圆周句:也称作"掉尾句"。圆周句中主要信息在后,次要信息在前,使句子的重心置于句尾,这种句式使听众不能很快地接触到句子的主要内容,因而增加了悬念,起到了强调作用;

5. Inversion: It refers to a change in the normal word order, such as the placement of a verb before its subject. It is often used for emphasis. Examples from the text: Nor indeed what to do. 和 From this nothing will turn us—nothing.

倒装:句中正常词序的任何变化,都会同原句在意义上、程度上、或语气上产生一定的区别,因此倒装形式通常用来表示强调,被强调的概念一般放在句首。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. the news was brought ... of Russia: I heard the news that Hitler had invaded Russia. of 后面接的名词短语作后置定语修饰名词 news, the news of... 被句子的谓语隔开了,这是因为用作定语的 of 短语较长,为了保持句子的平衡,取得一种文体的效果,使用了这种结构。

2. I had not the slightest ... our policy lay: I was very clear about our responsibility

and I knew exactly what our policy would be.(我对我们应该承担什么义务,采取什么政策清清楚楚)。

3. Nor indeed what to do:这是一个省略倒装句,完整的句子是 Nor had I the slightest doubt as to what to say.

4. I asked that ... that night:I demanded that the department concerned should inform the people of the speech that I were to broadcast at 9 O'clock.(我吩咐有关部门立即通知,我将于当晚九点发表广播讲话)。这句话中的 that I would broadcast at 9 O'clock that night 是一个同位语从句,作 notice 的同位语。give notice 表示 inform... beforehand(预先通知、通告):You must give notice of changes in the arrangements.(你要改变计划必须事先通知大家。)

5. had surprised ... grounded on the airfields:had attacked the Russians suddenly and unexpectedly and destroyed a large number of planes before they took off.(还突袭了很大一部分苏联空军部队尚未起飞的飞机。)这里的 grounded on the airfields 作后置定语修饰 a large portion of the Soviet Air Force,而 ground 在此表示"(使)停飞,(使)降落"。

6. I suppose they ... in hordes:I think that the Red Army men will be surrounded and captured in surprisingly large numbers.(我估计他们将会大批地被包围)。这句话中的 they 指 the Red Army men,这是一个直接引语,由于只引用了总参谋长的一句话,所以在上文中没有出现 they 的先行词。

7. Hitler was counting on ... the U. S. A.:Hitler thought that if he attacked Russia, he would win in Britain and U. S. A. the support of the capitalists and those who were against Communism. right wing 右翼,指某群体中保守或反动的派系。

8. the same would be true of the U. S. A.:As far as the U. S. A. was concerned, they would also did their utmost to support Russia.(美国的态度也会是一样的)。of 在这里表示 in relation to 或者 concerning,表示"涉及、有关……",如:his chance of winning(他获胜的机会),sure of one's facts(确信自己的论据)。

9. ... whether for him ... in the House of Rimmon:As for such an anti-communist like him, didn't this mean that he was rejecting his previous attitude towards communism?(对于他这个反共的主要人物来说,这样做是否言行不一,口是心非。)这句话中的 the House of Rimmon 是《圣经·列王纪·下》(Bible, II Kings. 5:15-18)中的一个典故,"In this thing the LORD pardon thy servant, that when my master goeth into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leaneth on my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon: when I bow down myself in the house of Rimmon, the LORD pardon thy servant in this thing."(唯有一件事,愿耶和华饶恕你仆人,我主人进临门庙叩拜的时候,我用手搀他在临门庙,我也屈身。我在临门庙屈身的这事,愿耶和华饶恕我。)bow down in the House of Rimmon 原意指"拜倒在伪神临门脚下",表示"表面上与宗教信仰一致,

但心里却有不同”;后引申为“违背良心或原则做自己不愿做的事情”。在这里 the House of Rimmon 借指英国的下院。

10. If Hitler invaded Hell ... the House of Commons: Even if Hitler violated Hell, a most hated place, I would still say some positive words for Devil, the foe of humankind, in the House of Commons.（就算是希特勒入侵地狱,我至少也会在下议院替魔鬼们美言几句的。）

11. It is devoid of ... racial domination: The Nazi regime does not have any ideal or guiding principle at all. All it has is a strong desire for conquest and rule by the “Nordic” race, the allegedly most superior race in the world.（纳粹制度除了贪得无厌和种族统治外,别无主旨和原则）。

12. It excels all forms ... ferocious aggression: The Nazi regime carries out its invasion so cruelly that it surpasses any action of this kind in human history.（纳粹政权横暴凶悍,野蛮侵略,为人类一切形式的卑劣行径所不及）。excel in/at 意思是 be exceptionally good at sth.,表示“（在这方面）成绩杰出,专长（某一方面）”,这里说纳粹政权在侵略方面极为拿手,实际上暗含了一种讽刺的意味。

13. I will unsay ... have spoken about it: I will never take back a single word of what I have said about the communism. 句中 that 引导的是一个同位语从句,做 word 的同位语;unsay 中的 un-作为前缀常与动词结合构成另一个意义与之相反的动词,例如:do（实行）—undo（撤销）;lock（锁上）—unlock（开锁）;bar（把门关上）—unbar（拉开门的闩）;bend（弯曲）—unbend（弄直）等。丘吉尔在此清楚地表明了他的观点,即他仍然是反对共产主义的,而且他对其反共行为丝毫不感到后悔。

14. The past, with its crimes ... flashes away: What has happened before, like the crimes committed by ... the unwise measures taken by it and the tragic suffering of its people, has been quickly forgotten.（这一切连同它的罪恶,它的愚蠢和悲剧,都一闪而逝了）。作者在这句话里运用了排比的修辞手法,它可增强语言的节奏感和旋律美,加强语言的气势,加强论证的言语力度和感染力,从而淋漓尽致地抒发演讲者的思想感情,例如,马丁·路德·金的《我有一个梦想》就是运用排比手法的一个范例。

15. I see the Russian soldiers ... and a safer prey: 在这一大段话中,丘吉尔一连使用了六个并行的 I see ... 来描述纳粹进攻苏联时的情景,表明了他支持、同情苏联军民,声讨纳粹德国野蛮、残暴的侵略行径。

16. the return of the bread-winner ... of their protector: 这三个并列的介词短语作后置定语,修饰 the return。而这三个名词实际上指的是同一类人,即他们在前线作战的亲人们。

17. where the means of existence ... and children play: 这里三个 where 引导的从句都是定语从句,第一个 where 的先行词是前面的 ten thousand villages of Russia,第一个 where

从句和第二个 where 从句之间存在着意义上的让步关系,这两句话可以合在一起理解为 Though people have to do back-breaking work in order to get a little food out of the poor soil, they still enjoy basic human pleasures.

18. I see advancing ... Nazi war machine. : I can see the Nazi army launching violent attacks on all this. (我看见纳粹的战争机器向他们碾压过去,穷凶极恶地展开了屠杀。) 这句话中的 advancing upon all this 是提前了的宾语补足语,动词 see 的宾语是 the Nazi war machine。machine 在这里指"(政党的)领导集团,核心组织",all this 指的是上文提到的 the villages, the peasants and their primordial joys。

19. I see also the dull ... crawling locusts: The monotonous, disciplined, obedient and savage German soldiers move on in massive formation from one place to another, just like a large crowd of moving locusts, resulting in destruction and death. (我还看见大批愚笨迟钝,受过训练,唯命是从,凶残暴虐的德国士兵,像一大群爬行的蝗虫正在蹒跚行进。) 丘吉尔在此使用了一个十分恰当的比喻,即把德国士兵比作蝗虫,因为两者有着一个共同点——带来灾难和毁灭。

20. the German bombers and fighters ... an easier and safer prey: The Nazi air force had just suffered severe losses in the aerial war against Britain. Though still feeling painful about the defeat, they now feel happy because they think they can easily beat the Russian air force with only a slight effort. 在这句话中,smart 的意思是"造成或感到痛苦",如: They are still smarting from their defeat in the final. (他们仍在为决赛的失败而伤心。) 这句话中 many a + 单数可数名词的结构就相当于 a large number of + 可数名词的复数,但是 many a 后面的动词仍然用第三人称单数的形式,如: Many a famous pop star has been ruined by drugs. (很多有名的流行歌星都因为吸毒而毁了自己。)

21. Behind all this ... horrors upon mankind: Behind all this hostility and fighting I see that a small group of wicked men who make the world suffer untold miseries and unparallel disasters. (在这番嚣张气焰的背后,在这场突然袭击的背后,我看到了那一小撮策划、组织并向人类发动这场恐怖战争的恶棍。) 此句作者运用的是隐喻的修辞手法, glare 指"仇恨"或者"敌意、凶残的表情"; storm 比喻为"战争"或者"袭击"。

22. I feel sure ... in due course concur: I have no doubt that our Dominions will agree with us at the appropriate time. 在这儿,丘吉尔是以英国政府的名义宣布决定的,而没有以大英帝国的各自治领的名义宣布决定。

23. but can you doubt what ... will be? : There is no doubt what our policy will be. (我相信,你们绝不会怀疑我们将要采取的政策。) 这是一个反问句,不需要做出回答,但语气比陈述句更为强烈,表明了英国政府消灭希特勒,肃清纳粹制度的决心。

24. From this nothing will ... nothing: There is nothing that can turn us back from our purpose. (什么也不能使我们改变这个决心。) 这是一个倒装句,把状语 from this 提

前了，起强调作用。正常的句序应当是 Nothing will turn us from this。Nothing 的重复更是表明了丘吉尔的态度。

25. We will never parley ...：在这后半个自然段里，丘吉尔再次使用了排比和反复的修辞手法。

26. if Hitler imagines that ... woefully mistaken：If Hitler thinks that because of his attack we will not be so united or determined as to fight against him, he will find himself deplorably wrong.（如果希特勒认为他对苏联的进攻会稍稍转移那些决心消灭他的伟大的民主国家的目标或者使他们的斗志松懈下来的话，那么他就大错特错了。）这是一个圆周句，又被称为"掉尾句"，是一种把关键意思放在句子末尾，因而要读完全句才能了解该句完整含义的句子结构；从语法上看，圆周句的主语或谓语常放在句末。这种句式上的安排使得文章显得比较复杂、正式和文雅。

27. when by united action ... from this catastrophe：if they had fought in a unified way, they might have saved themselves and therefore saved the world.（当初这些国家若是采取一致行动，原本是可以使自己和全世界免遭这场劫难的。）这里是一个虚拟语气的用法，含意是当初这些国家并没有采取一致的行动，全世界也并没有能够避免劫难。

28. He wishes to destroy ... of his crimes：The main reason is that he wants to destroy Russia so as to draw his troops back from Russia to Britain to conquer it. And Hitler knows clearly that if he fails to crush Britain, he will be destroyed for the crimes he has committed. 这是一个多重复合句，结构较为复杂，表露了丘吉尔的心理，英国依旧是世界的中心。

29. the scene will be ... the final act：There will be nothing to prevent Hitler from conquering all the countries in the Western Hemisphere.（他就可以为最后行动清除障碍了。）这里所谓的最后一幕好戏指的是"彻底击败和征服西半球"。

30. hearth and home：home and its comforts（温暖而舒适的家庭生活。）这里使用了押头韵（alliteration）的修辞方法，它是一种语音修辞方式，指一组词、一句话或者一行诗中重复出现开头字母相同的单词，能达到平衡节奏，突出重点，加深印象的作用。

V. 参考译文

关于希特勒入侵苏联的广播演说

温斯顿·丘吉尔

二十二日，星期天早晨。我一大早醒来便接到了希特勒入侵苏联的消息。这使得原先意料中的事情变为了不争的事实。我对我们应该承担什么义务，采取什么政

策清清楚楚。我也完全清楚该如何就此事发表声明。剩下的不过是将这一切形成文字。于是，我吩咐有关部门立即通知，我将于当晚九点发表广播讲话。很快，从伦敦赶到的迪尔将军带着详细的汇报走进我的卧室。德军已经从多条线路开始入侵苏联，还突袭了很大一部分苏联空军部队尚未起飞的飞机。德军目前似乎正以迅猛的步伐向前推进。这位皇家军队总参谋长补充到："我估计大批的苏联军队将会被包围。"

我写了一整天的演讲稿，根本没时间而且我也觉得没有必要去找战时内阁进行磋商。我知道我们大家是英雄所见略同。艾登先生、比弗布鲁克勋爵，还有斯塔福德·克里普斯爵士——他是十号离开莫斯科——那天也和我在一起。

那个周末值班的是我的私人秘书科维尔先生。他记录下的那个周日在首相官邸里发生的情况，也许还值得一提：

"六月二十一日那天是星期六。我是晚饭前来到首相官邸的。怀南特夫妇、艾登夫妇以及爱德华·布里奇斯等几位都在。午宴上，丘吉尔先生说，德军入侵苏联已经是毋庸置疑的了。在他看来，希特勒指望能够赢得英美两国资本家及右翼势力的同情和支持。不过，希特勒是想错了。我们将会全力以赴援助苏联。怀南特表示美国的态度也会是一样的。

吃过晚饭，我和丘吉尔先生在槌球场上散步时，他又提到了这个话题。我就问他，对于他这个反共的主要人物来说，这样做是否言行不一，口是心非。'当然不是。现在只有一个目标，就是要消灭希特勒，我的生活才能从此简单一些。就算是希特勒入侵地狱，我至少也会在下议院替魔鬼们美言几句的。'

次日凌晨四点，我被电话铃惊醒，是外交部来的电话，报告德国入侵苏联的消息。首相一向吩咐，除非英国遭到入侵，否则绝对不要叫醒他。因此，我等到八点钟才向他报告这一消息。听完他只说了一句话：'通知英国广播电台，我今晚九点要发表广播讲话。'他从上午十一点开始准备讲稿，中间除了同斯塔福德·克里普斯爵士、克兰伯恩勋爵和比弗布鲁克勋爵一起吃午饭以外，他一整天的时间都花在准备讲稿上了……直到晚上九点差二十的时候才写好。

我的广播讲话是这样的：

"希特勒是个十恶不赦、杀人如麻、欲望难填的魔鬼，而纳粹制度除了贪得无厌和种族统治外，别无主旨和原则。它横暴凶悍，野蛮侵略，为人类一切形式的卑劣行径所不及。它的残酷行为和凶暴侵略所造成的恶果超过了各式各样的人类罪行。在过去的25年中，没有一个人像我这样始终一贯地反对共产主义。我并不想收回我说过的话。但是，这一切，在正在我们眼前展现的情景对照之下，都已黯然失色了，过去的一切，连同它的罪恶，它的愚蠢和悲剧，都一闪而逝了。我看见苏联士兵站在祖国的大门口，守卫着他们的祖先自远古以来劳作的土地。我看见他们守卫着自己的家园，他们的母亲和妻子在祈祷——呵，是的，有时人人都要祈祷，祝愿亲人平安，祝愿他们的赡养者、战斗者和保护者回归。我看到苏联上万的村庄，那里穿衣吃饭都依靠土地，生活虽然十分艰辛，那儿依然有着人类的基本乐趣，少女在欢笑，儿童在玩耍。我看见纳粹的战争机器向他们碾压过去，穷凶极恶地展开了屠杀。我看见全副戎装、佩剑、马刀和鞋钉叮当作响的普鲁士军官，以及刚刚威吓、压制过十多个国家的、奸诈无

比的特工高手。我还看见大批愚笨迟钝，受过训练，唯命是从，凶残暴虐的德国士兵，像一大群爬行的蝗虫正在蹒跚行进。我看见德国轰炸机和战斗机在天空盘旋，虽然德军依然因英国人的多次鞭挞而心有余悸，这会儿却已经为找到一个自以为唾手可得的猎物而得意忘形起来。

在这番嚣张气焰的背后，在这场突然袭击的背后，我看到了那一小撮策划、组织并向人类发动这场恐怖战争的恶棍……

但现在我必须宣布国王陛下政府的决定，我确信伟大的自治领地在适当时候会一致同意这项决定。然而我们必须现在，必须立即宣布这项决定，一天也不能耽搁。我必须发表这项声明，但是你们会怀疑我们的政策吗？我们只有一个目标，一个唯一的、决不更改的目标，那就是一定要消灭希特勒和纳粹制度的一切痕迹。什么也不能使我们改变这个决心。什么也不能！我们决不谈判；我们决不同希特勒或他的任何党羽进行谈判。我们将在陆地上同他作战；我们将在海洋上同他作战；我们将在天空中同他作战，直至借上帝之力，在地球上肃清他的阴影，并把地球上的人民从他的枷锁下解放出来。我们将援助任何一个同纳粹主义作斗争的人或者国家。我们将敌视任何一个助纣为虐的人或国家……这就是我们的政策，这就是我们的声明。因此，我们将尽力给苏联和苏联人民提供一切援助。我们将呼吁世界各地的朋友和盟友采取同样的方针，并且同我们一样，忠诚不渝地推行到底……

这不是阶级战争。这是一场整个大英帝国和英联邦，不分种族，不分信仰，不分党派，全都投入进去的战争。我无权代表美国方面做任何的行动宣言，但我要声明一点：如果希特勒认为他对苏联的进攻会稍稍转移那些决心消灭他的伟大的民主国家的目标或者使他们的斗志松懈下来的话，那么他就大错特错了。恰恰相反，我们将会更加坚强、更加努力地将人类从他的暴政下解救出来，我们将加强自己的决心和力量，决不退缩。

那些遭到德军各个击破的国家和政府，当初若是采取一致行动，原本是可以使自己和全世界免遭这场劫难的。当然，现在不是对他们的愚蠢行为发表评论的时候。但我几分钟前谈到希特勒嗜血成性、欲壑难填的本性驱使他发动了对苏联的贸然进攻时，我说过在他的疯狂行为背后还有一个蓄谋已久的动机。他之所以想摧毁俄国，是因为他期望着一旦这一行动得手，他便可以将其陆军和空军的主力从东线调回，投入到对英国的进攻中去。他心里明白，他必须征服英国，否则，他将为他的罪行付出代价。希特勒侵略苏联仅仅是蓄谋侵略不列颠诸岛的前奏。毫无疑问，他指望在冬季到来之前结束这一切，并在美国海军和空军进行干涉之前击溃英国。他指望更大规模地重演故伎，各个击破。他一直是凭借这种伎俩得逞的。那时，他就可以为最后行动清除障碍了，也就是说，他就要迫使西半球屈服于他的意志和他的制度了，而如果做不到这一点，他的一切征服都将落空。

因此，苏联的危险就是我国的危险，就是美国的危险；苏联人民为保卫家园而战的事业就是世界各地自由人民和自由民族的事业。在如此残酷的经历中，让我们吸取教训吧！在这生命尚存，力量还在之际，让我们加倍努力，团结一心打击敌人吧！”

习题解析

Ⅰ. **口语展示**:参见“背景介绍”。

Ⅱ. **问答**

A. 课文内容问答:

1. Germany attacked Soviet Union on an enormous front by air on Sunday, June 22

2. He was not surprised at the news, because he had thought that the Germans would attack the Soviet Union. He was an arch anti – communist. Because he thought that Hilter was counting on enlisting capitalist and Right Wings sympathies in this country and the U. S. A.

3. His only purpose is the destruction of Hitler, who he thought was the worst in the world.

4. The Nazi régime is devoid of all theme and principle except appetite and racial domination. It excels all forms of human wickedness in the efficiency of its cruelty and ferocious aggression.

5. That's because he was determined to destroy the Nazi regime, a threat to the whole world, and he firmly believed that only by unity and mutual aid would they be able to achieve this goal.

6. The policy that Churchill declared Britain would pursue was to destroy Hitler and wipe off every single trace of the Nazi regime.

7. According to Churchill, Hitler's invasion of Russia served as the first step for his invasion of Britain, thus controlling of the Western Hemisphere. Britain's ultimately purpose in fighting Nazi Germany is to protect their country.

8. According to Churchill, the purpose of Hilter's invasion of Russia was to pave the way for his invasion of Britain, and finally his conquering the Western Hemisphere. Churchill has a point there because the bloodlust and ambitious Hilter is by no means easy to satisfy and he is very likely to invade and occupy other territories once he succeeded in Russia.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见“全文概述”和“美文欣赏及写作特点”相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. **句子释义**

1. "I think the Red Army men will be surrounded and captured in very large numbers."

2. Hitler was hoping that if he attacked Russia, he would win in Britain and the U. S.

the support of those who were enemies of Communism.

3. Winant said the United States would follow the same policy.

4. I would say a word in favor of anyone who is attacked by Hilter, no matter how bad, how wicked or evil he had been in the past.

5. The Nazi state does not have any ideal or guiding principle at all. All it has is a strong desire for conquest and rule by the Aryan race, the allegedly most superior race in the world.

6. "I see German bombers and fighters in the sky, which have suffered severe losses in the aerial battle of England and now feel happy because they think they can easily beat the Russian air force without heavy loss."

7. "We shall be more determined and shall make better and fuller use of our resources."

8. Let us strengthen our unity and our efforts in the fight against Nazi Germany when we have not yet been overwhelmed and when we are still powerful.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. surprise: to attack suddenly and without warning: to come upon suddenly or unexpectedly

2. round up: to herd/collect together (people or animals who are scattered, or who have fled, etc.)

3. count on: to expect that something will happen

4. theme: a recurring, unifying subject or idea
   appetite: very strong desire

5. fresh: recently returned
   tie down: (obsolete) to reduce to bondage; to enslave

6. smarting: feeling pain and resentment

7. democracies: countries that have democracy, meaning here Britain, the commonwealth countries, the united states

8. moralise: (usu. derog) to express one's thought on the wrongness of

9. hurl: to throw something using a lot of force

10. hearth: (literacy) referring to home and family

11. quarter: place of abode

B.

1. preparing, writing down

2. very fast and violently

3. obtaining, getting

4. returned

5. frontiers
6. ancient time
7. evil
8. agree
9. hold talks with our enemy
10. sadly, deplorably

C.

1. standing on the borders of their country
2. still feeling the pain of great losses in the aerial Battle of England, they can easily beat the Russian air force without heavy loss
3. behind all this hostility and finding, let off this flood of suffering and disasters
4. launch a fierce attack with overwhelming forces in this Island
5. pave the way for his planned invasion of the British Isles
6. the stage still be ready for the final act

V. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. This is true of the rural area as well as of the urban area.
2. He was counting on their support.
3. I don't remember his exact words, but I'm sure he did say something to that effect.
4. The guests were overwhelmed by the warm reception.
5. They overwhelmed the enemy by a surprise attack.
6. Their difficulty is our difficulty just as we view their victory as our own victory.
7. It is clear that German fascists were trying to subjugate the people in that region.

B. 英译汉:参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译:参见"参考译文"。

VI. 阅读,思考与评论

(略)

Lesson Fifteen

Argentia Bay (Excerpts)

词汇注释

pervade[pə(ː)ˈveid] *v.* spread to and be perceived in every part of (sth.) 弥漫,渗透

【例句】The smell of baked bread **pervaded** the house. 房子里弥漫着烤面包的香味。

Her work is **pervaded** by nostalgia for a past age. 她的作品充满怀旧之情。

haze[heiz] *n.* thin mist 薄雾,霾

【例句】**Haze** is covering the road in the town but there is still visibility. 薄雾笼罩着镇上的小路,仍然看得见东西。

tint[tint] *n.* shade or variety of a colour 色度,颜色的浓淡,染发剂

【例句】**tints** green in the sky at dawn. 黎明时天空中浓淡不同的青色

squawk[skwɔːk] *n.* loud harsh sound or cry 粗粝的叫喊,刺耳的大叫

同义词:screech, squeak, squeal

这些词都可以做名词或动词用,并且大多数时候用来指人发出的声音,而且还有其他引申含义。**screech** 和 **squawk** 指尖锐粗粝的或刺耳沙哑的叫声,**screech** 指一种长的,刺耳的尖叫,如:a small cat that screeched wildly(发出令人毛骨悚然的尖叫的小猫。),人也可以因疼痛、恐惧而 screech, 如:a screeching woman trapped in a burning building(一个身陷着火大楼的妇女的尖叫);**squawk** 是一种尖锐粗粝的叫声,如一只受惊的母鸡发出的叫声。这个词也可以指任何类似的声音,如:a squawking radio(一个嘎啦嘎啦乱响的收音机);**squeak** 指一种比较短促微弱的叫声,如一种音调极高,

细而尖的刺耳的声音,如老鼠的叫声;**squeal** 指一种刺耳,音调高,带有一点鼻音且被拉长的喊叫,就像小猪的叫声。人也可以由于惊讶、激动、惊恐、痛苦、愤怒或抗议而 **squeal**,如:children squealing with delight 孩子们高兴地大喊大叫。

camouflage[ˈkæmuflɑːʒ] *v.* disguise (a thing or person) in order to conceal 伪装(物或人),隐蔽

【例句】 The soldiers **camouflaged** themselves with leaves and branches. 士兵用树枝树叶把自己伪装起来。

swirl[swəːl] *n.* twist and curl 旋转,转动,回旋

【例句】 Dancers spun in a **swirl** of skirt. 舞者旋转着,裙子也不停地打转。

spangle[ˈspæŋgl] *v.* cover or decorate with spangles or other bright objects 用闪光的金属片等装饰

【例句】 a dress **spangled** with tiny silver sequins. 用闪光的圆形小银片装饰的连衣裙

quarter-deck *n.* part of the highest level of a ship, used only by officers (供军官使用的) 船尾甲板

awning[ˈɔːriŋ] *n.* movable covering, esp. one made of canvas (帆布) ,used to protect shop windows, ship-deck, etc. from the sun or rain (用于门,窗,甲板等)遮阳篷,遮雨篷,凉篷

august[ˈɔːgəst] *adj.* inspiring feelings of respect and awe; majestic and imposing 令人敬畏的,威严的,堂皇的

【例句】 an **august** body of elder professors. 德高望重的资深教授们

boatswain[ˈbəutswein] *n.* a ship's officer or petty officer in charge of the deck crew, the rigging (索具),anchor(锚),boats,etc. 水手长

expedite[ˈekspidait] *v.* perform quickly and efficiently 迅速处理

【例句】 Please do what you can to **expedite** the building work. 请尽量加快建筑工作。

同义词:quicken, accelerate, hasten, hurry

quicken 的意思与 **accelerate** 接近,前者强调动作在更短时间内完成,并且完成得更加富有生气;后者强调一件事情的运动,增长及进展的速度加快,如:The dancers quickened their steps.(舞者们加快了步伐。)/Neglect accelerated this building's decay.(由于无人看管,这座楼房破旧得更快了。) **hasten** 指事情的紧迫性或始料未及的结果,如:The storm's approach hastened our departure.(暴风雨来了,我们匆匆分手。) **hurry** 与 **hasten** 很相似,但另外还指动作的杂乱无章。**expedite** 与其他词相比,是生意上的特别用语,指通过特别重视而加速进程,以节约时间,如:The delivery of your commodity will be expedited by a "rush" order.("紧急"订货将加快你的货物的运送。)

反义词：delay，hinder，stop

spick-and-span *adj.* （short for spick-and-span-new）new and clean；very neat or smart and new.（spick-and-span-new 的缩写）极整洁的，崭新的

pit[pit] *v.* mark with small scars 留下疤痕，使某物上有麻点

【例句】Acid had **pitted** the surface of the silver. 酸把银器的表面腐蚀了。

aghast[əˈgɑːst] *adj.* feeling greatest horror or dismay；terrified；horrified 惊愕的，惊吓的

同义词：afraid，alarmed，fearful，frightened，scared

afraid 表示恐惧，独立运用时，不表示恐惧的特殊程度，如：She is afraid of dogs.（她连个小狗也怕。）**afraid** 也用于礼貌谈吐中，仅仅表示轻微的担心，如：I' m afraid I' m a bit late for my appointment.（恐怕我去赴约有些迟了。）**frightened** 和 **scared** 常指意味着遭受肉体伤害的恐惧，也都可以描述不明来源的无形恐惧，frightened 比 scared 带有更文雅的口气；**fearful** 指充满恐怖和担心，即预感到危险，失败或麻烦，如：The playwright was fearful that the opening night would be a failure.（剧作家担心首场演出会失败。）**alarmed** 意味着突然强烈地感到 afraid 或 frightened，而 **aghast** 意思是 afraid 或 frightened 突然到了令人震惊的地步，如在烧着的房子里醒来的人，想到他的全家处于极度危险之中，会感到 aghast。

反义词：brave，calm，confident，unafraid

scupper[ˈskʌpə] *n.* an opening in a ship' s side to allow water to run off the desk 船侧的排水孔

drove[drəuv] *n.* a moving crowd of people（行动的）人群

salvo[ˈsælvəu] *n.* firing of several guns at the same time，esp. as a solute 数炮齐发，（尤指）礼炮齐鸣

quartermaster[ˈkwɔːtəmɑːstə(r)] *n.* petty officer or mate who attends to the ship' s compass，navigation，signals etc.（兼管信号等的）舵手，航信士官

watertight[ˈwɔːtətait] *adj.* so snugly put together that no water can get in or through 不透水的，防水的

【例句】a **watertight** compartment 水密室

bunk[bʌŋk] *n.* a shelflike bed or berth built into or against a wall，as in a ship（船上的）铁架帆布床，铺位

scrounge[skraundʒ] *v.*（colloq.）get（sth.）by borrowing or taking it without permission 借得或擅取某物

【例句】I managed to **scrounge** the material to build a shed. 我设法弄点材料搭个篷子。

purse[pəːs] *v.* draw（the lips）tightly together 缩拢或撅起（嘴唇）

【例句】 to **purse** the lips 噘起嘴唇

aluminum[ə'lju:minəm] *n.* one of the chemical elements, a light silvery metal, used either pure or as an alloy for making cooking utensils, etc. 铝

swell[swel] *n.* a large wave that moves steadily without breaking 波涛(汹涌)

coxswain['kɔkswein] *n.* a petty officer or other person in charge of a ship's boat and acting as its steersman (救生艇的)艇长,舵手

flop[flɔp] *v.* move or fall clumsily, helplessly or loosely (笨拙地,不由自主地或松弛地)移动或落下

【例句】 The pile of books **flopped** noisily onto the floor. 那摞书劈里啪啦地散落到地上。

shellacking[ʃə'lækiŋ] *n.* (Am. slang) a thorough defeat 彻底击败

deference['defərəns] *n.* giving way to the views, wishes, etc. of others, usually out of respect; respect 遵从,顺从,尊敬,敬重

【例句】 treat one's elders with due **deference** 以应有的尊重对长者。

同义词:respect, reverence

respect 表示对某人的观点,成就或行为的仰慕,而被钦佩的人往往是优于他人的人,如:feeling a sincere respect for the man who had met all the challenges of a difficult life(对战胜了生活中遇到的一切困难的人怀有一种真挚的敬意);**reverence** 指对某人或某事深厚的敬意,一种崇敬与爱戴交融的感情,并把所敬仰的对象视为神圣不可侵犯的,如:to have reverence for the law(遵守法律);**deference** 表示一种程式化的礼节,并不一定具有敬意之意,如:a briefing on what signs of deference the visiting head of state would expect(一份说明来访的元首应受何礼遇的简报)。

反义词:contempt, dislike, disrespect

hobble['hɔbl] *v.* cause to go lamely 使跛行

confer[kən'fə:] *v.* have a conference or talk; meet for discussion 商量,交换意见

【例句】 She withdrew to **confer** with her advisers before making a decision. 她先去请教顾问然后再作决定。

jumble['dʒʌmbl] *v.* mix (things) in a confused way 将(东西)胡乱混在一起

【例句】 Toys, books, shoes and clothes were all **jumbled** (up) on the floor. 玩具、书、鞋和衣服都杂乱地堆在地上。

foul[faul] *v.* make sth. dirty; cause (sth.) to become caught or twisted 弄脏某物,使(某物)缠结

【例句】 Dogs are not permitted to **foul** the pavement. 禁止狗在人行横道上便溺。

The ropes have fouled up. 绳子缠住了。

material[mə'tiəriəl] *n.* weapons, equipment, supplies of armed forces 作战物资,武器弹药

arsenal['ɑːsinl] *n.* a place for making or storing weapons and other munitions 兵工厂，军械库

recur[ri'kəː] *v.* occur again, as in talk or memory; come up again for consideration 复发，再现

【例句】a **recurring** problem 反复出现的问题

This theme **recurs** constantly through the opera. 这一主旋律在该歌剧中不断出现。

stupendous[stju(ː)'pendəs] *adj.* astonishingly great or large 极大的，极好的

【例句】a **stupendous** mistake 极大的错误

同义词：tremendous, colossal, titanic

这些词指体积、范围、比例，浓度或重量等方面都非常之大。**tremendous** 不仅表示某物非常大，而且大得惊人，非同寻常，如：a tremendous earthquake（一次大地震）；**colossal** 和 **titanic** 都从指巨大的躯体引申而来，**colossal** 来自 colossus of rhodes，是巨大的人像，古代的奇观之一；**titanic** 来自希腊神话中的巨人族 Titans；因两词源的影响，故 colossal 强调庞大，titanic 强调威武与力量；**stupendous** 曾指令人震惊的任何现象，现在多用于夸张的场合，如：a stupendous film（一部了不起的影片）。

反义词：minute, small, trivial

larch[lɑːtʃ] *n.* tall deciduous tree of the pine family, with small cones and needle-like leaves 落叶松

gangplank['gæŋplæŋk] *n.* movable plank for walking into or out of a boat （上下船用的）跳板

unwonted[ʌn'wəuntid] *adj.* not customary or usual, infrequent 不寻常的，罕见的

【例句】an **unwonted** intrusion 异乎寻常的闯入

den[den] *n.* a small, cozy room where one can be alone to read, work, etc. 私室，书斋，休息室

sherry['ʃeri] *n.* yellow or brown wine of southern Spain, south Africa, Cyprus, England 雪利酒

commodore['kɔmədɔː] *n.* （U. S Navy ）an officer ranking above a captain and below a rear admiral （美国）海军准将

appal[ə'pɔːl] *v.* （ = appall）fill with horror or dismay; shock deeply 使（某人）惊骇或沮丧，使大吃一惊。

【例句】The Newspaper reports of starving children **appalled** me. 报纸对饥饿儿童的报导使我大为震惊。

gamut['gæmət] *n.* complete range or scale （of sth.）全范围，全部

【例句】the whole **gamut** of human emotions from joy to despair 人类情感包括欢乐及绝望之间的整个范围

glum[glʌm] *adj.* feeling or looking gloomy, sullen or sad 忧郁的，闷闷不乐的

【例句】**glum** expression 忧伤的神情

squint[skwint] *v.* look or peer with the eyes partly closed, as when the light is too strong 眯着眼睛

【例句】**squinting** through the letter-box 从投信口中向信箱里面看

full-fledged *adj.* (of a young bird) having grown all its feathers, mature and well-established (指幼鸟)羽毛丰满的,成熟的,经过充分训练的

【例句】Computer science is now a **full-fledged** academic subject. 计算机科学目前已是一门成熟的学科。

rubble[ˈrʌbl] *n.* debris from buildings, etc. resulting from earthquake, bombing, etc. 废石,石砾

embark[imˈbɑːk] *v.* go aboard a ship, airplane, etc. 登船,登机

【例句】The ship **embarked** passengers and cargo at a port. 这艘船在一个港口载客装货。

aide[eid] *n.* (French) an officer in the army, navy, etc. serving as assistant and confidential secretary to a superior (法语)(军队中)副官,侍从参谋,侍从武官

ensign[ˈensain] *n.* a U. S Navy commissioned officers of the lowest-rank, ranking below a lieutenant junior grade (美国)海军少尉

chum[tʃʌm] *n.* close friends (among boys) (男性中)密友,好友

detach[diˈtætʃ] *v.* send (a group of soldiers, ships, etc.) away from the main force, esp. to do special duties 派遣,分遣(兵员,船员等)

【例句】A number of men were **detached** to guard the gate. 一部分人被派出去守住大门。

同义词:separate, disconnect

separate 是最常用的词,不是指把不定型混合体中的某物质分出,就是指把紧密结合或混在一起的东西分开,如:separating the marked examination papers into passes or failures(把批改过的考卷分为及格和不及格两种);**disconnect** 和 **detach** 主要限于把固体的物体分开,然后保持各自的特性,如:disconnect the lamp from the wall socket(把灯从墙壁插座上断开);**detach** 明确表示把一部分从一个较大整体上移开,如:detaching one platoon as a rear-guard for the rest of the company(调出一个排作为全连队的后卫);**disconnect** 并不表示从整体上分出部分的关系。

反义词:combine, connect

smattering[ˈsmætəriŋ] *n.* slight knowledge, esp. of a language 浅薄的知识(尤指对语言),一知半解

【例句】have a **smattering** of French 对法语一知半解

suicidal[sjuiˈsaidl] *adj.* of suicide; likely to lead to suicide 自杀的,自取灭亡的

【例句】**suicidal** tendency 自杀倾向

rheumy[ˈruːmi] *adj.* full of watery discharge from mucous membranes, as of the

mouth, eyes, or nose 稀黏液的（如唾液，眼泪，鼻涕等）

bespeak[bi'spiːk]　*v.* be evidence of; indicate; show 证明，表示

【例句】His polite manners **bespeak** the gentleman. 他彬彬有礼的举止显示出他是个绅士。

equivocate[i'kwivəkeit]　*v.* speak in an ambiguous way to hide the truth or mislead people 说模棱两可的话，支吾

【例句】Don't **equivocate** with us—we want a straight answer to a straight question. 别跟我绕圈子了——我的问题直截了当，回答也要直截了当！

crockery['krɔkəri]　*n.* earthen-ware, pots, jars, dishes 陶瓷餐具

galley['gæli]　*n.* a ship's kitchen 船上厨房

crossfire['krɔsfaiə]　*n.* firing of guns from two or more points so that the bullets, shells, etc. cross each other; situation in which two people or groups are arguing, competing 交叉火力，（对应的力量，意见等）激烈交锋

【例句】When two industrial giants clash, small companies can get caught in the **crossfire**. 两大工业巨头争斗时，小公司受池鱼之殃。

短语表达

take the floor: get up to speak or address the audience 起立发言或演讲

【例句】I now invite the president to **take the floor**. 现在请总统讲话。

be adept at: be expert or skillful in 对某事内行的，熟悉的

【例句】She **is adept at** growing roses. 她善于种花。

come to hand: to be found without one's having to make a special search 到手

【例句】Your letter has just **come to hand**. 刚收到你的信。

only to do: used to indicate sth. that happens immediately afterwards, esp. sth. that causes surprise, disappointment, relief, etc.（用以指随即发生的事，尤指使人惊讶、失望、放心等的事）反而，却

【例句】I arrived at the shop **only to find** I had left my money at home. 我到商店却发现钱落在家里了。

课文理解

Ⅰ. 背景介绍

1. Wouk Herman (1915—): American novelist. After graduation from Columbia Uni-

versity, he became a radio gagwriter. During World War Ⅱ he served in the U. S Navy and began his first novel during off-duty hours at sea. His novels include ***The Caine Mutiny*** (1951), ***a Pulitzer Prize novel of events aboard a naval vessel***, ***The Winds of War*** (1971) ***and War and Remembrance*** (1977).

赫尔曼·沃克(1915—),美国小说家,哥伦比亚大学毕业后,他成为一名广播剧撰稿人。二次大战期间,他在美国海军服役并在闲暇时间开始第一部小说的创作。他的小说有《凯恩号兵变》(1951),获普利策小说奖。此外还有《战争风云》(1971)与《战争和回忆》(1977)。

2. Franklin D · Roosevelt: (1882—1945): thirty-second president of the United States. 弗兰克林·D·罗斯福,美国第32任总统。

3. Winston Spencer Churchill: (1874—1965. Prime Minister, led Britain from near defeat to victory in World War Ⅱ, his best known book ***The Second World War.***

温斯顿·斯潘塞·丘吉尔(1874—1965),英国前首相,第二次世界大战中将几乎战败的英国引向胜利,最著名的著作有《第二次世界大战回忆录》。

4. Argentia Bay: Better known as Placentia Bay, wide inlet of Atlantic Ocean, SE Newfoundland, Canada. Here on the British battleship Prince of Wales, the Atlantic Charter was signed on August, 14, 1941 by President Roosevelt and British Prime Minister Winston Churchill.

阿真舍湾:因普拉森舍湾而出名,大西洋上的一个大海湾,位于加拿大纽芬兰省东南部。1941年8月14日罗斯福和丘吉尔在该湾停泊的"威尔士亲王号"军舰上签署了大西洋宪章。

5. ***The Atlantic Charter***: the statement of principles formulated in World War by President Franklin D · Roosevelt and Prime Minister Winston Churchill. The charter announced publicly on August, 14, 1941, resulting from a series of conferences (August 9-12) between the two leaders. The Atlantic Charter ***was employed as a propaganda weapon against the axis powers during World War*** Ⅱ.

《大西洋宪章》:在二次世界大战期间由罗斯福总统和英国首相丘吉尔签署的宣言,经过一系列会议(8月9日至12日)后,于1941年8月14日公开发表。《大西洋宪章》成为第二次世界大战期间反对轴心国(德、日、意三国同盟)的宣传武器。

Ⅱ. 全文概述

The text describes the Roosevelt-Churchill Conference during World War Ⅱ, through the eyes of Victor Pug Henry. The British Prime Minister and the U. S. president planned to have a conference in 1941. Despite the great dangers of being attacked by the German U-boats (德国潜艇), Churchill ran a risk to come to Argentia Bay. He was either ready to yield to the wishes and opinions of the president, or was somehow respectful of him. Both

leaders exchanged mutual solutes as well as calls to the ships of both sides. On the problem of aid to Russia, the opinions of the two leaders differed. When Pug Henry and other planners got down to work, some problems came up, such as: excessive and contradictory requests from the British services, unreal plans, unfilled contrasts, jumbled priorities and fouled communications. Of all these problems, building new ships to replace U-boat sinkings came first. Britain's immediate need was a hundred fifty thousand rifles and this was not so expensive and unavailable as ships, airplanes, tanks, and men. As the conference was held in utmost secrecy, it was not given to anybody but the top few to know what was going on inside the conference, nor to Victor Pug Henry. When the conference was over and the "Prince of Wales" left Agentia Bay, the ship was hanging a subtle gloom because they felt the conference was not productive as expected by Churchill. Henry thought that there was no sign of increased American commitment, and when the questions were put to him centering on why the U. S. didn't increase its commitment, his explanation was that the American people didn't want to fight Hitler.

Ⅲ. 美文欣赏及写作特点

This text is excerpted from the novel ***Winds of War.*** It depicts the Roosevelt-Churchill Conference in a chronological order. It consists of seven parts and each conveys some message to readers by describing their talks, manners, gestures, etc. The portraits of the men involved are exquisite and precise so that readers can get to know the personalities of those people well. For instance, the writer describes Hopkins as follows: "he carefully placed papers and he threw clothes as they came to hand." This throws light on the character of Hopkins—a man who is very meticulous about official papers but very careless about his own things. In writing about Admiral King, he says, "Admiral King beckoned to Pug." This is a superior gesture, besides, this officer uses "desire" and "expedite", which are formal words, in his talk to Pug. Readers thus learn that this is an arrogant officer, very mindful of his rank and very aloof. The descriptions of "Prince of Wales" and "Augustas" create a sharp contrast between the British vessel which had gone through many a battle and weathered the storm, and the American ship which was neat, clean, smart and new, thus reveal the present state of the two countries. The descriptions of the landscape or surroundings in Agentia Bay is especially praiseworthy. For example, in the first paragraph, the writer describes Argentia Bay as "Haze and mist blended into gray: gray water, gray sky, gray air gray hills" which just suits to the gloom of heart of these people and corresponds with the twilight world situation.

Figures of speech are applied, such as: transferred epithet, metaphor, simile, etc. to enhance the vividness of the language.

本课选自小说《战争风云》，按事件发生的时间顺序描写了罗斯福和丘吉尔在海湾的会晤。全篇课文分七个部分，每个部分都通过描写有关人员的谈话、举止、手势等向读者转达了有关信息。对有关人物的刻画十分细腻，入木三分。比如，在描写霍普金斯时，作者写到："他小心翼翼地放进一些文件……"和"他随手胡乱地扔进一些衣服……"。这使读者清楚地了解了他的性格——对官方文件（工作）等一丝不苟，对个人物品粗枝大叶。另外，在描写海军上将金的时候，作者写到："海军上将金将帕格召唤（beckon）到跟前"，金在他的讲话中用了正式用语"desire"（希望）和"expedite"（速去办），把一个傲气十足、爱用权势的军官表现得淋漓尽致。对"威尔士亲王号"和"奥古斯特号"的描写使两艘战舰形成鲜明的对照：英舰饱经战火、弹痕累累，美舰整洁、美观、崭新，由此形象地表现了两国的现状。对阿真舍湾景色的描写尤其令人赞叹。如：在第一段中，作者对海湾的描写是："轻烟薄雾将一切都染成了灰色：灰色的海水，灰色的天空，灰色的空气，灰色的山丘……"。这段描写很符合人们的心情，也符合当时那种暗淡的世界局势。

本篇课文还运用了修辞手法，如移就修辞格、隐喻、明喻等，使语言显得更加生动。

Ⅳ. 核心内容解析

1. Gray peace ... Argentia Bay：Argentia Bay was surrounded by a vast expanse of wild uninhabited land where there was no human activity.（一片灰色的宁静笼罩着蛮荒环布的纽芬兰阿真舍湾。）gray peace 是移就法（transferred epithet），也叫转类形容词修辞格，gray 本应修饰用来指大地的颜色，而本句中转而修饰 peace（宁静）。

2. This was H. M. S. Prince of Wales ... that had hit the Bismarck：This was the ship Prince of Wales, bigger than any other ship present, carrying the guns that had helped sink the Bismarck.（那便是英国皇家海军的"威尔士亲王号"，也是在场的最大的军舰，舰上装备着的大炮曾经击中德国军舰"俾斯麦号"。）H. M. S 即"英国皇家海军"的缩写。Prince of Wales（威尔士亲王号）是英国皇家海军的一艘战列舰，于 1941 年 10 月在中国南海被日军击沉。作者提到此舰"曾击中德国俾斯麦号"，意在表明它不仅雄伟，而且受到过战争的洗礼。

3. Churchill was plain to see ... gesturing with a big cigar：Churchill could be seen clearly since he was five hundred yards away, wearing a blue Navy uniform, moving his hand holding a cigar to convey friendly feeling. odd blue costume（古怪的蓝色衣服）实际上是海军制服，作者有意使用 odd 和 costume 是为了获得戏剧性效果。

4. "Well! I' ve never heard ... played better."：（嗬！我还从来没有听到过演奏得比这更好的《我的祖国，这是您》。）My country, Tis of thee（我的祖国，这是您）是美国国歌第一行歌词，其乐曲与英国国歌《神佑吾王》相同。当乐队演奏英国国歌时，罗斯福幽默地把它当作美国国歌。实际上一些美国爱国者宣称此曲原属于美国，被英

国人盗用。

5. put yourself at Mr. Harry Hopkins's service: Do whatever Mr. Hopkins might ask you to do.（去听从哈利·霍普金斯先生的吩咐。）at one's service:听从某人的吩咐;调遣

6. Passing from the Augusta to the Prince of Wales ... from America to England and from peace to war: Passing from the American cruiser to the English battleship in King's barge means passing from America to England and from peace to war. 作者在这里运用了隐喻的修饰手法;"奥古斯特号"是美国的一艘巡洋舰,"威尔士亲王号"是英国的一艘战列舰;由于当时美国还没有正式参战,而英国已经是第二次世界大战参战国,因此从"奥古斯特号"到"威尔士亲王号"意味着"从美国到了英国,从和平跨进战争。"

7. droves of bluejackets were doing an animated scrub-down: Groups of British navyman were cleaning the deck in a spirited way.（许多水手正在那里起劲地擦洗军舰。）droves of : moving crowd of（一群群的人）; bluejackets 是一个借代的修辞手法,指穿着蓝色海军服的水手。animated scrub-down 是移就修辞手法,animated(有活力的)本应修饰 bluejackets, 而不是 scrub-down（擦洗）。

8. and meanwhile Hopkins had traveled ... in a blaze of worldwide newspaper attention: Meanwhile Hopkins flew to London and then to Moscow. His visits were widely covered by newspapers all over the world.（霍普金斯前往伦敦和莫斯科,成了世界各大报纸大为关注的新闻人物。）a blaze of: 引人注目的展示和显示。

9. He's having the time of his life: He's having a rare experience of pleasure in his life; he's having the best time of his life. time of one's life: 口语用法,指"一生中最快乐的一段时间"。

10. But it will be a near thing: They will barely manage to carry on the fight.（但形势仍很危急。）near thing: a narrow escape 九死一生,千钧一发。

11. Hitler's bitten off a big bite this time: This time Hitler has attacked a country too big for him to conquer.（希特勒这一口咬得可真大。）这是一个隐喻修辞手法。

12. First they'll press for an immediate declaration of war on Germany: The English will persistently urge us to declare war on Germany.（他们会敦促我们立即对德国宣战。）press 在此句的意思是 urge or request earnestly or persistently(迫使,敦促),用得十分贴切;they 指的是英方。

13. Their empire is mighty rickety at this point: Their empire is very weak in that area.（他们的帝国在亚洲的力量还很薄弱。）empire 是修辞用法,指 power(实力);at this point 指在亚洲。

14. Because if Hitler pokes down ... the Empire strangles: If Hitler strikes there, and blocks the canal, the English will lose.（如果希特勒入侵该地区,封锁苏伊士运河,大英帝国就等于被掐住了脖子。）poke 是美国俚语,相当于 make trouble（制造麻烦）;down

there 指的是 in the Middle East(中东地区); strangle 的意思是“掐死,使窒息”。

15. this is the change of the guard: This is the transfer of power from London to Washington.(这是一次换岗阿!)change of the guard 是隐喻修辞手法。这句话暗示了从伦敦到华盛顿的权利的转换,美国已取代英国成为“自由民主国家”中的最中坚力量。

16. a bent Pickwick in blue uniform: a bent, fat, benevolent, old gentleman in navy uniform(看起来像个穿着蓝制服的匹克威克)。Pickwick(匹克威克)是 19 世纪英国著名作家狄更斯所著小说《匹克威克外传》的主人公。

17. By a shade of shade: by very slight difference or variation(有那么一点区别)。两位领导人都是首脑级人物,但两者相比之下,罗斯福更像“头号人物”一些。

18. One cardinal point the planners hammered out fast: The planners put out one principal point quickly.(计划人员很快就确定了重点。)这是个倒装句,正常语序应为 The planners hammered out one cardinal point fast. cardinal: chief, principle(主要的,重点的);hammer out: 经过深思熟虑想出办法。

19. This plain truth ... ran a red line across every request: As soon as the two parties agreed that priority should be given to the building of ship, all other requests and programs would have to be crossed out.(这是明摆着的事实,一旦意见一致,所有其他的要求、方案和计划就得一笔勾销。)so simple once agreed on: 如此明显的事实,一旦意见一致, once 在本句中是连词,而不是副词,意为 as soon as, wherever; run a red line across... 是隐喻的用法,字面的意思是“用红线在……上划过”,引申为“一笔勾销”。

20. If Russia collapsed ... from the air: If Russia failed, Hitler might try to finish the war successfully and attack England from the air as he had done to Crete. 这个句子中的虚拟语气的使用是对当前形势的推测。Crete-like invasion: 像对克里特岛的入侵那样。Crete(克里特)是地中海东部的希腊的一个岛屿,1941 年 5 月 20 日至 30 日被德国空降兵占领。

21. An American destroyer ... alongside the battleship: An American destroyer slowly moved parallel with the battleship.(一艘美国驱逐舰徐徐向前靠拢,与舰队平行。)nose 作动词有修辞含义,指徐徐向前滑行,十分形象;bridge 指船桥,舰桥(船长及高级船员操纵及导航之处)。

22. “... Preserve us from ... through Jesus Christ our Lord ...”:“从海上的危险中拯救我们,从敌寇的强暴下拯救我们;愿我们合法的海上航行安全得到保障……让我们满载自己的劳动成果,平安返回,来享受大地的恩惠……以赞美和显耀您的神圣名字;以我主耶稣基督……。”这是一段祈祷词,其中有两个 that 引导的句子。这种句子属于表现感叹意义的从句,以独立结构的形式出现。

23. You're dry as a bone in your service, aren't you?: Wines and spirits are forbidden in your Navy or you are not allowed to drink on board, are you?(在舰艇上不能喝酒,对不对?)

24. Rather sporting of the British Prime Minister ... on the open sea: It was rather risky and daring of Mr. Churchill to give the German soldiers a good chance to attack him on the high seas.（你是否觉得英国首相过于冒险了一些，有意让德国鬼子在海上将他当靶子打？）sporting: risky（冒险的）。the Hun 是引喻，公元4～5世纪蹂躏欧洲的匈奴人，用在这里是贬义，指德军。这一句中运用了婉曲（periphrasis）修辞法，即用一种说法代替另一种说法。

25. Hitler's black empire would suddenly collapse in rubble, blood, and flame: Hitler's evil empire would be completely destroyed.（希特勒的黑色帝国便会在一片瓦砾、鲜血和烈火中土崩瓦解。）rubble, blood, flame 是隐喻的用法，指希特勒惨败的情形，十分形象。

26. To brass band anthems ... Argentia Bay: H. M. S. Prince of Wales left Argentia Bay to the accompaniment of brass band anthems, booming gun solutes and in cool, bracing breeze with the smell of green hills and gunpowder.（随着两国国歌的奏响和礼炮的轰鸣，迎着那散发出青山的气息和硝烟气味的清新的微风，"威尔士亲王号"驶离了阿真舍湾。）句子开头的 to 是介词，意为 to the accompaniment with（伴随）的含意。注意这一句中对照手法的运用：讨论重大战争问题的会议，却是在和平的气氛中结束。

27. They could not believe ... only to return empty-handed: They could not believe that Churchill had risked the best ship in their already inadequate, weak navy and his own life for nothing.（他们无法相信，丘吉尔为了这次会议把他们元气大伤的海军中最好一艘军舰，连同他自己的生命都拿来冒险，到头来竟会空手而归。）strained navy 意为 the navy which had suffered great losses（遭受了巨大损失的海军）；only to return ... 动词不定式短语作结果状语。

28. "*There* is an awful unfolding picture": There in the Soviet Union things are going badly for the Russians.（那儿是一幅正在展开的可怕画卷。）句子开头的 There 是斜体字，表示强调，是指方位的副词，不是 there be 结构中的 there; unfolding：正在打开的，正在展开的。丘吉尔对苏联的现状表示关注和担忧，他对苏联的态度可以从他六月二十一日的讲话中清楚地反映出来。

29. "Don't we have a development here?": There has been a new discovery of the concentration of U-boats around this area?（我们在这有什么新发现吗？）development 指的是 new discovery of U-boats（新发现的德国潜艇）。

30. "We may have some sport for you yet": You may be able to experience some adventure during the voyage. The German submarines might attack at any time and then there will be a fierce battle to repulse their attack.（我们可能会让你看场好戏。）sport: adventure（冒险），指他们在归途中可能遇到德国潜艇，并且有一场特殊的战斗。

31. The battleship, plowing ... with slow long groans: The battle ship cut a way through the stormy ocean, turned from side to side and tossed in the sea with slow long

groans.(战舰在狂风暴雨中破浪前进,摇晃颠簸,发出缓慢冗长的嘎吱声。)plow 和 groan 都是修辞用法,plow 原指"犁地",用在这里是一个隐喻,形容战舰在海面上驶过时划出的一道道痕迹,十分生动形象;groan 在此句中指舰船发出的噪声就像"痛苦的呻吟",正好符合英国军舰上将士们此时的心情。roll 和 pitch 分别指"绕经轴线翻滚"和"沿斜线翻滚"。

32. Abuse of Nazi tyranny, ... flat zero: There was clear- cut condemnation of the Nazi regime, the praise of "four freedoms", the dedication to a future of world peace and brotherhood, but no promise of more US aid.(口口声声都是对纳粹暴政的谴责,对"四大自由"的赞扬,对充满和平兄弟情谊的未来世界的献身,就是不提对英国更多的军事援助。)"four freedom"(四大自由)的第一个字母常常是大写,即"Four Freedom",出自美国总统罗斯福在 1941 年 1 月 6 日致国会的咨文,文中罗斯福总统宣布了四项人类的基本自由,被认为是关于美国人民准备为之奋斗的原则的最简要声明。flat zero: absolute zero(绝对零度),意思是"只字不提"(对英国更多的军事援助)。

33. It means Lend-Lease: 那是指的《租借法案》。Lend-Lease(租借法案):该法案授权总统可以通过出售、转让、交换或租借的方式向盟国提供国防物资。美国国会于 1941 年 3 月 11 日通过此法案,并规定于 1945 年 8 月 22 日终止。

34. They vote their political hunches to protect their political hides: They vote in such a manner as to save their skins, basing their votes on their guesses of what the electorate(选民)want.(他们根据自己的政治利益投票,以期待保住他们的政治地位。)hunch :(口语)直觉。hide 作名词指"皮肤,皮革",to protect one's hide = to save one's skin(免受伤害、损失等),是口语表达法。因此,to protect their political hide 意思是"保护他们自己在政治上不受伤害"。

35. Our people are about where you were at the time of the Munich Pact: The present state of our people is just like that of your people at the time of the Munich Pact, when they cheered Chamberlain when he came back from Munich after having sold out Czechoslovakia.(我们的人民目前的状态和贵国人民在慕尼黑协定时的状态差不多。)Munich Pact(慕尼黑协定)常称为 Munich Agreement, 指德国、英国、法国、意大利达成的允许德国吞并捷克斯洛伐克西部苏台德区的解决办法。1938 年 9 月 30 日,希特勒、张伯伦、达拉第以及墨索里尼在慕尼黑开会,墨索里尼在会上提出一个书面计划,这个计划被全体与会者接受,称为"慕尼黑协定"。

36. You are the home team, because you talk our language: You are our favorite. We feel kinship with you. You are the player from our side.(你们等于我们自己一方的球队,因为你们和我们说同样的语言。)home team 是隐喻用法,暗示英国人是自家人。之所以用这个词是因为上一句说道 The war is a ball game they can watch(战争是一场他们可以袖手旁观的球赛)。

V. 参考译文

阿 真 舍 湾

（节选）

赫尔曼 · 沃克

一、阿真舍湾

灰色的宁静下笼罩着周遭荒凉的纽芬兰阿真舍湾，美国军舰就停泊在这里恭候着温斯顿 · 丘吉尔的到来。一切都在阴霾薄雾中染成了灰色：灰色的海水，灰色的天空，灰色的空气，还有那一抹绿意的灰色山丘。在尖厉的哨声和高音喇叭声中，水兵和军官们在舰上一如既往地各行其是。在军舰日常的喧嚣之外，是那笼罩着阿真舍湾的一片原始静寂。

九点钟，先是三艘灰色的驱逐舰驶入了视线，接着一艘蛇皮般迷彩色伪装下的战舰出现了。那就是英国皇家海军的"威尔士亲王号"，比在场的其他战舰都大。舰上装备着的大炮曾经击中过"俾斯麦号"。当它驶过"奥古斯特号"时，甲板上军乐队奏响的美国国歌《星条旗永不落》打破了寂静。一曲终了，"奥古斯特号"的后甲板上又响起了英国国歌《神佑吾王》。

在一号炮塔上临时支起的雨阳篷下面，总统的身边站着帕格 · 亨利和海陆军将领们和显贵的文职官员们，如艾弗里尔 · 哈里曼和萨姆纳 · 威尔斯等。五百码外的丘吉尔清晰可见，他穿着式样古怪的蓝色衣服，挥动的手中夹着一根大雪茄。鹤立鸡群的总统僵直地撑在装着支架的病腿上，身着一套大号棕色西装，一只手拿着礼帽放在胸前，另一只手紧紧抓着儿子的胳膊。他的儿子是海军航空队的一名军官，长得很像他。罗斯福面色红润、神情庄重。

《神佑吾王》一曲奏毕，总统的脸色轻松起来。"我还从来没有听到过演奏得比这更好的'我的祖国，这是您'呢！。"听到总统的这句调侃，周围的人都礼貌地笑了，罗斯福自己也笑了起来。巡洋舰甲板上的这场检阅在水手长尖厉的哨音中结束了。

二、哈利 · 霍普金斯

海军上将金招手示意帕格，"坐我的快艇到'威尔士亲王号'上去给哈利 · 霍普金斯先生效劳吧。总统希望在丘吉尔来访之前同他先谈谈。快走吧。"

"是，长官。"

坐着金的快艇驶过几百码平静的水面，维克多 · 亨利从"奥古斯特号"来到"威尔士亲王号"，从美国来到了英国，从和平跨进了战争。这是一个惊人的跨越。金的那艘崭新漂亮的舰艇和眼前这艘饱经风霜的英国军舰相比完全是属于另一个不同的世界。这艘英国军舰上，舷梯已被海水腐蚀得结满水垢，伪装油漆都已脱落，甚至连几门主炮上都是坑坑洼洼，斑驳。使帕格尤为吃惊的是尽管有一大群水兵正在那儿带劲地擦洗军舰，船舷上的排水孔里却塞满了烟头和废纸。甲板以上的部分到处焊补着生钢板片——像是给被"俾斯麦号"排炮击中的伤口贴的橡皮膏。

“啊,您好,亨利上校,”甲板上的军官向亨利漂亮地回敬了一个手掌向外的英式军礼。“霍普金斯先生已经收到消息了,正在他的舱房里等您。让军需官陪您去。”

维克多·亨利跟着军需官走过一条条与美国军舰上大同小异的走廊,只是一些标记符号、灯具、灭火器、密封防水门的形状等稍有不同。

“您好吗,帕格,”霍普金斯说话的语气像是和这位海军上校只一两天没见面,可事实上他们上一次见面还是三月初的事情。那以后,霍普金斯前往伦敦和莫斯科,成了世界各大报纸大为关注的焦点。

“要我同你一起过去吗?”

“是的,先生。”

“总统现在的情况如何?”霍普金斯在他起居室隔壁的小舱的铺位上打开了两个提包。其中的一个包里他小心翼翼地放进去了一些公文、文件夹和书,而另一个包里则随手塞了一些衣物、鞋子和药瓶子。霍普金斯看起来比以前瘦多了,背也弯了,灰色双排扣西装穿在他身上显得松松垮垮的。

“他正在享受生命中最美妙的时光,先生。”

“我想也是。丘吉尔也一样,他就像一个初次约会的小伙子。说起来,这还真是一个历史性的时刻。”霍普金斯从屉子中拉出几件脏衬衣,胡乱塞进手提箱里。“差点忘了它们了。在克里姆林宫里我就已经丢了几件,后来不得不到伦敦再弄几件。”

“霍普金斯先生,俄国人那边的情况怎么样?他们能撑下去吗?”

霍普金斯停了停,手里拿着一叠文件,努了努嘴,然后坚决地说:“俄国人能撑下去,但撑不了多久。他们需要支援。”他又回头去收拾东西。“帕格,如果你从阿尔汉格尔斯克飞到莫斯科,要好几个小时,途中会飞过一片片茂密的森林和褐色的沼泽。有时候你一眼看过去,看到天边也看不见一个村庄。希特勒这次真是狮子大开口。”他使劲想扣上手提箱,帕格忙上前帮了他一把。“啊,谢谢。帕格,你猜猜看,斯大林最希望我们向他提供什么?”

“飞机,”维克多·亨利脱口而出。“‘密布天空的飞机’,就像去年法国人叫嚷着要的一样。”

“铝,”哈利·霍普金斯说。“造飞机用的铝。纠正一下——他最想要的是高射炮,然后才是铝,还想要大量的军用卡车。斯大林没打算在三个礼拜,或六个礼拜,或三年内就让人打败。”霍普金斯整理好小手提箱里的一些文件,然后关上。“我们走吧。”

霍普金斯摇摇晃晃地顺着舷梯爬到金的快艇甲板上,还没站稳,艇尾突地被一个巨浪抬高,接着舰身又落下浪头。霍普金斯失去平衡,身子一歪,倒在了艇长的怀里。艇长赶紧说,“没事的,先生。”

“帕格,我恐怕永远也当不了水手,”霍普金斯踉踉跄跄地走进舱室,坐在软垫上叹了一口气。“我坐水上飞机去苏联的时候,一个跟头栽下去,差一点就当场玩完。”他四周打量了一下这艘设备完善的快艇。“好,好。美国!和平年代!你还在作战部。那么,你很快要参加参谋会议了。”

“参加部分会议，先生。”

“你可要记得我们的朋友们想要什么。和首相在海上一起度过五天之后，我对这一点非常清楚。”霍普金斯伸出一只干枯的手，扳着骨瘦如柴的手指头说。“首先他们会敦促我们立即对德国宣战。他们知道这个要求是满足不了的，但会为第二个要求铺砖引路，那才是温斯顿·丘吉尔远渡重洋的真正原因。他们想要美国对日本提出警告：在亚洲任何与英国对抗的行动都意味着向美国宣战。他们的帝国在亚洲身单力薄，希望能得到美国的警告作为支持。他们还会为他们在埃及和中东的军队向我们催促大量军需物资。因为一旦希特勒入侵，苏伊士运河被封锁的话，大英帝国便等于被人掐住了喉咙。他们还会巧妙并且努力地尝试——我要是他们也会那样做——达成这样一种共识，即在获得美国援助的时候，他们应该在俄国之前。他们会说，现在是从西线开火把德国炸个稀烂的时候了，应该为发起最后攻击积蓄力量。他们还会暗示，我们给俄国人提供的物资，几个星期之后也许调转枪头用来攻击我们。”

维克多·亨利说，“总统可不是这样想的。”

“但愿如此。希特勒一旦战胜了俄国，他就赢得了全世界；而如果他在俄国战败，他就会彻底完蛋，即使日本人有什么小动作也无关紧要。俄国的战斗规模大的出乎想象。双方投入战斗的兵力估计有700万。帕格，700万，也许会更多。”霍普金斯伸出干枯的双手，一字一顿地说。俄国人到目前为止一直在挨打，但他们并不害怕。他们决心要把德国人轰出去。那里才是现在的战场，那里才是援助物资现在应该送去的地方。

“这么说这次会谈基本上毫无意义了，”帕格说。快艇这时已经放慢了速度，叮当响着靠近了“奥古斯特号”。

“不，会谈是一个胜利，”霍普金斯说。“美国总统和英国首相碰了头，面对面地商量打垮德国人的问题。现在看来，这件事本身就是一个伟大的胜利。”霍普金斯对帕格·亨利苦笑了一下，大大的眼睛中闪现出喜悦的光芒。他在摇晃的快艇上直起身来。“再说，帕格，这是一次换位啊！”

三、丘吉尔来访

温斯顿·丘吉尔于十一点到达“奥古斯特号”，罗斯福和丘吉尔在舷梯口戏剧性地握手。他们双手紧握，微笑着互致问候，给摄影师留了足够时间拍照。

两位首脑以一种奇特的方式相互压制对方。他们都是首脑人物，但这是不可能的。那么，到底谁是第一呢？罗斯福站起来比丘吉尔高一个头，然而他却是可怜地站在两条没有生命的义肢上，紧紧抓着儿子的胳膊，长裤空荡荡地随风摆动着。丘吉尔呢，像驼背的匹克威克穿着蓝色的制服，他抬头看着罗斯福，神情庄重而不失幽默。他显得更老练一些，神态更威严，也更有自信。但是，首相似乎心存一丝敬意，那么罗斯福看起来就有那么一丁点儿更像头号人物。或许这就是霍普金斯所说的“换位”吧。

一个隐形的信号让拍照工作结束了，两人的握手结束了，接着一辆轮椅被推了出来。很快，那位在报纸头版图片上昂首挺立的总统又还原成了帕格更为熟悉的瘸子；

他蹒跚着走了一两步，然后一屁股跌坐在轮椅上才缓了口气。两位伟人和他们手下的军事将领们都离开了后甲板。

参谋人员立即开始投入工作，整天开会。维克多·亨利与作战计划人员共事，勃纳·沃克则参加次于参谋长们及他们的副手们这一层次的会议，比总统与首相及其顾问的最高级会议当然低得多。熟悉的老问题立马又出现了：英国军方的要求过分，相互矛盾，不现实的计划，没兑现的合同，问题的优先顺序杂乱，混淆不清的通讯联络。重点很快就由计划人员确定下来了，就是首先要造新船用以代替被德国潜艇击沉的舰船。除非战争物资要抵达大洋彼岸，否则就无法跟希特勒作战。这个已经达成一致的简单事实把所有的其他要求、方案和计划都一笔勾销。钢铁、铝材、橡胶、阀门、机床、铜线，所有数千种战争物资首先得用于造船。这个简单的标尺很快就暴露了“民主兵工厂”的贫瘠，因此引出了一项迫在眉睫，需着手开展的重大工作：建造新的钢厂，然后将钢材制成作战机械和工具。

在讨论的过程中，各种设想的宏伟计划涉及数以百计的舰船，成千上万的飞机和坦克，成千上万的兵员，一个令人感到心痛的话题一遍一遍出现：急需15万只步枪。假如俄国战败，希特勒会对英国发动一场大规模空袭以结束战争，就像入侵克里特岛时一样，而英国机场保卫所需的步枪却紧缺。将来联军对北非或者法国海岸发起联合进攻所需的庞大数量的军用物资与眼下这15万支步枪的需求相比，实在少得可怜。

四、罗斯福蹒跚前进

第二天早上，快艇一艘接一艘驶过波光粼粼的海湾，聚集到“威尔士亲王号”周围做礼拜。周围山丘上，一片片松树林和枞树林在连日大雾之后耀眼的阳光下显得格外郁郁葱葱。

一艘美国驱逐舰慢慢将舰桥靠向这艘战列舰的主甲板，然后一块跳板搭了过来。身着蓝色西服，头戴灰色礼帽的弗兰克林·罗斯福，手拄拐杖，在儿子的搀扶下举步惟艰地踏上跳板，吃力地拖着一条腿向前挪动，然后再挪另一条腿。海湾里非常平静，但两艘军舰还是随波摇荡。高个头的总统每走一步，身子都会前仰后跌、东倒西歪。和挤在驱逐舰舰桥上的所有美国人一样，维克多·亨利也屏住呼吸，注视着罗斯福步履艰辛地走过那狭窄而又摇晃的跳板。等候在“威尔士亲王号”后甲板上的摄影记者们也都盯着总统，但帕格注意到，谁也没有拍下罗斯福一瘸一拐的镜头。

他终于站在“威尔士亲王号”的甲板上了，丘吉尔向他敬礼并且伸过手来扶他。铜管乐队奏起了《星条旗永不落》，罗斯福笔直地站立着，胸口起伏地喘着粗气，脸上神情庄重。曲毕，在丘吉尔的陪同下，总统一瘸一拐走过甲板，坐了下来。

英国牧师此时正念诵着英国皇家海军祈祷词的最后一段，他身上的红白相间的圣衣随着海风不停地飘摆着，满头浓密的灰发被风吹得狂舞。“……从海洋的危险中拯救我们，从敌人的罪行下拯救我们；愿我们在海上的正当活动得到安全的保障……让我们满载自己的劳动成果，平安返回这享受恩泽的大地……以赞美和颂扬您神圣的名字；以我主耶稣基督……”

几名英国水兵谨慎小心地走出队伍，一个接一个地偷偷从怀里摸出照相机来。看到没有人阻拦他们，而两位领导人还微笑地向他们挥手，水兵们便一拥而上。一下子出现了几十架照相机。水手们蜂拥而至，高兴地将两位大人物团团围住。眼前军舰上这种异乎寻常的混乱局面让帕格·亨利觉得又好笑又好气。这时，他觉得有人碰了他胳膊肘一下，原来是勃纳·沃克勋爵。"你好哇，亲爱的朋友，聊聊好吗？"

五、英国人的一个请求

勃纳·沃克的卧舱像一间柔和、温暖而舒适的私人藏书室。"喂，亨利，在军舰上喝点酒，你觉得怎么样？我这儿有差不多一满瓶雪利酒。"

"我觉得不错。"

"太好了。当值的时候完全不能喝酒，是吧？可昨天晚上总统却请我们好好喝了一顿。"

"是总统制定的海军的所有条令，先生，他当然有权根据需要修改这些条令。"

"噢？那倒挺方便的。"勃纳·沃克点燃一支雪茄，接着两人小酌起来。"我猜您一定听说了这艘军舰横渡大西洋的时候是没有护航的。"这位空军准将接着说道，"我们从英国出发后的第一个晚上，就遭遇了大风暴，为我们护航的驱逐舰没法和我们保持速度，所以我们只好独自曲线前进了。"

"先生，这话可真吓我一跳。"

"是吗？英国首相太冒险了一点吧，你觉得是吗？故意让德国鬼子在空旷的大海上拿他开刀？整整33 000英里，没有空中掩护也没有海面护航，直接穿过整个德国潜艇舰队的伏击区呀。"

"我只能说善良的天使在保佑你们。"

"哦，是啊，不管冒不冒险，我们已平安抵达了。不过，还是要小心，不能让那些善良的天使操劳过度了，你说呢？你不这么觉得吗？我们返航途中，大西洋上的每一艘德国潜艇一定都已蓄势待发。我们不得不穿过整个伏击区。"勃纳·沃克说到这里停了下来，注视着雪茄上的烟灰。"你知道，我们的护航力量很薄弱。我们已经集中了四艘驱逐舰。如果是六艘，海军上将庞德一定会更高兴的。"

"我会和海军上将金谈谈的。"，维克多·亨利马上说。

"你明白这要求不能是我们提出来。首相要是知道了，一定会大发雷霆的。他正期望着能和德舰"蒂尔皮茨号"遭遇，轰轰烈烈干一场呢。"

"那我马上就着手去办这件事吧，先生。"帕格把酒一饮而尽，站了起来。

"哦？你去啊？"勃纳·沃克打开舱门。"那真是非常感谢。"

后甲板上，拍照还在继续。两位政治家还在愉快地交谈，一些带照相机的军官们已经把那些水兵们挤开了。两位政治家背后站着那些一脸阴霾的高级参谋人员和文职顾问们。霍普金斯眯着眼睛看着阳光照耀的海面，一脸的愁苦。军官们都在一起交谈，只有海军上将金神情呆滞地站在一边。帕格走过去，行了个礼，然后扼要地汇报了他和勃纳·沃克的谈话内容。金清瘦的下巴上的皱纹更深了。他点了两下头，一语未发就走开了。他并没有到哪里去，那只是示意亨利离开的动作，而且是一种让

人信服的表示。

会议又继续开了两天,其间有多次酒宴。一天晚上,吃过晚饭,丘吉尔在"奥古斯特号"的军官室里发表了演讲,滔滔不绝、口若悬河地描绘了这场战争的发展趋势。封锁、愈演愈烈的空袭和破坏活动迟早会削弱控制着欧洲的纳粹魔爪的力量,俄国和英国将会"形成一个包围圈",并且一点一点地收紧。如果美国成为一个真正的盟国,进展当然要快得多。西部战场不需要大规模进攻或长时间的战役。几支装甲纵队只要在被占领国家一登陆,便会引起群众暴动,希特勒的黑色帝国会在一片废墟、鲜血和烈火中灰飞烟灭。富兰克林·罗斯福面带微笑,聚神聆听,也不插话,只是和其他人一起由衷地鼓掌喝彩。

会议的最后一天,临近午餐的时候,海军上将金派人来叫帕格。帕格来到金的卧舱,见他穿着衬衣和裤子,正在用毛巾擦洗面部和耳朵。"'海伦号'和'梭德号'两艘驱逐舰,已经组成特混舰队 26.3.1,"金开门见山地说。"他们将护送'威尔士亲王号'去冰岛。你被任命为联络官护送'威尔士亲王号'到冰岛后离开,随特混舰队返回。"

"是,长官。"

"就不给你书面的命令了。先给你通个气,我们很快就会将所有船舰护送到冰岛,可能就在下周。见鬼,我们的海军陆战队已经占领那个地方了。总统甚至已经派了一位年轻军官作为海军副官陪同丘吉尔到我们冰岛的基地参观,就是海军少尉小富兰克林·罗斯福。"金说这个名字时面无表情。

"明白了,长官。"

"顺便问问,亨利,你语言怎么样?"

"我学过一种外语,不过是很多年前的事了,将军。"

"这样的,九月份有一批军用物资要运送去苏联,当然,前提是如果俄国到时还在坚持战斗的话。霍普金斯先生已经点了你的名了,他和总统似乎都对你在登陆运载工具等方面的专长印象深刻。你的服役档案我们也查过,好像你说你会"一点点"俄语。嘿!是怎么回事?这可不寻常哪。"

"将军,那是我 1911 年进海军学院时填写的,那个时候的确是那么回事,可现在连十几个单词也想不起来了。"接着亨利解释说童年时代在索诺玛郡交上说俄语的朋友的情况。

"我知道了。不过,档案上就是这么写的。等你从冰岛回来,你从作战处调出来,去上个俄语强化班,做好准备,以便于必要时去苏联执行一项特殊任务。到时你会有翻译的。但是,你自己只要懂一点点俄语,你提供的情报价值也会有提高"。

"是,是,长官。"

金穿上制服,盯着维克多·亨利看了看,又冲他笑了笑。在亨利记忆中,这可是第一次得到这样的微笑。

"一小时前延长征兵制法案在众议院通过了,你听说了吗?"

"是吗?感谢上帝!"

“以一票的优势通过。”

“什么？一票，长官？”

“一票。”

“唷！这可不够鼓舞英国人的，将军。”

“是啊，也鼓舞不了总统，可眼下美国人就是这样的态度。这可能是自取灭亡，但事实就是这样。我们的工作就是无论如何要继续下去。”

六、潜艇布局图

“威尔士亲王号”在乐队的演奏和礼炮的轰鸣中，迎着那带着青山气息和硝烟味道的徐徐微风，驶离了阿真舍湾。伟大的会议结束了。

维克多·亨利在“威尔士亲王号”的军官室里就可以感觉出整个军舰上的那种微妙、阴郁的气氛。这次会议在增加对英军的援助方面取得了什么样的进展，尚是未知之数；而这事很显然让舰上的军官们有个不好的感觉。虽然英军的军舰富丽堂皇，他们的军官室奢华气派，这些在空袭和炮战中战斗了两年的老兵，情绪却很低落。英国的困境似乎已经渗进了他们的骨头里。他们无法相信，温斯顿·丘吉尔把他们困窘的海军中最好的一艘军舰连同他自己的生命一起拿来冒险，最后却两手空空。这可不是他的作风。然而，他们谈话的调子里都只有微弱的希望，而缺乏真正的信心。

梯莱特上将在那天晚饭后走到维克多·亨利身边，把一只清瘦的手搭在他的肩上。“亨利，想看看潜艇分布图吗？首相觉得你可能想看看。”

梯莱特打开的那扇闪着“绝密”二字的红色警示灯的钢门。丘吉尔身穿一件机械师工作服式的连衣裤，弯着身子，垂着眼皮，对着占了一整面舱壁的俄国前线地图冥思苦想。一幅大西洋海图挂在正对面的舱壁上。舱室里烟雾缭绕，几位年轻军官正在中间的桌子上处理一些重要通讯信息。

“那儿，”首相拿手里的雪茄指着那幅苏联地图，对梯莱特和帕格·亨利说，“正在展开一幅可怕的画卷。”

标志着斯摩棱斯克东部前线的红线上又出现了两条指向莫斯科的新的粗线。丘吉尔咳嗽了一声，扫了亨利一眼。“你们总统警告过斯大林，我以收到的确切情报更加明确地对他提出过警告。没有一个国家可以借口说出乎意料。”首相转过身，踉踉跄跄地走向对面的舱壁。在阿真舍湾时，丘吉尔显得身健体壮，面色红润，充满活力，就像年轻了十岁。但现在他却脸色发灰，而且还长了些红斑。

“哈，我们在这儿有什么新进展吗？”

一个个小棺材状的黑色标记散布在宽大的蓝色空间上，一位军官还在往上加。靠近战舰预定的航道的附近有一大片。再往前，是一大片的红别针，其中也夹着一些蓝别针。

“这个新潜艇群是被一架美国侦察机在黎明时发现的，长官，”那位军官说。

“啊，是的。庞德上将也是这么说的。我想我们是在躲避它们？”

“我们的航向已经改往朝北了，长官。”

“我想，H－67护航舰也差不多到家了吧。”

“今晚我们就开始拔针了吧，首相先生。”

“这倒是好消息，”丘吉尔大声地咳嗽了一声，抽着雪茄对亨利说，“看来，我们会让你看场好戏的。不过它没有乘轰炸机飞临柏林上空那么有趣，对吗？上回玩得开心吧，上校？”

“那可是一次难得的特权啊，首相先生。”

“随时都有，随时都有。”

“太荣幸了，先生。一次就足矣了。”

丘吉尔哑着嗓子笑了起来。“我想也是。今晚放电影，梯莱特将军？”

“首相，我想是斯坦·劳莱和奥利弗·哈代合演的《海上笨蛋》。”

“《海上笨蛋》吗？还不算差！军医命令我卧床，还禁止我抽烟。我要去看《海上笨蛋》，还得带着我的雪茄。”

帕格·亨利欣赏《海上笨蛋》的好心情被一个挥之不去的念头影响着——这艘战列舰随时都会碰上一群德国潜艇。那些德国船长很擅长躲避驱逐舰的屏幕。但是，一直到电影放完都相安无事。“这部电影令人心情愉快，但是没什么内容。”首相一边吃力地往外走，一边用低沉的鼻音评论道。

七、“我们是要付出代价”

次日，克莱门特·艾德礼的广播讲话就让军舰上的军官起居室挤得满满当当的。所有不当值的军官，全体参谋人员和制定作战计划的人员都挤在军官室里，围着那台唯一的、老掉牙的、嘎吱作响的收音机。战舰此时正在狂风暴雨中破浪前行，伴着缓慢冗长的嘎吱声摇晃颠簸。对这位美国客人来说，这是非常痛苦的半小时。艾德礼读“大西洋宪章”时，他看到一些困惑的表情，拉长的面孔和不断摇头。华而不实的言语完全没有表达美国同意承担更多义务的意思。开口闭口都是对纳粹暴政的谴责，对“四大自由”的赞美，为充满和平和手足情谊的未来奉献，就是绝口不提给英国提供更多的军事援助的事情。某些关于自由贸易和民族独立的语句，如果有意义的话，那就意味着大英帝国的完蛋。

弗兰克林·罗斯福可真是个难对付的家伙，帕格·亨利心里暗想，他对此并不特别惊讶。

收音机关掉后一片沉默，梯莱特少将“哼”了一声，咕哝起来，“我敢打赌会议结果远不只这些。你说呢，亨利？”

所有的目光都注视着这位美国人。

帕格知道不可能糊弄过去，只好说，“不，先生，我想就只这些了。”

“你们的总统已经在联合公报中许诺一定要消灭纳粹暴政，”梯莱特说，“这难道不是意味着你们终究是要参战吗？”

“那是指的《租界法案》，”帕格说。

七嘴八舌的问题都冲着他来了。

“你们不准备和我们一起对付日本吗？”

“目前还没有这个打算。”

"那么，直接一点说，太平洋战争没你们什么事吗？"

"总统不会给日本提出战争警告。没有国会的支持，他不会这样做。"

"关你们的国会什么事？"

"这个问题问得好。但是前天，我们的国会仅以一票之差，差一点就要解散美国军队。"

"国会的议员们不知道世界局势是什么样的吗？"

"他们投票是为了自己的利益，以保住其政治地位。"

"那你们的人民又如何呢？"

"我们的人民现在和你们的人民在慕尼黑协定签定时差不多。"

这句话引起一片沉默。

梯莱特说，"我们正在付出代价。"

"我们也是要买单的。"

"我们当时的头是张伯伦，先生，"一位生面孔的上尉说。"现在你们有罗斯福。"

"美国人民不想和希特勒打仗，先生们，"帕格说。"就这么简单的事，对此罗斯福也没有什么办法。他们不想跟任何人打仗。生活是美好的，战争就是一场他们可以观看的球赛。你们也是主队，因为我们说着同样的语言。《租界法案》和《大西洋宪章》因此才诞生。《租界法案》并不是容易的事，它对每个人来说只不过意味着更多的工作机会和收入。"

一阵异常剧烈的摇晃使厨房里的陶瓷器皿碰的哗啦啦直响。这场唇枪舌剑停止了。维克多·亨利回到自己的卧舱。在到达冰岛离开舰艇之前，亨利没有再和那些英国军官过多地交谈了。

（选自《战争风云》，1971 年版）

习题解析

Ⅰ. 口语展示：参见"背景介绍"。

Ⅱ. 问答

A. 课文内容问答：

1. The section "Argentia Bay" tells how British Prime Minister Churchill risked dangers of U – boat sinking and traveled across the ocean to Argentia Bay to meet the U. S. President Roosevelt for talks on strengthening the alliance between the two countries.

2. 见核心内容解析 6。

3. Admiral King ordered him to put himself at Mr. Hopkins' service and the President wanted to meet him before Churchill came to call. Harry Hopkins was American worker and public administrator. He was also the intimate associate and adviser of President Roosevelt,

and U. S. Secretary. He thought the Russia would hold, but it would be a near thing. The Soviet Union need most is anti – aircraft guns.

4. Winston Churchill wanted a warning by the United States to Japan that any move against the British in Asia means war with the U. S. Because the President of the United States and the British Prime Minister are meeting face to face to discuss beating the Germans, which was achievement enough at that moment.

5. Familiar problems came up at once: excessive and contradictory requests from the British services, unreal plans, unfilled contracts, jumbled priorities, and fouled communications. One cardinal point that came first was to build new ships to replace U – boat sinkings. Because no war materiel could be uses against Hilter until it had across the ocean.

6. Their immediate need was a hundred fifty thousand rifles. These rifles were not as expensive and unavailable as ships, airplanes, tanks, and men.

7. Burne-Wilke wanted to have a word with him. The British asked for two destroyers to escort them back. Churchill didn't know the request. The request was put to Henry indirectly and tactfully as I see it.

8. The main content of Attlee's broadcast is abuse of Nazi tyranny, praise of "four freedoms," dedication to a future of world peace and brotherhood. Because in the broadcast, there was not a sign of increased American commitment, and it didn't mention more combat help for the British. The reaction was perplexed looks, lengthening faces, and headshakes.

B. 课文欣赏问答:

参见"全文概述"和"美文欣赏及写作特点"相关内容作答。

Ⅲ. 句子释义

1. Compared with the British vessel which had gone through many a battle and weathered the storm, the Augusta which was new and clean, which carried King seemed to be from a different world.

2. … Hopkins visited London and Moscow and his visits were widely covered by newspapers all over the world.

3. He's having the best time of his life, sir.

4. The Russians will fight on. But they will barely manage to carry on the fight.

5. Hopkins extended one of his weak and feeble hands, and used his thin bony fingers to count the things the British wanted to have.

6. It will make it difficult for the Americans to reject their second demand which was the real purpose of Churchill coming to meet Roosevelt.

7. By a slight difference Roosevelt looked more of the Number One man.

8. Pug was more familiar with the crippled President than the one on the front pages

standing upright.

9. If Hitler conquered Russia, he would bring the war to a successful end by launching a large - scale airborne attack on England.

10. It might be better for us not to make those good angels feel too tired, otherwise they might get angry and desert us. Do you agree?

11. We lack destroyers for escorts on our return journey.

12. It seemed that they were well aware of the difficult situation Britain was in militarily and economically.

13. When the British officers heard the Atlantic Charter read out, they were greatly disappointed and were in low spirit because there was no promise of aid.

14. The declaration is in high - sounding words, but contains nothing substantial in terms of aid to Britain by the United States.

15. the day before yesterday, the Draft Act was extended with a majority of one vote. One vote fewer would have brought about the break up of the U. S. army.

16. Lend-Lease brings no trouble, because the American people are happy about the war - boom it brings about.

Ⅳ. 词汇与表达

A.

1. brass (band): a group of musicians who play brass instruments such as trumpets and trombones.

2. strike up: begin to play

3. tower (over): much taller than

4. dress parade: requiring formal dress

5. spick-and-span: very neat and new

6. hold: keep against an enemy, not give way

7. wasted: weak and feeble

8. shore up: add support to something where weakness is shown

9. shellacking: decisive defeat

10. diminish: become perceptibly smaller by removal

11. deference: courteous regard or respect; yielding in opinion, judgment wishes

12. U-boat: a German submarine

13. nose: make or push (a way, etc.) with the front forward
    bridge: a platform above the main deck of a ship, from which it is controlled, as by the commanding officer

14. sneak: take out secretly

15. position: attitude, view

16. dry: prohibiting the sale or use of alcoholic beverage

17. tailor: alter, adapt for a particular end

18. in confidence: if you tell someone something in confidence, you tell them something secret or private and you trust them not to tell anyone else

19. refresher course: a course for reviewing material previously studied or updating information or skills

20. smattering: slight or superficial knowledge

21. pack: a united group; a group of submarines that travel and fight together

22. on watch: on duty

B.

1. A band is a body of musicians, especially performers on wind and percussion instruments, while an orchestra is a body of musicians chiefly on string instruments.

2. Call is a more general word than beckon. To beckon is to summon by nodding or waving, that is to say by gestures, while to call is to summon either by gesture or by shouting.

3. To hobble is to limp while stagger refers to unsteady movement resulting from drunkenness or semi – consciousness.

4. Blouses are tunics worn by some sailors and soldiers.

5. To applaud heartily is to applaud enthusiastically or warmly.

6. To detach is to take away (from war plans) for some other purposes. To dismiss is to fire.

7. Secrecy warnings are warnings that can be seen clearly, telling people that is a secret place. Secret warnings are warnings that that cannot be seen, that are kept from the views of others.

8. To plod is to walk slowly with effort while to stroll is to walk leisurely.

C.

1. Hilter has attacked a country too big for him to conquer.

2. the transference of leadership from London to Washington.

3. at the same time they smiled and greeted each other

4. fat, benevolent old gentleman

5. store of weapons

6. more and more sailors came and they surrounded the two men, laughing and cheering

7. wines and spirit are forbidden in your Navy

8. Nazi Germany's control of Europe

9. Hilter's evil empire would be completely destroyed

10. Franklin Roosevelt listened attentively, smiling and showing interest

11. they do things only for their political interest, voting in Congress just for more votes in an election

12. like a ball game, you are our favorite team so you have our sympathy and support

Ⅴ. 翻译

A. 汉译英:

1. We believe that victory is in sight.

2. After the toasts by the host and guest, the band struck up an American folk song.

3. To improve your diction, you must pay attention to the shades of meaning of words.

4. Some nations might pressfor more stringent sanctions.

5. The world newspapers are focusing their attention on the summit conference being held in Geneva.

6. Demonstrators took to the streets by the thousands.

7. The communique struck the reporters as one of historical significance

8. The U. S. President returned from the Middle East last week, only to find a new war raging on the domestic energy front.

9. We looked at it more carefully to see whether there was more to it than we assumed in the past.

10. This mountain stream makes sounds similar to those of a guitar. Hence the name "The Spring of Jade Guitar.

B. 英译汉: 参见"参考译文"。

C. 段落翻译: 参见"参考译文"。

Ⅵ. 阅读，思考与评论

（略）

参 考 文 献

1. Guralnik, B. Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language. New York: The World Publishing Company, 1972
2. Hornby, A. S. Oxford Advanced Learner's English-Chinese Dictionary. Beijing: The Commercial Press, 1997
3. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English. Beijing: FLTRP, 1995
4. Merriam Webster's Dictionary of Synonyms. Massachusetts: Merriam-Webster, Incorporated, 1984
5. 梅仁毅,王立礼. 高级英语(修订本). 第1册教师用书. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1995
6. 普洛克特. 英汉双解剑桥国际英语词典. 上海:上海外语教育出版社,2001
7. 张汉熙主编. 高级英语(修订本). 第1册. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1995
8. 张汉熙主编. 高级英语(修订本). 第2册. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1995
9. 张汉熙. 高级英语(修订本). 第2册教师用书. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,1995
10. 张汉熙主编;王立礼编. 高级英语(第3版). 第1册. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,2011
11. 张汉熙主编;王立礼编. 高级英语(第3版). 第2册. 北京:外语教学与研究出版社,2011